

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Educ T 918.38.148



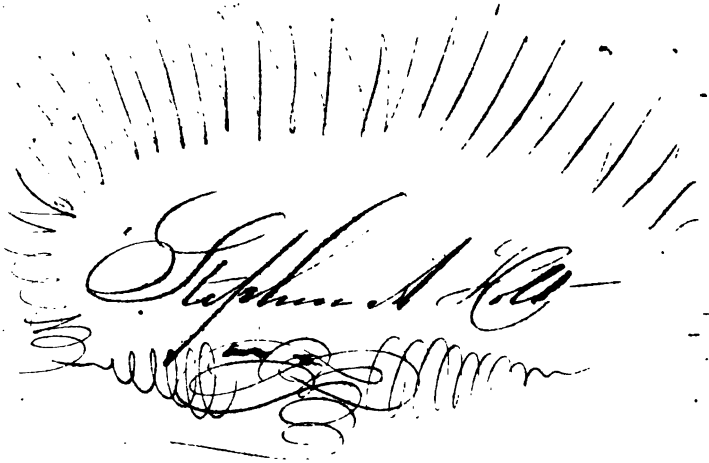
Harvard College Library

FROM

Prof. E. B. Holt

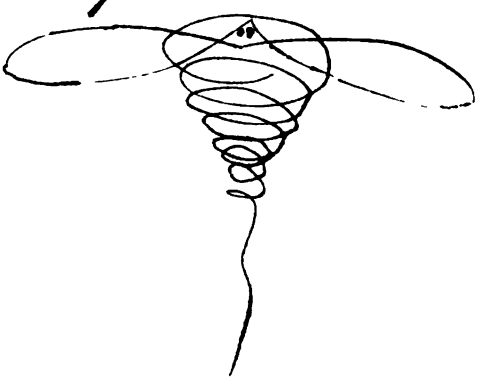


3 2044 097 067 318





Stephen A. Holt.



A

GRAMMAR

OF THE

LATIN LANGUAGE;

FOR THE

USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY

E. A. ANDREWS

AND

S. STODDARD.

Fifth Edition.

BOSTON:
PUBLISHED BY CROCKER AND BREWSTER,
47 Washington Street.
For sale by the Booksellers in New York, Philadelphia, Baltimore, and other Cities.

1838.

Educ T 918.38.148

HARVARD COLLEGE
JUL 30 1918
LIBRARY

Prof. E. B. Holt
Cambridge.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1836,
By Crocker and Brewster,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Massachusetts.

STEREOTYPED AT THE
BOSTON TYPE AND STEREOTYPE FOUNDRY.

PREFACE.

The Grammar here presented to the public originated in a design, formed several years since, of preparing a new edition of Adam's Latin Grammar, with such additions and corrections as the existing state of classical learning plainly demanded. We had not proceeded far in the execution of this purpose, before we were impressed with the conviction, which our subsequent researches continually confirmed, that the defects in that manual were so numerous, and of so fundamental a character, that they could not be removed without a radical change in the plan of the work.

Since the first publication of that Grammar, rapid advances have been made in the science of philology, both in Great Britain and upon the continent of Europe. In the mean time, no corresponding change has been made in that work, and, after the lapse of half a century, it still continues, in its original form, to occupy its place in most of the public and private schools in this country. For this continuance of public favor it has been indebted, partly to a greater fulness of detail than was found in the small grammars which it has superseded, partly to the reluctance so commonly felt to lay aside a manual with which all are familiar; but, principally, to the acknowledged fact, that the grammars which have been proposed as substitutes, not excepting even those translated from the German; though often replete with philosophical views of the highest interest, have still been destitute of many of the essential requisites of a complete introduction to the Latin language.

Instead, therefore, of prosecuting our original purpose, we at length determined to mould our materials into a form corre-

sponding with the advanced state of Latin and Greek philology. With this view, we have devoted much time to a careful examination of such works as promised to afford us the most material assistance. From every source, to which we could gain access, we have drawn whatever principles appeared to us most important. These we have sometimes expressed in the words of the author from whom they were derived; but, in general, we have preferred to exhibit them in our own language. The whole, with the exception of three or four pages only, has been sent to the compositor in manuscript.

The limits of a preface will allow us to notice but a few of the more prominent peculiarities of the following work.

To insure a correct and uniform pronunciation of the Latin language, our experience had satisfied us, that rules more copious and exact than any now in use were greatly needed. In presenting the rules of orthoëpy contained in this Grammar, it is not our object to introduce innovation, but to produce uniformity. This we have endeavored to effect by exhibiting, in as clear a light as possible, the principles of pronunciation adopted in the schools and universities of England, and in the principal colleges of this country. If these rules are regarded, the student can seldom be at a loss respecting the pronunciation of any Latin word.

As an incorrect pronunciation may generally be referred to the errors into which the student is permitted to fall while learning the paradigms of the grammar, we have endeavored to prevent the possibility of mistake in these, by dividing the words according to their pronunciation, and marking the accented syllable. If the instructor will see that the words are at first pronounced as they are set down in the paradigms, he will not afterwards be compelled to submit to the mortifying labor of correcting bad habits, when they have become nearly inveterate. Wherever a Latin word is introduced, its quantity is carefully marked, except in those cases in which it may be determined by the general rules in the thirteenth section. As the paradigms are divided and accented, it may not, in general, be expe-

dient for the student to learn the rules of pronunciation at his entrance upon the study of the Grammar. It will be sufficient for him, at first, to understand the principles of accentuation in the fourteenth and fifteenth sections. The remaining rules he can gradually acquire as he proceeds in his study of the language.

The materials for the subsequent departments of the Grammar have been drawn from various sources, most of which need not be particularly specified. It is proper, however, that, in this place, we should, once for all, acknowledge our obligations to the Grammars of Scheller, Zumpt, and Grant, and to the Dictionaries of Gesner and Facciolatus.

The paradigms of Adam's Grammar, as being generally known, have been retained, excepting a few, which were liable to valid objections. *Penna* was rejected, because, in the sense assigned to it of a *pen*, it is totally destitute of classical authority. Instead of this, *musa*, which is found in the older grammars, has been restored. In the third declension, several additional examples have been introduced.

Under adjectives, the different kinds of comparison, and the mode of forming each, have been explained. The terminations of the comparative and superlative are referred, like every other species of inflection, to the root of the word.

In treating of the pronouns, we have aimed so to arrange the several classes, as to exhibit their peculiar characteristics in a clear and intelligible manner.

The compounds of *sum* are given in connection with that verb. In the second conjugation, *moneo* has been substituted for *doceo*, as the latter is irregular in its third root. In the third conjugation, also, *rego* has been taken instead of *lego*, as the latter is irregular in its second root, and, from its peculiar signification, cannot properly be used in the first and second persons of the passive voice.

In every conjugation except the first, the active and passive voices have been so arranged as to show the relation of their corresponding tenses.

The derivation of the several parts of the verb from the root is exhibited in a peculiar manner, and such as we have found in practice to render the varieties of termination, both in regular and irregular verbs, peculiarly easy to be retained in memory. Every part of the verb is shown to be naturally derived, either immediately or mediately, from its primary root. The mode of forming the secondary roots, and the terminations to be added to them and to the primary root respectively, in order to form the various tenses, are fully exhibited.

In each conjugation, those verbs whose second and third roots are either irregular or wanting, are arranged alphabetically, in order to render a reference to them as easy as possible.

In constructing the tables of verbs, and occasionally in other parts of etymology, we have derived essential aid from Hickie's Grammar, and we trust that the information resulting from his researches, in relation to the parts of verbs in actual use, will be esteemed not only curious but important. To a considerable extent, we have verified his statements by our own investigations; in consequence of which, however, some changes have been made in the parts of certain verbs as exhibited by him.

The rules of syntax contained in this work result directly from the analysis of propositions, and of compound sentences; and for this reason the student should make himself perfectly familiar with the sections relating to *subject* and *predicate*, and should be able readily to analyze sentences, whether simple or compound, and to explain their structure and connection. For this purpose, it is generally expedient to begin with simple English sentences, and to proceed gradually to such as are more complex. When in some degree familiar with these, he will be able to enter upon the analysis of Latin sentences. This exercise should always precede the more minute and subsidiary labor of parsing. If the latter be conducted, as it often is, independently of previous analysis, the principal advantage to be derived from the study of language, as an intellectual exercise, will inevitably be lost. The practice which we would respectfully recommend is that which we have presented at the close of

Syntax under the head "Analysis." When language is studied in this way, it ceases to be a tiresome and mechanical employment, and not only affords one of the most perfect exercises of the intellectual faculties, but, in a short time, becomes a most agreeable recreation.

In the syntax of this Grammar, it is hoped that nothing essential which is contained in larger grammars, has been omitted. Our object has been in this, as in other parts of the work, to unite the comprehensive views and philosophical arrangement of the German philologists with the fulness and minuteness of the English grammarians. In no German grammar that we have seen, is the language well adapted to the capacity of the younger classes of students, or such as to be conveniently quoted in the recitation-room. These defects we have endeavored to remedy, by expressing the rules of syntax in as simple and precise language as possible. In the arrangement of the syntax, we have followed the order of the various cases and moods, so that whatever relates to each subject will be found under its appropriate head, and the connection of different subjects is pointed out by references from one part to another. In the distribution of the subordinate parts, we have endeavored to exhibit in the clearest manner their mutual relation and dependence.

The sections relating to the use of moods have received particular attention, as it is in this part, perhaps, more than in any other, that the common grammars are deficient. Upon this subject, in addition to the sources before enumerated, we have derived important aid from Carson's treatise on the relative, and from Crombie's Gymnasium.

The foundation of the prosody which is here presented, is to be found in the more extended treatises of Carey and Grant, and in that contained in Rees's Cyclopædia. From various other sources, also, occasional assistance has been derived; but in this, as in every other part of the Grammar, we have given to the materials such a form as seemed best adapted to our purpose.

Extended discussions of grammatical principles we have

every where omitted, as foreign to the design of our work, but have endeavored to present the results of such discussions in the manner most likely to serve the practical purposes of the student.

A prominent object in the composition of this Grammar, and one which we have endeavored to keep constantly before our minds, was the introduction of greater precision in rules and definitions, than is usually to be found in works of this kind. To this feature of our work we would respectfully invite the reader's attention. It will be found, if we mistake not, that, in the language of many of the grammars in common use, there is such inaccuracy, as well as indefiniteness, that many parts, if taken independently of examples, and of the explanations of the teacher, would be wholly unintelligible. This is especially the case in the rules of syntax. Take, for example, the common rule, "A verb agrees with its nominative in number and person." Whether the nominative intended is that which, in construction, precedes, or that which follows, the verb, or in other words, whether it is the subject-nominative, or the predicate-nominative, is left undetermined.

So in the rule, "One substantive governs another signifying a different thing in the genitive," there is no intimation that the two substantives have any relation whatever to each other; it is not even required that they shall stand in the same proposition. The only condition is, that they shall signify different things. Any one substantive, therefore, governs any other substantive in the genitive, whenever and however used, and, in its turn, is governed in like manner by that other, provided they signify different things.

In like manner the rule, "One verb governs another in the infinitive," contains no limitation or restriction of any kind. The least that the student can be expected to infer from it is, that any verb may, in certain circumstances, govern an infinitive; and this inference we know has actually been made by some respectable teachers. One who has formed such a conclusion may well be surprised to find that the number of

verbs followed by the infinitive without a subject-accusative, is very small, and that no inconsiderable portion of the verbs of the language cannot, under any circumstances whatever, govern an infinitive, either with or without such accusative.

Rules of this kind appear to have been intended not to lead the student to a knowledge of the structure of the language, but to be repeated by him after the construction has been fully explained by his teacher. Of themselves, therefore, they may be said to teach nothing. Similar remarks might be made respecting a very large proportion of the common rules of syntax, as will be obvious to any one who will take the trouble of subjecting them to a rigid scrutiny. As the object of syntax is to exhibit the relations of words and propositions, no rule can be considered as otherwise than imperfect, which leaves the nature and even the existence of those relations wholly indeterminate. An active verb, for example, may, in general, be followed by at least three different cases, in order to express what are sometimes called its immediate and its remote objects, and also some attendant circumstance of time, place, instrument, &c. To say, then, that "A verb signifying actively governs the accusative," can give no precise information, unless we specify which of its relations is denoted by this case.

The fault to which we have now alluded, seems, in many cases, to have arisen from an excessive desire of brevity, and to have been perpetuated by the aversion so commonly felt to change a form of phraseology to which, however defective in its original, custom has at length attached a definite meaning. In cases of this kind, we have not scrupled to make such changes, both in rules and definitions, as the nature of the case seemed to us to demand; but, in doing this, we have not forgotten the importance of uniting brevity with precision.

In regard to the manner in which this work was composed, we would merely remark, that the labor has been in every respect a mutual one. The hand and mind of each have been repeatedly employed upon every part, until it has at length become impossible even for ourselves to recollect the share

which each has had in bringing the work to its present state. Of each and every part, therefore, it may be safely said that we are the joint authors; and hence, whatever of praise or blame may attach to any part, must be shared equally by each.

In commending to the patronage of the public a work on which so large a portion of our thoughts has been for several years employed, we will not pretend indifference to its fate. It was begun under a conviction, derived from the experience of many years in teaching the ancient languages, that a Latin grammar, different in many respects from any with which we were acquainted, was greatly needed in our schools and colleges. Had we contemplated the amount of labor which its execution would impose upon us, we might probably have shrunk from the attempt, encumbered as we were with other employments. At every step, however, our labor has been cheered by the greater familiarity which we have acquired with the best of the Roman writers, and by the hope that the result might be of service to others in forming an acquaintance with the same immortal authors. Should the verdict of an enlightened public decide, that, in this respect, we have been successful, we shall feel ourselves fully recompensed for our labor, in the satisfaction of having contributed, in however humble a degree, to promote the cause of classical literature, and consequently of sound learning, among our countrymen.

Boston, April 8, 1836.

CONTENTS.

Page.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

Division of letters 2
Diphthongs 2
Punctuation..... 2

ORTHOËPY.

Sounds of the letters 3
——— of the vowels 3
——— of the diphthongs..... 4
——— of the consonants..... 5
Quantity of penultimate and final syllables..... 6
Accentuation..... 7
Division of words into syllables.. 8

ETYMOLOGY.

Nouns 10
Gender..... 11
Number 14
Cases 14
Declensions..... 14
First declension 16
Greek nouns..... 17
Second declension 18
Greek nouns..... 21
Third declension..... 21
Rules for the gender 24
——— oblique cases. 27
Greek nouns..... 36
Fourth declension 37
Fifth declension..... 38
Declension of compound nouns 39
Irregular nouns 39
Variable nouns..... 40
Defective nouns..... 41
Redundant nouns..... 47
Derivation of nouns..... 49
Composition of nouns..... 53

Adjectives 54
Adjectives of the first and second declension..... 55
Adjectives of the third declension..... 57
Rules for the oblique cases. 60
Irregular adjectives..... 61
Defective adjectives..... 61
Redundant adjectives 62
Numeral adjectives 63
Comparison of adjectives 67

Page.
Irregular comparison..... 69
Defective comparison..... 70
Derivation of adjectives..... 72
Composition of adjectives.... 74

Pronouns 75
Substantive pronouns..... 76
Adjective pronouns 77
Demonstrative pronouns... 77
Intensive pronouns..... 79
Relative pronouns 79
Interrogative pronouns 80
Indefinite pronouns 82
Possessive pronouns 83
Patrial pronouns..... 83

Verbs 83
Moods..... 85
Tenses 85
Numbers 87
Persons..... 87
Participles, gerunds, and supines 88
Conjugation 89
Table of terminations..... 91
Sum..... 93
First conjugation..... 96
Second conjugation..... 102
Third conjugation..... 105
Fourth conjugation..... 111
Deponent verbs 114
Remarks on the conjugations 116
Periphrastic conjugations... 117
General rules of conjugation 119
Formation of second and third roots 120
First conjugation 120
Second conjugation 124
Third conjugation 126
Fourth conjugation 133
Irregular verbs 135
Defective verbs..... 139
Impersonal verbs 141
Redundant verbs 143
Derivation of verbs 146
Composition of verbs..... 147

Adverbs 149
Derivation of adverbs 151
Composition of adverbs..... 153
Comparison of adverbs..... 154

Prepositions 154
Prepositions in composition . 155

Page.

Conjunctions..... 157

Interjections..... 159

SYNTAX.

Subject..... 160
Predicate..... 162
Sentences..... 163
Apposition..... 164
Adjectives..... 166
Relatives..... 169
Demonstratives, &c..... 172
Reflexives..... 175
Nominative..... 176
Subject-nominative and verb 176
Predicate-nominative..... 181
Genitive..... 182
Genitive after nouns..... 182
——— after partitives.... 186
——— after adjectives ... 188
——— after verbs..... 190
——— of place..... 194
——— after particles..... 195
Dative..... 195
Dative after adjectives..... 195
——— after verbs..... 197
——— after particles..... 201
Accusative..... 202
Accusative after verbs..... 202
——— after prepositions 207
——— of time and space 208
——— of place..... 209
——— after adverbs and interjections..... 209
Subject-accusative..... 210
Vocative..... 210
Ablative..... 211
Ablative after prepositions .. 211
——— after certain nouns, adjectives, and verbs..... 212
——— of cause, &c..... 213
——— of price..... 217
——— of time..... 217
——— of place..... 218
——— after comparatives . 219
——— absolute..... 222
Connection of tenses..... 223
Indicative mood..... 225
Subjunctive mood..... 226
Protasis and apodosis..... 228
Subjunctive after particles.. 229
——— after *qui*..... 232
——— in indirect questions..... 235
——— in intermediate clauses..... 235

Page

Imperative mood..... 237
Infinitive mood..... 237
Participles..... 243
Gerunds and gerundives..... 245
Supines..... 247
Adverbs..... 249
Conjunctions..... 250
Arrangement..... 251
Arrangement of words..... 251
——— of clauses..... 254
Analysis..... 254

PROSODY.

Quantity..... 259
General rules..... 259
Special rules..... 262
First and middle syllables. 262
Derivative words..... 262
Compound words..... 263
Increment of nouns..... 265
Increment of verbs..... 268
Penultimate and antepenultimate syllables... 270
Final syllables..... 275
Versification..... 279
Feet..... 279
Metre..... 280
Verses..... 281
Figures of prosody..... 282
Arsis and thesis..... 284
Cæsura..... 285
Different kinds of metre..... 286
Dactylic metre..... 286
Anapæstic metre..... 288
Iambic metre..... 289
Trochaic metre..... 290
Choriambic metre..... 291
Ionic metre..... 292
Compound metres..... 293
Combination of verses..... 293
Horatian metres..... 294
Key to the odes of Horace .. 296

APPENDIX.

Grammatical figures..... 298
Tropes and figures of rhetoric . 301
Roman mode of reckoning time 304
———————money 306
Abbreviations..... 307
Different ages of Roman literature..... 308
Writers of the different ages .. 308

INDEX..... 311

LATIN GRAMMAR.

§ 1. LATIN GRAMMAR teaches the principles of the Latin Language.

These relate,
1. To its written characters;
2. To its pronunciation;
3. To the classification and derivation of its words;
4. To the construction of its sentences;
5. To the quantity of its syllables, and its versification.

The first part is called Orthography; the second, Orthoëpy; the third, Etymology; the fourth, Syntax; and the fifth, Prosody.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

§ 2. Orthography treats of the letters, and other characters of a language, and the proper mode of spelling words.

The letters of the Latin language are twenty-four. They have the same names as the corresponding characters in English. They are A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

I and *j* were anciently but one character, as were likewise *u* and *v*.

W is not found in Latin words and the same is true of *k*, except at the beginning of a few words whose second letter is *a;* and, even in these, most writers make use of *c*.

Y and *z* are found only in words derived from the Greek.

H, though called a letter, only denotes a breathing, or aspiration.

DIVISION OF LETTERS.

§ 3. Letters are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*.

The vowels are		*a, e, i, o, u, y,*	6
The consonants are divided into	Liquids,	*l, m, n, r,*	4
	Mutes, Labials,	*p, b, f, v,*	10
	Mutes, Palatics,	*c, g, q, j,*	
	Mutes, Linguals,	*t, d,*	
	Hissing letter,	*s,*	1
	Double letters,	*x, z,*	2
	Aspirate,	*h,*	1
			24

X is equivalent to *cs* or *gs*; *z* to *ts* or *ds*; and, except in compound words, the double letter is always written, instead of the letters which it represents.

DIPHTHONGS.

§ 4. Two vowels, in immediate succession, in the same syllable, are called a *diphthong*.

The diphthongs are *ae, ai, au, ei, eu, oe, oi, ua, ue, ui, uo, uu,* and *yi*. *Ae* and *oe* are frequently written together, *æ, œ*.

PUNCTUATION.

§ 5. The only mark of punctuation used by the ancients was a point, which denoted pauses of different length, according as it was placed at the top, the middle, or the bottom of the line. The moderns use the same marks, in writing and printing Latin, as in their own languages, and assign to them the same power.

The following marks, also, are sometimes found in Latin authors, especially in elementary works:—

˘ – ˉ The first denotes that the vowel over which it stands is short; the second, that it is long; the third, that it is doubtful.

^ This is called the circumflex accent. It denotes a contraction, and the vowel over which it stands is always long.

` This is the grave accent, and is sometimes written over particles, to distinguish them from other words containing the same letters; as, *quòd*, because; *quod*, which.

¨ The diæresis denotes that the vowel over which it stands does not form a diphthong with the preceding vowel; as, *aër*, the air.

ORTHOËPY.

§ 6. Orthoëpy treats of the right pronunciation of words.

The ancient pronunciation of the Latin language being in a great measure lost, the learned, in modern times, have applied to it those principles which regulate the pronunciation of their own languages; and hence has arisen, in different countries, a great diversity of practice.

In the following rules for dividing and pronouncing the words of the Latin language, we have endeavored to conform to English analogy, and to the settled principles of Latin accent. The basis of this system is that which is exhibited by Walker in his "Pronunciation of Greek and Latin Proper Names." To pronounce correctly, according to this method, a knowledge of the following particulars is requisite:—

1. Of the *sounds* of the letters in all their combinations.
2. Of the *quantities* of the penultimate and final syllables.
3. Of the place of the *accent*, both primary and secondary.
4. Of the mode of dividing words into *syllables*.

OF THE SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

I. Of the Vowels.

§ 7. 1. An accented vowel, at the end of a syllable, has always its *long* English sound; as,

pa'-ter, de'-dit, vi'-vus, to'-tus, tu'-ba, Ty'-rus; in which the accented vowels are pronounced as in *fatal, metre, vital, total, tutor, tyrant.*

E, o, and *u,* at the end of an unaccented syllable, have nearly the same sound as when accented, but shorter and more obscure; as, *re'-te, vo'-lo, ac'-u-o.*

A, at the end of an unaccented syllable, has the sound of *a* in *father,* or in *ah;* as, *mu'-sa, e-pis'-tŏ-la;* pronounced *mu'-sah,* &c.

I, at the end of a word, has always its long sound.

So also in the first syllable of a word, the second of which is accented, when either the *i* stands alone before a consonant, or ends the syllable before a vowel; as, *i-do'-ne-us, fi-ē'-bam, di-ur'-nus.*

In other cases, at the end of an unaccented syllable not final, it has an obscure sound, like short *e;* as, *Fa'-bi-us, phi-los'-ŏ-phus;* pronounced *Fa'-be-us,* &c.

REMARK 1. The *final i* of *tib'-i* and *sib'-i* also sounds like short *e.*
2. *Y* is always pronounced like *i* in the same situation.

§ 8. 2. When a syllable ends with a consonant, its vowel has the *short* English sound; as,

mag'-nus, reg'-num, fin'-go, hoc, fus'-tis, cyg'-nus, in which the vowels are pronounced as in *magnet, seldom, finish, copy, lustre, symbol.*

EXCEPTION 1. *A,* when it follows *qu* in an accented syllable, before *dr* and *rt,* has the same sound as in *quadrant* and *quart;* as, *qua'-dro, quad'-ra-gin'-ta, quar'-tus.*

EXC. 2. *Es,* at the end of a word, is pronounced like the English word *ease;* as, *ig'-nes, au'-des.*

EXC. 3. *Os,* at the end of plural cases, is pronounced like *ose* in *dose;* as, *nos, il'-los, dom'-ĭ-nos.*

EXC. 4. *Post* is pronounced like the same word in English; so also are its compounds; as, *post'-quam, post'-e-a;* but not its derivatives; as, *pos-trē'-mus.*

II. OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

§ 9. *Ae* and *oe* are pronounced as *e* would be in the same situation; as, *æ'-tas, æs'-tas, cæt'-ĕ-ra, pœ'-na, œs'-trum.*

Ai, ei, oi, and *yi,* usually have the vowels pronounced separately. When they are accented, and followed by another vowel, the *i* is pronounced like initial *y,* and the vowel before it has its long sound; as, *Maia, Pompeius, Troius, Harpyia;* pronounced *Ma'-ya, Pom-pe'-yus, Tro'-yus, Har-py'-ya.*

Ei, when a diphthong, and not followed by another vowel, is pronounced like long *i;* as in *hei.*

Au, when a diphthong, is pronounced like *aw;* as, *laus, au'-rum,* pronounced *laws,* &c.

In the termination of Greek proper names, the letters *au* are pronounced separately; as, *Men-e-lā'-us.*

Eu, when a diphthong, is pronounced like long *u;* as, *heu, Or'-pheus.*

Ua, ue, ui, uo, uu, when diphthongs, are pronounced like *wa, we,* &c.; as, *lin'-gua, que'-ror, sua'-de-o, quo'-tus, e'-quus.* They

are always diphthongs after *q*, and usually after *g* and *s*. In *su'-us*, *ar'-gu-o*, and some other words, they are not diphthongs.

Ui in *cui* and *huic* is pronounced like long *i*.

III. Of the Consonants.

§ 10. The consonants have, in general, the same power in Latin as in English words.

The following cases, however, require particular attention.

C.

C has the sound of *s* before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ* and *œ*; as, *ce'-do*, *Cæ'-sar*, *Cy'-rus*. In other situations, it has the sound of *k*; as, *Ca'-to*, *lac*.

Ch has always the sound of *k*; as, *charta*, *machĭna*, pronounced *kar'-ta*, *mak'-i-na*.

Exc. *C*, following or ending an accented syllable, before *i* followed by a vowel, and also before *eu*, has the sound of *sh*; as, *socia*, *caduceus*, pronounced *so'-she-a*, *ca-du'-she-us*.

G.

G has its soft sound, like *j*, before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ* and *œ*; as, *ge'-nus*, *re-gi'-na*. In other situations, it has its hard sound, as in *bag*, *go*.

Exc. When *g*, in an accented syllable, comes before *g* soft, it coalesces with it in sound; as, *agger*, *exaggĕro*, pronounced *aj'-er*, &c.

S.

§ 11. *S* has its hissing sound, as in *so*, *thus*.

Exc. 1. *S*, following or ending an accented syllable, before *i* followed by a vowel, and before *u* ending a syllable, has the sound of *sh*; as, *Persia*, *censui*, pronounced *Per'-she-a*, *cen'-shu-i*. But, in such case, *s*, if preceded by a vowel, has the sound of *zh*; as, *Aspasia*, *Mœsia*, *posui*, pronounced *As-pa'-zhe-a*, *Mœ'-zhe-a*, *pozh'-u-i*.

Note. In compound words, whose second part begins with *su*, *s* retains its hissing sound; as, *in'-sŭ-per*.

Exc. 2. *S*, at the end of a word, after *e*, *æ*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, and *r*, has the sound of *z*; as, *res*, *æs*, *laus*, *trabs*, *hi'-ems*, *lens*, *Mars*.

English analogy has also occasioned the *s* in *Cæ'-sar*, *cæ-sû'-ra*, *mi'-ser*, *mu'-sa*, *re-sid'-u-um*, *cau'-su*, *ro'-sa*, and their derivatives, and in some other words, to take the sound of *z*. *Cæs-a-rē'-a*, and the oblique cases of *Cæsar*, retain the hissing sound.

T.

§ 12. *T*, following or ending an accented syllable, before *i* followed by a vowel, has the sound of *sh;* as, *ratio, Sulpitius,* pronounced *ra'-she-o, Sul-pish'-e-us.* But in such case, *t*, if preceded by *s* or *x*, has the sound of *ch* in *child;* as, *mixtio, Sallustius,* pronounced *mix'-che-o, Sal-lus'-che-us.*

Exc. Proper names in *tion*, and old infinitives in *er*, preserve the hard sound of *t;* as, *Am-phic'-ty-on, flec'-ti-er* for *flecti.*

X.

X, at the beginning of a syllable, has the sound of *z;* at the end, that of *ks;* as *Xenŏphon, axis,* pronounced *Zen'-o-phon, ak'-sis.*

Exc. 1. In words beginning with *ex*, followed by a vowel in an accented syllable, *x* has the sound of *gz;* as, *examĭno, exemplum,* pronounced *eg-zam'-i-no, eg-zem'-plum.*

Exc. 2. *X*, ending an accented syllable, before *i* followed by a vowel, and before *u* ending a syllable, has the power of *ksh;* as, *noxius, pexui,* pronounced *nok'-she-us, pek'-shu-i.*

Remark. *Ch* and *ph*, before *th*, in the beginning of a word, are silent; as *Chthonia, Phthia,* pronounced *Tho'-ni-a, Thi'-a.* Also in the following combinations of consonants, in the beginning of words of Greek origin, the first letter is not sounded:—*mne-mon'-i-ca, gna'-vus, tme'-sis, Cte'-sias, Ptol-e-mæ'-us, psal'-lo.*

OF THE QUANTITIES OF THE PENULTIMATE AND FINAL SYLLABLES.

§ 13. The *quantity* of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it.

A *short* syllable requires, in pronunciation, half the time of a *long* one.

The *penultimate* syllable, or *penult*, is the last syllable but one.
The *antepenult* is the last syllable but two.

The quantities of syllables are, in general, to be learned from the "Rules of Prosody;" but the following very general rules may be here inserted:—

A vowel before another vowel is short.

Diphthongs, not beginning with *u*, are long.

A vowel before *x, z, j*, or any two consonants, except a mute and liquid, is long, by *position*, as it is called.

A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common, *i. e.* either long or short.

In this Grammar, when the quantity of a penult is determined by one of the preceding rules, it is not marked; in other cases, except in dissyllables, the proper mark is written over its vowel.

To pronounce Latin words correctly, it is necessary to ascertain the quantities of their last two syllables only; and the rules for the quantities of final syllables would be unnecessary, but for the occasional addition of enclitics. As these are generally monosyllables, and, for the purpose of accentuation, are considered as parts of the words to which they are annexed, they cause the final syllable of the original word to become the penult of the compound. But as the enclitics begin with a consonant, the final vowels of all words ending with a consonant, if previously short, are, by the addition of an enclitic, made long by position. It is necessary, therefore, to learn the quantities of those final syllables *only* which end with a *vowel*.

OF ACCENTUATION.

§ 14. Accent is a particular stress of voice upon certain syllables of words.

When a word has more than one accent, that which is nearest to the termination is called the *primary* or *principal* accent.

The *secondary* accent is that which next precedes the primary.

A *third* and a *fourth* accent, in some long words, precede the secondary, and are subject, in all respects, to the same rules.

In words of two syllables, the penult is always accented; as, *pā'-ter, mā'-ter, pen'-na.*

In words of more than two syllables, if the *penult* is *long*, it is accented; but if it is *short*, the accent is on the *antepenult;* as, *a-mī'-cus, dom'-i-nus.*

Exc. The penult of vocatives, from proper names in *ius*, is accented, even when it is short; as, *Vir-gil'-i.*

§ 15. If the penult is *common*, the accent, in prose, is upon the *antepenult;* as, *vol'-u-cris, phar'-e-tra, ib'-i-que:* but genitives in *ius*, in which *i* is common, accent their *penult* in prose; as, *u-ni'-us, is-ti'-us.*

The rules for the *accentuation* of compound and simple words are the same; as, *se'-cum, sub'-e-o.*

In accentuation, the enclitics *que, ne, ve*, and also those which are annexed to pronouns,* are accounted constituent

* These are *te, met, pte, ce, cine*, and *dem;* as, *tute, egŏmet, meapte, hicce, hiccine, idem.*

parts of the words to which they are subjoined; as, *i'-ta, it'-ă-que; vi'-rum, vi-rum'-que.*

If only two syllables precede the primary accent, the secondary accent is on the first; as, *mod''-e-rā'-tus, tol''-e-rab'-ĭ-lis.*

§ **16.** If three or four syllables stand before the primary accent, the secondary accent is placed, sometimes on the first, and sometimes on the second syllable; as, *de-mon''-stra-ban'-tur, ad''-o-les-cen'-ti-a.*

Some words which have only four syllables before the primary accent, and all which have more than four, have *three* accents; as, *mod'''-e-ra''-ti-ō'-nis, tol'''-e-ra-bil''-i-ō'-rem, ex-er'''-ci-ta''-ti-ō'-nis.* In some combinations there are four accents; as, *ex-er''''-ci-ta'''-ti-on''-i-bus'-que.*

RULES FOR THE DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

§ **17.** The only purpose of the following rules for the division of words, is, to lead to a correct pronunciation.

When liquids are mentioned, *l* and *r* only are intended.

Words of one syllable are called *monosyllables;* of two, *dissyllables;* and of more than two, *polysyllables.*

1. *Simple Words.*

1. In every word there are as many syllables as there are separate vowels and diphthongs. A word, therefore, will be divided correctly, when its consonants are united with the proper vowels and diphthongs.

§ **18.** 2. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, coming between the vowels of the penultimate and final syllables, must be joined to the latter; as, *pa'-ter, a'-cris, vol'-u-cris, Hi-er'-ŏ-cles.*

Tib'-i and *sib'-i* are excepted. no reason why they are excepted

3. Any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid, coming between the penultimate and final syllables, are separated; as, *cor'-pus, il'-le, ad-o-les'-cens.*

§ **19.** 4. A single consonant, either before or after the vowel of any accented syllable, except after the vowel of a penult, is joined to the accented syllable; as, *i-tin'-ĕ-ra, dom'-ĭ-nus.*

5. A mute and a liquid, coming *before* the vowel of an accented syllable, are joined to such vowel; as, *a-gres'-tis, la-trā'-tor, Eu-phrā'-nor, Her-a-clē'-a.*

Exc. to rules 2 and 5. *Gl* and *tl*, either after the vowel of the penult,

or before the vowel of an accented syllable, are separated; as, *Æg'-le, At'-las; Ag-lā'-us, At-lan'-ti-des.*

§ 20. 6. Any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid, coming *before* the vowel of an accented syllable, and any two consonants whatever, coming *after* such vowel, unless it is the vowel of the penult (2), are separated; as, *ger-mā'-nus, for-mī'-do, ca-ter'-va, co-lum'-ba, ref'-lu-o.*

Exc. to rules 4 and 6. (*a.*) A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, following *a*, *e*, or *o*, in an accented syllable, and followed by two vowels, of which the first is *e* or *i*, must be joined to the latter; as, *ra'-di-us, fa'-ci-o, me'-di-us, do'-ce-o, tæ'-di-um, hæ'-re-o, Mæ'-si-a, Sue'-vi-a, pa'-tri-us, E-re'-tri-a, Œ-no'-tri-a.*

Exc. (*b.*) A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, after *u*, in an accented syllable, must be joined to the vowel which follows; as, *lu'-rĭ-dus, au'-re-us, Eu'-rў-tus, sa-lu'-brĭ-tas, Eu'-crĭ-tus.*

Exc. (*c.*) If the second of two consonants coming after the vowel of an accented syllable is *t* or *d*, they are often united, as in English, when followed by *u*, ending a syllable not final; as, *mortuus, arduus*, pronounced *mort'-yu-us, ard'-yu-us.*

§ 21. 7. If three consonants come between the vowels of any two syllables, the last two, if a mute and a liquid, are joined to the latter syllable; otherwise, the last only; as, *pis-tri-na, fe-nes'-tra, emp-tō'-ris, Lamp'-să-cus.*

8. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, coming between the vowels of two unaccented syllables, must be joined to the latter; as, *tol''-e-ra-bil'-i-us, ad'-o-les-cen'-ti-a, per'''-e-gri-na''-ti-ō'-nis.*

9. When *x*, with no other consonant, comes between two vowels, in *writing* syllables, it is united to the former; but in *pronouncing* them, it is divided; as, *sax'-um, ax-il-la*, pronounced *sac'-sum, ac-sil'-la.*

§ 22. 10. When *h* alone comes between two vowels, it is joined to the latter; but if it follows *c*, *p*, or *t*, it is never separated from them, and is not considered as a letter; as, *mi'-hi, tra'-hē-re, mach'-ĭ-na, Pa'-phos, A'-thos.*

11. Four consonants rarely meet in words uncompounded, as in *trans'-trum.* In such case, two of them are a mute and a liquid, and these are joined to the latter syllable.

2. *Compound Words.*

§ 23. 12. A compound word is resolved into its constituent parts, if the former part ends with a consonant; but if that ends with a vowel, the compound is divided like a simple word; as, *ab-es'-se, in'-ers, cir-cum'-ă-go, su'-pĕr-est, sub'-i-it, præ-ter'-e-a; —def'-ĕ-ro, dil'-ĭ-go, be-nev'-ŏ-lus, præs'-to,*

ETYMOLOGY.

§ 24. Etymology treats of the different classes of words, their derivation, and various inflections.

The different classes, into which words are divided, are called *Parts of Speech.*

The parts of speech in Latin are eight—*Substantive* or *Noun*, *Adjective*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Conjunction*, and *Interjection.*

The first four are *inflected;* the last four are *not inflected,* except that some adverbs change their termination to express comparison.

Substantives and adjectives are often included by grammarians under the general term *nouns;* but, in this Grammar, the word *noun* is used as synonymous with *substantive* only.

§ 25. To verbs belong *Participles*, *Gerunds*, and *Supines*, which partake of the meaning of the verb, and the inflection of the noun.

Inflection, in Latin grammar, signifies a change in the termination of a word. It is of three kinds—*declension*, *conjugation*, and *comparison.*

Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, participles, gerunds, and supines, are *declined;* verbs are *conjugated,* and adjectives and adverbs are *compared.*

NOUNS.

§ 26. A substantive or noun is the *name* of an object.

Nouns are either *proper*, *common*, or *abstract.*

A proper noun is the name of an *individual* object; as, *Cæsar; Roma*, Rome; *Tĭbĕris*, the Tiber.

A common noun denotes a *class* of objects, to any one of which it is equally applicable; as, *homo*, a man; *avis*, a bird; *quercus*, an oak; *lapis*, a stone.

A common noun, when, in the singular number, it signifies many, is called a *collective* noun; as, *populus*, a people; *exercĭtus*, an army.

An abstract noun is the name of a *quality*, or of a *mode* of being or action; as, *bonĭtas*, goodness; *gaudium*, joy; *festinatio*, haste.

Abstract nouns, by varying their meaning, may become common. Thus, *studium*, zeal, a state of the mind, is an abstract; when it signifies a pursuit, it is a common noun. Proper nouns also may be used to designate a class, and then they become common; as, *duodecim Cæsares*, the twelve Cæsars. The infinitive mood is often substituted for an abstract noun.

To nouns belong *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

GENDER.

§ 27. Nouns have three genders—*masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*.

The gender of Latin nouns is either *natural* or *grammatical*.

Those words are naturally masculine or feminine, which are used to designate the sexes.

Those are grammatically masculine or feminine, which, though they denote objects that are neither male nor female, take adjectives of the form appropriated to nouns denoting the sexes: thus, *dominus*, a lord, is naturally masculine, because it denotes a male; but *sermo*, speech, is grammatically masculine, because it takes an adjective of that form which is annexed to nouns denoting males.

The grammatical gender of Latin nouns depends either on their signification, or on their declension and termination. The following are the general rules of gender, in reference to *signification*. Many exceptions to them, on account of *termination*, occur: these will be specified under the several declensions.

§ 28. Masculines. 1. Names and appellations of all male beings are masculine; as, *Homērus*, Homer; *pater*, a father; *consul*, a consul; *equus*, a horse.

As proper names usually follow the gender of the general name under which they are comprehended; hence,

2. Names of rivers, winds, and months, are masculine, because *fluvius*, *ventus*, and *mensis*, are masculine; as, *Tĭbĕris*, the Tiber; *Aquĭlo*, the north wind; *Aprīlis*, April.

3. Names of mountains are sometimes masculine, because *mons* is masculine; as, *Othrys*, a mountain of Thessaly; but

they usually follow the gender of their termination; as, *hic** *Atlas, hæc Ida, hoc Soracte.*

§ 29. FEMININES. 1. Names and appellations of all female beings are feminine; as, *Helĕna*, Helen; *mater*, a mother; *juvenca*, a heifer.

2. Names of countries, towns, trees, plants, ships, islands, poems, and gems, are feminine; because *terra, urbs, arbor, planta, navis, fabŭla*, and *gemma*, are feminine; as,

Ægyptus, Egypt; *Corinthus*, Corinth; *pirus*, a pear-tree; *nardus*, spikenard; *Centaurus*, the ship Centaur; *Samos*, the name of an island; *Eunūchus*, the Eunuch, a comedy of Terence; *amethystus*, an amethyst.

§ 30. COMMON AND DOUBTFUL GENDER. Some words are either masculine or feminine. These, if they denote things animate, are said to be of the *common* gender; if things inanimate, of the *doubtful* gender.

Of the former are *parens*, a parent; *bos*, an ox or cow: of the latter, *finis*, an end.

The following nouns are of the common gender:—

Adolescens, *a youth.*
Affīnis, *a relation by marriage.*
Antistes, *a chief priest.*
Auctor, *an author.*
Augur, *an augur.*
Bos, *an ox or cow.*
Canis, *a dog.*
Civis, *a citizen.*
Comes, *a companion.*
Conjux, *a spouse.*
Consors, *a consort.*
Convīva, *a guest.*
Custos, *a keeper.*
Dux, *a leader.*
Exul, *an exile.*
Hospes, *a guest, a host.*
Hostis, *an enemy.*
Infans, *an infant.*
Interpres, *an interpreter.*
Judex, *a judge.*
Juvĕnis, *a youth.*
Miles, *a soldier.*
Munĭceps, *a burgess.*
Nemo, *nobody.*
Par, *a peer.*
Patruēlis, *a cousin-german.*
Parens, *a parent.*
Præs, *a surety.*
Præses, *a president.*
Præsul, *a chief priest.*
Princeps, *a prince or princess.*
Sacerdos, *a priest or priestess.*
Satelles, *a life-guard.*
Sus, *a swine.*
Testis, *a witness.*
Vates, *a prophet.*
Verna, *a slave.*
Vindex, *an avenger.*

The following hexameters contain nearly all the above nouns:—

Conjux, atque *parens, princeps, patruēlis*, et *infans,*
Affīnis, vindex, judex, dux, miles, et *hostis,*
Augur, et *antistes, juvĕnis, convīva, sacerdos,*
Munĭ-que-*ceps, vates, adolescens. civis*, et *auctor,*
Custos, nemo, comes, testis, sus, bos-que, *canis*-que,
Pro consorte tori *par, præsul, verna, satelles,*
Præs jungas, *consors, interpres*, et *exul*, et *hospes.*

* To distinguish the gender of Latin nouns, grammarians write *hic* before the masculine, *hæc* before the feminine, and *hoc* before the neuter.

§ 31. When nouns of the common gender denote males, they take a masculine adjective; when they denote females, a feminine.

The following are either masculine or feminine in sense, but masculine only in grammatical construction :—

Artĭfex, *an artist.*	Fur, *a thief.*	Obses, *a hostage.*
Auspex, *a soothsayer.*	Heres, *an heir.*	Opĭfex, *a workman.*
Cocles, *a person having but one eye.*	Homo, *a man or woman.*	Pedes, *a footman.*
	Index, *an informer.*	Pugil, *a boxer.*
Eques, *a horseman.*	Latro, *a robber.*	Senex, *an old person.*
Exlex, *an outlaw.*	Libĕri, *children.*	

To these may be added personal appellatives of the first declension; as, *advĕna*, a stranger; *auriga*, a charioteer; *incŏla*, an inhabitant: also some gentile nouns; as, *Persa*, a Persian; *Arcas*, an Arcadian.

§ 32. The following, though masculine or feminine in sense, are feminine only in construction :—

Copiæ, *troops.*	Opĕræ, *laborers.*	Vigiliæ, *watchmen.*
Custodiæ, *guards.*	Proles, } *offspring.*	
Excubiæ, *sentinels.*	Sobŏles, }	

Some nouns, signifying persons, are neuter, both in their termination and construction; as,

Acroāma, *a jester.*	Mancipium, } *a slave.*
Auxilia, *auxiliary troops.*	Servitium, }

§ 33. EPICENES. Names of animals which include both sexes, but which admit of an adjective of one gender only, are called *epicene*. Such nouns commonly follow the gender of their terminations. Thus, *passer*, a sparrow, *mus*, a mouse, are masculine; *aquĭla*, an eagle, *vulpes*, a fox, are feminine; though each of them is used to denote both sexes.

This class includes the names of animals, in which the distinction of sex is seldom attended to. When it is necessary to mark the sex, *mas* or *femĭna* is usually added.

§ 34. NEUTERS. Nouns which are neither masculine nor feminine, are said to be of the neuter gender; such are,

1. All indeclinable nouns; as, *fas*, *nefas*, *nihil*, *gummi*, *pondo*.

2. Names of letters; as, *A*, *B*, *C*, &c.

3. Words used merely as such, without reference to their meaning; as, *pater est dissyllăbum; pater* is a dissyllable.

4. All infinitives, imperatives, clauses of sentences, adverbs,

and other particles, used substantively; as, *scire tuum*, your knowledge; *ultimum vale*, the last farewell.

REMARK. Words derived from the Greek retain the same gender which they have in that language.

NUMBER.

§ 35. Latin nouns have two numbers,—the *singular* and the *plural*,—which are distinguished by their terminations.

The singular number denotes one object; the plural, more than one.

CASES.

§ 36. Many of the relations of objects, which, in English, are denoted by prepositions, are, in Latin, expressed by a change of termination.

Cases are those terminations of nouns, by means of which their relations to other words are denoted. Latin nouns have six cases; viz. *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, and *Ablative*.

But though there is this number of cases, no noun has so many different terminations in each number.

§ 37. The nominative indicates the relation of a *subject* to a finite verb.

The genitive is used to indicate *origin*, *possession*, and many other relations, which, in English, are denoted by the preposition *of*.

The dative denotes that *to* or *for* which any thing is, or is done.

The accusative is either the *object* of an active verb, or of certain prepositions, or the *subject* of an infinitive.

The vocative is the form appropriated to the name of any object which is addressed.

The ablative denotes *privation*, and many other relations, especially those which are usually expressed in English by the prepositions *with*, *from*, *in*, or *by*.

All the cases, except the nominative, are usually called *oblique* cases.

DECLENSIONS.

§ 38. The change of termination, by which the different cases and numbers of nouns are expressed, is called *declension*

There are, in Latin, five different modes of declining nouns, called the *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*, and *fifth* declensions. These may be distinguished by the termination of the genitive singular, which, in the first declension, ends in *æ*, in the second in *i*, in the third in *is*, in the fourth in *ûs*, and in the fifth in *eï*.

§ 39. The following table exhibits a comparative view of the five declensions.

TERMINATIONS.

Singular.

	I.	II.		III.		IV.		V.
		M.	*N.*	*M.*	*N.*	*M.*	*N.*	
Nom.	ă,	us, er,	um,	—	—	us,	ū,	es,
Gen.	æ,	ī,		is,		ûs,	ū,	eï,
Dat.	æ,	ō,		ī,		uī,	ū,	eï,
Acc.	am,	um,		em,	—	um,	ū,	em,
Voc.	ă,	ĕ, er,	um,	—	—	us,	ū,	es,
Abl.	â,	ō,		ĕ, *or* ī,		ū,		ē,

Plural.

Nom.	æ,	ī,	ă,	es,	ă, iă,	us,	uă,	es,
Gen.	ārum,	ōrum,		um, *or* ium,		uum,		ērum,
Dat.	is,	is,		ĭbus,		ĭbus, *or* ŭbus,		ēbus,
Acc.	as,	os,	ă,	es,	ă, iă,	us,	uă,	es,
Voc.	æ,	ī,	ă,	es,	ă, iă,	us,	uă,	es,
Abl.	is.	is.		ĭbus.		ĭbus, *or* ŭbus.		ēbus.

Remarks.

§ 40. 1. The terminations of the nominative, in the third declension, are very numerous, and are therefore omitted in the table.

2. The accusative singular ends always in *m*, except in some neuters.

3. The vocative singular is like the nominative in all Latin nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension.

4. The nominative and vocative plural end always alike.

5. The genitive plural ends always in *um*.

6. The dative and ablative plural end always alike;—in the 1st and 2d declensions, in *is*; in the 3d, 4th, and 5th, in *bus*.

7. The accusative plural ends always in *s*, except in neuters.

8. Nouns of the neuter gender have the accusative and vocative like the nominative, in both numbers; and these cases, in the plural, end always in *a*.

9. The 1st and 5th declensions contain no nouns of the neuter gender, and the 4th and 5th contain no proper names.

10. Every inflected word consists of two parts—a *root*, and a *termination*. The root is the part which is not changed by inflection. The termination is the part annexed to the root. The preceding table exhibits terminations only. In the fifth declension, the *e* of the final syllable, though unchanged, is considered as belonging to the termination.

FIRST DECLENSION.

§ 41. Nouns of the first declension end in *a*, *e*, *as*, or *es*. Those in *a* and *e* are feminine; those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

Latin nouns of this declension end only in *a*, and are thus declined :—

	Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom.	Mu'-sa,	*a muse;*	mu'-sæ,	*muses;*
Gen.	mu'-sæ,	*of a muse;*	mu-sā'-rum,	*of muses;*
Dat.	mu'-sæ,	*to a muse;*	mu'-sis,	*to muses;*
Acc.	mu'-sam,	*a muse;*	mu'-sas,	*muses;*
Voc.	mu'-sa,	*O muse;*	mu'-sæ,	*O muses;*
Abl.	mu'-sâ,	*with a muse.*	mu'-sis,	*with muses.*

In like manner decline

Au'-la, *a hall.*
Cu'-ra, *care.*
Ga'-le-a, *a helmet.*
In'-sŭ-la, *an island.*
Lit'-ĕ-ra, *a letter.*
Lus-cin'-i-a, *a nightingale.*
Mach'-ĭ-na, *a machine.*
Pen'-na, *a quill, a wing.*
Sa-git'-ta, *an arrow.*
Stel'-la, *a star.*
To'-ga, *a gown.*
Vi'-a, *a way.*

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ 42. 1. Appellatives of men, and names of rivers in *a*, are masculine, according to § 28, 1 and 2. But the poets have used the following names of rivers as feminine: *Albŭla, Allia, Druentia, Garumna, Matrŏna, Mosella.* Names of rivers in *e* are also feminine; as, *Lethe,*

Ossa and *Œta*, names of mountains, are masculine or feminine.

2. *Hadria*, the Adriatic sea, is masculine. *Dama*, a fallow deer, and *talpa*, a mole, are once used as masculine by Virgil.

Exceptions in Declension.

§ 43. *Genitive singular.* 1. The poets sometimes formed the genitive singular in *āī*; as, *aula*, a hall; gen. *aulāī*.

2. *Familia*, after *pater*, *mater*, *filius*, or *filia*, usually forms its genitive in *as*; as, *mater-familias*, the mistress of a family; gen. *matris-familias*; nom. plur. *matres-familias* or *familiārum*. Some other words anciently formed their genitive in the same manner.

Genitive plural. The genitive plural is sometimes contracted by omitting *ar*; as, *Cœlicŏlûm*, for *Cœlicolārum*.

Dative and Ablative plural. The following nouns have generally *ābus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them from the same cases of masculines in *us* of the second declension:—

Dea, *a goddess.*	Equa, *a mare.*
Filia, *a daughter.*	Mula, *a she mule.*

The use of a similar termination in *anima*, *asina*, *domina*, *liberta*, *nata*, *serva*, *conserva*, and *socia*, rests on inferior authority.

Greek Nouns.

§ 44. Nouns of the first declension in *e*, *as*, and *es*, and some also in *a*, are Greek. Greek nouns in *a* are declined like *musa*, except that they sometimes have *an* in the accusative singular; as, *Ossa*; acc. *Ossam*, or *Ossan*.

Greek nouns in *e*, *as*, and *es*, are thus declined in the singular number:—

N. Pe-nel′-ŏ-pe,	*N.* Æ-nē′-as,	*N.* An-chī′-ses,
G Pe-nel′-ŏ-pes,	*G.* Æ-nē′-æ,	*G.* An-chī′-sæ,
D. Pe-nel′-ŏ-pæ,	*D.* Æ-nē′-æ,	*D.* An-chī′-sæ,
Ac. Pe-nel′-ŏ-pen,	*Ac.* Æ nē′-am, *or* an,	*Ac.* An-chī′-sen,
V. Pe-nel′-ŏ-pe,	*V.* Æ-nē′-a,	*V.* An-chī′-se,
Ab. Pe-nel′-ŏ-pe.	*Ab.* Æ-nē′-â.	*Ab.* An-chī′-se.

§ 45. In like manner decline

Al′-o-e, *aloes.*	Ti-ā′-ras, *a turban.*
E-pit′-ŏ-me, *an abridgment.*	Co-mē′-tes, *a comet.*
This′-be.	Dy-nas′-tes, *a dynasty.*
Bo′-re-as, *the north wind.*	Pri-am′-i-des, *a son of Priam.*
Mi′-das.	Py-ri′-tes, *a kind of stone.*

Patronymics in *des* have sometimes *em* for *en* in the accusative; as, *Priamidem*.

Greek nouns which admit of a plural, are declined in that number like the plural of *musa*.

The Latins frequently change the terminations of Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a*; as, *Atrides*, *Atrida*, a son of Atreus; *Perses*, *Persa*, a Persian; *geometres*, *geometra*, a geometrician; *Circe*, *Circa*; *epitŏme*, *epitŏma*; *grammatice*, *grammatica*, grammar; *rhetorice*, *rhetorica*, oratory.

SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 46. Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *us*, *um*, *os*, *on*. Those ending in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

Nouns in *er*, *us*, and *um*, are thus declined:—

SINGULAR.

	A lord.	*A son-in-law.*	*A field.*	*A kingdom.*
N.	Dom′-ĭ-nus,	Ge′-ner,	A′-ger,	Reg′-num,
G.	dom′-ĭ-ni,	gen′-ĕ-ri,	a′-gri,	reg′-ni,
D.	dom′-ĭ-no,	gen′-ĕ-ro,	a′-gro,	reg′-no,
Ac.	dom′-ĭ-num,	gen′-ĕ-rum,	a′-grum,	reg′-num,
V.	dom′-ĭ-ne,	ge′-ner,	a′-ger,	reg′-num,
Ab.	dom′-ĭ-no.	gen′-ĕ-ro.	a′-gro.	reg′-no.

PLURAL.

N.	dom′-ĭ-ni,	gen′-ĕ-ri,	a′-gri,	reg′-na,
G.	dom-i-nō′-rum,	gen-e-rō′-rum,	a-grō′-rum,	reg-nō′-rum,
D.	dom′-ĭ-nis,	gen′-ĕ-ris,	a′-gris,	reg′-nis,
Ac.	dom′-ĭ-nos,	gen′-ĕ-ros,	a′-gros,	reg′-na,
V.	dom′-ĭ-ni,	gen′-ĕ-ri,	a′-gri,	reg′-na,
Ab.	dom′-ĭ-nis.	gen′-ĕ-ris.	a′-gris.	reg′-nis.

Like *domĭnus* decline

An′-ĭ-mus, *the mind.*	Fo′-cus, *a hearth.*	Nu′-mĕ-rus, *a number.*
Clyp′-e-us, *a shield.*	Gla′-di-us, *a sword.*	O-ce′-ă-nus, *the ocean.*
Cor′-vus, *a raven.*	Lu′-cus, *a grove.*	Tro′-chus, *a top.*

§ 47. Some nouns in *er*, like *gener*, add the terminations to the nominative singular, as a root. They are the compounds of *gero* and *fero*; as, *armĭger*, *-ĕri*, an armor-bearer; *Lucĭfer*, *-ĕri*, the morning star; and the following:—

A-dul′-ter, ĕri, *an adulterer.*	I′-ber, ĕri, *a Spaniard.*	So′-cer, ĕri, *a father-in-law.*
Cel′-tĭ-ber, ĕri, *a Celtiberian.*	Li′-ber, ĕri, *Bacchus.*	Ves′-per, ĕri, *the evening.*
	Pu′-er, ĕri, *a boy.*	

Mulcĭber, Vulcan, sometimes has this form.

§ 48. All other nouns in *er* reject the *e*, in adding the terminations, and are declined like *ager*; thus,

A'-per, *a wild boar.*	Li'-ber, *a book.*	Al-ex-an'-der.
Aus'-ter, *the south wind.*	Ma-gis'-ter, *a master.*	Teu'-cer.
Fa'-ber, *a workman.*	On'-ā-ger, *a wild ass.*	

Vir, a man, and its compounds, (the only nouns in *ir*,) are declined like *gener*.

Like *regnum* decline

An'-trum, *a cave.*	Ne-go'-ti-um,* *a business.*	Præ-sid'-i-um, *a defence*
A'-tri-um, *a hall.*	Ni'-trum, *nitre.*	Sax'-um, *a rock.*
Bel'-lum, *war.*		Scep'-trum, *a sceptre.*
Ex-em'-plum, *an example.*		

Exceptions in Gender.

§ 49. 1. The following nouns in *us* are feminine:—

Abyssus, *a bottomless pit.*	Carbăsus, *a sail.*	Mĭltus, *vermilion.*
Alvus, *the belly.*	Dialectus, *a dialect.*	Pharus, *a watch-tower.*
Antidōtus, *an antidote.*	Domus, *a house.*	Plinthus, *the foot of a pillar.*
Arctus, *the Northern Bear.*	Erēmus, *a desert.*	Vannus, *a sieve.*
	Humus, *the ground.*	
	Lecȳthus, *a cruise.*	

2. Greek nouns in *phthongus*, *odus*, and *metros*, are likewise feminine; as, *diphthongus*, a diphthong; *synŏdus*, an assembly; *diamĕtros*, a diameter.

§ 50. 3. Names of countries, towns, trees, plants, &c. are feminine, according to § 29, 2.

Yet the following names of plants are masculine:—

Acanthus, *bear's-foot.*	Dumus, *a thicket.*	Raphănus, *a radish.*
Asparăgus, *asparagus.*	Hellebōrus, *hellebore.*	Rhamnus, *black-thorn.*
Calămus, *a reed.*	Intȳbus, *endive.*	Rubus, *a bramble.*
Carduus, *a thistle.*	Juncus, *a bulrush.*	Tribŭlus, *a thistle.*

And sometimes

Amarăcus, *marjoram.*	Cytīsus, *ladder.*
Cupressus, *cypress.*	Lotos, *a lote-tree.*

Names of trees in *aster* are also masculine; as, *oleaster*, a wild olive.

The following names of gems are also masculine:—

Beryllus, *a beryl.*	Chrysoprăsus, *chrysoprase.*	Pyrōpus, *pyrope.*
Carbuncŭlus, *a carbuncle.*	Opălus, *opal.*	Smaragdus, *an emerald.*
Chrysolithus, *chrysolite.*		

* Pronounced *ne-go'-she-um.* See § 12.

Names of trees and plants in *um* are generally neuter.

These names of countries and towns are masculine: *Canōpus, Pontus*, and all plurals in *i*. *Abȳdus* and *Lesbos* are either masculine or feminine. *Ilion* is either neuter or feminine.

Names of towns ending in *um*, or, if plural, in *a*, are neuter.

§ 51. 4. The following are doubtful, but more frequently masculine:—

Balănus, *a date.* Grossus, *a green fig.* Phasēlus, *a little ship.*
Barbĭtus, *a harp.* Pamplnus, *a vine-leaf.*

Ătŏmus, an atom, and *colus*, a distaff, are doubtful, but more frequently feminine.

5. *Pelăgus*, the sea, and *virus*, poison, are neuter.

Vulgus, the common people, is generally neuter, but sometimes masculine.

Exceptions in Declension.

§ 52. *Genitive singular.* When the genitive singular ends in *ii*, the poets sometimes contract it into *î*; as, *ingĕnî*, for *ingenii*.

Vocative singular. The vocative of nouns in *us* is sometimes like the nominative, especially in poetry; as, *fluvius, Latīnus*, in Virgil. So, *audi tu, popŭlus;* Liv.

Proper names in *ius* omit *e* in the vocative; as, *Horatius, Horātĭ; Virgilius, Virgĭli.*

Filius, a son, and *genius*, a guardian angel, make also *fili* and *geni*. Other nouns in *ius*, including patrials and possessives derived from proper names, form their vocative regularly in *e*; as, *Delius, Delie; Tirynthius, Tirynthie; Laertius, Laertie.*

§ 53. *Genitive plural.* The genitive plural of some words, especially of those which denote money, measure, and weight, is commonly formed in *ûm*, instead of *ōrum*.

Such are particularly *nummûm, sestertiûm, denariûm, medimnûm, jugĕrûm, modiûm, talentûm.* The same form occurs in other words, especially in poetry; as, *deûm, libĕrûm, Danaûm*, &c.

Deüs, *a god*, is thus declined:—

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. De′-us,	*N.* Di′-i, Dî, *or* De′-i,
G. De′-i,	*G.* De-ō′-rum,
D. De′-o,	*D.* Di′-is, Dîs, *or* De′-is,
Ac. De′-um,	*Ac.* De′-os,
V. De′-us,	*V.* Di′-i, Dî, *or* De′-i,
Ab. De′-o.	*Ab.* Di′-is, Dîs, *or* De′-is.

Jesus, the name of the Savior, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other oblique cases.

Greek Nouns.

§ 54. *Os* and *on*, in the second declension, are Greek terminations, and are often changed, in Latin, into *us* and *um*; as, *Alphēos, Alphēus; Ilion, Ilium.* Those in *ros* are generally changed into *er*; as, *Alexandros, Alexander; Teucros, Teucer.*

Greek nouns are thus declined :—

		Barbiton, *a lyre.*	
	Singular.	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N.	De'-los, An-dro'-ge-os,	*N.* bar'-bĭ-ton,	bar'-bĭ-ta,
G.	De'-li, An-dro'-ge-o, *or* i,	*G.* bar'-bĭ-ti,	bar'-bĭ-tôn,
D.	De'-lo, An-dro'-ge-o,	*D.* bar'-bĭ-to,	bar'-bĭ-tis,
Ac.	De'-lon, An-dro'-ge-o, *or* on,	*Ac.* bar'-bĭ-ton,	bar'-bĭ-ta,
V.	De'-le, An-dro'-ge-os,	*V.* bar'-bĭ-ton,	bar'-bĭ-ta,
Ab.	De'-lo. An-dro'-ge-o.	*Ab.* bar'-bĭ-to.	bar'-bĭ-tis.

Anciently, some nouns in *os* had the genitive in *u*; as, *Menandru.* Ter.

Greek proper names in *eus* are generally declined like *dominus*, except in the vocative, which ends in *eu*: in this case, and sometimes in the genitive, dative, and accusative, they retain the Greek form, and are of the third declension.

Panthu occurs in Virgil as the vocative of *Panthus.*

THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 55. The number of final letters, in this declension, is eleven. Four are vowels—*a, e, i, o*; and seven are consonants—*c, l, n, r, s, t, x.* The number of its final syllables exceeds fifty.

Mode of declining Nouns of the Third Declension.

In this declension the oblique cases cannot always be determined from the nominative, nor, on the other hand, the nominative from the oblique cases. To decline a word properly, in this declension, it is necessary to know its gender, its nominative singular, and one of its oblique cases; since the root of the cases is not always found entire and unchanged in the nominative. The case usually selected for this purpose is the genitive singular. The formation of the accusative singular, and of the nominative, accusative, an vocative plural, depends upon the gender: if it is masculine or feminine these cases have one form; if neuter, another.

§ 56. The student should first fix well in his memory the terminations of one of these forms. He should next learn the nominative and genitive singular of the word which is to be declined. If *is* is removed from the genitive, the remainder will always be the root of the oblique cases, and by annexing their terminations to this root, the word is declined; thus, *rupes*, genitive (found in the dictionary) *rupis*, root *rup*, dative *rupi*, &c.: so *ars*, gen *artis*, root *art*, dat. *arti*, &c.; *opus*, gen. *operis*, root *oper*, dat. *operi*, &c.

Where two forms are used in the same case, recourse must be had to the rules for the different cases, § 79—85.

The following are the two forms of termination in this declension :—

	Singular.		*Plural.*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	*	*	es,	a, *or* ia,
G.	is,	is,	um, *or* ium,	um, *or* ium,
D.	i,	i,	ĭbus,	ĭbus,
Ac.	em, *or* im,	*	es,	a, *or* ia,
V.	*	*	es,	a, *or* ia,
Ab.	e, *or* i.	e, *or* i.	ĭbus.	ĭbus.

The asterisk stands for the nominative, and for those cases which are like it.

§ 57. The following are examples of the most common forms of nouns of this declension, declined through all their cases.

Honor, *honor*; masc.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. ho'-nor,	ho-nō'-res,
G. ho-nō'-ris,	ho-nō'-rum,
D. ho-nō'-ri,	ho-nor'-ĭ-bus,
Ac. ho-nō'-rem,	ho-nō'-res,
V. ho'-nor,	ho-nō'-res,
Ab. ho-nō'-re.	ho-nor'-ĭ-bus.

Sermo, *speech*; masc.

Singular	*Plural.*
N. ser'-mo	ser-mō'-nes,
G. ser-mō nis,	ser-mō'-num,
D. ser-mō -ni,	ser-mon'-ĭ-bus,
Ac. ser-mō'-nem,	ser-mō'-nes,
V. ser'-mo,	ser-mō'-nes,
Ab. ser-mō'-ne.	ser-mon'-ĭ-bus.

Rupes, *a rock*; fem.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. ru'-pes,	ru'-pes,
G. ru'-pis,	ru'-pi-um,
D. ru'-pi,	ru'-pĭ-bus,
Ac. ru'-pem,	ru'-pes,
V. ru'-pes,	ru'-pes,
Ab. ru'-pe.	ru'-pĭ-bus.

Turris, *a tower*; fem.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. tur'-ris,	tur'-res,
G. tur'-ris,	tur'-ri-um,
D. tur'-ri,	tur'-rĭ-bus,
Ac. tur'-rem,	tur'-res,
V. tur'-ris,	tur'-res,
Ab. tur'-re, *or* ri.	tur'-rĭ-bus.

Ars, *art*; fem.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. ars,	ar'-tes,
G. ar'-tis,	ar'-ti-um,*
D. ar'-ti,	ar'-tĭ-bus,
Ac. ar'-tem,	ar'-tes,
V. ars,	ar'-tes,
Ab. ar'-te.	ar'-tĭ-bus.

Nox, *night*; fem.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. nox,	noc'-tes,
G. noc'-tis,	noc'-ti-um,*
D. noc'-ti,	noc'-tĭ-bus,
Ac. noc'-tem,	noc'-tes,
V. nox,	noc'-tes,
Ab. noc'-te.	noc'-tĭ-bus.

* Pronounced *ar'-she-um, noc'-she-um.* See § 12.

Miles, *a soldier*; com. gen.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	mī'-les,	mil'-ĭ-tes,
G.	mil'-ĭ-tis,	mil'-ĭ-tum,
D.	mil'-ĭ-ti,	mi-lit'-ĭ-bus,
Ac.	mil'-ĭ-tem,	mil'-ĭ-tes,
V.	mī'-les,	mil'-ĭ-tes,
Ab.	mil'-ĭ-te.	mi-lit'-ĭ-bus.

Pater, *a father*; masc.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	pa'-ter,	pa'-tres,
G.	pa'-tris,	pa'-trum,
D.	pa'-tri,	pat'-rĭ-bus,
Ac.	pa'-trem,	pa'-tres,
V.	pa'-ter,	pa'-tres,
Ab.	pa'-tre.	pat'-rĭ-bus.

Sedīle, *a seat*; neut.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	se-dī'-le,	se-dil'-i-a,
G.	se-dī'-lis,	se-dil'-i-um,
D.	se-dī'-li,	se-dil'-ĭ-bus,
Ac.	se-dī'-le,	se-dil'-i-a,
V.	se-dī'-le,	se-dil'-i-a,
Ab.	se-dī'-li.	se-dil'-ĭ-bus.

Carmen, *a verse*; neut.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	car'-men,	car'-mĭ-na,
G.	car'-mĭ-nis,	car'-mĭ-num,
D.	car'-mĭ-ni,	car-min'-ĭ-bus,
Ac.	car'-men,	car'-mĭ-na,
V.	car'-men,	car'-mĭ-na,
Ab.	car'-mĭ-ne.	car-min'-ĭ-bus.

Iter, *a journey*; neut.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	ĭ'-ter,	i-tin'-ĕ-ra,
G.	i-tin'-ĕ-ris,	i-tin'-ĕ-rum,
D.	i-tin'-ĕ-ri,	it-i-ner'-ĭ-bus,
Ac.	ĭ'-ter,	i-tin'-ĕ-ra,
V.	ĭ'-ter,	i-tin'-ĕ-ra,
Ab.	i-tin'-ĕ-re.	it-i-ner'-ĭ-bus.

Lapis, *a stone*; masc.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	la'-pis,	lap'-ĭ-des,
G.	lap'-ĭ-dis,	lap'-ĭ-dum,
D.	lap'-ĭ-di,	la-pid'-ĭ-bus,
Ac.	lap'-ĭ-dem,	lap'-ĭ-des,
V.	la'-pis,	lap'-ĭ-des,
Ab.	lap'-ĭ-de.	la-pid'-ĭ-bus.

Virgo, *a virgin*; fem.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	vir'-go,	vir'-gĭ-nes,
G.	vir'-gĭ-nis,	vir'-gĭ-num,
D.	vir'-gĭ-ni,	vir-gin'-ĭ-bus,
Ac.	vir'-gĭ-nem,	vir'-gĭ-nes,
V.	vir'-go,	vir'-gĭ-nes,
Ab.	vir'-gĭ-ne.	vir-gin'-ĭ-bus.

Anĭmal, *an animal*; neut.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	an'-ĭ-mal,	an-i-ma'-li-a,
G.	an-i-mā'-lis,	an-i-ma'-li-um,
D.	an-i-mā'-li,	an-i-mal'-ĭ-bus,
Ac.	an'-ĭ-mal,	an-i-ma'-li-a,
V.	an'-ĭ-mal,	an-i-ma'-li-a,
Ab.	an-i-mā'-li.	an-i-mal'-ĭ-bus.

Opus, *a work*; neut.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	o'-pus,	op'-ĕ-ra,
G.	op'-ĕ-ris,	op'-ĕ-rum,
D.	op'-ĕ-ri,	o-per'-ĭ-bus,
Ac.	o'-pus,	op'-ĕ-ra,
V.	o'-pus,	op'-ĕ-ra,
Ab.	op'-ĕ-re.	o-per'-ĭ-bus.

Caput, *a head*; neut.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	ca'-put,	cap'-ĭ-ta,
G.	cap'-ĭ-tis,	cap'-ĭ-tum,
D.	cap'-ĭ-ti,	ca-pit'-ĭ-bus,
Ac.	ca'-put,	cap'-ĭ-ta,
V.	ca'-put,	cap'-ĭ-ta,
Ab.	cap'-ĭ-te.	ca-pit'-ĭ-bus.

Poëma, *a poem*; neut.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	po-ē′-ma,	po-em′-ă-ta,
G.	po-em′-ă-tis,	po-em′-ă-tum,
D.	po-em′-ă-ti,	po-e-mat′-ĭ-bus, *or* po-em′-ă-tis,
Ac.	po-ē′-ma,	po-em′-ă-ta,
V.	po-ē′-ma,	po-em′-ă-ta,
Ab.	po-em′-ă-te.	po-e-mat′-ĭ-bus, *or* po-em′-ă-tis.

Rules for the Gender of Nouns of the Third Declension.

§ 58. Nouns whose gender is determined by their signification, according to the general rules, § 28—34, are not included in the following rules and exceptions.

MASCULINES.

Nouns ending in *o*, *er*, *or*, *es* increasing in the genitive, and *os*, are masculine; as,

sermo, speech; *dolor*, pain; *flos*, a flower; *carcer*, a prison; *pes*, a foot.

Exceptions in O.

§ 59. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify things incorporeal; as, *ratio*, reason.

2. Nouns in *do* and *go*, of more than two syllables, are feminine; as, *arundo*, a reed; *imāgo*, an image. So also *grando*, hail. But *comēdo*, a glutton; *unĕdo*, a kind of fruit; and *harpăgo*, a hook, are masculine.

Margo, the brink of a river, is either masculine or feminine. *Cupīdo*, desire, is often masculine in poetry, but in prose is always feminine.

3. *Caro*, flesh, and Greek nouns in *o*, are feminine; as, *echo*, an echo.

Exceptions in ER.

§ 60. 1. *Tuber*, the tuber-tree, is feminine; but when it denotes the fruit, it is masculine. *Linter*, a boat, is masculine or feminine; *siser*, a carrot, is masculine or neuter.

2. The following, in *er*, are neuter:—

Acer, *a maple-tree.*
Cadāver, *a dead body.*
Cicer, *a vetch.*
Iter, *a journey.*
Laser, *benzoin.*
Laver, *water-cresses.*
Papāver, *a poppy.*
Piper, *pepper.*
Siler, *an osier.*
Spinther, *a clasp.*
Suber, *a cork-tree.*
Tuber, *a swelling.*
Uber, *a teat.*
Ver, *the spring.*
Verber, *a scourge*
Zingĭber, *ginger.*

Exceptions in OR.

§ 61. *Arbor*, a tree, is feminine: *ador*, fine wheat; *æquor*, the sea; *marmor*, marble; and *cor*, the heart, are neuter.

Exceptions in ES *increasing in the genitive.*

1. The following are feminine:—

Compes, *a fetter.*	Quies, *and* Requies, *rest.*	Teges, *a mat.*
Merces, *a reward.*	Inquies, *want of rest.*	Tudes, *a hammer.*
Merges, *a sheaf of corn.*	Seges, *growing corn.*	

2. *Ales*, a bird, is masculine or feminine. *Æs*, brass, is neuter.

Exceptions in OS.

Arbos, a tree; *cos*, a whetstone; *dos*, a dowry; and *eos*, the morning, are feminine: *os*, the mouth, and *os*, a bone, are neuter; as are also the Greek words *chaos*, chaos; *epos*, epic poetry; and *melos*, melody.

FEMININES.

§ 62. Nouns ending in *as*, *es* not increasing in the genitive, *is*, *ys*, *s* preceded by a consonant, and *x*, are feminine; as,

ætas, age; *nubes*, a cloud; *avis*, a bird; *chlamys*, a cloak; *trabs*, a beam; *pax*, peace.

Exceptions in AS.

1. *As*, a piece of money, or any thing divisible into twelve parts, is masculine. Greek nouns in *as*, *antis*, are also masculine; as, *adămas*, adamant.

2. *Vas*, a vessel, and Greek nouns in *as*, *ădis*, are neuter; as, *artocreas*, a pie; *bucĕras*, a species of herb.

Exceptions in ES *not increasing in the genitive.*

Acinăces, a cimeter, and *coles*, a stalk, are masculine. *Palumbes*, a wood pigeon, and *vepres*, a bramble, are masculine or feminine. *Cacoëthes*, *hippomănes*, *nepenthes*, and *panăces*, Greek words, are neuter.

Exceptions in IS.

§ 63. 1. Latin nouns in *nis* are masculine or doubtful.

Masculine.

Crinis, *hair.*	Ignis, *fire.*	Panis, *bread.*

Masculine or Feminine.

Amnis, *a river.*	Clunis, *the haunch.*	Funis, *a rope.*
Cinis, *ashes.*	Finis, *an end.*	

Fines (plur.), boundaries, is always masculine.

2. The following also are masculine or feminine :—

Anguis, *a snake.*	Corbis, *a basket.*	Tigris, *a tiger.*
Canalis, *a conduit pipe.*	Pulvis, *dust.*	Torquis, *a chain.*
Cenchris, *a serpent.*	Scrobis, *a ditch.*	

3. The following are masculine :—

Axis, *an axletree.*	Ensis, *a sword.*	Postis, *a post.*
Aquālis, *a water-pot.*	Fascis, *a bundle.*	Sanguis, *blood.*
Callis, *a path.*	Follis, *a pair of bellows.*	Semissis, *a half of* as.
Cassis, *a net.*	Fustis, *a club.*	Sentis, *a brier.*
Caulis, *or* Colis, *a stalk.*	Glis, *a dormouse.*	Sodālis, *a companion.*
Centussis, *a compound of* as.	Lapis, *a stone.*	Torris, *a firebrand.*
Collis, *a hill.*	Mensis, *a month.*	Unguis, *a nail.*
Cossis, *a worm.*	Mugĭlis, *a mullet.*	Vectis, *a lever.*
Cucŭmis, *a cucumber.*	Orbis, *a circle.*	Vermis, *a worm.*
Decussis, *a compound of* as.	Piscis, *a fish.*	Vomis, *a ploughshare.*
	Pollis, *fine flour.*	

Exceptions in S *preceded by a consonant.*

§ 64. 1. *Dens*, a tooth; *fons*, a fountain; *mons*, a mountain; and *pons*, a bridge, are masculine. So also are *chalybs*, steel; *ellops*, a kind of fish; *epops*, a lapwing; *gryps*, a griffin; *hydrops*, the dropsy; *merops*, a woodpecker; and *seps*, a kind of serpent.

2. Some nouns in *ns*, originally participles, and the compounds of *dens*, which are properly adjectives, are masculine; as, *confluens*, a confluence; *occĭdens*, the west; *oriens*, the east; *profluens*, a stream; *torrens*, a torrent; *bidens*, a two-pronged hoe; but *bidens*, a sheep, is feminine. To these add *sextans*, *quadrans*, *triens*, *dodrans*, *dextans*, parts of *as*.

3. The following are either masculine or feminine :—

Adeps, *fatness.*	Rudens, *a cable.*	Serpens, *a serpent.*
Forceps, *pincers.*	Scrobs, *a ditch.*	Stirps, *the trunk of a tree.*

Ănimans, an animal, is feminine or neuter, and sometimes masculine.

Exceptions in X.

§ 65. 1. AX. *Corax*, a raven; *cordax*, a kind of dance; *dropax*, an ointment; *styrax*, a kind of tree; and *thorax*, a breastplate, are masculine *limax*, a snail, is masculine or feminine.

2. EX. Nouns in *ex* are masculine, except *lex*, a law, *nex*, death, and *supellex*, furniture, which are feminine, and *atriplex*, golden-herb, which is neuter.

Cortex, bark; *imbrex*, a gutter-tile; *obex*, a bolt; *rumex*, sorrel; and *silex*, a flint, are either masculine or feminine: *grex*, a herd, and *pumex* pumice-stone, are very rarely found feminine.

3. IX. *Calix*, a cup; *fornix*, an arch; *phœnix*, a kind of bird; and *spadix* a palm-branch, are masculine.

Perdix, a partridge, and *varix*, a swollen vein, are masculine or feminine.

4. OX. *Box* and *esox*, names of marine animals, and *volvox*, a vine fretter, are masculine.

5. UX. *Tradux*, a vine-branch, is masculine.

6. YX. *Bombyx*, a silk-worm; *calyx*, the bud of a flower; *coccyx*, a cuckoo; and *oryx*, a wild goat, are masculine. *Onyx* and *sardŏnyx*, names of stones; also, *calx*, the heel; *lynx*, a lynx, and *sandyx*, a kind of color, are masculine or feminine.

NOTE. *Calx*, lime, and *bombyx*, when it signifies silk, are feminine.

7. *Quincunx*, *septunx*, *decunx*, *deunx*, parts of *as*, are masculine.

NEUTERS.

§ 66. Nouns ending in *a*, *e*, *i*, *c*, *l*, *n*, *t*, *ar*, *ur*, and *us*, are neuter; as,

diadēma, a crown; *rete*, a net; *hydromĕli*, mead; *lac*, milk; *flumen*, a river; *caput*, the head; *calcar*, a spur; *guttur*, the throat, and *pectus*, the breast.

Exceptions in L.

Mugil, a mullet, and *sol*, the sun, are masculine. *Sal*, salt, is masculine or neuter, in the singular; but, in the plural, it signifies witticisms, and is always masculine.

Exceptions in N.

Nouns in *n*, except those in *men*, are masculine; as, *canon*, a rule.

But four in *on* are feminine—*ædon*, a nightingale; *halcyon*, a king-fisher; *icon*, an image; *sindon*, fine linen: and four in *en* are neuter—*gluten*, glue; *inguen*, the groin; *pollen*, fine flour; and *unguen*, ointment.

Exceptions in AR *and* UR.

§ 67. *Furfur*, bran; *salar*, a trout; *turtur*, a turtle dove; and *vultur*, a vulture, are masculine. *Baccar* and *robur*, name of plants, are neuter. § 29.

Exceptions in US.

Lepus, a hare; *mus*, a mouse; and Greek nouns in *pus* (πους), are masculine; as, *tripus*, a tripod; but *lagōpus*, a white partridge, is feminine.

Nouns in *us*, having *ūtis*, or *ūdis*, in the genitive, are feminine; as, *juventus*, youth; *incus*, an anvil.

Pecus, *-ŭdis*, a brute animal; *tellus*, the earth; *fraus*, fraud; and *laus*, praise, are feminine.

Grus, a crane, is masculine or feminine.

RULES FOR THE OBLIQUE CASES OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

GENITIVE SINGULAR.

A.

§ 68. Nouns in *a* form their genitive in *ătis;* as, *di-a-dē'-ma*, *di-a-dem'-ă-tis*, a crown; *dog'-ma*, *dog'-mă-tis*, an opinion.

E.

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *re'-te, re'-tis*, a net; *se-dī'-le, se-dī'-lis*, a seat.

I.

Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin, and are generally indeclinable; but *hy-drom'-ĕ-li*, mead, has *hyd-ro-met'-ĭ-tis* in the genitive.

O.

§ 69. Nouns in *o* form their genitive in *ōnis*; as, *ser'-mo, ser-mō'-nis*, speech; *pa'-vo, pa-vō'-nis*, a peacock.

Remark. Patrials in *o* have *ōnis*; as, *Macĕdo, -ōnis*; except *Eburōnes, Lacōnes, Iōnes, Nasamōnes, Suessōnes.*

Exc. 1. Nouns in *do* and *go*, of more than two syllables, form their genitive in *ĭnis*; as, *a-run'-do, a-run'-dĭ-nis*, a reed; *i-mā'-go, i-mag'-ĭ-nis*, an image.

But *comĕdo*, a glutton; *unĕdo*, a kind of fruit; and *harpăgo*, a hook, have *ōnis.*

Cardo, a hinge; *ordo*, order; *grando*, hail; *virgo*, a virgin; and *margo*, the brink of a river, also have *ĭnis* in the genitive.

Exc. 2. The following, also, have *ĭnis*:—*Apollo; homo*, a man; *nemo*, nobody; and *turbo*, a whirlwind.

Caro, flesh, has, by syncope, *carnis*. *Anio*, the name of a river, has *Aniēnis; Nerio*, the wife of Mars, *Neriēnis*; from the old nominatives, *Anien, Nerien.*

Exc. 3. Some Greek nouns in *o* form their genitive in *ûs*, and their other cases singular, in *o*; as, *Dido*, gen. *Didûs*, dat. *Dido*, &c.; *Argo, -ûs*; but they are sometimes declined regularly; as, *Dido, Didōnis.*

C.

§ 70. The only nouns in *c* are *hă'-lec, ha-lē'-cis*, a pickle, and *lac, lac'-tis*, milk.

L. N. R.

Nouns in *l*, *n*, and *r*, form their genitive by adding *is*; as, *con'-sul, con'-sŭ-lis*, a consul; *ca'-non, can'-ŏ-nis*, a rule; *ho'-nor, ho-nō'-ris*, honor.

So, An'-ĭ-mal, an-i-mā'-lis, *an animal.*
Vi'-gil, vig'-ĭ-lis, *a watchman.*
Ti'-tan, Ti-tā'-nis, *Titan.*
Si'-ren, si-rē'-nis, *a siren.*
Del'-phin, Del-phī'-nis, *a dolphin.*
Cal'-car, cal-cā'-ris, *a spur.*
Car'-cer, car'-cē-ris, *a prison.*
Gut'-tur, gut'-tū-ris, *the throat*
Mar'-tyr, mar'-tȳ-ris, *a martyr.*

Exceptions in L.

Fel, gall, and *mel*, honey, double *l* before *is*; as, *fellis, mellis.*

Exceptions in N.

§ 71. 1. Neuters in *en* form their genitive in *ĭnis;* as, *flu'-men, flu'-mĭ-nis,* a river; *glu'-ten, glu'-tĭ-nis,* glue.

The following, also, form their genitive in *ĭnis*:—*oscen,* a bird which foreboded by singing; *pecten,* a comb; *tibĭcen,* a piper; and *tubĭcen,* a trumpeter.

2. Some Greek nouns in *on* form their genitive in *ontis;* as, *Laomĕdon, Laomedontis.*

Exceptions in R.

1. Nouns in *ter* drop *e* in the genitive; as, *pa'-ter, pa'-tris,* a father. So also *imber,* a shower, and names of months in *ber;* as, *Octōber, Octōbris.*

But *crater,* a cup; *soter,* a savior; and *later,* a tile, retain *e* in the genitive.

2. *Far,* corn, has *farris; hepar,* the liver, *hepătis; iter,* a journey, *itinĕris; Jupĭter, Jovis;* and *cor,* the heart, *cordis.*

3. These four in *ur* have *ŏris* in the genitive:—*ebur,* ivory; *femur,* the thigh; *jecur,* the liver; *robur,* strength.

Jecur has also *jecinōris,* and *jocinōris.*

AS.

§ 72. Nouns in *as* form their genitive in *ātis;* as, *æ'-tas, æ-tā'-tis,* age; *pi'-ĕ-tas, pi-e-tā'-tis,* piety.

Exc. 1. *As* has *assis; mas,* a male, *maris; vas,* a surety, *vadis;* and *vas,* a vessel, *vasis. Anas,* a duck, has *anătis.*

Exc. 2. Greek nouns in *as* form their genitive according to their gender; the masculines in *antis,* the feminines in *ădis* or *ădos,* and the neuters in *ătis;* as, *adămas, -antis,* adamant; *lampas, -ădis,* a lamp; *bucĕras, -ătis,* a species of herb. *Arcas,* an Arcadian, and *Nomas,* a Numidian, which are of the common gender, form their genitive in *ădis. Melas,* the name of a river, has *Melănis.*

ES.

§ 73. Nouns in *es* form their genitive by changing *es* into *is, ĭtis,* or *etis;* as, *ru'-pes, ru'-pis,* a rock; *mi'-les, mil'-ĭ-tis,* a soldier; *se'-ges, seg'-ĕ-tis,* growing corn.

A few Greek proper names in *es* (gen. *is*) sometimes form their genitive in *i,* after the second declension; as, *Achilles, -is,* or *-i.*

Those which make *ĭtis* are,

Ales, *a bird.*	Gurges, *a whirlpool.*	Poples, *the ham.*
Ames, *a fowler's staff.*	Hospes, *a guest.*	Satelles, *a lifeguard.*
Antistes, *a priest.*	Limes, *a limit.*	Stipes, *the stock of a tree.*
Cespes, *a turf.*	Merges, *a sheaf of corn.*	Termes, *an olive bough.*
Comes, *a companion.*	Miles, *a soldier.*	Trames, *a path.*
Eques, *a horseman.*	Palmes, *a vine-branch.*	Tudes, *a hammer.* [*dier.*
Fomes, *fuel.*	Pedes, *a footman.*	Veles, *a light armed sol-*

The following have *ĕtis*:—*abies,* a fir-tree; *aries,* a ram; *indĭges,* a man deified; *interpres,* an interpreter; *paries,* a wall; *seges,* growing corn; and *teges,* a mat.

The following have *ētis*:—*Cres*, a Cretan; *lebes*, a caldron; *magnes*, a loadstone; *quies* and *requies*, rest; and *tapes*, tapestry. But *requies* is sometimes of the fifth declension.

Some Greek proper names have either *ētis* or *is* in the genitive; as, *Chremes*, *-ētis*, or *-is*. *Dares*, *-ētis*, or *-is*.

Exc. 1. *Obses*, a hostage, and *præses*, a president, have *ĭdis*.

Exc. 2. *Heres*, an heir, and *merces*, a reward, have *ēdis*; *pes*, a foot, and its compounds, have *ĕdis*.

Exc. 3. *Ceres* has *Cerĕris*; *bes*, *bessis*; and *præs*, a surety, *prædis*. *Æs*, brass, has *æris*.

IS.

§ 74. Nouns in *is* have their genitive the same as the nominative; as, *au'-ris*, *au'-ris*, the ear; *a'-vis*, *a'-vis*, a bird.

Exc. 1. The following have the genitive in *ĕris*:—*cinis*, ashes; *cucŭmis*, a cucumber; *pulvis*, dust; *vomis*, a ploughshare.

Exc. 2. The following have *ĭdis*:—*capis*, a cup; *cassis*, a helmet; *cuspis*, the point of a spear; *lapis*, a stone; and *promulsis*, metheglin.

Exc. 3. Two have *ĭnis*:—*pollis*, fine flour, and *sanguis*, blood.

Exc. 4. Four have *ītis*:—*Dis*, Pluto; *lis*, strife; *Quiris*, a Roman; and *Samnis*, a Samnite.

Exc. 5. *Glis*, a dormouse, has *gliris*.

Greek nouns in *is* form their genitive,

1. in *is*, *ios*, or *eos*; as,
Basis, *the foot of a pillar*.
Hærĕsis, *heresy*.
Metropŏlis, *a chief city*.
Phrasis, *a phrase*.
Phthisis, *a consumption*.
Poësis, *poetry*.

2. in *ĭdis*, or *ĭdos*; as,
Ægis, *a shield*.
Æneis, *the Æneid*.
Aspis, *an asp*.
Ephemĕris, *a day-book*.
Iris, *the rainbow*.
Nerēis, *a Nereid*.
Pyrămis, *a pyramid*.
Tigris, *a tiger*.
Tyrannis, *tyranny*.

3. in *ĭnis*; as,
Delphis.
Eleusis.
Salămis.

4. in *entis*; as,
Simōis.

Tigris has sometimes the genitive like the nominative.
Charis, one of the graces, has *ĭtis*.

OS.

§ 75. Nouns in *os* form their genitive in *ōris* or *ōtis*; as, *flos*, *flo'-ris*, a flower; *ne'-pos*, *ne-pō'-tis*, a grandchild.

The following have *ōris*:—

Flos, *a flower*.
Glos, *a husband's sister*.
Honos, *honor*.
Labos, *labor*.
Lepos, *wit*.
Mos, *a custom*.
Os, *the mouth*.
Ros, *dew*.

Arbos, a tree, has *ŏris*.

The following have *ōtis*:—

Cos, *a whetstone*.
Dos, *a dowry*.
Monocĕros, *a unicorn*.
Rhinocĕros, *a rhinoceros*.
Nepos, *a grandchild*.
Sacerdos, *a priest*.

Exc. 1. *Custos*, a keeper, has *custŏdis*; *bos*, an ox, *bŏvis*; and *os*, a bone, *ossis*.

Exc. 2. Some Greek substantives in *os* have *ŏis* in the genitive; as, *heros*, a hero; *Minos*; *Tros*, a Trojan.

US.

§ 76. Nouns in *us* form their genitive in *ĕris* or *ŏris*; as, *ge'-nus*, *gen'-ĕ-ris*, a kind; *tem'-pus*, *tem'-pŏ-ris*, time.

Those which make *ŏris* are,

Corpus, *a body.*	Lepus, *a hare.*	Pectus, *the breast.*
Decus, *honor.*	Littus, *a shore.*	Pignus, *a pledge.*
Dedĕcus, *disgrace.*	Nemus, *a grove.*	Stercus, *dung.*
Facĭnus, *an exploit.*	Pecus, *cattle.*	Tempus, *time.*
Fœnus, *interest.*	Penus, *provisions.*	Tergus, *a hide.*
Frigus, *cold.*		

Exc. 1. These three have *ūdis*:—*incus*, an anvil; *palus*, a morass; and *subscus*, a dove-tail.

Pecus, a brute animal, has *pecŭdis*.

Exc. 2. These five have *ūtis*:—*juventus*, youth; *salus*, safety; *senectus*, old age; *servĭtus*, slavery; *virtus*, virtue.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *us* have *ūris*; as, *crus*, the leg; *jus*, right; *mus*, a mouse; *pus*, matter; *rus*, the country; *thus*, frankincense; except *grus*, a crane, and *sus*, a swine, which have *gruis*, and *suis*.

Tellus, the earth, has *tellūris*; and *Ligus* or *ur*, a Ligurian, has *Ligūris*.

Exc. 4. *Fraus*, fraud, and *laus*, praise, have *fraudis*, *laudis*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *pus* (πους) have *ŏdis*; as, *tripus*, *tripŏdis*, a tripod; *Œdĭpus*, *-ŏdis*, which is sometimes of the second declension.

Exc. 6. Some Greek names of cities in *us* have *untis*; as, *Trapĕzus*, *Trapezuntis*; *Opus*, *-untis*; *Pessĭnus*, *-untis*.

Exc. 7. Nouns ending in *eus* are all proper names, and have their genitive in *eos*; as, *Orpheus*, *-eos*. But these nouns are found also in the second declension; as, *Orpheus*, *-ei* or *-i*.

YS.

§ 77. Nouns in *ys* are Greek, and, in the genitive, some have *yis* or *yos*, some *ŭdis* or *ŭdos*, and some *ȳnis* or *ȳnos*; as, *che'-lys*, *che'-ly-is* or *-os*, a harp; *Ca'-pys*, *Ca'-py-is* or *-os*, *chla'-mys*, *chlam'-ŭ-dis* or *-dos*, a cloak; *Tra'-chys*, *Tra-chȳ'-nis* or *-nos*.

S *preceded by a consonant.*

Nouns in *s*, with a consonant before it, form their genitive by changing *s* into *is* or *tis*; as, *trabs*, *tra'-bis*, a beam; *hi'-ems*, *hi'-ĕ-mis*, winter; *pars*, *par'-tis*, a part; *frons*, *fron'-tis*, the forehead.

Those in *bs*, *ms*, and *ps*, change *s* into *is*; except *gryps*, a griffin, which has *gryphis*.

Remark. Those in *eps* also change *e* into *i*; as, *princeps*, *princĭpis*, a prince. But *seps* has *sepis*, and *auceps*, *aucŭpis*.

Those in *ls*, *ns*, and *rs*, change *s* into *tis*.

Exc. 1. The following in *ns* change *s* into *dis*:—*frons*, a leaf; *glans* an acorn; *juglans*, a walnut; *lens*, a nit; and *librĭpens*, a weigher.

Exc. 2. *Tiryns*, a Greek proper name, has *Tirynthis* in the genitive.

T.

§ 78. Nouns in *t* form their genitive in *ĭtis*. They are, *caput*, the head, gen. *cap'-ĭ-tis*; and its compounds, *occĭput* and *sincĭput*.

X.

Nouns in *x* form their genitive by changing *x* into *cis* or *gis*; as, *vox*, *vo'-cis*, the voice; *con'-jux*, *con'-jŭ-gis*, a spouse.

So, *for'-nax*, *for-nā'-cis*, a furnace; *ca'-lix*, *cal'-ĭ-cis*, a cup; *cer'-vix*, *cer-vī'-cis*, the neck.

Those which make *gis* are, *conjux*, a spouse; *grex*, a flock; *lex*, a law; *remex*, *-ĭgis*, a rower; *rex*, a king.

Also the following:—

Allŏbrox, -ŏgis, *an Allobrogian.*	Dumnŏrix, -ĭgis.	Phalanx, -gis, *a phalanx.*
Ambiōrix, -ĭgis.	Eporedŏrix, -ĭgis.	Phryx, -gis, *a Phrygian.*
Aquĭlex, -ĕgis, *a spring hunter.*	Exlex, -ĕgis, *an outlaw.*	Sphinx, -gis, *a sphinx.*
Bitŭrix, -ĭgis, *a Bituri-gian.*	Frux, -gis, *fruit.*	Strix, -gis, *a screech-owl.*
Coccyx, -ўgis, *a cuckoo.*	Iapyx, -ўgis, *the north-west wind.*	Styx, -gis, *the river Styx*
	Orgetŏrix, -ĭgis.	Syrinx, -gis, *Syrinx.*
	Oryx, -ўgis, *a wild goat.*	Vercingetŏrix, -ĭgis.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *ex*, of more than one syllable, form their genitive in *ĭcis*; as, *pollex*, *-ĭcis*, the thumb.

Except *fænĭsex*, a mower; *narthex*, a shrub; *resex*, a vine-branch; *vervex*, a wether; and *aquĭlex*, *exlex*, and *remex*.

Exc. 2. *Supellex*, furniture, has *supellectĭlis*; and *senex*, an old man, has *senis*. *Nix*, snow, has *nivis*; and *nox*, night, *noctis*.

Exc. 3. Some Greek proper names in *ax* form their genitive in *actis*, as, *Hyiax*, *actis*. So *Astyănax*, *Bibrax*, *Demŏnax*.

Exc. 4. *Onyx* and *sardŏnyx* have *ўchis* in the genitive; as, *onyx*, *onўchis*.

DATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 79. The dative singular ends in *i*; as, *sermo*, dat. *sermōni*. Anciently it also ended in *e*; as, *morte datus*. Varr. apud Gell.

ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

The accusative singular, with the exception of neuters, ends in *em*. Yet some Latin words in *is*, which do not increase in the genitive, have *im*, and some Greek words have *im*, *in*, or *a*.

1. Many proper names in *is*, denoting places, rivers, or gods, have the accusative singular in *im*; as, *Hispălis*, *Tĭbĕris*, *Anūbis*; so also *Albis*, *Athŏsis*, *Bætis*, *Arăris*, *Bilbĭlis*, *Apis*, *Osĭris*, *Syrtis*, &c. These sometimes, also, make the accusative in *in*; as, *Albin*.

2. The following also have the accusative in *im* :—

Amussis, *a mason's rule.*	Gummis, *gum.*	Sitis, *thirst.*
Buris, *a plough-tail.*	Mephītis, *foul air.*	Tussis, *a cough.*
Cannăbis, *hemp.*	Ravis, *hoarseness.*	Vis, *strength.*
Cucūmis, *a cucumber.*	Sinăpis, *mustard.*	

3. These have *im*, and sometimes *em*—

Aquālis, *a water-pot.*	Puppis, *the stern.*	Secūris, *an axe.*
Febris, *a fever.*	Restis, *a rope.*	Turris, *a tower.*

But these have *em*, and rarely *im*—

Avis, *a bird,*	Navis, *a ship.*	Ratis, *a raft.*
Clavis, *a key.*	Ovis, *a sheep.*	Sementis, *a sowing.*
Lens, *a lentil.*	Pelvis, *a basin.*	Sentis, *a brier.*
Messis, *a harvest.*	Præsēpis, *a stall.*	Strigĭlis, *a curry-comb.*

Crates, a hurdle, has also sometimes *cratim*, as if from *cratis*.
The ancients formed the accusative of some other nouns in *im*.

Accusative of Greek Nouns.

§ 80. The accusative singular of Greek nouns sometimes retains the Greek terminations *in* and *a*, but often ends, as in Latin, in *em* or *im*.

I. Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os*, *impure*, that is, with a consonant going before, have their accusative in *em* or *a*; as, *lampas* (*lampădis* or *dos*), *lampădem*, or *lampăda*; *chlamys*, *chlamўdem*, or *-ўda*.

In like manner these three, which have *is pure* in the genitive—*Tros*, *Trois*, *Troem*, and *Troa*, a Trojan; *heros*, a hero; and *Minos*, a king of Crete.

Aër, the air; *æther*, the sky; *delphin*, a dolphin; and *pæan*, a hymn, have usually *a*; as, *aëra*, *æthĕra*, *delphĭna*, *pæăna*. *Pan*, a god, has only *a*.

Exc. 1. Masculines in *is*, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, have their accusative in *im* or *in*; sometimes in *idem*; as, *Paris*, *Parĭdis* or *Parĭdos*; *Parim*, *Parin* or *Parĭdem*.

Exc. 2. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, though they usually follow the rule, have sometimes *im* or *in*; as, *Elis*, *Elĭdis* or *Elĭdos*, *Elĭdem* or *Elĭda*, seldom *Elim* or *Elin*.

So *Tigris*, signifying a river or a beast, has *tigrĭdem* or *tigrim*; signifying a beast, it has *tigrin* also.

II. Greek nouns in *is* and *ys*, having *is* or *os pure* in the genitive, form their accusative by changing the *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *metamorphōsis*, *-eos* or *-ios*; *metamorphōsim*, or *-ōsin*, a change; *Tethys*, *-yis* or *-yos*, *Tethym* or *-yn*.

III. Nouns ending in the diphthong *eus* have the accusative in *ea*; as, *Theseus*, *Thesea*; *Tydeus*, *Tydea*.

Demosthĕnes and *Ganymēdes* have sometimes in the accusative, besides *em*, the termination *ea*.

IV. Some Greek proper names in *es*, whose genitive is in *is*, have in Latin, along with the accusative in *em*, the termination *en*, as if of the

first declension; as, *Achilles, Achillen; Xerxes, Xerxen; Sophŏcles, Sophŏclen.* Some also, which have either *ētis* or *is* in the genitive, have, besides *ētem, ēta,* or *em,* the termination *en;* as, *Chremes, Thales.*

VOCATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 81. The vocative is like the nominative.

Many Greek nouns, however, particularly proper names, drop *s* of the nominative to form the vocative; as, *Daphnis, Daphni; Tethys, Tethy; Melampus, Melampu; Orpheus, Orpheu.* Proper names in *es* (gen. *is*) sometimes have their vocative in *e;* as, *Socrātes, Socrāte.*

ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 82. The ablative singular ends in *e.*

Exc. 1. Neuters in *e, al,* and *ar,* have the ablative in *i;* as, *sedīle, sedīli; anĭmal, animāli; calcar, calcāri.*

But names of towns in *e,* and the following neuters in *ar,* have *e* in the ablative; viz. *bacchar,* an herb; *far,* corn; *hepar,* the liver; *jubar,* a sunbeam; *nectar,* nectar; *par,* a pair; *sal,* salt. *Mare,* the sea, has either *e* or *i.*

Exc. 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, and names of months in *er* or *is,* have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis, vim, vi; December, Decembri; Aprīlis, Aprīli.*

But *Bœtis, cannăbis,* and *tigris,* have *e* or *i.*

Exc. 3. Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, have their ablative in *e* or *i;* as, *turris, turre* or *turri.*

But *restis,* and Greek nouns which have *idis* in the genitive, have *e* only; as, *Paris, -ĭdis, -ĭde.*

Exc. 4. Adjectives in *is,* used as nouns, have commonly *i* in the ablative, but sometimes *e;* as, *familiāris,* a friend; *natālis,* a birth-day.

When such adjectives become proper names, they always have *e;* as, *Juvenālis, Juvenāle.* Also, *affinis,* a relation, has generally *e;* as have always *juvĕnis,* a youth; *rudis,* a rod; and *volucris,* a bird.

Exc. 5. The following, though they have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative, but oftener *e*:—

Amnis,	Finis,	Occĭput,	Pugil,	Tridens,
Anguis,	Fustis,	Orbis,	Rus,	Unguis,
Civis,	Ignis,	Pars,	Sors,	Vectis,
Classis,	Imber,	Postis,	Supellex,	Vesper.
Collis,	Mugĭlis,			

So also names of towns, denoting the place where any thing is said to be, or to be done, have sometimes the ablative in *i;* as, *Carthagĭni,* at Carthage; and, in the most ancient writers, many other nouns occur with this termination in the ablative. *Canālis* has *i* only.

Exc. 6. Nouns in *ys,* which have *ym* or *yn* in the accusative, have their ablative in *ye* or *y;* as, *Atys, Atye,* or *Aty.*

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

§ 83. The nominative plural of masculines and feminines ends in *es*; as, *sermōnes, rupes*;—but neuters have *a*, and those whose ablative singular ends in *i* have *ia*; as, *caput, capĭta*; *sedīle, sedilia.*

Some Greek neuters have *e* in the nominative plural; as, *melos*; nom. plural, *mele.*

GENITIVE PLURAL.

The genitive plural commonly ends in *um*; sometimes in *ium.*

1. Nouns which, in the ablative singular, have *i* only, or *e* and *i*, make the genitive plural in *ium*; as, *sedile, sedĭli, sedilium*; *turris, turre* or *turri, turrium.*

2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have *ium*; as, *nubes, nubium*; *hostis, hostium*; *vis, virium.*

Exc. *Strues, vates, canis, juvĕnis, mugĭlis, panis, strigĭlis*, have *um.* Also *sedes* and *mensis* sometimes, and *apis* and *volucris* generally, have *um.*

3. Monosyllables ending in two consonants have *ium* in the genitive plural; as, *urbs, urbium*; *gens, gentium*; *arx, arcium.*

Exc. *Lynx* and *ops* (obsolete) have *um.*

The following, also, have *ium*:—*mas, glis, lis, os* (*ossis*), *faux, nix, nox, strix, dos*, generally *fraus* and *mus*, and sometimes *lar.*

4. Nouns of two or more syllables, in *ns* or *rs*, and names of nations in *as*, have commonly *ium*; as, *cliens, clientium*; *Arpīnas, Arpinatium.*

Other nouns in *as* have sometimes *ium*; as, *a'as, ætātium. Penātes* and *optimātes* have usually *ium.*

5. The following have *ium*:—*caro, linter, uter, venter, Samnis, Quiris*, and usually *Insŭber. Fornax, lar, palus*, and *radix*, have sometimes *ium.*

6. Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *Thrax, Thracum*;—but a few, used as titles of books, have sometimes *ōn*; as, *Epigramma, epigrammătŏn*; *Metamorphŏsis, -eōn.*

Remark 1. *Bos* has *boum* in the genitive plural.

Remark 2. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; as, *manes, manium*; *cœlites, cœlitum*; as if from *manis* and *cœles.* So also names of feasts in *alia*; as, *Saturnalia, Saturnalium*; but these have sometimes *ōrum* after the second declension. *Cœlites* has sometimes *cœlitum.*

DATIVE AND ABLATIVE PLURAL.

§ 84. The dative and ablative plural end in *ĭbus.*

Exc. 1. *Bos* has *bobus* and *bubus*, by contraction for *bovibus*. *sus* has *subus* for *suĭbus.*

Exc. 2. Greek nouns in *ma* have the dative and ablative plural more frequently in *is* than in *ĭbus*; as, *poēma, poēmātis*, or *poēmatĭbus*.

The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns, that increase in the genitive, in *si*, and, before a vowel, in *sin*; as, *herōis, herōĭdis, herōĭsi*, or *herōĭsin*.

ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

§ 85. The accusative plural ends, like the nominative, in *es, a*, or *ia*.

Exc. 1. Masculine and feminine nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, have sometimes in the accusative plural *eis*, or *is*, instead of *es*; as, *partes*, gen. *partium*, acc. *partes, parteis* or *partis*.

Exc. 2. When the accusative singular of nouns not neuter ends in *a*, the accusative plural ends in *as*; as, *lampas, lampăda, lampădas*.

Jupĭter, and *vis*, strength, are thus declined:—

Singular.	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N. Ju'-pĭ-ter,	*N.* vis,	vi'-res,
G. Jo'-vis,	*G.* vis,	vir'-i-um,
D. Jo'-vi,	*D.* —	vir'-ĭ-bus,
Ac. Jo'-vem,	*Ac.* vim,	vi'-res,
V. Ju'-pĭ-ter,	*V.* vis,	vi'-res,
Ab. Jo'-ve.	*Ab.* vi.	vir'-ĭ-bus.

§ 86. The following table exhibits the principal forms of Greek nouns of the third declension:—

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Acc.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*
S.	Lampas,	-ădis, -ădos,	-ădi,	-ădem, -ăda,	-as,	-ăde.
Pl.	-ădes,	-ădum,	-adĭbus,	-ădes, -ădas,	-ădes,	-adĭbus.
S.	Heros,	-ōis,	-ōi,	-ōem, -ōa,	-os,	-ōe.
Pl.	-ōes,	-ōum,	-oĭbus,	-ōes, -ōas,	-ōes,	-oĭbus.
	Chelys,	-ўis, -ўos,	-ўi,	-ym, -yn,	-y,	-ўe *or* y
	Poēsis,	-is, -ĭos, -ĕos,	-i,	-im, -in,	-i,	-i.
	Achilles,	-is, -ĕos,	-i,	-em, -ĕa,	-es,	-e.
	Orpheus,	-ĕos,	-ĕi,	-ĕa,	-eu,	—
	Aēr,	-ĕris,	-ĕri,	-ĕra,	-er,	-ĕre.
	Dido,	-ûs,	-o,	-o,	-o,	-o.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 87. Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*. Those in *us* are masculine; those in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

Nouns of this declension are thus declined :—

Fructus, *fruit.*		Cornu, *a horn.*	
Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N. fruc'-tus,	fruc'-tus,	*N.* cor'-nu,	cor'-nu-a,
G. fruc'-tûs,	fruc'-tu-um,*	*G.* cor'-nu,	cor'-nu-um,
D. fruc'-tu-i,*	fruc'-tĭ-bus,	*D.* cor'-nu,	cor'-nĭ-bus,
Ac. fruc'-tum,	fruc'-tus,	*Ac.* cor'-nu,	cor'-nu-a,
V. fruc'-tus,	fruc'-tus,	*V.* cor'-nu,	cor'-nu-a,
Ab. fruc'-tu.	fruc'-tĭ-bus.	*Ab.* cor'-nu.	cor'-nĭ-bus.

In like manner decline

Can'-tus, *a song.*	Fluc'-tus, *a wave.*	Se-nā'-tus, *the senate.*
Cur'-rus, *a chariot.*	Luc'-tus, *grief.*	Ge'-lu, *ice.*
Ex-er'-cĭ-tus, *an army.*	Mo'-tus, *motion.*	Ve'-ru, *a spit.*

Exceptions in Gender.

§ 88. 1. The following are feminine :—

Acus, *a needle.*	Ficus, *a fig.*	Portĭcus, *a gallery.*
Domus, *a house.*	Manus, *a hand.*	Tribus, *a tribe.*

The plurals *quinquātrus*, a feast of Minerva, and *idus*, the ides, are also feminine.

Penus, a store of provisions, when of the fourth declension, is masculine or feminine.

Specus, a den, is very rarely feminine or neuter.

2. Some personal appellatives, and names of trees, are feminine by signification. See § 29, 1 and 2.

Exceptions in Declension.

§ 89. 1. *Domus*, a house, is partly of the fourth declension, and partly of the second. It is thus declined :—

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. Do'-mus,	do'-mus,
G. do'-mûs, *or* do'-mi,	dom'-u-um, *or* do-mō'-rum,
D. dom'-u-i, *or* do'-mo,	dom'-I-bus,
Ac. do'-mum,	do'-mus, *or* do'-mos,
V. do'-mus,	do'-mus,
Ab. do'-mo.	dom'-I-bus.

* Pronounced *fruct'-yu-i*, or *fruc'-tshu-i*, &c. § 20. Exc. (c.)

Domûs, in the genitive, signifies, of a house; *domi* commonly signifies, at home. The ablative *domu* is found in Plautus, in some copies of Livy, and in ancient inscriptions.

Cornus, a cornel-tree; *ficus*, a fig-tree; *laurus*, a laurel; and *myrtus*, a myrtle, are sometimes of the second declension. *Penus* is sometimes of the third.

Some nouns in *u* have also forms in *us* and *um*; as, *cornu, cornus*, or *cornum*.

REMARK. Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were formed by contraction, thus:—

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. Fructus,	fructues, -us,
G. fructuis, -ûs,	fructuum, -ûm,
D. fructui, -u,	fructuĭbus, -ûbus, *or* -ĭbus,
Ac. fructuem, -um,	fructues, -us,
V. fructus,	fructues, -us,
Ab. fructue, -u.	fructuĭbus, -ûbus, *or* -ĭbus.

2. The genitive singular in *is* is sometimes found in ancient authors. A genitive in *i*, after the second declension, also occurs; as, *senātus, senāti*.

3. The contracted form of the dative in *u* is not often used; yet it sometimes occurs, especially in Cæsar, and in the poets.

4. The contracted form of the genitive plural in *ûm* rarely occurs.

5. The following nouns have *ŭbus* in the dative and ablative plural:—

Acus, *a needle.*	Lacus, *a lake.*	Specus, *a den.*
Arcus, *a bow.*	Partus, *a birth.*	Tribus, *a tribe.*
Artus, *a joint.*	Pecu, *a flock.*	

Genu, a knee; *portus*, a harbor; *tonitrus*, thunder; and *veru*, a spit, have *ĭbus* or *ŭbus*.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 90. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender.

They are thus declined:—

Res, *a thing.*	
Singular.	*Plural.*
N. res,	res,
G. re'-i,	re'-rum,
D. re'-i,	re'-bus,
Ac. rem,	res,
V. res,	res,
Ab. re.	re'-bus.

Dies, *a day.*	
Singular.	*Plural.*
N. di'-es,	di'-es,
G. di-ē'-i,	di-ē'-rum,
D. di-ē'-i,	di-ē'-bus,
Ac. di'-em,	di'-es,
V. di'-es,	di'-es,
Ab. di'-e.	di-ē'-bus.

Exceptions in Gender.

Dies, a day, is masculine or feminine in the singular, and always masculine in the plural; *meridies*, mid-day, is masculine only.

Exceptions in Declension.

The genitive and dative singular sometimes end in *e*; as, *die* for *diēi*. The genitive is sometimes also found in *ii* and *es*; as, *pernicies*, gen. *pernicii* for *perniciēi*; *rabies*, gen. *rabies*, Lucr. *Plebes* has *plebei* or *plebi*.

Remark 1. There are only fifty-seven nouns of this declension, and of these only two, *res* and *dies*, are complete in the plural. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many the plural altogether.

2. All nouns of this declension end in *ies*, except four—*fides*, faith; *res*, a thing; *spes*, hope; and *plebes*, the common people;—and all nouns in *ies* are of this declension, except *abies*, *aries*, *paries*, and *quies*, which are of the third declension, and *requies*, which is of the third and fifth.

Declension of Compound Nouns.

§ 91. When a compound noun consists of two nominatives, both parts are declined; but when one part is a nominative, and the other an oblique case, the nominative only is declined. Of the former kind are *respŭblĭca*, a commonwealth, and *jusjurandum*, an oath; of the latter, *mater-familias*, a mistress of a family.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	res-pub′-lĭ-ca,	res-pub′-lĭ-cæ,
G.	re-i-pub′-lĭ-cæ,	re-rum-pub-li-cā′-rum,
D.	re-i-pub′-lĭ-cæ,	re-bus-pub′-lĭ-cis,
Ac.	rem-pub′-lĭ-cam,	res-pub′-lĭ-cas,
V.	res-pub′-lĭ-ca,	res-pub′-lĭ-cæ,
Ab.	re-pub′-lĭ-cā.	re-bus-pub′-lĭ-cis.

	Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*
N.	jus-ju-ran′-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran′-da,	*N.* ma-ter-fa-mil′-i-as,
G.	ju-ris-ju-ran -di,	———	*G.* ma-tris-fa-mil′-i-as,
D.	ju-ri-ju-ran′-do,	———	*D.* ma-tri-fa-mil′-i-as,
Ac.	jus-ju-ran′-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran′-da,	*Ac.* ma-trem-fa-mil′-i-as,
V.	jus-ju-ran′-dum,	ju-ra-j ı-ran′-da.	*V.* ma-ter-fa-mil′-i-as,
Ab.	ju-re-ju-ran′-do.	———	*Ab.* ma-tre-fa-mil′-i-as, &c.

Note. The preceding compounds are divided and pronounced like the simple words of which they are compounded.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

§ 92. Irregular nouns are divided into three classes—*Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable either in gender or declension, or in both. Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous;* those which vary in declension are called *heteroclites.*

Heterogeneous Nouns.

1. Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; such are,

Avernus,	Ismărus,	Mœnălus,	Tænărus,
Dindўmus,	Massĭcus,	Pangæus,	Tartărus,
			Taўgĕtus.

Plural, *Averna, &c.*

2. Masculine in the singular, and masculine or neuter in the plural; as, *jocus*, a jest; plur. *joci*, or *joca;—locus*, a place; plur. *loci*, passages in books, topics; *loca*, places;—*sestertius*, a sesterce; plur. *sestertii*, or *sestertia.*

3. Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; as, *carbăsus*, a sail; plur. *carbăsa;—Hierosolўma*, *-æ*, Jerusalem; plur. *Hierosolўma, -ōrum;—margarīta, -æ*, a pearl; plur. *margarīta, -ōrum;—ostrea, -æ*, an oyster; plur. *ostrea, -ōrum;—Pergămus;* plur. *Pergăma.*

4. Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural; as, *cœlum*, heaven; plur. *cœli;—Elysium;* plur. *Elysii;—Argos;* plur. *Argi.*

5. Neuter in the singular, and masculine or neuter in the plural; as, *frænum*, a bridle; plur. *fræni* or *fræna;—rastrum*, a rake; plur. *rastri*, or *rastra;—pugillar*, a writing tablet; plur. *pugillāres*, or *pugillaria.*

6. Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural; as, *epŭlum*, a feast; plur. *epŭlæ;—balneum*, a bath; plur. *balneæ*, rarely *balnea;—nundĭnum*, a market-day; plur. *nundĭnæ*, a fair.

7. Neuter in the singular, and feminine or neuter in the plural; as, *labium*, a lip; plur. *labiæ*, and *labia.*

Heteroclites.

§ 93. 1. Second or third declension in the singular, and third in the plural; as, *jugĕrum*, an acre; gen. *jugĕri*, or *jugĕris;* abl. *jugĕre;* plur., nom., and acc. *jugĕra;* gen. *jugĕrum;* abl. *jugĕris* and *jugerĭbus*, from the obsolete *jugus* or *juger.*

2. Third declension in the singular, and second in the plural;

as, vās, a vessel; plur. *vasa, ōrum*. *Ancīle*, a shield, has sometimes *anciliōrum*, in the genitive plural.

NOTE. Variable nouns seem anciently to have been redundant, and to have retained a part of each of their original forms. Thus, *vasa, -ōrum*, properly comes from *vasum, -i*, but the latter, together with the plural of *vas, vasis*, became obsolete.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

§ 94. Nouns are defective either in case or number.

1. Nouns defective in case may want either one or more cases. Some are altogether indeclinable, and are called *aptotes*.

Such are nouns in *u* in the singular; as, *cornu*, a horn: most nouns in *i*: foreign words: *semis*, a half: *git*, a seed: *cepe*, an onion: the singular of *mille*, a thousand: words put for nouns; as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination: and names of the letters of the alphabet.

A noun which is found in one case only, is called a *Monoptote*; if found in two cases, a *Diptote*; if in three, a *Triptote*; if in four, a *Tetraptote*; and if in five, a *Pentaptote*.

The following list contains most nouns defective in case:—

Abactus, *acc. pl.*; *a driving away.*
Accītu, *abl.*; *a calling for.*
Admissu, *abl.*; *admission.*
Admonītu, *abl.*; *admonition.*
Æs, not used in *gen. pl.*
Affātu, *abl.*; *an addressing*;—*pl.* affātus, -ībus.
Algus, *nom.*; algum, *acc.*; algu, *or* -o, *abl.*; *cold.*
Ambāge, *abl.*; *a winding story*;—*pl.* ambāges, -ībus.
Amissum, *acc.*; *a loss.*
Aplustre, *nom.* and *acc.*; *the flag of a ship*;—*pl.* aplustria, *or* aplustra.
Arbitrātus, *nom.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *judgment.*
Arcessītu, *abl.*; *a sending for.*
Astu, *nom., acc.*; *a city.*
Astus, *nom.*; astu, *abl.*; *craft*;—astus, *acc. pl.*
Cacoēthes, *nom., acc.*; *an evil custom*;—cacoēthe, *nom. pl.*; -e, *and* -es, *acc. pl.*
Cetos, *acc.*; *a whale*;—cete, *nom.* and *acc. pl.*
Chaos, *nom., acc.*; chao, *abl.*; *chaos*; —but, signifying *a deity*, Chaon, *acc.* [*looking around.*
Circumspectus, *nom.*; -um; -u; *a*
Coactu, *abl.*; *constraint.*
Cœlīte, *abl.*; *pl.* entire; *inhabitants of heaven.*
Commutātum, *acc.*; *an alteration.*
Compĕdis, *gen.*; compĕde, *abl.*; *a fetter*;—*pl.* compĕdes, -ium, -ībus.
Concessu, *abl.*; *permission.*
Condiscipulātu, *abl.*; *companionship at school.*
Cratim, *or* -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; *a hurdle*;—*pl.* crates, -ium, -ībus.
Daps, *nom.*, scarcely used; dapis, *gen.* &c.; *a feast.*
Datu, *abl.*; *a giving.*
Derisui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *ridicule.*
Despicatui, *dat.*; *contempt.*
Dica, *nom.*; dicam, *acc.*; *a legal process*;—dicas, *acc. pl.*
Dicis, *gen.*; *as*, dicis gratia, *for form's sake.*
Ditiōnis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; *power.*
Diu, *abl.*; *in the day time.*
Divisui, *dat.*; *a dividing.*
Ebur, *ivory*;—not used in the *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*
Efflagitātu, *abl.*; *importunity.*
Ejectus, *nom.*; *a throwing out.*
Epos, *acc.*; *an epic poem.*
Ergo, *abl.*; *for the sake.*

Evectus, *nom.; a conveyance.*
Fæx, *dregs*, wants *gen. pl.*
Far, *corn*, not used in the *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*
Fas, *nom., acc.; right.*
Fauce, *abl.; the throat;*—*pl.* fauces, -ĭbus.
Fax, *a torch*, wants *gen. pl.*
Femĭnis, *gen.;* -i, *dat.;* -e, *abl.; the thigh;*—*pl.* femĭna, -ĭbus.
Flictu, *abl.; a striking.*
Foris, *nom.* and *gen.;* -em, *acc.;* -e, *abl.; a door;*—*pl.* fores, -ĭbus.
Fors, *nom.;* -tis, *gen.;* -tem, *acc.;* -te, *abl.; chance.*
Frustratui, *abl.; a deceiving.*
Frux, *fruit*, *nom.*, scarcely used;—frugis, *gen.*, &c.
Gausăpe, *nom., acc., abl.; a rough garment;*—gausăpa, *acc. pl.*
Glos, *nom., voc.; a husband's sister.*
Grates, *acc. pl.;*—gratĭbus, *abl.; thanks.*
Hiems, *winter*, not used in *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*
Hippomănes, *nom.*
Hir, *nom.* and *acc.; the palm of the hand.*
Hortātu, *abl.; an exhorting;*—*pl.* hortatĭbus.
Impĕtis, *gen.;* -e, *abl.; a shock;*—*pl.* impetĭbus.
Inconsultu, *abl.; without advice.*
Incĭtas, *or* -a, *acc. pl.; as*, ad incĭtas redactus, *reduced to a strait.*
Indultu, *abl.; indulgence.*
Inferiæ, *nom. pl.;* -as, *acc.; sacrifices to the dead.*
Inficias, *acc. pl.; a denial; as*, ire inficias, *to deny.*
Ingratiis, *abl. pl.; against one's will.*
Injussu, *abl.; without leave.*
Inquies, *nom.; disquiet.*
Instar, *nom., acc.; a likeness.*
Interdiu, *abl.; in the day time.*
Invitātu, *abl.; an invitation.*
Jovis, *nom.*, rarely used;—*pl.* Joves.
Irrisui, *dat.;* -um, *acc.;* -u, *abl.; derision.*
Jugĕris, *gen.;* -e, *abl.; an acre;*—*pl.* jugĕra, -um, -ĭbus.
Jussu, *abl.; command.*
Labes, *a spot*, wants *gen. pl.*
Lucu, *abl.; light.*
Ludificatui, *dat.; a mockery.*
Lux, *light*, wants the *gen. pl.*
Mandātu, *abl.; a command.*
Mane, *nom., acc.;* mane, *or* -i, *abl.; morning.*
Mel, *honey*, not used in *gen., dat.*, and *abl. pl.*
Melos, *acc.; melody;*—mele, *nom., acc. pl.*
Metus, *fear*, not used in *gen., dat.*, and *abl. pl.*
Missu, *abl.; despatch;*—*pl.* missus, -ĭbus.
Monĭtu, *abl.; admonition;*—*pl.* monĭtus.
Natu, *abl.; by birth.*
Nauci, *gen.; as*, res nauci, *a thing of no value.*
Nefas, *nom., acc.; wickedness.*
Nemo, *nobody*, wants the *voc.* and the *pl.*
Nepenthes, *nom.; an herb.*
Nex, *death*, wants the *voc.;*—neces, *nom., acc. pl.*
Nihil, *or* nihĭlum, *nom.* and *acc.;* -i, *gen.;* -o, *abl.; nothing.*
Noctu, *abl.; by night.*
Nuptui, *dat.;* -um, *acc.;* -u, *abl.; marriage.*
Obex, *nom.;* -ĭcem, *acc.;* -ĭce, *or* -jĭce, *abl.; a bolt;*—*pl.* obĭces, -jicĭbus.
Objectum, *acc.;* -u, *abl.; an interposition;*—*pl.* objectus.
Obtentui, *dat.;* -u, *abl.; a pretext.*
Opis, *gen.;* opem, *acc.;* ope, *abl.; help;*—*pl.* entire.
Oppositu, *abl.; an opposing;*—*pl.* oppositus.
Opus, *nom., acc.; need.*
Os, *the mouth*, wants the *gen. pl.*
Panăces, *nom.; an herb.*
Pax, *peace*, wants *gen. pl.*
Peccātu, *abl.; sinning.*
Pecŭdis, *gen.;* -i, *dat.;* -em, *acc.;* -e, *abl.;*—*pl.* entire.
Pelăge, *nom., acc. pl.* of pelăgus; *the sea.*
Permissu, *abl.; permission.*
Piscātus, *nom.;* -i, *gen.;* -um, *acc.;* -u, *abl.; a fishing.*
Pix, *pitch*, wants *gen. pl.*
Pondo, *abl.; in weight.*
Preci, *dat.;* -em, *acc.;* -e, *abl.; prayer;*—*pl.* entire.
Procĕrem, *acc.; a peer;*—*pl.* entire.
Proles, *offspring*, wants *gen. pl.*

Relātu, *abl.; a relation.*
Repetundārum, *gen. pl.;* -is, *abl.; extortion.*
Rogātu, *abl.; a request.*
Rus, *the country*, wants *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*
Satias, *nom.;* -ātem, *acc.;* -āte, *abl.; satiety.*
Secus, *nom., acc.; sex.*
Situs, *nom.;* -um, *acc.;* -u, *abl.; situation;*—situs, *nom.* and *acc. pl.;* -ĭbus, *abl.*
Situs, *nom.;* -ūs, *gen.;* -um, *acc.;* -u, *abl.; rust;*—situs, *acc. pl.*
Sobŏles, *offspring*, wants *gen. pl.*
Sol, *the sun*, wants *gen. pl.*
Sordis, *gen.;* -em, *acc.;* -e, *abl.; filth;*—*pl.* sordes, -ium, &c.
Spontis, *gen.;* -e, *abl.; of one's own accord.*
Suppetiæ, *nom. pl.;* -as, *acc.; supplies.*
Tabum, *nom.;* -i, *gen.;* -o, *abl.; gore.*
Tempe, *nom., acc., voc. pl.; a vale in Thessaly.*
Thus, not used in the *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*
Veprem, *acc.;* -e, *abl.; a brier;*—*pl.* entire.
Verbĕris, *gen.;* -e, *abl.; a stripe;*—*pl.* verbĕra, -um, -ĭbus.
Vesper, *nom.;* -e *or* -i, *abl.; the evening.*
Vespĕra, *nom.;* -am, *acc.;* -ĕrā, *abl.; the evening.*
Vespĕrus, *nom.;* -o, *dat.;* -um, *acc.;* -o, *abl.; the evening.*
Vicis, *gen.;* -i, *dat.;* -em, *acc.;* -e, *abl.; change;*—*pl.* entire, except *gen.*
Virus, *nom.;* -i, *gen.;* -us, *acc.;* -o, *abl.; poison.*
Vis, *nom.;* vis, *gen.;* vim, *acc.;* vi, *abl.; strength;*—*pl.* vires, -ium, &c.
Viscus, *nom.;* -ĕris, *gen.;* -ĕre, *abl.; an internal organ. pl.* viscĕra, &c.
Vocātu, *abl.; a calling;*—vocātus, *acc. pl.*
Volŭpe, *or* volup', *nom., acc.; pleasure.*

To these may be added nouns of the fifth declension, which either want the plural, as most of them are abstract nouns, or have in that number only the nominative, accusative, and vocative. *Res* and *dies*, however, have the plural entire.

For the use of the vocative, also, of many words, no classical authority can be found.

§ 95. 2. Nouns defective in number, want either the plural or the singular.

(*a.*) Many nouns want the plural from the nature of the things which they express. Such are names of persons, most names of places (except those which have only the plural), the names of virtues, vices, arts, herbs, metals, minerals, liquors, and corn, most abstract nouns, and many others.

The following list contains most other *nouns which want the plural*, and also some, marked *p*, which are included in the above classes, but are sometimes used in the plural.

Aconītum, *wolfsbane*, p.
Adorea, *corn.*
Aër, *the air*, p.
Æs, *brass*, *money*, p.
Æther, *the sky.*
Ævum, *an age*, p.
Album, *an album.*
Allium, *garlic*, p.
Amicitia, *friendship*, p.
Argilla, *white clay.*
Avēna, *oats*, p.
Balsamum, *balsam*, p.
Balaustium, *the flower of a pomegranate.*
Barathrum, *a gulf.*
Callum, *hardness of skin.* p
Calor, *heat*, p.
Carduus, *a thistle.*
Caro, *flesh*, p.
Cera, *wax*, p.
Cestus, *the girdle of Venus.*
Cicūta, *hemlock*, p.
Cœnum, *mud.*
Contagium, *a contagion*, p.

Crocum, *saffron*.
Crocus, *saffron*, p.
Cruor, *blood*, p.
Cutis, *the skin*, p.
Dilucŭlum, *the dawn*.
Ebur, *ivory*, p.
Electrum, *amber*, p.
Far, *corn*, p.
Fel, *gall*.
Fervor, *heat*, p.
Fides, *faith*.
Fimus, *dung*.
Fuga, *flight*, p.
Fumus, *smoke*, p.
Furor, *madness*, p.
Galla, *an oak apple*.
Gelu, *frost*.
Glarea, *gravel*.
Gloria, *glory*, p.
Glastum, *woad*.
Gluten, *or*
Glutīnum, *glue*.
Gypsum, *white plaster*.
Hepar. *the liver*.
Hespĕrus, *the evening star*.
Hilum, *the black speck of a bean*.
Hordeum, *barley*, p.
Humus, *the ground*.
Indŏles, *the disposition*.
Ira, *anger*, p.
Jubar, *a sunbeam*.
Jus, *justice, law*, p.
Justitium, *a law vacation*.
Lætitia, *joy*, p.
Languor, *faintness*, p.
Lardum, *bacon*. p.
Latex, *liquor*, p.
Letum, *death*.
Lignum, *wood*, p.
Limus, *mud*.
Liquor, *liquor*, p.
Lues, *a plague*.
Lutum, *clay*.
Lux, *light*, p.
Macellum, *the shambles*.
Mane, *the morning*.
Marmor, *marble*, p.
Mel, *honey*, p.
Meridies, *mid-day*.
Mors, *death*, p.
Munditia, *neatness*, p.
Mundus, *female ornaments*.
Muscus, *moss*.
Nectar, *nectar*.
Nemo, *no man*.
Nequitia, *wickedness*, p.
Nihil, nil, nihīlum, *nothing*.
Nitrum, *nitre*.
Oblivio, *forgetfulness*, p.
Omāsum, *fat tripe*.
Opium, *opium*.
Palea, *chaff*, p.
Pax, *peace*, p.
Penum, *and*
Penus, *provisions*.
Piper, *pepper*.
Pix, *pitch*, p.
Pontus, *the sea*.
Prolubium, *desire*.
Pubes, *the youth*.
Pulvis, *dust*, p.
Purpūra, *purple*, p.
Quies, *rest*, p.
Ros, *dew*, p.
Rubor, *redness*, p.
Sabŭlo, *gravel*.
Sabŭlum, *sand*.
Sal (neut.), *salt*; — (masc.), p.
Salum, *the sea*.
Salus, *safety*.
Sol, *the sun, a day*, p
Sanguis, *blood*.
Scrupŭlum, *a scruple*.p.
Senium, *old age*.
Siler, *an osier*.
Sināpi, *mustard*.
Siser, *a carrot*, p.
Sitis, *thirst*.
Sopor, *sleep*, p.
Specīmen, *an example*.
Spuma, *foam*, p.
Sulphur, *sulphur*, p.
Supellex, *furniture*.
Tabes, *a consumption*.
Tabum, *gore*.
Tellus, *the earth*.
Terror, *terror*, p.
Thymum, *thyme*, p.
Tribŭlus, *a thistle*, p.
Tristitia, *sadness*, p.
Ver, *spring*.
Verbēna, *vervain*, p.
Vespĕra, *the evening*.
Veternum, *and*
Veternus, *lethargy*.
Vigor, *strength*, p.
Vinum, *wine*, p.
Virus, *poison*.
Viscum, *and*
Viscus, *birdlime*.
Vitrum, *woad*.
Vulgus, *the common people*.
Zingĭber, *ginger*.

§ 96. (*b*.) The names of festivals and games, and several names of places and books, want the singular; as, ***Bacchanalia***, a festival of Bacchus; ***Olympia***, the Olympic games; ***Bucolĭca***, a book of pastorals; and the following names of places :—

Acroceraunia,
Amўclæ,
Artaxăta,
Athēnæ,
Baiæ,
Ceraunia,
Ecbatăna,
Esquiliæ,
Fundi,
Gabii,
Gades,
Gemoniæ scalæ,
Locri,
Parisii,
Philippi,
Puteŏli,
Susa,
Syracūsæ,
Thermopўlæ,
Veii,
Venetiæ

Those in *i* more properly signify the people.

The following list contains most other *nouns which want the singular*, and also some, marked *s*, which are rarely used in that number :—

Acta, *acts.*
Adversaria, *a memorandum-book.*
Æstiva, sc. castra, *summer quarters.*
Alpes, *the Alps*, s.
Annāles, *annals*, s.
Antæ, *doorposts*, s.
Antes, *fore ranks.*
Antiæ, *a forelock.*
Apīnæ, *trifles.*
Argutiæ, *witticisms*, s.
Arma, *arms.*
Artus, *the joints*, s.
Bellaria, *sweetmeats.*
Bigæ, *a two-horse chariot*, s.
Braccæ, *breeches.*
Branchiæ, *the gills of a fish.*
Brevia, *shallow places.*
Calendæ, *Calends.*
Cancelli, *balustrades.*
Cani, *gray hairs.*
Casses, *a hunter's net*, s.
Caulæ, *sheep-folds.*
Celĕres, *light horse.*
Cœlītes, *the gods*, s.
Cibaria, *victuals.*
Clitellæ, *panniers.*
Codicilli, *writings.*
Crepundia, *bawbles.*
Cunabŭla, *and*
Cunæ, *a cradle.*
Cyclādes, *the Cycladian islands*, s.
Decĭmæ, *tithes*, s.
Diræ, *the Furies*, s.
Divitiæ, *riches.*
Druīdes, *the Druids.*
Dryādes, *the Dryads*, s.
Epŭlæ, *a banquet*, s.
Eumenīdes, *the Furies*, s.
Excubiæ, *watches.*
Exequiæ, *funeral rites.*
Exta, *entrails.*
Exuviæ, *spoils.*
Facetiæ, *pleasant sayings*, s.
Feriæ, *holidays.*
Fides, *a stringed instrument*, s.
Flabra, *blasts.*
Fraga, *strawberries*, s.
Fraces, *the lees of oil.*
Gemini, *twins*, s.
Genæ, *cheeks*, s.
Gerræ. *trifles.*
Grates. *thanks.*
Habēnæ, *reins*, s.
Hyādes, *the Hyades*, s.
Hyberna, sc. castra, *winter quarters.*
Idus, *the ides of a month.*
Ilia, *the flank.*
Incunabŭla, *a cradle.*
Indutiæ, *a truce.*
Induviæ, *clothes.*
Ineptiæ, *silly wit*, s.
Inferi, *the gods below.*
Inferiæ, *sacrifices to the dead.*
Insecta, *insects.*
Insidiæ, *snares.*
Justa, *funeral rites.*
Lactes. *small entrails.*
Lamenta, *lamentations.*
Lapicidinæ, *a stone-quarry.*
Latebræ, *lurking places*, s.
Laurĭces, *young rabbits.*
Lautia, *presents to foreign ambassadors.*
Lemūres, *hobgoblins.*
Lendes, *nits.*
Libĕri, *children*, s.
Lucéres, *a tribe of the Romans.*
Magalia, *cottages.*
Majōres, *ancestors*, s.
Manes, *the shades*, s.
Manubiæ, *spoils of war.*
Mapalia, *huts*, s.
Minaciæ, *and*
Minæ, *threats.*
Minōres, *successors.*
Mœnia, *the walls of a city.*
Multitia, *garments finely wrought.*
Munia, *offices.*
Naiādes, *fountain nymphs*, s.
Nares, *the nostrils*, s.
Natāles, *parentage.*
Nates, *the haunches*, s.
Nomæ, *corroding sores*, s.
Nonæ, *the nones of a month.*
Nugæ, *trifles.*
Nundĭnæ, *a fair, a mart.*
Nuptiæ, *a marriage.*
Oblivia, *forgetfulness*, s
Offuciæ, *cheats*, s.
Optimātes, *nobles*, s.
Pandectæ, *pandects.*
Palearia, *the dew up*, s.
Parietinæ, *old walls.*
Partes, *a party.*
Pascua, *pastures*, s.
Penātes, *household gods*, s.
Phalĕræ, *trappings*, s.
Philtra, *love potions.*
Pleiādes, *the seven stars*, s.
Postĕri, *posterity.*
Præbia, *an amulet.*
Præcordia, *the parts about the heart.*
Primitiæ, *first fruits.*
Procēres, *nobles*, s.
Pugillaria, *or -ares, a note-book*, s.
Quadrīgæ, *a four horse chariot*, s.
Quirites, *citizens of Rome*, s.
Quisquiliæ, *refuse.*
Reliquiæ, *a remainder*, s.
Salebræ, *rugged places*, s.
Salīnæ, *a salt pit.*
Scalæ, *a ladder*, s.
Scatebræ, *a spring*, s.

Scopæ, *a broom.*
Scruta, *old clothes.*
Sentes, *thorns*, s.
Sponsalia, *espousals.*
Statīva, sc. castra, *a pitched camp.*
Superi, *the gods above.*
Talaria, *winged shoes.*
Tenebræ, *darkness.*
Tesqua, *rough places.*
Thermæ, *hot baths.*
Tormĭna, *colic pains.*
Transtra, *seats for rowers*, s.
Tricæ, *trifles, toys.*
Utensilia, *utensils.*
Valvæ, *folding doors.*
Vepres, *brambles*, s.
Vergiliæ, *the seven stars.*
Vindiciæ, *a claim of liberty.*
Virgulta, *bushes.*

§ 97. The following differ in meaning in the different numbers:—

Ædes, -is, *a temple.*
Ædes, -ium, *a house.*
Auxilium, *aid.*
Auxilia, *auxiliary troops.*
Bonum, *a good thing.*
Bona, *property.*
Carcer, *a prison.*
Carcĕres, *a goal.*
Castrum, *a castle.*
Castra, *a camp.*
Comitium, *a part of the Roman forum.*
Comitia, *an assembly for election.*
Cupedia, -æ, *delicacy.*
Cupediæ, -ārum, *and*
Cupedia, -ōrum, *dainties.*
Copia, *plenty.*
Copiæ, *forces.*
Facultas, *ability.*
Facultātes, *wealth.*
Fala, *a trick.*
Falæ, *scaffolding.*
Fastus, -ūs, *pride.*
Fastus, -uum, *and*
Fasti, -ōrum, *a calendar.*
Finis, *an end.*
Fines, *boundaries.*
Fortūna, *Fortune.*
Fortūnæ. *wealth.*
Furfur, *bran.*
Furfŭres, *dandruff.*
Gratia, *favor.*
Gratiæ, *thanks.*
Impedimentum, *a hinderance.*
Impedimenta, *baggage.*
Litĕra, *a letter of the alphabet.*
Litĕræ, *an epistle.*
Lustrum, *a space of five years.*
Lustra, *dens of wild beasts.*
Mos, *custom.*
Mores, *manners.*
Opis, gen. *help.*
Opes, -um, *power, wealth.*
Opĕra, *labor.*
Opĕræ, *workmen.*
Plaga, *a climate.*
Plagæ, *nets, toils.*
Principium, *a beginning.*
Principia, *the general's quarters.*
Rostrum, *a beak.*
Rostra, *a pulpit or tribunal.*
Rus, *the country.*
Rura, *fields.*
Sal, *salt.*
Sales, *witticisms.*
Torus, *a bed, a cord.*
Tori, *brawny muscles.*

§ 98. The following plurals are sometimes used for the singular:—

Alta, *the sea.*
Anīmi, *courage.*
Auræ, *the air.*
Carīnæ, *a keel.*
Cervices, *the neck.*
Colla, *the neck.*
Comæ, *the hair.*
Connubia, *marriage.*
Corda, *the heart.*
Corpŏra, *a body.*
Crepuscŭla, *twilight.*
Currus, *a chariot.*
Exilia, *banishment.*
Frigŏra, *cold.*
Gaudia, *joy.*
Gramĭna, *grass.*
Guttŭra, *the throat.*
Hymenæi, *marriage.*
Jejunia, *fasting.*
Ignes, *love.*
Inguĭna, *the groin.*
Jubæ, *a mane.*
Limĭna, *a threshold.*
Litŏra, *a shore.*
Mensæ, *a service or course of dishes.*
Næniæ, *a funeral dirge.*
Numĭna, *the divinity.*
Odia, *hatred.*
Ora, *the mouth, the countenance.*
Oræ, *confines.*
Ortus, *a rising, the east.*
Otia, *ease, leisure.*
Pectŏra, *the breast.*
Rictus, *the jaws.*
Robŏra, *oak, strength.*
Silentia, *silence.*
Sinus, *the breast of a Roman garment.*
Tædæ, *a torch.*
Tempŏra, *time.*
Thalāmi, *marriage, or marriage-bed.*
Thura, *frankincense.*
Tori, *a bed, a couch.*
Viæ, *a journey.*
Vultus, *the countenance.*

III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

§ 99. Nouns are redundant either in termination, in declension, in gender, or in two or more of these respects.

1. In termination: (*a.*) of the nominative; as, *arbor*, and *arbos*, a tree: (*b.*) of the oblique cases; as, *tigris*; gen. *tigris*, or *-ĭdis*; a tiger.

2. In declension; as, *laurus*; gen. *-i*, or *-ûs*; a laurel.

3. In gender; as, *vulgus*, masc. or neut.; the common people.

4. In termination and declension; as, *senecta*, *-æ*, and *senectus*, *-ūtis*; old age.

5. In termination and gender; as, *pileus*, masc., and *pileum*, neut.; a hat.

6. In declension and gender; as, *penus*, *-ûs*, masc., and *penus*, *-ŏris*, neut.; a store of provisions.

7. In termination, declension, and gender; as, *menda*, *-æ*, fem., and *mendum*, *-i*, neut.; a fault.

The following list contains most *Redundant Nouns* of the above classes:—

Abusio, *and* -us, *-ûs, an abuse.*
Acīnus, *and* -um, *a grape-stone.*
Adagium, *and* -io, *a proverb.*
Admonitio, *and* -us, *-ûs, an advising.*
Æthra, *and* Æther, *the clear sky.*
Affectio, *and* -us, *-ûs, affection.*
Agamemno, *and* -on, *Agamemnon.*
Alabaster, *-tri, and* -trum, *an alabaster box.*
Alimonia, *and* -um, *aliment.*
Alluvio, *and* -es, *a flood.*
Alvearium, *and* -āre, *a bee-hive.*
Amarācus, *and* -um, *sweet marjoram.*
Anfractum, *and* -us, *-ûs, a winding.*
Angiportum, *and* -us, *-ûs, a narrow way.*
Antidōtus, *and* -um, *an antidote.*
Aranea, *and* -us, *a spider.*
Arar, *and* -āris, *the river Arar.*
Arbor, *and* -os, *a tree.*
Architectus, *and* -on, *an architect.*
Attagēna, *and* -gen, *a woodcock.*
Avaritia, *and* -ies, *avarice.*
Augmentum, *and* -men, *increase.*
Baccar, *and* -āris, *a kind of herb.*
Bacūlus, *and* -um, *a staff.*
Balteus, *and* -um, *a belt.*
Barbaria, *and* -ies, *barbarism.*
Barbītus, *and* -on, *a harp.*
Batillus, *and* -um, *a fire shovel.*
Blanditia, *and* -ies, *flattery.*
Buccīna, *and* -um, *a trumpet.*
Bura, *and* -is, *a plough-tail.*
Buxus, *and* -um, *the box-tree.*
Calamister, *-tri, and* -trum, *a crisping-pin.*
Callus, *and* -um, *hardness of the skin.*
Cancer, *-ĕri*, or *-ĕris, a crab.*
Canitia, *and* -ies, *hoariness.*
Capus, *and* Capo, *a capon.*
Cassĭda, *and* Cassis, *a helmet.*
Catīnus, *and* -um, *a platter.*
Cepa, *and* -e, *an onion.*
Chirogrăphus, *and* -um, *a hand writing.*
Cingŭla, -us, *and* -um, *a girdle.*
Clypeus, *and* -um, *a shield.*
Cochlearium, -ar, *and* -āre, *a spoon.*
Colluvio, *and* -ies, *filth.*
Commentarius, *and* -um, *a journal.*
Compāges, *and* -o, *a joining.*
Conātum, *and* -us, *-ûs, an attempt.*
Concinnĭtas, *and* -tūdo, *neatness.*
Consortium, *and* -io, *partnership.*

A feminine in *ine* is also found; as, *Nerīne*, from *Nereus*.

Patronymics in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension; those in *is* and *as*, of the third.

2. A *patrial* or *gentile* noun is derived from the name of a country, and denotes an inhabitant of that country; as, *Tros*, a Trojan man; *Troas*, a Trojan woman; *Macĕdo*, a Macedonian; *Samnis*, a Samnite; from *Troja*, *Macedonia*, and *Samnium*.

Most patrials are properly adjectives, relating to a noun understood; as, *homo*, *civis*, &c.

3. A *diminutive* signifies a small thing of the kind denoted by the primitive.

Diminutives gĕnerally end in *lus*, *la*, or *lum*, according as the primitive is masculine, feminine, or neuter. These terminations are usually added either to the nominative or to the root of the primitive: commonly *ŭ* or *cŭ* is inserted before them; as, *adolescentŭlus*, a very young man, from *adolescens*, a youth; *arŭla*, a little altar, from *ara*; *scutŭlum*, a little shield, from *scutum*; *fratercŭlus*, *muliercŭla*, *opuscŭlum*, from *frater*, *mulier*, and *opus*.

In some, *ŏ* is inserted instead of *ŭ*; as, *filiŏlus*, from *filius*.

A few diminutives end in *leus*; as, *equuleus*, from *equus*, a horse.

Sometimes the root of the primitive is variously modified; as, *homuncŭlus*, *asellus*, *libellus*, from *homo*, *asĭnus*, and *liber*.

Some diminutives differ in gender from their primitives; as, *ranuncŭlus*, *scamillus*, from *rana* and *scamnum*.

4. *Amplificatives* are personal appellations, denoting an excess of what is expressed by their primitives; as, *capĭto*, one who has a large head, from *caput*, the head; *naso*, one who has a large nose, from *nasus*, the nose.

5. The termination *ium* or *itium*, added to the root of a noun, indicates an assemblage of the individuals denoted by the primitive, or their office or employment; as, *collegium*, an assembly of colleagues; *servitium*, a collection of servants; *sacerdotium*, the priesthood; *ministerium*, a ministry; from *collēga*, *servus*, *sacerdos*, and *minister*.

6. The termination *imonium* is added to the root of a few nouns, denoting that which gives to the primitives their character; as, *testimonium*, testimony; *vadimonium*, obligation; from *testis* and *vas* (*vadis*).

7. The termination *ētum*, added to the root of names of plants, denotes a place where they grow in abundance; as, *quercētum*, *laurētum*, from *quercus*, an oak, and *laurus*, a laurel.

But some are irregular; as, *arbustum, salictum;* from *arbos*, a tree, and *salix*, a willow.

8. The termination *arium*, added to the root of a noun, denotes the place where the things signified by the primitive are kept; as, *aviarium, plantarium;* from *avis*, a bird, and *planta*, a plant.

9. The termination *īle*, also, added to the root of words denoting animals, marks the place where they are kept; as, *bovīle, caprīle, ovīle;* from *bos*, an ox, *caper*, a goat, and *ovis*, a sheep.

This and the preceding class are properly neuter adjectives.

§ 101. II. From adjectives are derived the following forms of abstract nouns. See § 26.

1. The terminations *ĭtas, ia, itūdo*, and *ēdo*, are added to the root of the primitive; as, *cupidĭtas*, desire; *audacia*, boldness; *magnitūdo*, greatness; *albēdo*, whiteness; from *cupĭdus, audax, magnus*, and *albus*.

So *atrocĭtas, crudelĭtas*, from *atrox* and *crudēlis; concordia, perfidia*, from *concors* and *perfĭdus; similitūdo, longitūdo*, from *similis* and *longus; dulcēdo, pinguēdo*, from *dulcis* and *pinguis*.

When the root ends in *i*, the abstract is formed in *ĕtas;* as, *piĕtas*, piety; *anxiĕtas*, anxiety; from *pius* and *anxius*.

Libertas, liberty, is contracted from *liberĭtas;* and *difficultas*, difficulty, from *difficilĭtas*.

A few abstracts are formed in *ĭtus* or *tus*, instead of *ĭtas;* as, *servĭtus*, slavery; *juventus*, youth; from *servus* and *juvĕnis*.

Instead of *ia*, some adjectives in *us* add *itia*, or *ities*, to the root; as, *avaritia*, avarice; *justitia*, justice; from *avārus* and *justus;—durities*, hardness; *sævities*, cruelty; from *durus* and *sævus*.

Consuetūdo, custom, and *mansuetūdo*, mildness, omit *it* in the termination, as their root ends in *t*.

2. A few adjectives form abstracts in *imonia;* as, *acrimonia*, tartness; *sanctimonia*, sanctity; from *acer* and *sanctus*.

Abstracts are sometimes formed from the same adjective with different terminations; as, *clarĭtas* and *claritūdo*, from *clarus*.

Adjectives, as distinguished from the abstracts which are formed from them, are called *concretes*.

§ 102. III. Nouns derived from verbs are called *verbal* nouns.

The following are the principal classes:—

1. The termination *or*, added to the first root of a verb, espe-

cially of a neuter verb, denotes the action or state of the verb abstractly; as, *amor*, love; *favor*, favor; *mœror*, grief; *splendor*, brightness; from *amo*, *faveo*, *mœreo*, and *splendeo*.

2. From many verbs abstracts are formed by adding *ium* to the first root; as, *colloquium*, a conference; *gaudium*, joy; *exordium*, a beginning; from *collŏquor*, *gaudeo*, and *exordior*.

Some words of this class are formed by changing final *u*, in the third root of the verb, into *ium*; as, *exitium*, destruction; *solatium*, consolation; from *exeo* (*exĭtu*) and *solor* (*solātu*).

3. Some verbals are formed by adding *ēla*, *imonia*, or *imonium*, to the first root of the verb; as, *loquēla*, speech; *querēla*, a complaint; *suadēla*, persuasion; from *loquor*, *queror*, and *suadeo*; —*alimonia* and *alimonium*, nutriment, from *alo*;—*querimonia*, a complaint, from *queror*.

4. The termination *mentum*, added to the first root of the verb, generally with a connecting vowel, denotes a means for the performance of the action of the verb; as, *documentum*, a means of teaching; from *doceo*. So *blandimentum*, *experimentum*, *ornamentum*, from *blandior*, *experior*, and *orno*.

The termination *men* has sometimes a similar signification; as, *tegmen*, a covering; from *tego*.

Some words of this class have no primitive verb in use; as, *atramentum*, *capillamentum*, &c.

5. The terminations *ŭlum*, *bŭlum*, and *cŭlum*, added to the first root of a verb, the two last with a connecting vowel, denote a means or instrument; as, *cingŭlum*, a girdle; *jacŭlum*, a javelin; *vehicŭlum*, a vehicle; *venabŭlum*, a hunting-spear; from *cingo*, *jacio*, *veho*, and *venor*.

Some words of this kind are formed from nouns; as, *acetabŭlum*, a vinegar cruet; *thuribŭlum*, a censer; from *acētum* and *thus*.

6. Nouns formed by changing final *u*, in the third root of the verb, into *or* and *rix*, denote respectively the male and female agent of the action expressed by the verb; as, *adjūtor*, *adjūtrix*, an assistant; *fautor*, *fautrix*, a favorer; *victor*, *victrix*, a conqueror; from *adjūvo* (*adjūtu*), *faveo* (*fautu*), *vinco* (*victu*).

The feminine form is less common than the masculine.

Some nouns in *tor* are formed immediately from other nouns; as, *viātor*, a traveller; *janĭtor*, a door-keeper; from *via* and *janua*.

7. Many abstract nouns are formed by changing final *u*, in the third root of a verb, into *io* and *us*; as, *actio*, an action;

cautio, caution; *lectio*, reading; from *ago* (*actu*), *caveo* (*cautu*), *lego* (*lectu*);—*cantus*, singing; *visus*, sight; *usus*, use; from *cano* (*cantu*), *video* (*visu*), *utor* (*usu*).

Nouns of both forms, and of the same signification, are frequently derived from the same verb; as, *concursio* and *concursus*, a running together; *motio* and *motus*, &c.

The termination *ra*, added to the third root of a verb, sometimes has the same signification as *io* and *us*, and sometimes denotes the result of an action; as, *positūra*, position; *vinctūra*, a binding together; from *pono* (*posĭtu*), and *vincio* (*vinctu*); —*conjectūra*, a conjecture; *pictūra*, a picture; from *conjicio* (*conjectu*) and *pingo* (*pictu*).

One of the forms in *io*, *us*, and *ūra*, is generally used to the exclusion of the others, and when two or more are found, they are usually employed in somewhat different senses.

8. The termination *orium*, added to the third root of a verb, after *u* is removed, denotes the place where the action of the verb is performed; as, *auditorium*, a lecture-room; *conditorium*, a repository; from *audio* and *condo*.

COMPOSITION OF NOUNS.

§ 103. Compound nouns are formed variously:—

1. Of two nouns; as, *rupicăpra*, a wild goat, of *rupes* and *capra*. In some words, compounded of two nouns, the former is a genitive; as, *senatusconsultum*, a decree of the senate; *jurisconsultus*, a lawyer. In others, both parts are declined; as, *respublĭca*, *jusjurandum*. See § 91.

2. Of a noun and a verb; as, *artĭfex*, an artist, of *ars* and *facio*; *fidĭcen*, a harper, of *fidis* and *cano*; *agricŏla*, a husbandman, of *ager* and *colo*; *patricīda*, a patricide, of *pater* and *cædo*.

3. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *æquinoctium*, the equinox, of *æquus* and *nox*; *millepĕda*, a millepede, of *mille* and *pes*.

In *duumvir*, *triumvir*, *decemvir*, *centumvir*, the numeral adjective is in the genitive plural.

Remark. When the former part of the compound is a noun or an adjective, it usually ends in ĭ. If the second word begins with a vowel, an elision takes place; as, *quinquennium*, of *quinque* and *annus*.

4. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *nefas*, wickedness; *nemo*, nobody; of *ne*, *fas*, and *homo*.

5. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *incuria*, want of care, of

in and *cura*. So *intervallum*, the space between the ramparts; *præcordia*, the vitals; *proverbium*, a proverb; *subsellium*, a seat; *superficies*, a surface.

When the former part is a preposition, its final consonant is sometimes changed, to adapt it to that which follows it: as, *immortalĭtas*, *imprudẹntia*.

ADJECTIVES.

§ **104.** An adjective is a word which qualifies or limits the meaning of a substantive.

Adjectives may be divided, according to their *signification*, into various classes; as denoting,

1. Quality; as, *bonus*, good; *albus*, white.

2. Quantity; as, *magnus*, great; *totus*, the whole.

3. Matter; as, *abiegnus*, made of fir; *aureus*, golden.

4. Time; as, *annuus*, yearly; *hesternus*, of yesterday.

5. Place; as, *altus*, high; *vicīnus*, near.

6. Relation; as, *amīcus*, friendly; *aptus*, fit.

7. Number; as, *unus*, one; *secundus*, second. These are called *numerals*.

8. Possession; as, *herīlis*, a master's; *paternus*, of a father. These are called *possessives*.

9. Country; as, *Romānus*, Roman; *Arpīnas*, of Arpīnum. These are called *patrials*.

10. Part; as, *ullus*, any one; *alter*, another. These are called *partitives*.

11. Interrogation; as, *quantus*, how great? *qualis*, of what kind? These are called *interrogatives*; when not used interrogatively, they are called *indefinites*.

12. Diminution; as, *parvŭlus*, from *parvus*, small; *misellus*, from *miser*, miserable. These are called *diminutives*.

13. Amplification; as, *vinōsus* and *vinolentus*, much given to wine; *aurītus*, having long ears. These are called *amplificatives*.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ **105.** Adjectives are declined like substantives, and are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

The masculine of adjectives that belong to the first and second declension, ends either in *us* or *er*. Those in *us* change *us* into *a* for the feminine, and into *um* for the neuter. Those in *er* add *a* for the feminine, and *um* for the neuter. The masculine in *us* is declined like *dŏmĭnus;* that in *er* like *gener*, or *ager;* the feminine always like *musa;* and the neuter like *regnum.*

REMARK. One adjective, *satur, -ŭra, -ŭrum*, full, ends in *ur*, and the masculine is declined like *gener.*

1. Bonus, *good.*

Singular.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	bo′-nus,	bo′-na,	bo′-num,
G.	bo′-ni,	bo′-næ,	bo′-ni,
D.	bo′-no,	bo′-næ,	bo′-no,
Ac.	bo′-num,	bo′-nam,	bo′-num,
V.	bo′-ne,	bo′-na,	bo′-num,
Ab.	bo′-no.	bo′-nâ.	bo′-no.

Plural.

N.	bo′-ni,	bo′-næ,	bo′-na,
G.	bo-nō′-rum,	bo-nā′-rum,	bo-nō′-rum,
D.	bo′-nis,	bo′-nis,	bo′-nis,
Ac.	bo′-nos,	bo′-nas,	bo′-na,
V.	bo′-ni,	bo′-næ,	bo′-na,
Ab.	bo′-nis.	bo′-nis.	bo′-nis.

In like manner decline

Al′-tus, *high.*	Fi′-dus, *faithful.*	Lon′-gus, *long.*
A-vā′-rus, *covetous.*	Im′-prō-bus, *wicked.*	Ple′-nus, *full.*
Be-nig′-nus, *kind.*	In-ī′-quus, *unjust.*	Tac′-ĭ-tus, *silent.*

Like *bonus* are also declined all participles in *us.*

2. Tener, *tender.*

Singular.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	te′-ner,	ten′-ĕ-ra,	ten′-ĕ-rum,
G.	ten′-ĕ-ri,	ten′-ĕ-ræ,	ten′-ĕ-ri,
D.	ten′-ĕ-ro,	ten′-ĕ-ræ,	ten′-ĕ-ro,
Ac.	ten′-ĕ-rum,	ten′-ĕ-ram,	ten′-ĕ-rum,
V.	te′-ner,	ten′-ĕ-ra,	ten′-ĕ-rum,
Ab.	ten′-ĕ-ro.	ten′-ĕ-râ.	ten′-ĕ-ro.

Plural.

N.	ten′-ĕ-ri,	ten′-ĕ-ræ,	ten′-ĕ-ra,
G.	ten-e-rō′-rum,	ten-e-rā′-rum,	ten-e-rō′-rum,
D.	ten′-ĕ-ris,	ten′-ĕ-ris,	ten′-ĕ-ris,
Ac.	ten′-ĕ-ros,	ten′-ĕ-ras,	ten′-ĕ-ra,
V.	ten′-ĕ-ri,	ten′-ĕ-ræ,	ten′-ĕ-ra,
Ab.	ten′-ĕ-ris.	ten′-ĕ-ris.	ten′-ĕ-ris.

In like manner are declined

As′-per, *rough.*	Gib′-ber, *crook-backed.*	Mi′-ser, *wretched.*
Ce′-ter, *the rest.*	La′-cer, *torn.*	Pros′-per, *prosperous.*
Ex′-ter, *foreign.*	Li′-ber, *free.*	Sa′-tur, *full.*

So also *semĭfer*, and the compounds of *gero* and *fero;* as, *lanĭger*, bearing wool; *opĭfer*, bringing help.

NOTE. *Ceter* and *exter* are scarcely used in the nominative singular masculine.

§ 106. The other adjectives in *er* (except *alter*) drop the *e* in declension.

Piger, *slothful.*

Singular.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	pi′-ger,	pi′-gra,	pi′-grum,
G.	pi′-gri,	pi′-græ,	pi′-gri,
D.	pi′-gro,	pi′-græ,	pi′-gro,
Ac.	pi′-grum,	pi′-gram,	pi′-grum,
V.	pi′-ger,	pi′-gra,	pi′-grum,
Ab.	pi′-gro.	pi′-grâ.	pi′-gro.

Plural.

N.	pi′-gri,	pi′-græ,	pi′-gra,
G.	pi-grō′-rum,	pi-grā′-rum,	pi-grō′-rum,
D.	pi′-gris,	pi′-gris,	pi′-gris,
Ac.	pi′-gros,	pi′-gras,	pi′-gra,
V.	pi′-gri,	pi′-græ,	pi′-gra,
Ab.	pi′-gris.	pi′-gris.	pi′-gris.

In like manner decline

Æ′-ger, *sick.*	Ma′-cer, *lean.*	Sca′-ber, *rough.*
A′-ter, *black.*	Ni′-ger, *black.*	Si-nis′-ter, *left.*
Cre′-ber, *frequent.*	Pul′-cher, *fair.*	Te′-ter, *foul.*
Gla′-ber, *smooth.*	Ru′-ber, *red.*	Va′-fer, *crafty.*
In′-tĕ-ger, *entire.*	Sa′-cer, *sacred.*	

Dexter, right, has *-tra*, *-trum*, or *-tĕra*, *-tĕrum*.

§ 107. Six adjectives in *us*, and three in *er*, have their genitive singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, in all the genders :—

Alius, *another.*	Totus, *whole.*	Alter, -tĕra, -tĕrum, *the other.*
Nullus, *no one.*	Ullus, *any.*	Uter, -tra, -trum, *which of the two.*
Solus, *alone.*	Unus, *one.*	Neuter, -tra, -trum, *neither.*

To these may be added the other compounds of *uter*,—namely, *uterque*, each; *utercumque*, *uterlibet*, and *utervis*, which of the two you please; gen. *utriusque*, &c.;—also, *alterüter*, one of two; gen. *alterutrius*, and sometimes *alterius utrius*; dat. *alterütri*. So *alteruterque*.

EXAMPLE.

Singular.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	u'-nus,	u'-na,	u'-num,
G.	u-nĭ'-us,*	u-nĭ'-us,	u-nĭ'-us,
D.	u'-ni,	u'-ni,	u'-ni,
Ac.	u'-num,	u'-nam,	u'-num,
V.	u'-ne,	u'-na,	u'-num,
Ab.	u'-no.	u'-nâ.	u'-no.

The plural is regular, like that of *bonus*.

REMARK 1. *Alius* has *aliud* in the nominative singular neuter, and in the genitive *alĭus*, contracted for *aliius*.

2. Some of these adjectives, in ancient authors, form their genitive and dative regularly, like *bonus*, *tener*, or *piger*.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 108. Some adjectives of the third declension have three terminations in the nominative singular; some two; and others only one.

I. Those of three terminations end in *er*, masc.; *is*, fem.; and *e*, neut.; and are thus declined :—

Acer, *sharp.*

Singular.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	a'-cer,	a'-cris,	a'-cre,
G.	a'-cris,	a'-cris,	a'-cris,
D.	a'-cri,	a'-cri,	a'-cri,
Ac.	a'-crem	a'-crem,	a'-cre,
V.	a'-cer,	a'-cris,	a'-cre,
Ab.	a'-cri.	a'-cri.	a'-cri.

* See § 15.

Plural.

N.	a′-cres,	a′-cres,	a′-cri-a,
G.	a′-cri-um,	a′-cri-um,	a′-cri-um,
D.	ac′-rĭ-bus,	ac′-rĭ-bus,	ac′-rĭ-bus,
Ac.	a′-cres,	a′-cres,	a′-cri-a,
V.	a′-cres,	a′-cres,	a′-cri-a,
Ab.	ac′-rĭ-bus.	ac′-rĭ-bus.	ac′-rĭ-bus.

In like manner are declined the following only :—

Al′-ă-cer, *cheerful.* Pa-lus′-ter, *marshy.* Sil-ves′-ter, *woody.*
Cam-pes′-ter, *of a plain.* Pĕ-des′-ter, *on foot.* Ter-res′-ter, *terrestrial.*
Cel′-ĕ-ber, *famous.* Sa-lū′-ber, *wholesome.* Vol′-ū-cer, *winged.*
E-ques′-ter, *equestrian.*

Celer, swift, has *celĕris, celĕre;* gen. *celĕris*, &c.

Remark 1. The nominative singular masculine sometimes ends in *is*, like the feminine; as, *salŭber*, or *salŭbris.*

2. Volūcer has *um* in the genitive plural. See § 114.

§ 109. II. Adjectives of two terminations end in *is* for the masculine and feminine, and *e* for the neuter, except comparatives, which end in *or* and *us.*

Those in *is*, *e*, are thus declined :—

Mitis, *mild.*

	Singular.		*Plural.*	
	M. & F.	*N.*	*M. & F.*	*N.*
N.	mi′-tis,	mi′-te,	mi′-tes,	mit′-i-a,*
G.	mi′-tis,	mi′-tis,	mit′-i-um,*	mit′-i-um,
D.	mi′-ti,	mi′-ti,	mit′-ĭ-bus,	mit′-ĭ-bus,
Ac.	mi′-tem,	mi′-te,	mi′-tes,	mit′-i-a,
V.	mi′-tis,	mi′-te,	mi′-tes,	mit′-i-a,
Ab.	mi′-ti.	mi′-ti.	mit′-ĭ-bus.	mit′-ĭ-bus.

In like manner decline

Ag′-ĭ-lis, *active.* Dul′-cis, *sweet.* In-col′-ŭ-mis, *safe.*
Bre′-vis, *short.* For′-tis, *brave.* Mi-rab′-ĭ-lis, *wonderful.*
Cru-dē′-lis, *cruel.* Gra′-vis, *heavy.* Om′-nis, *all.*

Tres, three, is declined like the plural of *mitis.*

§ 110. All comparatives except *plus*, more, are thus declined :—

Mitior,* *milder.*

Singular.

	M. & F.	*N.*
N.	mit′-i-or,	mit′-i-us,
G.	mit-i-ō′-ris,	mit-i-ō′-ris,
D.	mit-i-ō′-ri,	mit-i-ō′-ri,
Ac.	mit-i-ō′-rem,	mit′-i-us,
V.	mit′-i-or,	mit′-i-us,
Ab.	mit-i-ō′-re, *or* ri.	mit-i-ō′-re, *or* ri.

* Pronounced *mish′-e-um*, &c. See § 12.

Plural.

	M. & F.	*N.*
N.	mit-i-ō′-res,	mit-i-ō′-ra,
G.	mit-i-ō′-rum,	mit-i-ō′-rum,
D.	mit-i-or′-ĭ-bus,	mit-i-or′-ĭ-bus,
Ac.	mit-i-ō′-res,	mit-i-ō′-ra,
V.	mit-i-ō′-res,	mit-i-ō′-ra,
Ab.	mit-i-or′-ĭ-bus.	mit-i-or′-ĭ-bus.

In like manner decline

Al′-ti-or, *higher.* Fe-lic′-i-or, *happier.* Pru-den′-ti-or, *more prudent.*
Bre′-vi-or, *shorter.* For′-ti-or, *braver.* Cru-de′-li-or, *more cruel.* Gra′-vi-or, *heavier.* U-be′-ri-or, *more fertile.*
Dul′-ci-or, *sweeter.*

Plus, *more*, is thus declined :—

Singular.		*Plural.*		
	N.		*M. & F.*	*N.*
N.	plus,	*N.*	plu′-res,	plu′-ra, *rarely* pluria.
G.	plu′-ris,	*G.*	plu′-ri-um,	plu′-ri-um,
D.	———,	*D.*	plu′-rĭ-bus,	plu′-rĭ-bus,
Ac.	plus,	*Ac.*	plu′-res,	plu′-ra,
V.	———,	*V.*	———,	———,
Ab.	———.	*Ab.*	plu′-rĭ-bus.	plu′-rĭ-bus.

So, in the plural number only, *complūres*, a great many.

§ 111. III. Other adjectives of the third declension have but one termination in the nominative singular for all genders, and they all increase in the genitive.*

They are thus declined :—

Felix, *happy.*

Singular.

	M. & F.	*N.*
N.	fe′-lix,	fe′-lix,
G.	fe-lī′-cis,	fe-lī′-cis,
D.	fe-lī′-ci,	fe-lī′-ci,
Ac.	fe-lī′-cem,	fe′-lix,
V.	fe′-lix,	fe′-lix,
Ab.	fe-lī′-ce, *or* ci.	fe-lī′-ce, *or* ci.

Plural.

N.	fe-lī′-ces,	fe-lic′-i-a,†
G.	fe-lic′-i-um,†	fe-lic′-i-um,
D.	fe-lic′-ĭ-bus,	fe-lic′-ĭ-bus,
Ac.	fe-lī′-ces,	fe-lic′-i-a,
V.	fe-lī′-ces,	fe-lic′-i-a,
Ab.	fe-lic′-ĭ-bus.	fe-lic′-ĭ-bus.

* *Senex*, *senis*, old, had anciently *senĕcis* or *senēcis*.
† Pronounced *fe-lish′-e-um*, &c. See §§ 10, Exc., and 7.

Præsens, *present.*

Singular.

	M. & F.	*N.*
N.	præ′-sens,	præ′-sens,
G.	præ-sen′-tis,	præ-sen′-tis,
D.	præ-sen′-ti,	præ-sen′-ti,
Ac.	præ-sen′-tem,	præ′-sens,
V.	præ′-sens,	præ′-sens,
Ab.	præ-sen′-te, *or* ti.	præ-sen′-te, *or* ti.

Plural.

N.	præ-sen′-tes,	præ-sen′-ti-a,*
G.	præ-sen′-ti-um,	præ-sen′-ti-um,
D.	præ-sen′-tĭ-bus,	præ-sen′-tĭ-bus,
Ac.	præ-sen′-tes,	præ-sen′-ti-a,
V.	præ-sen′-tes,	præ-sen′-ti-a,
Ab.	præ-sen′-tĭ-bus.	præ-sen′-tĭ-bus.

In like manner decline

Au′-dax, -ācis, *bold.*
Com′-pos, -ŏtis, *master of.*
Fe′-rox, -ōcis, *fierce.*
In′-gens, -tis, *huge.*
Par′-tĭ-ceps, -ĭpis, *participant.*
Præ′-pes, -ĕtis, *swift.*
So′-lers, -tis, *shrewd.*
Sos′-pes, -ĭtis, *safe.*
Sup′-plex, -ĭcis, *suppliant.*

All present participles are declined like *præsens.*

Rules for the Oblique Cases of Adjectives of the Third Declension.

GENITIVE SINGULAR.

§ 112. Most adjectives of the third declension form their genitive singular like nouns of the same termination.

The following may here be specified:—

Of those in *es*,

Some have *ĕtis;* as, *hebes*, dull; *perpes*, perpetual; *præpes*, swift; and *teres*, slender;—(*Locŭples*, rich, has *ētis;*)—

Some *ĭtis;* as, *dives*, rich; *sospes*, safe; and *superstes*, surviving;—

Some *ĭdis;* as, *deses*, slothful; and *reses*, sluggish. [*bĕris.*

Bipes, two-footed, and *tripes*, three-footed, have *pĕdis. Pubes*, has *pu-*

Compos, master of, and *impos*, unable, have *ŏtis.*

Pernox, lasting all night, has *noctis.*

Cælebs, unmarried, has *ĭbis; intercus*, intercutaneous, *ŭtis.*

Those in *ceps*, compounds of *caput*, have *cipĭtis;* as, *anceps*, doubtful; *præceps*, headlong.

Those in *cors*, compounds of *cor*, have *cordis;* as, *concors*, agreeing.

* Pronounced *pre-sen′-she-a*, &c.

ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 113. 1. Adjectives of the third declension, of two or three terminations, except comparatives in *or*, have always *i* in the ablative.

2. Comparatives, and participles in *ns* used as participles, have rather *e* than *i*; and such participles in the ablative absolute have always *e*.

3. Adjectives of one termination have *e* or *i* in the ablative.

NOMINATIVE AND GENITIVE PLURAL.

The neuter of the nominative plural ends in *ia*, and the genitive plural in *ium*; but comparatives in *or*, with *vetus*, old, and *uber*, fertile, have *a* and *um*.

Exceptions in the Ablative Singular and Genitive Plural.

§ 114. 1. The following adjectives have *e* in the ablative singular, and *um* in the genitive plural:—

Bicorpor, *two-bodied.*	Impūbes, *beardless.*	Sospes, *safe.*
Bipes, *two-footed.*	Juvĕnis, *young.*	Superstes, *surviving.*
Cælebs, *unmarried.*	Pauper, *poor.*	Tricorpor, *three-bodied.*
Compos, *master of.*	Princeps, *chief.*	Tricuspis, *three-forked.*
Discŏlor, *particolored.*	Puber, *or* -es, *full-grown.*	Tripes, *three-footed.*
Impos, *unable.*	Senex, *old.*	

2. The following, which have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular, have *um* in the genitive plural:—

Ales, *winged.*	Dives, *rich.*	Quadrŭplex, *fourfold.*
Artĭfex, *skilful.*	Degĕner, *degenerate.*	Supplex, *suppliant.*
Cicur, *tame.*	Impar, *unequal.*	Triceps, *three-headed.*
Compar, *equal.*	Inops, *poor.*	Vigil, *watchful.*
Dispar, *unequal.*	Præpes, *swift.*	

To these may be added *locŭples*, rich; *sons*, guilty; and *insons*, innocent; which have *um* or *ium* in the genitive plural. *Volūcer*, winged, though its ablative is in *i*, has *um* in the genitive plural.

3. *Memor*, mindful; *immĕmor*, unmindful; *par*, equal; and *uber*, fertile, have *i* only in the ablative; but all, except *par*, have *um* in the genitive plural.

NOTE. The ACCUSATIVE PLURAL of adjectives of the third declension, as of nouns, sometimes ends in *eis* or *is*, instead of *es*. See § 85.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

§ 115. Some adjectives are defective, others redundant.

DEFECTIVE ADJECTIVES.

1 Many adjectives, denoting personal qualities or attributes, want the neuter gender, unless when occasionally joined to a neuter substantive used figuratively. Such are the following:—

Bicorpor,	Degĕner,	Inops,	Memor,	Redux,	Supplex,
Bipes,	Dives,	Insons,	Pauper,	Senex,	Tricorpor,
Cælebs,	Impos,	Invītus,	Partĭceps,	Sons,	Vigil.
Consors,	Impŭbes,	Juvĕnis,	Princeps,	Sospes,	
Compos,	Industrius,	Locŭples,	Puber, *or* -es,	Superstes,	

Victrix and *ultrix* are feminine in the singular, seldom neuter; in the plural, they are feminine and neuter. Such verbals partake of the nature of substantives and adjectives. They correspond to masculines in *tor*. See § 102, 6.

2. The following want the genitive plural, and are rarely used in the neuter gender :—

Concŏlor, deses, hebes, perpes, reses, teres, versicŏlor.

3. Some adjectives are wholly indeclinable.

Such are *frugi*, temperate; *nequam*, worthless; *sat* or *satis*, sufficient; *semis*, half; the plurals *aliquot*, *tot*, *quot*, *totidem*, *quotquot*; and the cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum* inclusive, and also *mille*.

4. The following adjectives are used only in certain cases :—

Bilĭcem, *acc.; doubly-tissued*:
Cetĕra, cetĕrum, *the rest*, wants the *nom. sing. masc.*
Decemplĭcem, *acc.; tenfold.*
Exspes, *nom.; hopeless.*
Inquies, *nom.;* -ētem, *acc.;* -ēte, *abl.; restless.*
Mactus, *and* macte, *nom.;* macte, *acc.; increased;*—macti, *and* mactæ, *nom. pl.*
Necesse, *and* necessum, *nom., acc.; necessary.*
Plus, *nom., acc.;* pluris, *gen.; more;* —*pl.* plures, -a, *nom., acc.;* -ium, *gen.;* ĭbus, *dat., abl.* § 110.
Potis, *nom. sing.* and *pl.*, all genders; *able.*
Pote, *nom. sing., for* potest; *possible.*
Septemplĭcis, *gen.;* -ce, *abl.; sevenfold.*
Siremps, *nom.;* sirempse, *abl.; alike.*
Tantundem, *nom., acc.;* tantīdem, *gen.; so much.*
Trilĭcem, *acc.; trebly-tissued;* trilĭces, *acc. pl.*

REDUNDANT ADJECTIVES.

§ 116. The following adjectives are redundant in termination and declension. Those marked *r* are more rarely used.

Acclīvis, *and* -us, *r, ascending.*
Auxiliāris, *and* -ius, *auxiliary.*
Bijŭgis, *and* -us, *two-yoked.*
Declīvis, *and* -us, *r, descending.*
Exanīmis, *and* -us, *r, lifeless.*
Hilāris, *and* -us, *cheerful.*
Imbecillis, *r, and* -us, *weak.* [*less.*
Impŭbes, *and* -is, *-is* or *-ĕris, beard-*
Inermis, *and* -us, *unarmed.*
Infrēnis, *and* -us, *unbridled.*
Inquies, *and* -ētus, *restless.*
Jocularis, *and* -ius, *r, laughable.*
Multijŭges, *r, and* -i (plur.), *many-yoked.*
Opulens, *and* -lentus, *rich.*
Præcox, -cŏquis, *and* -cŏquus, *early ripe.*
Proclīvis, *and* -us, *r, inclined downwards.*
Quadrijŭgis, *and* -us, *four-yoked.*
Semianīmis, *and* -us, *half-alive.*
Semiermis, *and* -us, *half-armed.*
Semisomnis, *and* -us, *half-asleep.*
Singulāris, *and* -ius, *single.*
Sublīmis, *and* -us, *r, high.*
Unanīmis, *r, and* -us, *unanimous.*
Violens, *r, and* -lentus, *violent.*

To the above may be added some adjectives in *er* and *is*; as *salŭber* and *-bris*, *celĕber* and *-bris*.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

§ 117. Numeral adjectives are divided into three principal classes—*Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, and *Distributive*.

I. Cardinal numbers are those which answer the question 'How many?' They are,

Unus,	*one.*	I.
Duo,	*two.*	II.
Tres,	*three.*	III.
Quatuor,	*four.*	IIII. or IV.
Quinque,	*five.*	V.
Sex,	*six.*	VI.
Septem,	*seven.*	VII.
Octo,	*eight.*	VIII.
Novem,	*nine.*	VIIII. or IX.
Decem,	*ten.*	X.
Undĕcim,	*eleven.*	XI.
Duodĕcim,	*twelve.*	XII.
Tredĕcim,	*thirteen.*	XIII.
Quatuordĕcim,	*fourteen.*	XIIII. or XIV.
Quindĕcim,	*fifteen.*	XV.
Sedĕcim, *or* sexdĕcim,	*sixteen.*	XVI.
Septendĕcim,	*seventeen.*	XVII.
Octodĕcim,	*eighteen.*	XVIII.
Novendĕcim,	*nineteen.*	XVIIII. or XIX.
Viginti,	*twenty.*	XX.
Viginti unus, *or* unus et viginti,	*twenty-one.*	XXI.
Viginti duo, *or* duo et viginti, &c.	*twenty-two.*	XXII.
Triginta,	*thirty.*	XXX.
Quadraginta,	*forty.*	XXXX. or XL.
Quinquaginta,	*fifty.*	L.
Sexaginta,	*sixty.*	LX.
Septuaginta,	*seventy.*	LXX.
Octoginta,	*eighty.*	LXXX
Nonaginta,	*ninety.*	LXXXX. or XC.
Centum,	*a hundred.*	C.
Centum unus, *or* centum et unus, &c.	*a hundred and one.*	CI.
Ducenti, -æ, -a,	*two hundred.*	CC.
Trecenti,	*three hundred.*	CCC.
Quadringenti,	*four hundred.*	CCCC.
Quingenti,	*five hundred.*	IↃ, or D.
Sexcenti,	*six hundred.*	IↃC, or DC.
Septingenti,	*seven hundred.*	IↃCC, or DCC.
Octingenti,	*eight hundred.*	IↃCCC, or DCCC.
Nongenti,	*nine hundred.*	IↃCCCC, or DCCCC.
Mille,	*a thousand.*	CIↃ, or M.

Duo millia, *or* bis mille,	*two thousand.*	CIↃCIↃ, or MM.
Quinque millia, *or* quinquies mille,	*five thousand.*	IↃↃ.
Decem millia, *or* decies mille,	*ten thousand.*	CCIↃↃ.
Quinquaginta millia, *or* quinquagies mille,	*fifty thousand.*	IↃↃↃ.
Centum millia, *or* centies mille,	*a hundred thousand.*	CCCIↃↃↃ.

Remarks.

§ 118. 1. The first three cardinal numbers are declined; those from four to a hundred inclusive are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bonus*.

For the declension of *unus* and *tres*, see §§ 107 and 109.

Duo is thus declined:—

Plural.

	M.	*F.*	*N.*
N.	du'-o,	du'-æ,	du'-o,
G.	du-ō'-rum,	du-ā'-rum,	du-ō'-rum,
D.	du-ō'-bus,	du-ā'-bus,	du-ō'-bus,
Ac.	du'-os, *or* du'-o,	du'-as,	du'-o,
V.	du'-o,	du'-æ,	du'-o,
Ab.	du-ō'-bus.	du-ā'-bus.	du-ō'-bus.

Duōrum, duārum, are often contracted into *dum*, especially when joined with *millium*.

Ambo, both, is declined like *duo*.

2. The cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, are used in the plural only.

The plural of *unus* is used with nouns which have no singular, or whose singular has a different sense from the plural; as, *una castra*, one camp; *unæ ædes*, one house. So also with nouns denoting several things considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes.

3. Thirteen, sixteen, seventeen, and eighteen, are often expressed by two numbers united by *et*; thus, *decem et tres*, *decem et sex*, *decem et septem*, *decem et octo*; in which the larger number usually precedes.

From twenty to a hundred, the smaller number with *et* is put first, or the larger generally without *et*; as, *unus et viginti*, or *viginti unus*. Above one hundred, the larger precedes, with or without *et*; as, *centum et unus*, or *centum unus*; *trecenti sexaginta sex*, or *trecenti et sexaginta sex*. *Et* is never twice used.

4. For eighteen, twenty-eight, &c., and for nineteen, twenty-nine, &c. (excepting sixty-eight and sixty-nine), a subtractive expression is more frequent than the additive form; as, *duodeviginti*, two from twenty; *undeviginti*, one from twenty; *duodetriginta*, *undetriginta*, &c. Neither *un* (*unus*) nor *duo* can be declined in these expressions.

5. The poets sometimes make use of numeral adverbs in expressing small cardinal numbers; as, *bis sex*, for *duodĕcim*; *bis centum*, for *ducenti*

Numbers above a hundred thousand are always expressed in this way; as, *decies centum millia;* but the cardinal numbers after the adverbs are sometimes omitted; as, *decies centēna*, i. e. *millia; decies*, i. e. *centum millia.*

6. *Mille* is used either as a substantive or an adjective.

When taken substantively, it is indeclinable in the singular number, and, in the plural, has *millia, millium, millibus*, &c.; as, *mille hominum*, a thousand men; *duo millia hominum*, two thousand men, &c. When *mille* is declined in the plural, the things numbered are put in the genitive, as in the preceding examples, unless a declined numeral comes between; as, *habuit tria millia trecentos milites.*

As an adjective, *mille* is plural only, and indeclinable; as, *mille homines*, a thousand men; *bis mille hominibus*, with two thousand men.

7. Capitals were used by the Romans to mark numbers. The letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X., which are, therefore, called *Numeral Letters.* I. denotes *one;* V. *five;* X. *ten;* L. *fifty;* and C. *a hundred.* By the various combinations of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

The repetition of a numeral letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two;* III. *three;* XX. *twenty;* XXX. *thirty;* CC. *two hundred*, &c. But V. and L. are never repeated.

When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater, the less takes away what it stands for from the greater; but being placed after, it adds what it stands for to the greater; thus,

IV. Four.	V. Five.	VI. Six.
IX. Nine.	X. Ten.	XI. Eleven.
XL. Forty.	L. Fifty.	LX. Sixty.
XC. Ninety.	C. A hundred.	CX. A hundred and ten.

A *thousand* was marked thus, CIↃ, which, in later times, was contracted into M. *Five hundred* is marked thus, IↃ, or, by contraction, D.

The annexing of Ↄ to IↃ makes its value ten times greater; thus, IↃↃ marks *five thousand;* and IↃↃↃ, *fifty thousand.*

The prefixing of C, together with the annexing of Ↄ, to the number CIↃ, makes its value ten times greater; thus, CCIↃↃ denotes *ten thousand;* and CCCIↃↃↃ, *a hundred thousand.* The Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no further in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, CCCIↃↃↃ, CCCIↃↃↃ, signified *two hundred thousand*, &c.

We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numeral letters. Thus, $\overline{\text{III}}$. denotes *three thousand;* $\overline{\text{X}}$., *ten thousand.*

§ **119.** II. *Ordinal* numbers are such as denote order or rank. They all end in *us*, and are declined like *bonus;* as, *primus*, first; *secundus*, second.

III. *Distributive* numbers are those which indicate an equal division among several persons or things; as, *singŭli*, one by one, or each; *bini*, two by two, or two to each, &c. They are declined like the plural of *bonus*, except that they usually have *um* for *orum* in the genitive plural.

The following table contains the ordinal and distributive numbers, and the corresponding numeral adverbs:—

	Ordinal.	*Distributive.*	*Numeral Adverbs*
1.	Primus, *first*	Singŭli.	Semel, *once.*
2.	Secundus, *second*, &c.	Bini.	Bis, *twice.*
3.	Tertius.	Terni, *or* trini.	Ter, *thrice.*
4.	Quartus.	Quaterni.	Quater, *four times.*
5.	Quintus.	Quini.	Quinquies, &c.
6.	Sextus.	Seni.	Sexies.
7.	Septĭmus.	Septēni.	Septies.
8.	Octāvus.	Octōni.	Octies.
9.	Nonus.	Novēni.	Novies.
10.	Decĭmus.	Deni.	Decies.
11.	Undecĭmus.	Undēni.	Undecies.
12.	Duodecĭmus.	Duodēni.	Duodecies.
13.	Tertius decĭmus.	Terni deni.	Terdecies.
14.	Quartus decĭmus.	Quaterni deni.	Quaterdecies.
15.	Quintus decĭmus.	Quini deni.	Quindecies.
16.	Sextus decĭmus.	Seni deni.	Sedecies.
17.	Septĭmus decĭmus.	Septēni deni.	Decies et septies.
18.	Octāvus decĭmus.	Octōni deni.	Duodevicies.
19.	Nonus decĭmus.	Novēni deni.	Undevicies.
20.	Vicesĭmus, *or* vigesĭmus.	Vicēni.	Vicies.
21.	Vicesĭmus primus.	Vicēni singŭli.	Semel et vicies.
22.	Vicesĭmus secundus.	Vicēni bini.	Bis et vicies, &c
30.	Tricesĭmus, *or* trigesĭmus.	Tricēni.	Tricies.
40.	Quadragesĭmus.	Quadragēni.	Quadragies.
50.	Quinquagesĭmus.	Quinquagēni.	Quinquagies.
60.	Sexagesĭmus.	Sexagēni.	Sexagies.
70.	Septuagesĭmus.	Septuagēni.	Septuagies.
80.	Octogesĭmus.	Octogēni.	Octogies.
90.	Nonagesĭmus.	Nonagēni.	Nonagies.
100.	Centesĭmus.	Centēni.	Centies.
200.	Ducentesĭmus.	Ducēni.	Ducenties.
300.	Trecentesĭmus.	Trecēni, *or* trecentēni.	Trecenties.
400.	Quadringentesĭmus.	Quadringēni, *or* quadringentēni.	Quadringenties.
500.	Quingentesĭmus.	Quingēni.	Quingenties.
600.	Sexcentesĭmus.	Sexcēni, *or* sexcentēni.	Sexcenties.
700.	Septingentesĭmus.	Septingēni.	Septingenties.
800.	Octingentesĭmus.	Octingēni.	Octingenties.
900.	Nongentesĭmus.	Nongēnti.	Noningenties.
1000.	Millesĭmus.	Millēni, *or* singŭla millia.	Millies.
2000.	Bis millesĭmus.	Bis millēni, *or* bina millia.	Bis millies.

Remarks.

§ 120. 1. Instead of *primus, prior* is used, if two only are spoken of. *Alter* is often used for *secundus*.

2. From thirteen to nineteen, the smaller number is usually put first, without *et*; as, *tertius decĭmus*;—sometimes the larger, with or without *et*, as, *decĭmus et tertius*, or *decĭmus tertius*.

Twenty-first, thirty-first, &c., are often expressed by *unus et vicesĭmus*,

unus et tricesimus, &c.; and twenty-second, &c., by *duo*, or *alter et vicesimus*, &c., in which *duo* is not changed. In the other compound numbers, the larger precedes without *et*, or the smaller with *et*; as, *vicesimus quartus*, or *quartus et vicesimus*.

For eighteenth, &c., to fifty-eighth, and for nineteenth, &c., to fifty-ninth, *duodevicesimus*, &c., and *undevicesimus*, &c., are often used.

3. In the distributives, eighteen, thirty-eight, forty-eight, and nineteen and twenty-nine, are often expressed by *duodevicēni*, &c., and *undevicēni*, &c.

4. Distributives are sometimes used by the poets for cardinal numbers; as, *bina spicŭla*, two darts. So likewise in prose, with nouns that want the singular; as, *binæ nuptiæ*, two weddings.

The singular of some distributives is used in the sense of a multiplicative; as, *binus*, twofold. So *ternus*, *quinus*, *septēnus*.

5. For twenty-eight times and thirty-nine times, *duodetricies* and *undequadragies* are found.

§ 121. To the preceding classes may be added the following:—

1. *Multiplicatives*, which denote how many fold. They all end in *plex*, and are declined like *felix*; as,

Simplex, *single.*	Quadrŭplex, *fourfold.*
Duplex, *twofold*, or *double.*	Quincŭplex, *fivefold.*
Triplex, *threefold.*	Centŭplex, *a hundred fold.*

2. *Proportionals*, which denote how many times one thing is greater than another; as, *duplus*, twice as great; *triplus*, *quadrŭplus*, *octŭplus*, *decŭplus*. They are declined like *bonus*.

3. *Temporals*, which denote time; as, *bimus*, two years old; *trimus*, three years old; *quadrīmus*, &c. Also, *biennis*, of two years' continuance; *quadriennis*, *quinquennis*, &c. So *bimestris*, of two months' continuance; *trimestris*, &c.

4. Those which denote *how many parts* a thing contains; as, *binarius*, of two parts; *ternarius*, &c.

5. *Interrogatives*; as, *quot*, how many? *quotus*, of what number? *quotēni*, how many each? *quoties*, how many times? Their correlatives are, *tot*, *totĭdem*, so many; *aliquot*, some; which, with *quot*, are indeclinable; *toties*, so often; *aliquoties*, several times.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 122. Adjectives may be divided into two classes—those which denote a *variable*, and those which denote an *invariable*, quality or limitation.

Thus, *bonus*, good, *altus*, high, and *opācus*, dark, denote variable attributes; but *æneus*, brazen, *triplex*, threefold, and *diurnus*, daily, do not admit of different degrees in their signification.

The relations of inferiority, equality, or superiority, which different objects bear to each other, in regard to variable qualities, are expressed in Latin in different ways.

Inferiority may be denoted by prefixing to an adjective the adverbs *minùs*, less, and *minĭmè*, least; as, *jucundus*, pleasant; *minùs jucundus*, less pleasant; *minĭmè jucundus*, least pleasant.

A small degree of a quality is indicated by *sub* prefixed to an adjective; as, *difficĭlis*, difficult; *subdifficĭlis*, somewhat difficult.

Equality may be denoted by *tam* followed by *quàm; æque* followed by *ac*, &c.; as, *hebes æque ac pecus*, as stupid as a brute.

§ 123. The relation of superiority, to which alone the name of comparison is commonly applied, is denoted either by prefixing to an adjective certain adverbs or prepositions, or by *peculiar terminations*. Various degrees of superiority are denoted with different degrees of precision, by the prepositions *per* and *præ* prefixed to adjectives, and by different adverbs, and other qualifying clauses. The terminational comparison, and its equivalent form, expressed by the adverbs *magis*, more, and *maxĭmè*, most, prefixed to the adjective, denote not a precise, but only a relative, degree of superiority.

That form of an adjective which simply denotes a quality, without reference to other degrees of the same quality, is called the *positive* degree; as, *altus*, high; *mītis*, mild.

The degrees of relative superiority are two—the *comparative* and the *superlative*.

The comparative denotes that the quality belongs to one of two objects, or sets of objects, in a greater degree than to the other; as, *altĭor*, higher; *mītĭor*, milder.

The superlative denotes that the quality belongs to one object, or set of objects, in a greater degree than to any of the rest; as, *altissĭmus*, highest; *mītissĭmus*, mildest.

Remarks.

1. The comparative is also used to denote that, at different times, or in different circumstances, a quality belongs to the same object in different degrees; as, *est sapientĭor quàm olim fuit*, he is wiser than he was formerly.

2. The comparative sometimes expresses the proportion between two qualities of the same object; as, *est doctĭor quàm sapientĭor*, he is more learned than wise; that is, his learning is greater than his wisdom.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
§ 124. The terminational comparative ends in	*ior*,	*ior*,	*ius*;

the terminational superlative in *issĭmus, issĭma, issĭmum.*

These terminations are added to the root of the positive; as,

*alt*us, *alt*ior, *alt*issĭmus; high, higher, highest.
*mit*is, *mit*ior, *mit*issĭmus; mild, milder, mildest.
felix, gen. *feli*cis, *feli*cior, *feli*cissĭmus; happy, happier, happiest.

In like manner compare

Arc′-tus, *strait.* Ca′-rus, *dear.* Cle′-mens, *gen.* -tis, *merciful.*
Ca′-pax, *capacious.* Cru-dē′-lis, *cruel.* In′-ers, *gen.* -tis, *sluggish.* § 23.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

§ 125. 1. Adjectives in *er* form their superlative by adding *rĭmus* to that termination; as, *acer*, active; gen. *acr*is; comparative, *acr*ior; superlative, *acerr*ĭmus.

In like manner *pauper, pauperrĭmus. Vetus* has a similar superlative, *veterrĭmus*, as if from *veter*.

2. Seven adjectives in *lis* form their superlative by adding *lĭmus* to the root:—

Facĭlis,	facilior,	facillĭmus,	*easy.*
Difficĭlis,	difficilior,	difficillĭmus,	*difficult.*
Gracĭlis,	gracilior,	gracillĭmus,	*slender.*
Humĭlis,	humilior,	humillĭmus,	*low.*
Imbecillis,	imbecillior,	imbecillĭmus,	*weak.*
Simĭlis,	similior,	simillĭmus,	*like.*
Dissimĭlis,	dissimilior,	dissimillĭmus,	*unlike.*

3. Five adjectives in *fĭcus* derive their comparatives and superlatives from obsolete adjectives in *ens*:—

Benefĭcus,	beneficentior,	beneficentissĭmus,	*beneficent.*
Honorifĭcus,	honorificentior,	honorificentissĭmus,	*honorable.*
Magnifĭcus,	magnificentior,	magnificentissĭmus,	*splendid.*
Munifĭcus,	munificentior,	munificentissĭmus,	*liberal.*
Malefĭcus,	————	maleficentissĭmus,	*hurtful.*

Adjectives in *dicens* and *volens* form their comparatives and superlatives regularly; but instead of those positives, forms in *dicus* and *volus* are more common; as,

Benevŏlens, *or* benevŏlus, benevolentior, benevolentissĭmus, *benevolent.*

4. These five have regular comparatives, but irregular superatives:—

Dexter,	dexterior,	dextĭmus,	*right.*
Extĕra, (*fem.*)	exterior,	extĭmus, *or* extrēmus,	*outward.*

Postĕra, (*fem.*)	posterior,	postrēmus, *or* postūmus,	*hind.*
Infĕrus,	inferior,	infīmus, *or* imus,	*low.*
Supĕrus,	superior,	suprēmus, *or* summus,	*high.*

The nominative singular of *postĕra* does not occur in the masculine, and that of *extĕra* wants good authority.

5. The following are very irregular in comparison :—

Bonus,	melior,	optīmus,	*good,*	*better,*	*best.*
Malus,	pejor,	pessīmus,	*bad,*	*worse,*	*worst.*
Magnus,	major,	maxīmus,	*great,*	*greater,*	*greatest.*
Parvus,	minor,	minīmus,	*little,*	*less,*	*least.*
Multus,	———	plurīmus,	*much,*	*more,*	*most*
Multa,	———	plurīma,			
Multum,	plus,*	plurīmum,			
Nequam,	nequior,	nequissīmus,	*worthless.*		
Frugi,	frugalior,	frugalissīmus,	*frugal.*		

All these form their comparatives and superlatives from obsolete adjectives, except *magnus*, whose regular forms are contracted.

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

§ 126. 1. Seven adjectives want the positive :—

Citerior, citīmus, *nearer.*
Deterior, deterrīmus, *worse.*
Interior, intīmus, *inner.*
Ocior, ocissīmus, *swifter.*
Prior, primus, *former.*
Propior, proxīmus, *nearer.*
Ulterior, ultīmus, *farther.*

2. Eight want the terminational comparative :—

Consultus, consultissīmus, *skilful.*
Falsus, falsissīmus, *false.*
Inclȳtus, inclytissīmus, *renowned.*
Invictus, invictissīmus, *invincible.*
Meritus, meritissīmus (rarely used), *deserving.*
Par, parissīmus, *equal.*
Persuāsus, persuasissīmum (neuter), *persuaded.*
Sacer, sacerrīmus, *sacred.*

3. Eight have very rarely the terminational comparative :—

Aprīcus, apricissīmus, *sunny.*
Bellus, bellissīmus, *fine.*
Comis, comissīmus, *courteous.*
Diversus, diversissīmus, *different.*
Fidus, fidissīmus, *faithful.*
Invītus, invitissīmus, *unwilling.*
Novus, novissīmus, *new.*
Vetus, veterrīmus, *old.*

4. The following want the terminational superlative :—

Adolescens, adolescentior, } *young.*
Juvĕnis, junior, }
Alăcer, alacrior, *active.*
Cœcus, cœcior, *blind.*
Diuturnus, diuturnior, *lasting.*
Jejūnus, jejunior, *fasting.*
Infinītus, infinitior, *unlimited.*
Ingens, ingentior, *great.*
Licens, licentior, *extravagant.*
Longinquus, longinquior, *distant.*
Opīmus, opimior, *rich.*
Proclīvis, proclivior, } *inclined*
Pronus, pronior, } *downwards.*
——— sequior, *worse.*

* See § 110.

Propinquus, propinquior, *neighboring.*	Senex, senior, *old.*
Salutāris, salutarior, *salutary.*	Silvester, *or* silvestris, silvestrior, *woody.*
Satis, *sufficient;* satius, *preferable.*	Sinister, sinisterior, *left.*
Satur, saturior, *full.*	Supinus, supinior, *lying on the back.*

The superlative of *juvĕnis* and *adolescens* is supplied by *minimus natu*, youngest; and that of *senex* by *maximus natu*, oldest. The comparatives *minor natu* and *major natu* sometimes also occur.

Most adjectives also in *ilis*, *ălis*, and *bĭlis*, and many in *ānus*, *īvus*, and *inquus*, have no terminational superlative.

5. Many adjectives have no terminational comparative or superlative. Such are,

(*a.*) Adjectives in *bundus*, *imus*, *inus*, *orus*, most in *ivus*, and those in *us* after a vowel (except *quus*). Yet *assiduus*, *egregius*, *exiguus*, *pius*, *strenuus*, and *vacuus*, are sometimes compared by change of termination.

(*b.*) The following—*almus*, *calvus*, *canus*, *cicur*, *claudus*, *degĕner*, *dĭtirus dispar*, *egĕnus*, *impar*, *invĭdus*, *lacer*, *memor*, *mirus*, *præditus*, *præcox*, *rudis*, *salvus*, *sospes*, *vulgāris*, and some others.

§ 127. The comparative and superlative may also be formed by prefixing to the positive the adverbs *magis*, more, and *maxĭmè*, most; as, *idoneus*, fit; *magis idoneus*, *maxĭmè idoneus*.

Valde, *imprīmis*, *apprīme*, *admŏdum*, &c., and the prepositions *præ* and *per*, and sometimes *perquam*, prefixed to an adjective, denote a high degree of the quality.

The force of the comparative is increased by prefixing *etiam*, even, or yet; and that of both comparative and superlative, by prefixing *longè*, or *multò*, much, far; as, *longè nobilissĭmus*, *longe melior*; *iter multò facilius*, *multò maxĭma pars*.

Quàm before the superlative renders it more emphatic; as, *quàm doctissĭmus*, extremely learned; *quàm celerrĭme*, as speedily as possible.

All adjectives whose signification admits of different degrees, if they have no terminational comparison, may be compared by means of adverbs.

Instead of the comparative and superlative degrees, the positive, with the prepositions *præ*, *ante*, *præter*, or *supra*, is sometimes used; as, *præ nobis beatus* (Cic.), happier than we; *ante alias pulchritudĭne insignis* (Liv.), most beautiful. Sometimes the preposition is used in connection with the superlative; as, *ante alios pulcherrĭmus omnes* (Virg.)

Among adjectives which denote an invariable quality or limitation, and which, therefore, cannot be compared, are those denoting matter, time, number, possession, country, part, interrogation; also compounds of *jugum*, *somnus*, *gero*, and *fero*, and many others.

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 128. Derivative adjectives are formed chiefly from nouns, from other adjectives, and from verbs.

I. Those derived from nouns and adjectives are called *denominatives*. The following are the principal classes:—

1. The termination *eus*, added to the root, denotes the material of which a thing is made; as, *aureus*, golden; *argenteus*, of silver; *ligneus*, wooden; *vitreus*, of glass; from *aurum*, *argentum*, &c.

The termination *ĭnus* has sometimes the same meaning; as, *adamantĭnus*, of adamant; *cedrĭnus*, of cedar; from *adămas* and *cedrus*.

The termination *ēūs* is found only in possessives of Greek origin; as, *Achillēūs*, of Achilles; *Sophoclēūs*, &c.

2. The terminations *ālis*, *āris*, *ilis*, *atĭlis*, *icius*, *ĭcus*, *ius*, and *īnus*, denote belonging or relating to; as, *capitālis*, relating to the life; from *caput*.

So *comitiālis*, *regālis*; *Apollināris*, *consulāris*, *populāris*; *civĭlis*, *hostĭlis*, *juvenĭlis*; *aquatĭlis*, *fluviatĭlis*; *tribunicius*, *patricius*; *bellĭcus*, *civĭcus*, *Germanĭcus*; *accusatorius*, *imperatorius*, *regius*; *canīnus*, *equīnus*, *ferīnus*; from *comitia*, *rex*, *Apollo*, *consul*, *populus*, *civis*, &c.

The termination *īlis* sometimes expresses character; as, *hostīlis*, hostile; *puerīlis*, boyish; from *hostis* and *puer*.

3. The termination *arius* generally denotes profession or occupation; as, *argentarius*, a silversmith; from *argentum*;—*coriarius*, *statuarius*; from *corium* and *statua*. When added to numeral adjectives, it denotes how many parts a thing contains. See § 121, 4.

Some of this class are properly substantives.

4. The terminations *ōsus* and *lentus* denote abundance, fulness; as, *animōsus*, full of courage; *fraudulentus*, given to fraud; from *anĭmus* and *fraus*. So *lapidōsus*, *vinōsus*, *turbulentus*, *violentus*. Before *lentus*, a connecting vowel is inserted, which is commonly *u*.

Adjectives of this class are called *amplificatives*. See § 104, 13.

5. From adjectives are formed *diminutives* in the same manner as from nouns; as, *dulcicŭlus*, sweetish; *duriuscŭlus*, somewhat hard; from *dulcis* and *durus*. So *lentŭlus*, *misellus*, *parvŭlus*, &c. See § 100, 3, and § 104, 12.

6. From the names of places, and especially of towns, are derived adjectives in *ensis*, *īnus*, *as*, and *ānus*, denoting of or belonging to such places.

Thus from *Athēnæ* is formed *Atheniensis*, Athenian; from *Cannæ*, *Cannensis*. In like manner, from *castra* and *circus* come *castrensis*, *circensis*.

Those in *inus* are formed from names of places ending in *ia* and *ium*; as, *Aricia*, *Aricinus*; *Caudium*, *Caudinus*; *Capitolium*, *Capitolinus*; *Latium*, *Latinus*. Some names of towns, of Greek origin, with other terminations, also form adjectives in *inus*; as, *Tarentum*, *Tarentinus*.

Most of those in *as* are formed from nouns in *um*; some from nouns in *a*; as, *Arpinum*, *Arpinas*; *Capēna*, *Capēnas*.

Those in *ānus* are formed from names of towns of the first declension, or from certain common nouns; as, *Alba*, *Albānus*; *Roma*, *Romānus*; *Cumæ*, *Cumānus*; *Thebæ*, *Thebānus*;—*fons*, *fontānus*; *mons*, *montānus*; *urbs*, *urbānus*.

Adjectives with the termination *ānus* are also formed from names of men; as, *Sulla*, *Sullānus*; *Tullius*, *Tullianus*.

Names of towns in *polis* form adjectives in *politānus*; as, *Neapŏlis*, *Neapolitānus*.

Greek names of towns generally form adjectives in *ius*; as, *Rhodus*, *Rhodius*; *Lacedæmon*, *Lacedæmonius*;—but those in *a* form them in *æus*; as, *Larissa*, *Larissæus*; *Smyrna*, *Smyrnæus*.

7. A large class of derivative adjectives, though formed from nouns, have the terminations of perfect participles. They generally signify *wearing* or *furnished with*; as,

alātus, winged; *barbātus*, bearded; *galeātus*, helmeted; *auritus*, long-eared; *turrītus*, turreted; *cornūtus*, horned; from *ala*, *barba*, *galea*, *auris*, &c.

§ 129. II. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *verbal* adjectives. Such are the following classes:—

1. The termination *bundus*, added to the first root of the verb, with a connecting vowel, which is commonly that of the verb, has the general meaning of the present participle; as,

errabundus, *moribundus*, from *erro*, *morior*, and equivalent to *errans*, *moriens*. In many the meaning is somewhat strengthened; as, *gratulabundus*, full of congratulations; *lacrimabundus*, weeping profusely.

Most verbals in *bundus* are from verbs of the first conjugation, a few from those of the third, and but one from the second and fourth respectively.

Some verbal adjectives in *cundus* have a similar sense; as, *rubicundus*, *verecundus*, from *rubeo* and *vereor*.

2. The termination *ĭdus*, added to the root, especially of neuter verbs, denotes the quality or state expressed by the verb; as,

algĭdus, cold; *calĭdus*, warm; *madĭdus*, moist; *rapĭdus*, rapid; from *algeo*, *caleo*, *madeo*, *rapio*.

3. The termination *bĭlis*, added to the root of a verb, with its connecting vowel, denotes passively, capability, or desert; as,

amabĭlis, worthy to be loved; *credĭbilis*, deserving credit; *placabĭlis*, easy to be appeased; from *amo*, *credo*, *placo*.

In adjectives of this form, derived from verbs of the third conjugation, the connecting vowel is *i*; sometimes also in those from verbs of the second conjugation, i is used instead of *e*; as, *horribilis*, *terribilis*, from *horreo* and *terreo*.

This termination is sometimes added to the third root, with a change of *u* into *i*; as, *flexibilis*, *coctibilis*, *sensibilis*, from *flecto* (*flexu*), &c.

4. The termination *ĭlis*, added either to the first root of a verb, or to the third root, after *u* is removed, has usually a passive, but sometimes an active sense; as,

agĭlis, active; *flexĭlis*, easy to be bent; *ductĭlis*, ductile; *sutĭlis*, sewed; *coctĭlis*, baked; *fertĭlis*, fertile; from *ago*, &c.

5. The termination *icius* or *itius*, added to the third root of the verb, after *u* is removed, has a passive sense, as *fictitius*, feigned; *conductitius*, to be hired; *supposititius*, substituted, from *fingo* (*fictu*), &c.

6. The termination *ax*, added to the root of a verb, denotes an inclination, often one that is faulty; as, *audax*, audacious; *loquax*, talkative; *rapax*, rapacious; from *audeo*, *loquor*, *rapio*.

§ 130. III. Adjectives derived from participles, and retaining their form, are called *participials*; as, *amans*, fond of; *doctus*, learned.

IV. Some adjectives are derived from adverbs, and are called *adverbials*; as, *crastĭnus*, of to-morrow; *hodiernus*, of this day; from *cras* and *hodie*.

V. Some adjectives are derived from prepositions, and may be called *prepositionals*; as, *contrarius*, contrary, from *contra*; *postĕrus*, subsequent, from *post*.

COMPOSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 131. Compound adjectives are formed variously:—

1. Of two nouns; as, *capripes*, goat-footed—of *caper* and *pes*; *ignicŏmus*, having fiery hair—of *ignis* and *coma*.

2. Of a noun and an adjective; as, *noctivăgus*, wandering in the night—of *nox* and *vagus*.

3. Of a noun and a verb; as, *cornĭger*, bearing horns—of *cornu* and *gero*; *letĭfer*, bringing death—of *letum* and *fero*. So *carnivŏrus*, *causidĭcus*, *ignivŏmus*, *lucifŭgus*, *partĭceps*.

4. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *æquævus*, of the same age—of *æquus* and *ævum*; *celerĭpes*, swift-footed—of *celer* and *pes*. So *centimănus*, *decennis*, *magnanĭmus*, *miserĭcors*, *unanĭmis*

5. Of two adjectives; as, *centumgemĭnus*, having a hundred arms; *multicăvus*, having many cavities.

6. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *brevilŏquens*, speaking briefly—of *brevis* and *loquor; magnifĭcus*, magnificent—of *magnus* and *facio*.

7. Of an adjective and a termination; as, *qualiscunque, quotcunque, uterque*.

Remark. When the former part of the compound is a noun or adjective, it usually ends in *i*. If the second word begins with a vowel, an elision takes place; as, *magnanĭmus*—of *magnus* and *anĭmus*.

8. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *bicorpor*, two-bodied—of *bis* and *corpus*.

9. Of an adverb and an adjective; as, *malefīdus*, unfaithful; *malesānus*, insane.

10. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *benefĭcus*, beneficent—of *bene* and *facio; malevŏlus*, malevolent—of *male* and *volo*.

11. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *amens*, mad—of *a* and *mens*. So *consors, decŏlor, deformis, implŭmis, inermis*.

12. Of a preposition and an adjective; as, *concăvus*, concave; *infĭdus*, unfaithful. So *improvĭdus, percārus, prædīves, subalbĭdus*.

13. Of a preposition and a verb; as, *continuus*, continual—of *con* and *teneo; inscius*, ignorant—of *in* and *scio*. So *præcipuus, promiscuus, superstes*.

Remark. When the former part is a preposition, its final consonant is sometimes changed, to adapt it to that which follows it; as, *imprŭdens*—of *in* and *prudens*.

PRONOUNS.

§ 132. A pronoun is a word which supplies the place of a noun.

There are eighteen simple pronouns:—

Ego, *I*.	Hic, *this* or *he*.	Suus, *his, hers, its*, &c.
Tu, *thou*.	Is, *that* or *he*.	Cujus? *whose?*
Sui, *of himself*, &c.	Quis? *who?*	Noster, *our*.
Ille, *that* or *he*.	Qui, *who*.	Vester, *your*.
Ipse, *himself*.	Meus, *my*.	Nostras, *of our country*.
Iste, *that* or *he*.	Tuus, *thy*.	Cujas? *of what country?*

Three of these—*ego*, *tu*, and *sui*—are substantives; the remaining fifteen, and all the compound pronouns, are adjectives.

Ego and *tu* are a species of appellatives of general application. *Ego* is used by a speaker, to designate himself; *tu*, to designate the person whom he addresses. *Ego* is of the first person, *tu* of the second.

Sui is also a general appellative, of the third person, and has always a reflexive signification. The oblique cases of *ego* and *tu* are also used reflexively, when the subject of the proposition is of the first or second person.

The remaining pronouns are adjectives, as they serve to limit the meaning of substantives; and they are pronouns, because, like substantive pronouns, they may designate any object in certain situations or circumstances.

Meus, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, and *nostras*, have the same extent of signification as the substantive pronouns from which they are derived, and are equivalent to the genitive cases of those pronouns.

Pronouns, like substantives and adjectives, are declined; but they all want the vocative, except *tu*, *meus*, *noster*, and *nostras*. *Sui* also, from the nature of its signification, wants the nominative in both numbers.

The substantive pronouns take the gender of the objects which they denote. The adjective pronouns, like adjectives, have three genders.

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 133. The substantive pronouns are thus declined:—

Singular.

N. e'-go, *I.*	tu, *thou.*	———
G. me'-i, *of me.*	tu'-i, *of thee.*	su'-i, *of himself, herself, itself.*
D. mi'-hi, *to me.*	tib'-i,* *to thee.*	sib'-i,* *to himself*, &c.
Ac. me, *me.*	te, *thee.*	se, *himself*, &c.
V. ———	tu, *O thou.*	———
Ab. me, *with me.*	te, *with thee.*	se, *with himself*, &c.

Plural.

N. nos, *we.*	vos, *ye* or *you.*	———
G. nos'-trûm *or* nos'-tri, *of us.*	ves'-trûm *or* ves'-tri, *of you.*	su'-i, *of themselves.*
D. no'-bis, *to us.*	vo'-bis, *to you.*	sib'-i, *to themselves.*
Ac. nos, *us.*	vos, *you.*	se, *themselves.*
V. ———	vos, *O ye* or *you.*	———
Ab. no'-bis, *with us.*	vo'-bis, *with you.*	se, *with themselves.*

Remarks.

1. *Mihi* is very rarely contracted into *mî*. So *min'* for *mihine*, Pers.

2. The syllable *met* is sometimes annexed to the substantive pronouns, in an intensive sense, either with or without *ipse*; as, *egŏmet*, I myself;

* See § 18, 2.

mihimet ipsi, for myself. It is not annexed, however, to the genitives plural, nor to *tu* in the nominative or vocative. In these cases of *tu*, *tute* or *tutĕmet* is used. In the accusative and ablative, *tete* in the singular, and *sese* in both numbers, are employed intensively. *Mepte*, *med*, and *ted*, for *me* and *te*, and *tis* for *tui*, occur in the comic writers.

3. *Nostrûm* and *vestrûm* are contracted from *nostrōrum*, *nostrārum*, and *vestrōrum*, *vestrārum*.

4. The preposition *cum* is affixed to the ablatives of these pronouns in both numbers; as, *mecum*, *nobiscum*, &c.

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 134. Adjective pronouns may be divided into the following classes:—*demonstrative*, *intensive*, *relative*, *interrogative*, *indefinite*, *possessive*, and *patrial*.

NOTE. Some pronouns belong to two of these classes.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Demonstrative pronouns are such as specify what object is meant.

They are *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, and *is*, and their compounds, and are thus declined:—

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	il′-le,	il′-la,	il′-lud,	il′-li,	il′-læ,	il′-la,
G.	il-lī′-us,*	il-lī′-us,	il-lī′-us,	il-lō′-rum,	il-lā′-rum,	il-lō′-rum,
D.	il′-li,	il′-li,	il′-li,	il′-lis,	il′-lis,	il′-lis,
Ac.	il′-lum,	il′-lam,	il′-lud,	il′-los,	il′-las,	il′-la,
V.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Ab.	il′-lo.	il′-lâ.	il′-lo.	il′-lis.	il′-lis.	il′-lis.

Iste is declined like *ille*.

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	hic,	hæc,	hoc,	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G.	hu′-jus,	hu′-jus,	hu′-jus,	ho′-rum,	ha′-rum,	ho′-rum,
D.	huic,†	huic,	huic,	his,	his,	his,
Ac.	hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	hos,	has,	hæc,
V.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Ab.	hoc.	hac.	hoc.	his.	his.	his.

* See § 15. † Pronounced *hike*. See § 9.

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	is,	e'-a,	id,	i'-i,	e'-æ,	e'-a,
G.	e'-jus,	e'-jus,	e'-jus,	e-ō'-rum,	e-ā'-rum,	e-ō'-rum,
D.	e'-i,	e'-i,	e'-i,	i'-is *or* e'-is,	i'-is *or* e'-is,	i'-is *or* e'-is,
Ac.	e'-um,	e'-am,	id,	e'-os,	e'-as,	e'-a,
V.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Ab.	e'-o.	e'-â.	e'-o.	i'-is *or* e'-is.	i'-is *or* e'-is.	i'-is *or* e'-is.

Remarks.

1. Instead of *ille*, *ollus* was anciently used; whence *olli* in Virgil. *Illæ*, fem., for *illius* and *illi*, is found in Lucretius and Cato, as also *hæc* for *hæ* in Plautus and Terence. *Eii* for *ei*, *im* for *eum*. and *ibus* and *ilbus* for *iis*, occur in Plautus; and *eæ*, fem., for *ei*, and *eābus* for *iis*, in Cato.

2. From *ecce*, lo! and the accusative of *ille*, *iste*, and *is*, are formed *eccillum*, *eccillam*, *eccillud*, *eccum*, *eccam*, &c., in both numbers. *Eccillum* is sometimes contracted into *ellum*. *Ecca*, nom. fem., also occurs.

3. *Istic* and *illic* are compounded of *iste hic*, and *ille hic*. The former sometimes retains the aspirate, as *isthic*. They are more emphatic than *ille* and *iste*.

Istic is thus declined:—

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	ist'-ic,	ist'-æc,	ist'-oc, *or* ist'-uc,	*N.* } ——	——	ist'-æc.
Ac.	ist'-unc,	ist'-anc,	ist'-oc, *or* ist'-uc.	*Ac.* }		
Ab.	ist'-oc.	ist'-ac.	ist'-oc.			

Illic is declined in the same manner.

4. *Ce*, intensive, is sometimes added to the several cases of *hic*, and rarely to some cases of the other demonstrative pronouns; as, *hujusce*, *hosce*, *hasce*, *hisce*; *illāce*, *istāce*, *ejusce*, *istæcce*, *iisce*. When *ne*, interrogative, is also annexed, *ce* becomes *ci*; as, *hæccine*, *hoscine*, *hiscine*; *istuccine*, *istaccine*, *istoscine*; *illiccine*, *illanccine*.

5. To the genitives singular of the demonstrative and relative pronouns, *modi*, the genitive of *modus*, is often annexed, either with or without an intervening particle; as, *hujusmŏdi*, or *hujuscemŏdi*, of this sort; *cujus mŏdi*, &c.

6. *Dem* is annexed to *is*, forming *idem*, the same, which is thus declined:—

	Singular.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*
N.	i'-dem,	e'-ă-dem,	i'-dem,
G.	e-jus -dem,	e-jus'-dem,	e-jus'-dem,
D.	e-i'-dem,	e-i'-dem,	e-i'-dem,
Ac.	e-un'-dem,	e-an'-dem,	i'-dem,
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	e-ō'-dem.	e-ā'-dem.	e-ō'-dem.

Plural.

	M.	*F.*	*N.*
N.	i-ī′-dem,	e-æ′-dem,	e′-ă-dem,
G.	e-o-run′-dem,	e-a-run′-dem,	e-o-run′-dem,
D.	e-is′-dem, *or* i-is′-dem,	e-is′-dem, *or* i-is′-dem,	e-is′-dem, *or* i-is′-dem,
Ac.	e-os′-dem,	e-as′-dem,	e′-ă-dem,
V.	———	———	———
Ab.	e-is′-dem, *or* i-is′-dem.	e-is′-dem, *or* i-is′-dem.	e-is′-dem, *or* i-is′-dem.

NOTE. In compound pronouns, *m* before *d* is changed into *n*; as, *eundem*, &c.

INTENSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 135. Intensive pronouns are such as serve to render an object emphatic.

To this class belong *ipse*, and the intensive compounds already mentioned. §§ 133, 2, and 134, 4.

Ipse is thus declined:—

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	ip′-se,	ip′-sa,	ip′-sum,	ip′-si,	ip′-sæ,	ip′-sa,
G.	ip-sĭ′-us,	ip-sĭ′-us,	ip-sĭ′-us,	ip-sō′-rum,	ip-sā′-rum,	ip-sō′-rum,
D.	ip′-si,	ip′-si,	ip′-si,	ip′-sis,	ip′-sis,	ip′-sis,
Ac.	ip′-sum,	ip′-sam,	ip′-sum,	ip′-sos,	ip′-sas,	ip′-sa,
V.	———	———	———	———	———	———
Ab.	ip′-so.	ip′-sâ.	ip′-so.	ip′-sis.	ip′-sis.	ip′-sis.

Remarks.

1. *Ipse* is commonly subjoined to nouns or pronouns; as, *Jupĭter ipse, tu ipse*, Jupiter himself, &c.

2. A nominative *ipsus*, and a superlative *ipsissĭmus*, his very self, are found in comic writers.

3. The compounds *eapse, eampse*, and *reapse*, are contracted for *eâ ipsâ, eam ipsam*, and *re ipsâ*.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 136. Relative pronouns are such as relate to a preceding noun.

They are *qui*, who, and the compounds *quicunque* and *quisquis*, whoever.

In a general sense, the demonstrative pronouns are often relatives; but the name is commonly appropriated to those above specified. They serve

to introduce a proposition, limiting or explaining a preceding noun, to which they relate, and which is called the *antecedent*.

Qui is thus declined :—

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	qui,	quæ,	quod,	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cu'-jus,	cu'-jus,	cu'-jus,	quo'-rum,	qua'-rum,	quo'-rum,
D.	cui,*	cui,	cui,	qui'-bus,	qui'-bus,	qui'-bus,
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quod,	quos,	quas,	quæ,
V.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Ab.	quo.	quâ.	quo.	qui'-bus.	qui'-bus.	qui'-bus.

Remarks.

1. *Qui* is sometimes used for the ablative singular, in all genders, and rarely for the ablative plural. To the ablatives *quo*, *quâ*, and *qui*, *cum* is sometimes annexed; but it is usually placed before the ablative plural.

2. *Queis* and *quis* are sometimes used in the dative and ablative plural for *quibus*. *Cujus* and *cui* were anciently written *quojus* and *quoi*.

Quicunque, or *quicumque*, is declined like *qui*.

Qui is sometimes separated from *cunque*, by the interposition of one or more words.

Quisquis is thus declined :—

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*
N.	quis'-quis,	quis'-quis,	quid'-quid,	*N.* qui'-qui,
Ac.	quem'-quem,	————	quid'-quid,	*D.* qui-bus'-quĭ-bus.
Ab.	quo'-quo.	qua'-quâ.	quo'-quo.	

NOTE. *Quicquid* is sometimes used for *quidquid*. *Quiqui* for *quisquis* occurs in Plautus.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 137. Interrogative pronouns are such as serve to inquire which of a number of objects is intended.

They are

Quis ? Quisnam ?	*who ? what ?*	Ecquis ? Ecquisnam ?	*is any one ?*	Cujus ? *whose ?*
Qui ? Quinam ?	*which ? what ?*	Numquis ?		Cujas ? *of what country ?*

1. *Quis* is used substantively; *qui*, adjectively. *Qui* is declined like *qui* the relative.

* Pronounced *ki*. See § 9.

Quis is thus declined :—

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	quis,	quæ,	quid,	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cu'-jus,	cu'-jus,	cu'-jus,	quo'-rum,	qua'-rum,	quo'-rum,
D.	cui,	cui,	cui,	qui'-bus,	qui'-bus,	qui'-bus,
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quid,	quos,	quas,	quæ,
V.	———	———	———	———	———	———
Ab.	quo.	quâ.	quo.	qui'-bus.	qui'-bus.	qui'-bus.

Remarks on QUIS *and* QUI.

(*a.*) *Quis* is sometimes used by comic writers in the feminine, and even in the neuter. So also *quisnam*, *quisque* and *quisquam* occur as feminine.

(*b.*) *Quî* is used for the ablative of *quis* and *qui*, in all genders, as it is for that of the relative *qui*.

(*c.*) *Quis* and *qui* have sometimes the signification of indefinite pronouns (some one, any one), especially after *ec*, *si*, *ne*, *nisi*, *num*, *quo*, *quanto*, and *quum*. They are also occasionally used in the sense of *qualis?* what sort?

2. The compounds *quisnam* and *quinam* have the signification and declension of *quis* and *qui* respectively.

3. *Ecquis* and *numquis*, or *nunquis*, are declined and used like *quis*.

But *ecqua* is sometimes found in the nominative singular feminine; and the neuter plural of *nunquis* is *nunqua*.

Ecqui and *nunqui* also occur, declined like the interrogative *qui*, and, like that, used adjectively.

4. *Ecquisnam* is declined like *ecquis;* but it is found only in the singular;—in the nominative in all genders, and in the ablative masculine.

5. *Cujus* is also defective:—

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*F.*
N.	cu'-jus,	cu'-ja,	cu'-jum,	*N.* cu'-jæ,
Ac.	cu'-jum,	cu'-jam,	———	*Ac.* cu'-jas.
Ab.	———	cu'-jâ.	———	

6. *Cujas* is declined like an adjective of one termination; *cujas*, *cujātis*. It is found in the genitive and accusative singular, and the nominative plural.

NOTE. The interrogative pronouns are sometimes used, in dependent clauses, when there is no question. They are then called *indefinites;* as, *nescio quis sit*, I know not who he is. *Qui*, in this sense, is found for *quis;* as, *qui sit apĕrit*, he discloses who he is.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

§ 138. Indefinite pronouns are such as denote an object, in a general manner, without indicating a particular individual. They are

Aliquis, *some one.*	Quisquam, *any one.*	Quidam, *a certain one*
Siquis, *if any.*	Quispiam, *some one.*	Quilibet, } *any one you*
Nequis, *lest any.*	Unusquisque, *each.*	Quivis, } *please.*
Quisque, *every one.*		

1. *Aliquis* is thus declined :—

Singular.

	M.	*F.*	*N.*
N.	al'-i-quis,	al'-i-qua,	al'-i-quod, *or* quid,
G.	al-i-cū'-jus,	al-i-cū'-jus,	al-i-cu'-jus,
D.	al'-i-cui,	al'-i-cui,	al'-i-cui,
Ac.	al'-i-quem,	al'-i-quam,	al'-i-quod, *or* quid,
V.	———	———	———
Ab.	al'-i-quo.	al'-i-quâ.	al'-i-quo.

Plural.

	M.	*F.*	*N.*
N.	al'-i-qui,	al'-i-quæ,	al'-i-qua,
G.	al-i-quō'-rum,	al-i-quā'-rum,	al-i-quō'-rum,
D.	a-liq'-uĭ-bus, *	a-liq'-uĭ-bus,	a-liq'-uĭ-bus,
Ac.	al'-i-quos,	al'-i-quas,	al'-i-qua,
V.	———	———	———
Ab.	a-liq'-uĭ-bus.	a-liq'-uĭ-bus.	a-liq'-uĭ-bus.

2. *Siquis* and *nequis* are declined in the same manner.

But they sometimes have *quæ* in the nominative singular feminine.

Aliqui, siqui, and *nequi,* are found for *aliquis,* &c., and the ablatives *aliqui* and *siqui* also occur.

Aliquid, siquid, and *nequid,* like *quid,* are used substantively; *aliquod,* &c., like *quod,* are used adjectively.

3. *Quisque, quisquam,* and *quispiam,* are declined like *quis.*

But in the neuter singular, *quisque* has *quodque, quidque,* or *quicque; quisquam* has *quidquam* or *quicquam;* and *quispiam* has *quodpiam, quidpiam,* or *quippiam.*

Quisquam wants the plural, and *quispiam* is scarcely used in that number, except in the nominative feminine, *quæpiam.*

4. *Unusquisque* is compounded of *unus* and *quisque,* and both words are declined.

Thus *unusquisque, uniuscujusque, unicuique, unumquemque,* &c. The neuter is *unumquodque,* or *unumquidque.* It has no plural.

5. *Quidam, quilibet,* and *quivis,* are declined like *qui,* except that they have *quod,* or *quid,* in the neuter.

Quidam has usually *n* before *d* in the accusative singular and genitive plural; as, *quendam, quorundam,* &c.

* Pronounced *a-lik'-we-bus.* See §§ 9, and 19, 4.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 139. The possessive are derived from the substantive pronouns, and from *quis*, and designate something belonging to their primitivés.

They are *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, and *cujus*. *Meus*, *tuus*, and *suus*, are declined like *bonus*. (§ 105.) *Meus* has in the vocative singular masculine *mi*, and very rarely *meus*.

Cujus is also declined like *bonus*; but it is defective. See § 137, 5.

Noster and *vester* are declined like *piger*. See § 106.

Remarks.

1. The termination *pte* intensive is sometimes annexed to the ablative singular of the possessive pronouns; as, *suopte pondĕre*, by its own weight; *suapte manu*, by his own hand.

2. *Suus*, like its primitive *sui*, has always a reflexive signification. These pronouns are hence called *reflexive*. *Meus*, *tuus*, *noster*, and *vester*, are also used reflexively, when the subject of the proposition is of the first or second person. See § 132.

PATRIAL PRONOUNS.

These are *nostras* and *cujas*. See § 137, 6. They are declined like adjectives of one termination; as, *nostras*, *nostrātis*

VERBS.

§ 140. A verb is a word by which something is affirmed of a person or thing.

That of which any thing is affirmed is called the *subject* of the verb.

A verb either expresses an action or state; as, *puer legit*, the boy *reads*; *virtus laudātur*, virtue *is praised*; *equus currit*, the horse *runs*; *aqua calet*, the water *is warm*;—or it connects an attribute with a subject; as, *terra est rotunda*, the earth *is* round.

All verbs belong to the former of these classes, except *sum*, I am, the most common use of which is, to connect an attribute with a subject. When so used, it is called a *copula*.

§ 141. Verbs are either *active* or *neuter*.

I. An *active verb* expresses such an action as requires the addition of an object to complete the sense; as, *amo te*, I love thee; *sequĭtur consŭlem*, he follows the consul.

Most active verbs may express action in two ways, and, for

this purpose, have two forms, which are called the *active* and *passive voices*.

1. A verb in the *active voice* represents the agent as *acting upon* some person or thing, called the *object*; as, *puer legit librum*, the boy is reading a book.

2. A verb in the *passive voice* represents the object as *being acted upon* by the agent; as, *liber legĭtur a puĕro*, a book is read by the boy.

REMARK. By comparing the two preceding examples, it will be seen that they have the same meaning. The passive voice may thus be substituted at pleasure for the active, by making the object of the active the subject of the passive, and placing the subject of the active in the ablative case, with or without the preposition *a* or *ab*, according as it is a voluntary or involuntary agent. The active form is used to direct the attention especially to the agent as acting; the passive, chiefly to exhibit the object as acted upon. In the one case the object, in the other the agent, is frequently omitted, and left indefinite; as, *puer legit*, the boy is reading, i. e. *librum, litĕras*, &c., a book, a letter, &c.; *virtus laudātur*, virtue is praised, i. e. *ab hominĭbus*, by men.

The two voices are distinguished from each other by peculiar terminations.

§ 142. II. A *neuter verb* expresses such an action or state, as does not require the addition of an object to complete the sense; as, *equus currit*, the horse runs; *ego sedeo*, I sit.

Many verbs, in Latin, are considered as neuter, which are usually translated by an active verb in English. Thus *indulgeo*, I indulge, *noceo*, I hurt, *pareo*, I obey, are reckoned among neuter verbs. In strictness, such verbs denote rather a state than an action, and their sense would be more exactly expressed by the verb *to be* with an adjective; as, "I am indulgent, I am hurtful," &c. Some verbs in Latin, which do not usually take an object after them, are yet active, since the object is omitted by an ellipsis. Thus *credo* properly signifies *to intrust*, and, in this sense, admits an object; as, *credo tibi salūtem meam*, I intrust my safety to you; but it usually means *to believe*; as, *crede mihi*, believe me.

REMARK 1. Neuter verbs have, in general, only the form of the active voice. They are, however, sometimes used impersonally in the passive voice.

2. The neuter verbs *audeo*, I dare, *fido*, I trust, *gaudeo*, I rejoice, and *soleo*, I am wont, have the passive form in the perfect and its cognate tenses; as, *ausus sum*, I dared. These verbs are called *neuter passives*.

3. The neuter verbs *vapŭlo*, I am beaten, and *veneo*, I am sold, have an active form, but a passive meaning, and are called *neutral passives*.

4. Some verbs, both active and neuter, have only the form of the passive voice. These are called *deponent verbs*, from *depōno*, to lay aside, as having laid aside their active form, and their passive signification; as, *sequor*, I follow; *morior*, I die.

NOTE. Verbs are sometimes said to be *transitive* and *intransitive*, rather

than active and neuter. The former terms are more significant, but the latter are more commonly used, and have the same meaning.

To verbs, besides voices, belong *moods*, *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons*.

MOODS.

§ 143. Moods are forms of the verb, denoting the *manner* of the action or state expressed by the verb. There are in Latin four moods—the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, the *imperative*, and the *infinitive*.

1. The *indicative* mood is that form of the verb which is used in independent and absolute assertions; as, *amo*, I love; *amābo*, I shall love.

2. The *subjunctive* mood is that form of the verb which is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind; as, *si me* obsecret, *redībo;* if *he entreat* me, I will return.

3. The *imperative* mood is that form of the verb which is used in commanding, exhorting, or entreating; as, *ama*, love thou.

4. The *infinitive* mood is that form of the verb which is used to denote an action or state indefinitely, without limiting it to any person or thing as its subject; as, *amāre*, to love.

TENSES.

§ 144. Tenses are forms of the verb, denoting the *times* of the action or state expressed by the verb.

1. Time admits of a threefold division, into present, past, and future; and, in each of these times, an action may be represented either as going on, or as completed. From these two divisions arise the six tenses of a Latin verb, each of which is distinguished by its peculiar terminations.

2. They are called the *present*, *imperfect*, *future*, *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* tenses.

Present	action	*amo*, I love, *or* am loving; *Present tense.*
Past	not com-	*amābam*, I was loving; *Imperfect tense.*
Future	pleted;	*amābo*, I shall love, *or* be loving; *Future tense.*
Present	action	*amāvi*, I have loved; *Perfect tense.*
Past	com-	*amavĕram*, I had loved; *Pluperfect tense.*
Future	pleted;	*amavĕro*, I shall have loved; *Future perfect tense*

3. There is the same number of tenses in the passive voice, in which actions not completed are represented by simple forms of the verb, and those which are completed by compound forms.

Present	action	*amor*, I am loved; *Present tense.*
Past	not com-	*amābar*, I was loved; *Imperfect tense.*
Future	pleted;	*amābor*, I shall be loved; *Future tense.*

Present	action	*amātus sum*, or *fui*, I have been loved; *Perfect tense.*
Past	com-	*amātus eram*, or *fuĕram*, I had been loved; *Pluperfect.*
Future	pleted;	*amātus ero*, or *fuĕro*, I shall have been loved; *Future Perfect.*

§ 145. I. The *present tense* represents an action as now going on, and not completed; as, *amo*, I love, or am loving.

1. Any existing custom, or general truth, may be expressed by this tense; as, *apud Parthos, signum datur tympăno;* among the Parthians, the signal is given by a drum.

2. The present tense may also denote an action which has existed for some time, and which still exists; as, *tot annos bella gero;* for so many years I have waged, and am still waging war.

3. The present tense is sometimes used to describe past actions, in order to give animation to discourse; as, *desiliunt ex equis, provŏlant in primum;* they dismount, they fly forward to the front.

II. The *imperfect tense* represents an action as going on at some past time, but not then completed; as, *amābam*, I was loving.

1. The imperfect sometimes denotes repeated or customary past action; as, *legēbam*, I was wont to read.

2. It may also denote an action which had existed for some time, and which was still existing at a certain past time; as, *audiēbat jamdūdum verba;* he had long heard, and was still hearing the words.

3. This tense is sometimes used for the present, in letters, with reference to the time of their being read; as, *expectābam*, I was expecting, (when I wrote).

4. The imperfect also sometimes denotes intention or preparation to act at some past time; as, *olim cùm dabam*, formerly when I was ready to give.

III. The *future tense* denotes that an action will be going on hereafter, without reference to its completion; as, *amābo*, I shall love or be loving.

IV. The *perfect tense* represents an action either as just completed, or as completed in some indefinite past time; as, *amāvi*, I have loved, *or* I loved.

In the former sense, it is called the *perfect definite;* in the latter, which is more common, it is called the *perfect indefinite.*

V. The *pluperfect tense* represents a past action as completed, at or before the time of some other past action or event; as, *littĕras* scripsĕram, *antĕquam nuncius venit; I had written* the letter, before the messenger arrived.

VI. The *future perfect tense* denotes that an action will be completed, at or before the time of some other future action or event; as, *cùm* cœnavĕro, *proficiscar;* when *I shall have supped,* I will go.

This tense is often, but improperly, called the *future subjunctive.* It has the signification of the indicative mood, and corresponds to the *second future* in English.

Note. The present, imperfect, and future tenses passive, in English, do not express the exact sense of those tenses in Latin, as denoting an action which is, was, or will be, going on at a certain time. Thus *laudor* signifies, not "I am praised," but "I am in the act of being praised," or, if such an expression is admissible, "I am being praised."

Remark 1. The six tenses above enumerated are found only in the indicative mood.

2. The subjunctive mood has the present and past, but no future tenses.

The tenses of the subjunctive mood have less definiteness of meaning, in regard to time, than those of the indicative. Thus the present and perfect, besides their common signs, *may* or *can, may have* or *can have,* must, in certain connections, be translated by *might, could, would,* or *should; might have, could have,* &c. The tenses of this mood must often, also, be translated by the corresponding tenses of the indicative. For a more full account of the signification of the tenses of the subjunctive mood, see § 260.

3. The imperative mood has but one tense, which is called the *present,* but which, from its nature, has a reference to the future.

4. The infinitive mood has three tenses—the present, perfect, and future; the first of which denotes an incomplete, the second a completed action, and the last an action to be performed.

NUMBERS.

§ 146. Numbers are forms of the verb, denoting the unity or plurality of its subject. Verbs, like nouns, have two numbers—the singular and the plural.

PERSONS.

§ 147. Persons are forms of the verb, appropriated to the different persons of the subject, and accordingly called the first, second, and third persons.

1. As the imperative mood expresses the action which a second or third person is required to perform, it has terminations corresponding to those persons only.

2. The signification of the infinitive mood not being limited to any subject, it admits no change to express either number or person.

3. The following are the terminations of the different persons of each number, in the indicative and subjunctive moods in both voices :—

	Active.			*Passive.*		
Person.	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Singular.	—	s,	t;	r,	ris,	tur;
Plural.	mus,	tis,	nt.	mur,	mĭni,	ntur.

These may be called *personal* terminations.

Remark 1. The first person singular, in the active voice, ends either in o or in a vowel.

2. The perfect indicative active is irregular in the second person singular, and in one of the forms of the third person plural.

3. The passive form above given applies to the simple tenses only.

4. The pronouns of the first and second persons are seldom expressed in Latin as subjects of a finite verb, the several persons being sufficiently distinguished by the terminations of the verb.

PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

§ 148. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb, and partaking of its meaning, but having the form of an adjective.

Like a verb, it has different *voices* and *tenses;* like an adjective, it has *declension** and *gender;* and like both, it has two *numbers.*

Active verbs have usually *four* participles—two in the active voice, a present and a future; as, *amans,* loving; *amatūrus,* about to love;—and two in the passive voice, a perfect and a future; as, *amātus,* loved, *or* having been loved; *amandus,* to be loved.

Neuter verbs have usually only the participles of the active voice.

Deponent verbs, both active and neuter, may have the participles of both voices.

2. *Gerunds* are verbal nouns, used only in the oblique cases, and expressing the action or state of the verb. Like other ab-

* See §§ 105 and 111.

stract nouns, they are found only in the singular number; as, *amandi*, of loving, &c.

3. *Supines* also are verbal nouns of the fourth declension in the accusative and ablative singular; as, *amātum*, to love; *amātu*, to be loved. The supine in *um* is called the *former* supine; that in *u*, the *latter*. The former is commonly used in an active, the latter in a passive sense.

CONJUGATION.

§ 149. The conjugation of a verb is the regular formation and arrangement of its several parts, according to their voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

There are four conjugations, which are characterized by the vowel before *re* in the present of the infinitive active.

In the first conjugation, it is *ā* long;
In the second, ... *ē* long;
In the third, ... *ĕ* short;
In the fourth, ... *ī* long.

NOTE. *Do*, *dare*, to give, and such of its compounds as are of the first conjugation, have *ă* short before *re*.

§ 150. A verb consists of two parts—the *root*, and the *verbal termination*.

1. The root of a verb consists of those letters which are not changed by inflection; as, *am* in amo, amābam, amavĕrim, amātus. This may be called the *general* root.

2. There are also three special roots, from which, by the addition of certain terminations, all the parts of the verb are readily formed. The first of these roots is found in the *present* of the indicative, and is the same as the *general* root; the second is found in the *perfect*; and the third in the *supine*, or *perfect participle*.

3. In regular verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *second* root is formed by adding, respectively, *āv*, *ēv*, and *īv*, to the *general* root; and the *third* root by a similar addition of *ātu*, *ētu*, and *ītu*.

Many verbs, however, in these three conjugations, form their second and third roots irregularly, as do almost all in the second, a great part adding *u* and *ĭtu*, instead of *ev* and *ētu*.

4. In the third conjugation, the second root either is the same as the first, or is formed from it by adding *s*; the third root is formed by adding *tu*. See § 171.

NOTE. In the second and fourth conjugations, *e* and *i* before *o* are considered as belonging not to the root, but to the termination. In verbs whose second or third roots are formed irregularly, the general root often undergoes some change in the parts derived from them.

5. The vowel which unites the general root with the remaining letters of the verb, is called the *connecting* vowel. Each conjugation, except the third, is, in a great degree, distinguished by a peculiar connecting vowel, which is the same as characterizes the infinitives. See § 149.

In the third conjugation, the connecting vowel is generally *e* or *i*. In the second and fourth conjugations, and in verbs in *io* of the third, a second connecting vowel is sometimes added to that which characterizes the conjugation; as, *a* in *doceant*, *u* in *capiunt*, &c.

In verbs whose second and third roots are formed irregularly, the connecting vowel often disappears, or is changed in the parts derived from those roots; but it is almost always found in the parts derived from the first root.

§ 151. 1. From the *first* root are derived, in each voice, the present, imperfect, and future indicative; the present and imperfect subjunctive, the imperative, and the present infinitive. From this root are derived also the present participle, the gerund, and the future participle passive.

2. From the *second* root are derived, in the active voice, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, and the perfect infinitive.

3. From the *third* root are derived, in the active voice, the supine in *um*, and the future participle, the latter of which, with the verb *esse*, constitutes the future infinitive.

From this root are derived, in the passive voice, the supine in *u*, and the perfect participle, from the latter of which, with the verb *sum*, are formed all the tenses which in the active are derived from the second root. The future infinitive passive is formed from the supine in *um*, and *iri*, the present infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, to go.

4. The present and perfect indicative, the supine in *um*,* and the present infinitive, are called the *principal parts* of the verb, because from the first three the several roots are ascertained, and from the last, the characteristic vowel of the conjugation. In the passive voice, the principal parts are the present indicative and infinitive, and the perfect participle.

§ 152. The following table exhibits a connected view of the verbal terminations, in all the conjugations. By annexing these to the several roots, all the parts of a verb may be formed.

* As the supine in *um* is wanting in most verbs, the third root must often be determined from the perfect participle, or the future participle active.

Terminations added to the First Root.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Conjugation.	SINGULAR. Persons. 1.	2.	3.	PLURAL. Persons. 1.	2.	3.
1.	-o,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
2.	-eo,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
3.	-o,	-is,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-ĭtis,	-unt.
4.	-io,	-is,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-ĭtis,	-iunt.

Imperfect.

1.	-ābam,	-ābas,	-ābat;	-abāmus,	-abātis,	-ābant.
2.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
3.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
4.	-iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat;	-iebāmus,	-iebātis,	-iēbant.

Future.

1.	-ābo,	-ābis,	-ābit;	-abĭmus,	-abĭtis,	-ābunt.
2.	-ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit;	-ebĭmus,	-ebĭtis,	-ēbunt.
3.	-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
4.	-iam,	-ies,	-iet;	-iēmus,	-iētis,	-ient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1.	-em,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
2.	-eam,	-eas,	-eat;	-eāmus,	-eātis,	-eant.
3.	-am,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
4.	-iam,	-ias,	-iat;	-iāmus,	-iātis,	-iant.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

	SINGULAR. Persons. 1.	2.	3.	PLURAL. Persons. 1.	2.	3.	
1.	-or,	-āris	*or* -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-amĭni,	-antur.
2.	-eor,	-ēris	*or* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-emĭni,	-entur.
3.	-or,	-ĕris	*or* -ĕre,	-ĭtur;	-ĭmur,	-imĭni,	-untur.
4.	-ior,	-iris	*or* -ire,	-itur;	-īmur,	-imĭni,	-iuntur.

Imperfect.

1.	-ābar,	-abāris	*or* -abāre,	-abātur;	-abāmur,	-abamĭni,	-abantur.
2.	-ēbar,	-ebāris	*or* -ebāre,	-ebātur;	-ebāmur,	-ebamĭni,	-ebantur.
3.	-ēbar,	-ebāris	*or* -ebāre,	-ebātur;	-ebāmur,	-ebamĭni,	-ebantur.
4.	-iēbar,	-iebāris	*or* -iebāre,	-iebātur;	-iebāmur,	-iebamĭni,	-iebantur.

Future.

1.	-ābor,	-abĕris	*or* -abĕre,	-abĭtur;	-abĭmur,	-abimĭni,	-abuntur.
2.	-ēbor,	-ebĕris	*or* -ebĕre,	-ebĭtur;	-ebĭmur,	-ebimĭni	-ebuntur.
3.	-ar,	-ĕris	*or* -ĕre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-emĭni,	-entur.
4.	-iar,	-iĕris	*or* -iĕre,	-iētur;	-iēmur,	-iemĭni,	-ientur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1.	-er,	-ĕris	*or* -ĕre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-emĭni,	-entur.
2.	-ear,	-eāris	*or* eare,	-eātur;	-eāmur,	-eamĭni,	-eantur.
3.	-ar,	-āris	*or* -are,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-amĭni,	-antur.
4.	-iar,	-iāris	*or* -iare,	-iātur;	-iāmur,	-iamĭni,	-iantur.

Imperfect.

1.	-ārem,	-āres,	-āret;	-arēmus,	-arētis,	-ārent.	1.	-ārer,	-arēris *or* -arēre,	-arētur;	-arēmur, -aremĭni, -arentur.
2.	-ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret;	-erēmus,	-erētis,	-ērent.	2.	-ērer,	-erēris *or* -erēre,	-erētur;	-erēmur, -eremĭni, -erentur.
3.	-ĕrem,	-ĕres,	-ĕret;	-erēmus,	-erētis,	-ĕrent.	3.	-ĕrer,	-erēris *or* -erēre,	-erētur;	-erēmur, -eremĭni, -erentur.
4.	-īrem,	-īres,	-īret;	-irēmus,	-irētis,	-īrent.	4.	-īrer,	-irēris *or* -irēre,	-irētur;	-irēmur, -iremĭni, -irentur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1.	-a *or* -āto,	-āto;	-āte *or* -atōte,	-anto.	1.	-āre *or* -ātor,	-ātor;	-amĭni,	-antor.		
2.	-e *or* -ēto,	-ēto;	-ēte *or* -etōte,	-ento.	2.	-ēre *or* -ētor,	-ētor;	-emĭni,	-entor		
3.	-e *or* -ĭto,	-ĭto;	-īte *or* -itōte,	-unto.	3.	-ĕre *or* -ĭtor,	-ĭtor;	-imĭni,	-untor.		
4.	-i *or* -ito,	-ito;	-ite *or* -itōte,	-iunto.	4.	-īre *or* -ītor,	-ītor;	-imĭni,	-iuntor.		

INFIN. *Pres.*	1. -āre,	PART. *Pres.*	1. -ans,	GER.	1. -andi,	INFIN. *Pres.*	1. -āri,	PART. *Fut.*	1. -andus,		
	2. -ēre,		2. -ens,		2. -endi,		2. -ēri,		2. -endus,		
	3. -ĕre,		3. -ens,		3. -endi,		3. -i,		3. -endus,		
	4. -īre.		4. -iens.		4. -iendi.		4. -īri.		4. -iendus.		

NOTE. Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have two connecting vowels in all the parts in which they occur in verbs of the fourth conjugation, and these vowels are the same in both.

Terminations added to the Second and Third Roots.

The terminations of the tenses which are formed from the second and third roots, are the same in all the conjugations. Thus :—

ACTIVE VOICE.—Second Root. **PASSIVE VOICE.—Third Root.**

	Singular.			*Plural.*				*Singular.*			
				INDICATIVE MOOD.							
Perf.	-i,	-isti,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-istis,	-ērunt *or* -ēre.	*Perf.*	-s sum	*or* fŭi,	-s es	*or* fuisti, &c.
Plup.	-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.	*Plup.*	-s eram	*or* fuĕram,	-s eras	*or* fuĕras, &c.
Fut. perf.	-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-ĕrint.	*Fut. perf.*	-s ero	*or* fuĕro,	-s eris	*or* fuĕris, &c.
				SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.							
Perf.	-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-ĕrint.	*Perf.*	-s sim	*or* fuĕrim,	-s sis	*or* fuĕris, &c.
Plup.	-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.	*Plup.*	-s essem	*or* fuissem,	-s esses	*or* fuisses, &c.
				INFIN. *Perf.* -isse.					INFIN. *Perf.* -s esse *or* fuisse.		

Third Root. INF. *Fut.* -rus esse. PART. *Fut.* -rus. F. SUP. -m. PART. *Perf.* -s. INF. *Fut.* -m iri. L. SUP.

In analyzing a verb, the voice, person, and number, are ascertained by the *personal* terminations. See § 147, 3. The conjugation, mood, and tense, are, in general, determined by the letter or letters which intervene between the root of the verb and those terminations. Thus in *amabāmus*, *mus* denotes that the verb is of the active voice, plural number, and first person; *ba* denotes that it is of the indicative mood, imperfect tense; and the connecting vowel *a* determines it to be of the first conjugation. So in *amaremĭni*, *mini* denotes the passive voice, plural number, and second person; *re*, the subjunctive mood, imperfect tense; and *a*, as before, the first conjugation.

Sometimes, the part between the root of the verb and the personal termination, does not precisely determine the conjugation, mood, and tense, but only within certain limits. In such cases, the conjugation may be learned, by finding the present tense in the dictionary, and if two forms are alike in the same conjugation, they can only be distinguished by the sense. Thus *amēmus* and *docēmus* have the same termination; but, as *amo* is of the first, and *doceo* of the second conjugation, the former is determined to be the subjunctive, the latter the indicative, present. *Regar* may be either future indicative, or present subjunctive—*regĭmus* either present or perfect indicative.

§ 153. SUM, I am, is called an *auxiliary* verb, because it is used, in conjunction with participles, to supply the want of simple forms in other verbs. From its denoting existence, it is sometimes called the *substantive* verb. It is very irregular in those parts which, in other verbs, are formed from the first root. Its imperfect and future tenses seem to have been formed from the second root of some now obsolete verb, and to have been, not, as now, an imperfect and future, but a pluperfect and future perfect. It is thus conjugated:—

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	*Fut. Part.*
Sum,	es'-se,	fu'-i,	fu-tū'-rus.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

	Singular.	Plural.
Person.	1. sum, *I am*,	su'-mus, *we are*,
	2. es, *thou art*,*	es'-tis, *ye*† *are*,
	3. est, *he is*;	sunt, *they are*.

Imperfect.

1. e'-ram, *I was*,	e-rā'-mus, *we were*,
2. e'-ras, *thou wast*,	e-rā'-tis, *ye were*,
3. e'-rat, *he was*;	e'-rant, *they were*.

* In the second person singular in English, the plural form *you* is commonly used, except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es*, you are.

† The plural pronoun of the second person is either *ye* or *you*.

Future. *shall*, or *will*.

1. e′-ro, *I shall be*,
2. e′-ris, *thou wilt be*,
3. e′-rit, *he will be*;

er′-ĭ-mus, *we shall be*,
er′-ĭ-tis, *ye will be*,
e′-runt, *they will be*.

Perfect. *have been*, or *was*.

1. fu′-i, *I have been*,
2. fu-is′-ti, *thou hast been*,
3. fu′-it, *he has been*;

fu′-ĭ-mus, *we have been*,
fu-is′-tis, *ye have been*,
fu-ē′-runt *or* -re, *they have been*.

Pluperfect.

1. fu′-ĕ-ram, *I had been*,
2. fu′-ĕ-ras, *thou hadst been*,
3. fu′-ĕ-rat, *he had been*;

fu-e-rā′-mus, *we had been*,
fu-e-rā′-tis, *ye had been*,
fu′-ĕ-rant, *they had been*.

Future Perfect. *shall* or *will have*.

1. fu′-ĕ-ro, *I shall have been*,
2. fu′-ĕ-ris, *thou wilt have been*,
3. fu′-ĕ-rit, *he will have been*;

fu-er′-ĭ-mus, *we shall have been*.
fu-er′-ĭ-tis, *ye will have been*,
fu′-ĕ-rint, *they will have been*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may*, or *can*.

1. sim, *I may be*,
2. sis, *thou mayst be*,
3. sit, *he may be*;

si′-mus, *we may be*,
si′-tis, *ye may be*,
sint, *they may be*.

Imperfect. *might, could, would*, or *should*.

1. es′-sem, *I would be*,
2. es′-ses, *thou wouldst be*,
3. es′-set, *he would be*;

es-sē′-mus, *we would be*,
es-sē′-tis, *ye would be*,
es′-sent, *they would be*.

Perfect.

1. fu′-ĕ-rim, *I may have been*,
2. fu′-ĕ-ris, *thou mayst have been*,
3. fu′-ĕ-rit, *he may have been*;

fu-er′-ĭ-mus, *we may have been*,
fu-er′-ĭ-tis, *ye may have been*,
fu′-ĕ-rint, *they may have been*.

Pluperfect. *might, could, would*, or *should have*.

1. fu-is′-sem, *I would have been*,
2. fu-is′-ses, *thou wouldst have been*,
3. fu-is′-set, *he would have been*;

fu-is-sē′-mus, *we would have been*,
fu-is-sē′-tis, *ye would have been*,
fu-is′-sent, *they would have been*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. es, *or* es′-to, *be thou,*	es′-te, *or* es-tŏ′-te, *be ye,*
3. es′-to, *let him be;*	sun′-to, *let them be.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. es′-se, *to be.*
Perfect. fu-is′-se, *to have been.*
Future. fu-tūr′-rus es′-se, *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

Future. fu-tūr′-rus, *about to be.*

Remarks.

§ 154. 1. A present participle *ens* seems to have been anciently used, and is now found in the compounds *absens*, *præsens*, and *potens*.

2. The perfect *fui*, and its derivative tenses, are formed from an obsolete *fuo*, whence come also the participle *futūrus*, and an old subjunctive present *fuam*, *fuas*, *fuat*; ——, ——, *fuant*.

3. From *fuo* are also derived the following :—

Subj. imperf. fo′-rem, fo′-res, fo′-ret; ———, ———, fo′-rent.
Inf. pres. fo′-re.

These forms seem to have been contracted from *fŭerem*, &c., and *fŭere*. *Forem* is equivalent in meaning to *essem*, but *fore* has, in most cases, acquired a future signification, equivalent to *futūrus esse*.

4. *Siem*, *sies*, *siet*, for *sim*, *sis*, *sit*, are found in ancient writers, as are also *escit* for *erit*, *escunt* for *erunt*, and *fuĕrint* for *fŭerint*.

5. Like *sum* are conjugated its compounds, except *possum*; but *prosum* has *d* after *pro*, when the simple verb begins with *e*; as,

Ind. pres. pro′-sum, prod′-es, prod′-est, &c.
—— *imperf.* prod′-ĕ-ram, prod′-ĕ-ras, &c.

6. *Possum* is compounded of *potis*, able, and *sum*. They are sometimes written separately, and then *potis* is the same in all genders and numbers. In composition, *is* is omitted in *potis*, and *t*, as in other cases, coming before *s*, is changed into *s*. In the infinitive, and imperfect subjunctive, *es* of the simple verb is dropped, and *f* at the beginning of the second root. In every other respect, *possum* is conjugated like *sum*, wherever it is found; but the imperative, and parts derived from the third root, are wanting.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	
Pos′-sum,	pos′-se,	pot′-u-i,	*I can*, or *I am able.*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Pres.	S. pos-sum, pot′-es, pot′-est; P. pos′-sŭ-mus, pot-es′-tis, pos′-sunt.	*Pres.*	pos′-sim, &c.
Imperf.	pot′-ĕ-ram, &c.	*Imperf.*	pos′-sem, &c.
Fut.	pot′-ĕ-ro, &c.	*Perf.*	pot-u′-ĕ-rim, &c.
Perf.	pot′-u-i, &c.	*Plup.*	pot-u-is′-sem, &c.
Plup.	pot-u′-ĕ-ram, &c.	INFINITIVE.	
Fut. perf.	pot-u′-ĕ-ro, &c.	*Pres.*	pos′-se.
		Perf.	pot-u-is′-se.

The following forms are also found;—*potessim* and *possiem*, &c., for *possim*, &c.; *potesse* for *posse*; *potestur* for *potest*; and *possitur* for *possit*.

§ 155. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*
A′-mo,	a-mā′-re,	a-mā′-vi,	a-mā′-tum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	a′-mo,	*I love,*
	a′-mas,	*thou lovest,*
	a′-mat,	*he loves;*
Plur.	a-mā′-mus,	*we love,*
	a-mā′-tis,	*ye love,*
	a′-mant,	*they love.*

Imperfect.

Sing.	a-mā′-bam,	*I was loving,*
	a-mā′-bas,	*thou wast loving,*
	a-mā′-bat,	*he was loving;*
Plur	am-a-bā′-mus,	*we were loving,*
	am-a-bā′-tis,	*ye were loving,*
	a-mā′-bant,	*they were loving.*

Future. *shall*, or *will.*

Sing.	a-mā′-bo,	*I shall love,*
	a-mā′-bis,	*thou wilt love,*
	a-mā′-bit,	*he will love;*
Plur.	a-mab′-ĭ-mus,	*we shall love,*
	a-mab′-ĭ-tis,	*ye will love,*
	a-mā′-bunt,	*they will love*

Perfect. *loved*, or *have loved.*

Sing.	a-mā′-vi,	*I have loved,*
	am-a-vis′-ti,	*thou hast loved,*
	a-mā′-vit,	*he has loved;*
Plur.	a-mav′-ĭ-mus,	*we have loved,*
	am-a-vis′-tis,	*ye have loved,*
	am-a-vē′-runt *or* -re,	*they have loved.*

Pluperfect.

Sing.	a-mav′-ĕ-ram,	*I had loved,*
	a-mav′-ĕ-ras,	*thou hadst loved,*
	a-mav′-ĕ-rat,	*he had loved;*
Plur	am-a-ve-rā′-mus,	*we had loved,*
	am-a-ve-rā′-tis,	*ye had loved,*
	a-mav′-ĕ-rant,	*they had loved.*

Future Perfect. *shall* or *will have.*

Sing.	a-mav′-ĕ-ro,	*I shall have loved,*
	a-mav′-ĕ-ris,	*thou wilt have loved,*
	a-mav′-ĕ-rit,	*he will have loved;*
Plur.	am-a-ver′-ĭ-mus,	*we shall have loved,*
	am-a-ver′-ĭ-tis,	*ye will have loved,*
	a-mav′-ĕ-rint,	*they will have loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may*, or *can.*

Sing.	a′-mem,	*I may love,*
	a′-mes,	*thou mayst love,*
	a′-met,	*he may love;*
Plur.	a-mē′-mus,	*we may love,*
	a-mē′-tis,	*ye may love,*
	a′-ment,	*they may love.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would*, or *should.*

Sing.	a-mā′-rem,	*I would love,*
	a-mā′-res,	*thou wouldst love,*
	a-mā′-ret,	*he would love;*
Plur.	am-a-rē′-mus,	*we would love,*
	am-a-rē′-tis,	*ye would love,*
	a-mā′-rent,	*they would love.*

Perfect.

Sing.	a-mav′-ĕ-rim,	*I may have loved,*
	a-mav′-ĕ-ris,	*thou mayst have loved,*
	a-mav′-ĕ-rit,	*he may have loved;*
Plur.	am-a-ver′-i-mus,	*we may have loved,*
	am-a-ver′-i-tis,	*ye may have loved,*
	a-mav′-ĕ-rint,	*they may have loved.*

Pluperfect. *might, could, would,* or *should have.*

Sing.	am-a-vis′-sem,	*I would have loved,*
	am-a-vis′-ses,	*thou wouldst have loved,*
	am-a-vis′-set,	*he would have loved;*
Plur.	am-a-vis-sē′-mus,	*we would have loved,*
	am-a-vis-sē′-tis,	*ye would have loved,*
	am-a-vis′-sent,	*they would have loved*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	a′-ma, *or* a-mā′-to,	*love thou,*
	a-mā′-to,	*let him love;*
Plur.	a-mā′-te, *or* am-a-tō′-te,	*love ye,*
	a-man′-to,	*let them love.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	a-mā′-re,	*to love.*
Perfect.	am-a-vis′-se,	*to have loved.*
Future.	am-a-tū′-rus es′-se,	*to be about to love*

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	a′-mans,	*loving.*
Future.	am-a-tū′-rus,	*about to love.*

GERUND.

G.	a-man′-dī,	*of loving,*
D.	a-man′-do,	*to* or *for loving,*
Ac.	a-man′-dum,	*loving,*
Ab.	a-man′-do,	*by loving.*

SUPINE.

Former.	a-mā′-tum,	*to love.*

§ 156. PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*
A′-mor,	a-mā′-ri,	a-mā′-tus.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	a′-mor,	*I am loved,*
	a-mā′-ris *or* -re,	*thou art loved,*
	a-mā′-tur,	*he is loved;*
Plur.	a-mā′-mur,	*we are loved,*
	a-mam′-ĭ-ni,	*ye are loved,*
	a-man′-tur,	*they are loved.*

Imperfect.

Sing.	a-mā′-bar,	*I was loved,*
	am-a-bā′-ris *or* -re,	*thou wast loved,*
	am-a-bā′-tur,	*he was loved;*
Plur.	am-a-bā′-mur,	*we were loved,*
	am-a-bam′-ĭ-ni,	*ye were loved,*
	am-a-ban′-tur,	*they were loved.*

Future. *shall* or *will be.*

Sing.	a-mā′-bor,	*I shall be loved,*
	a-mab′-ĕ-ris *or* -re,	*thou wilt be loved,*
	a-mab′-ĭ-tur,	*he will be loved;*
Plur.	a-mab′-ĭ-mur,	*we shall be loved,*
	am-a-bim′-ĭ-ni,	*ye will be loved,*
	am-a-bun′-tur,	*they will be loved.*

Perfect. *have been,* or *was.*

Sing.	a-mā′-tus sum *or* fu′-i,	*I have been loved,*
	a-mā′-tus es *or* fu-is′-ti,	*thou hast been loved,*
	a-mā′-tus est *or* fu′-it,	*he has been loved;*
Plur.	a-mā′-ti su′-mus *or* fu′-ĭ-mus,	*we have been loved,*
	a-mā′-ti es′-tis *or* fu-is′-tis,	*ye have been loved,*
	a-mā′-ti sunt, fu-ē′-runt *or* -re,	*they have been loved.*

Pluperfect.

S.	a-mā'-tus e'-ram *or* fu'-ĕ-ram,	*I had been loved,*
	a-mā'-tus e'-ras *or* fu'-ĕ-ras,	*thou hadst been loved,*
	a-mā'-tus e'-rat *or* fu'-ĕ-rat,	*he had been loved;*
P.	a-mā'-ti e-rā'-mus *or* fu-e-rā'-mus,	*we had been loved,*
	a-mā'-ti e-rā'-tis *or* fu-e-rā'-tis,	*ye had been loved,*
	a-mā'-ti e'-rant *or* fu'-ĕ-rant,	*they had been loved.*

Future Perfect. *shall have been.*

S.	a-mā'-tus e'-ro *or* fu'-ĕ-ro,	*I shall have been loved,*
	a-mā'-tus e'-ris *or* fu'-ĕ-ris,	*thou wilt have been loved,*
	a-mā'-tus e'-rit *or* fu'-ĕ-rit,	*he will have been loved;*
P.	a-mā'-ti er'-ĭ-mus *or* fu-er'-ĭ-mus,	*we shall have been loved,*
	a-mā'-ti er'-ĭ-tis *or* fu-er'-ĭ-tis,	*ye will have been loved,*
	a-mā'-ti e'-runt *or* fu'-ĕ-rint,	*they will have been loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may* or *can be.*

Sing.	a'-mer,	*I may be loved,*
	a-mē'-rĭs *or* -re,	*thou mayst be loved,*
	a-mē'-tur,	*he may be loved;*
Plur.	a-mē'-mur,	*we may be loved,*
	a-mem'-ĭ-nĭ,	*ye may be loved,*
	a-men'-tur,	*they may be loved.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would,* or *should be.*

Sing.	a-mā'-rer,	*I would be loved,*
	am-a-rē'-ris *or* -re,	*thou wouldst be loved,*
	am-a-rē'-tur,	*he would be loved;*
Plur.	am-a-rē'-mur,	*we would be loved,*
	am-a-rem'-ĭ-ni,	*ye would be loved,*
	am-a-ren'-tur,	*they would be loved.*

Perfect.

S.	a-mā'-tus sim *or* fu'-ĕ-rim,	*I may have been loved,*
	a-mā'-tus sis *or* fu'-ĕ-ris,	*thou mayst have been loved,*
	a-mā'-tus sit *or* fu'-ĕ-rit,	*he may have been loved;*
P.	a-mā'-ti si'-mus *or* fu-er'-ĭ-mus,	*we may have been loved,*
	a-mā'-ti si'-tis *or* fu-er'-ĭ-tis,	*ye may have been loved,*
	a-mā'-ti sint *or* fu'-ĕ-rint,	*they may have been loved.*

Pluperfect. *might, could, would,* or *should have been.*

S.	a-mā'-tus es'-sem *or* fu-is'-sem,	*I would have*
	a-mā'-tus es'-ses *or* fu-is'-ses,	*thou wouldst have*
	a-mā'-tus es'-set *or* fu-is'-set,	*he would have*
P.	a-mā'-ti es-sē'-mus *or* fu-is-sē'-mus,	*we would have*
	a-mā'-ti es-sē'-tis *or* fu-is-sē'-tis,	*ye would have*
	a-mā'-ti es'-sent *or* fu-is'-sent,	*they would have*

been loved.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	a-mā'-re, *or* a-mā'-tor,	*be thou loved,*
	a-mā'-tor,	*let him be loved;*
Plur.	a-mam'-ī-ni,	*be ye loved,*
	a-man'-tor,	*let them be loved.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	a-mā'-ri,	*to be loved.*
Perfect.	a-mā'-tus es'-se *or* fu-is'-se,	*to have been loved.*
Future.	a-mā'-tum i'-ri,	*to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	a-mā'-tus,	*loved,* or *having been loved.*
Future.	a-man'-dus,	*to be loved.*

Latter SUPINE.

Latter.	a-mā'-tu,	*to be loved.*

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *am*, are derived

	Active.	*Passive.*
Ind. pres.	amo,	amor,
—— *imperf.*	amābam,	amābar,
—— *fut.*	amābo,	amābor,
Subj. pres.	amem,	amer,
—— *imperf.*	amārem,	amārer,
Imperat.	ama,	amāre,
Inf. pres.	amāre,	amāri,
Part. pres.	amans,	
—— *fut.*		amandus.
Gerund.	amandi.	

From the second root, *amav*, are derived

	Active.	*Passive.*
Ind. perf.	amāvi,	amātus sum, &c.
—— *plup.*	amavĕram,	amātus eram, &c.
—— *fut. perf.*	amavĕro,	amātus ero, &c.
Subj. perf.	amavĕrim,	amātus sim, &c.
—— *plup.*	amavissem,	amātus essem, &c.
Inf. perf.	amavisse,	amātus esse, &c.

From the third root, *amatu*, are derived

From the third root,

Inf. fut.	amatūrus esse,	amātum iri,
Part. fut.	amatūrus,	
—— *perf.*		amātus,
Form. Sup.	amātum.	*Lat. Sup.* amātu.

§ 157. SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Mo′-ne-o,	*Pres. Ind.*	mo′-ne-or,
Pres. Inf.	mo-nē′-re,	*Pres. Inf.*	mo-nē′-ri,
Perf. Ind.	mon′-u-i,	*Perf. Part.*	mon′-ĭ-tus.
Supine.	mon′-ĭ-tum.		

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

I advise.	*I am advised.*
Sing. mo′-ne-o,	*Sing.* mo′-ne-or,
mo′-nes,	mo-nē′-ris *or* -re,
mo′-net;	mo-nē′-tur;
Plur. mo-nē′-mus,	*Plur.* mo-nē′-mur,
mo-nē′-tis,	mo-nem′-ĭ-ni,
mo′-nent.	mo-nen′-tur.

Imperfect.

I was advising.	*I was advised.*
S. mo-nē′-bam,	*S.* mo-nē′-bar,
mo-nē′-bas,	mon-e-bā′-ris *or* -re,
mo-nē′-bat;	mon-e-bā′-tur;
P. mon-e-bā′-mus,	*P.* mon-e-bā′-mur,
mon-e-bā′-tis,	mon-e-bam′-ĭ-ni,
mo-nē′-bant.	mon-e-ban′-tur.

Future.

I shall or *will advise.*	*I shall* or *will be advised.*
S. mo-nē′-bo,	*S.* mo-nē′-bor,
mo-nē′-bis,	mo-neb′-ĕ-ris *or* -re,
mo-nē′-bit;	mo-neb′-ĭ-tur;
P. mo-neb′-ĭ-mus,	*P.* mo-neb′-ĭ-mur,
mo-neb′-ĭ-tis,	mon-e-bim′-ĭ-ni,
mo-nē′-bunt.	mon-e-bun′-tur.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.

Perfect.

I advised, or *have advised.*	*I was* or *have been advised.*
S. mon′-u-i, mon-u-is′-ti, mon′-u-it ;	*S.* mon′-ĭ-tus sum *or* fu′-i, mon′-ĭ-tus es *or* fu-is′-ti, mon′-ĭ-tus est *or* fu′-it ;
P. mo-nu′-ĭ-mus, mon-u-is′-tis, mon-u-ē′-runt *or* -re.	*P.* mon′-ĭ-ti su′-mus *or* fu′-ĭ-mus, mon′-ĭ-ti es′-tis *or* fu-is′-tis, mon′-ĭ-ti sunt, fu-ē′-runt *or* -re.

Pluperfect.

I had advised.	*I had been advised.*
S. mo-nu′-ĕ-ram, mo-nu′-ĕ-ras, mo-nu′-ĕ-rat ;	*S.* mon′-ĭ-tus e′-ram *or* fu′-ĕ-ram, mon′-ĭ-tus e′-ras *or* fu′-ĕ-ras, mon′-ĭ-tus e′-rat *or* fu′-ĕ-rat ;
P. mon-u-e-rā′-mus, mon-u-e-rā′-tis, mo-nu′-ĕ-rant.	*P.* mon′-ĭ-ti e-rā′-mus *or* fu-e-rā′-mus, mon′-ĭ-ti e-rā′-tis *or* fu-e-rā′-tis, mon′-ĭ-ti e′-rant *or* fu′-ĕ-rant.

Future Perfect.

I shall have advised.	*I shall have been advised.*
S. mo-nu′-ĕ-ro, mo-nu′-ĕ-ris, mo-nu′-ĕ-rit ;	*S.* mon′-ĭ-tus e′-ro *or* fu′-ĕ-ro, mon′-ĭ-tus e′-ris *or* fu′-ĕ-ris, mon′-ĭ-tus e′-rit *or* fu′-ĕ-rit ;
P. mon-u-er′-ĭ-mus, mon-u-er′-ĭ-tis, mo-nu′-ĕ-rint.	*P.* mon′-ĭ-ti er′-ĭ-mus *or* fu-er′-ĭ-mus, mon′-ĭ-ti er′-ĭ-tis *or* fu-er′-ĭ-tis, mon′-ĭ-ti e′-runt *or* fu′-ĕ-rint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

I may or *can advise.*	*I may* or *can be advised.*
S. mo′-ne-am, mo′-ne-as, mo′-ne-at ;	*S.* mo′-ne-ar, mo-ne-ā′-ris *or* -re, mo-ne-ā′-tur ;
P. mo-ne-ā′-mus, mo-ne-ā′-tis, mo′-ne-ant.	*P.* mo-ne-ā′-mur, mo-ne-am′-ĭ-ni, mo-ne-an′-tur.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Imperfect.	
I might, could, would, or *should advise.*	*I might, could, would,* or *should be advised.*
S. mo-nē′-rem, mo-nē′-res, mo-nē′-ret;	*S.* mo-nē′-rer, mon-e-rē′-ris *or* -re, mon-e-rē′-tur;
P. mon-e-rē′-mus, mon-e-rē′-tis, mo-nē′-rent.	*P.* mon-e-rē′-mur, mon-e-rem′-ĭ-ni, mon-e-ren′-tur.
Perfect.	
I may have advised.	*I may have been advised.*
S. mo-nu′-ĕ-rim, mo-nu′-ĕ-ris, mo-nu′-ĕ-rit;	*S.* mon′-ĭ-tus sim *or* fu′-ĕ-rim, mon′-ĭ-tus sis *or* fu′-ĕ-ris, mon′-ĭ-tus sit *or* fu′-ĕ-rit;
P. mon-u-er′-ĭ-mus, mon-u-er′-ĭ-tis, mo-nu′-ĕ-rint.	*P.* mon′-ĭ-ti si′-mus *or* fu-er′-ĭ-mus, mon′-ĭ-ti si′-tis *or* fu-er′-ĭ-tis, mon′-ĭ-ti sint *or* fu′-ĕ-rint.
Pluperfect.	
I might, could, would, or *should have advised.*	*I might, could, would,* or *should have been advised.*
S. mon-u-is′-sem, mon-u-is′-ses, mon-u-is′-set;	*S.* mon′-ĭ-tus es′-sem *or* fu-is′-sem, mon′-ĭ-tus es′-ses *or* fu-is′-ses, mon′-ĭ-tus es′-set *or* fu-is′-set;
P. mon-u-is-sē′-mus, mon-u-is-sē′-tis, mon-u-is′-sent.	*P.* mon′-ĭ-ti es-sē′-mus *or* fu-is-sē-mus, mon′-ĭ-ti es-sē′-tis *or* fu-is-sē′-tis, mon′-ĭ-ti es′-sent *or* fu-is′-sent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

advise thou.	*be thou advised.*
S. mo′-ne, *or* mo-nē′-to, mo-nē′-to;	*S.* mo-nē′-re, *or* mo-nē′-tor, mo-nē′-tor;
P. mo-nē′-te, *or* mon-e-tō′-te, mo-nen′-to.	*P.* mo-nem′-ĭ-ni, mo-nen′-tor.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. mo-nē′-re, *to advise.*	*Pres.* mo-nē′-ri, *to be advised.*
Perf. mon-u-is′-se, *to have advised.*	*Perf.* mon′-ĭ-tus es′-se *or* fu-is′-se, *to have been advised.*
Fut. mon-i-tū′-rus es′-se, *to be about to advise.*	*Fut.* mon′-ĭ-tum i′-ri, *to be about to be advised*

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. mo'-nens, *advising.*	*Perf.* mon'-ĭ-tus, *advised.*
Fut. mon-i-tū'-rus, *about to advise.*	*Fut.* mo-nen'-dus, *to be advised.*

GERUND.

G. mo-nen'-di, *of advising,*
D. mo-nen'-do, &c.
Ac. mo-nen'-dum,
Ab. mo-nen'do.

SUPINES.

Former. mon'-ĭ-tum, *to advise.* | *Latter.* mon'-ĭ-tu, *to be advised.*

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *mon*, are derived,

	Active.	*Passive.*
Ind. pres.	mone'o,	mone'or,
—— *imperf.*	mone'bam,	mone'bar,
—— *fut.*	mone'bo,	mone'bor,
Subj. pres.	mone'am,	mone'ar,
—— *imperf.*	mone'rem,	mone'rer,
Imperat.	mone,	mone're,
Inf. pres.	mone're,	mone'ri,
Part. pres.	monens,	
—— *fut.*		monendus.
Gerund.	monendi.	

From the second root, *monu*, are derived,

	Active.	*Passive.*
Ind. perf.	monui,	monitus sum, &c.
—— *plup.*	monue'ram,	monitus eram, &c.
—— *fut. perf.*	monue'ro,	monitus ero, &c.
Subj. perf.	monue'rim,	monitus sim, &c.
—— *plup.*	monuissem,	monitus essem, &c.
Inf. perf.	monuisse,	monitus esse, &c.

From the third root, *monitu*, are derived,

From the third root,

Inf fut.	monitu'rus esse,	monitum iri,
Part. fut.	monitu'rus,	
—— *perf.*		monitus,
Form. Sup.	monitum.	*Lat. Sup.* monitu.

§ 158. THIRD CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Re'-go,	*Pres. Ind.*	re'-gor,
Pres. Inf.	reg'-ĕ-re,	*Pres. Inf.*	re'-gi,
Perf. Ind.	rex'-i,	*Perf. Part.*	rec'-tus.
Supine.	rec'-tum.		

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

I rule.	*I am ruled.*
Sing. re'-go,	*Sing.* re'-gor,
re'-gis,	reg'-ĕ-ris *or* -re,
re'-git;	reg'-ĭ-tur;
Plur. reg'-ĭ-mus,	*Plur.* reg'-ĭ-mur,
reg'-ĭ-tis,	re-gim'-ĭ-ni,
re'-gunt.	re-gun'-tur.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Imperfect.	
I was ruling.	*I was ruled.*
S. re-gē′-bam, re-gē′-bas, re-gē′-bat;	*S.* re-gē′-bar, reg-e-bā′-ris *or* -re, reg-e-bā′-tur;
P. reg-e-bā′-mus, reg-e-bā′-tis, re-gē′-bant.	*P.* reg-e-bā′-mur, reg-e-bam′-ĭ-ni, reg-e-ban′-tur.
Future.	
I shall or *will rule.*	*I shall* or *will be ruled.*
S. re′-gam, re′-ges, re′-get;	*S.* re′-gar, re-gē′-ris *or* -re, re-gē′-tur;
P. re-gē′-mus, re-gē′-tis, re′-gent.	*P.* re-gē′-mur, re-gem′-ĭ-ni, re-gen′-tur.
Perfect.	
I ruled or *have ruled.*	*I was* or *have been ruled.*
S. rex′-i, rex-is′-ti, rex′-it;	*S.* rec′-tus sum *or* fu′-i, rec′-tus es *or* fu-is′-ti, rec′-tus est *or* fu′-it;
P. rex′-ĭ-mus, rex-is′-tis, rex-ē′-runt *or* -re.	*P.* rec′-ti su′-mus *or* fu′-ĭ-mus, rec′-ti es′-tis *or* fu-is′-tis, rec′-ti sunt, fu-ē′-runt *or* -re.
Pluperfect.	
I had ruled.	*I had been ruled.*
S. rex′-ĕ-ram, rex′-ĕ-ras, rex′-ĕ-rat;	*S.* rec′-tus e′-ram *or* fu′-ĕ-ram, rec′-tus e′-ras *or* fu′-ĕ-ras, rec′-tus e′-rat *or* fu′-ĕ-rat;
P. rex-e-rā′-mus, rex-e-rā′-tis, rex′-ĕ-rant.	*P.* rec′-ti e-rā′-mus *or* fu-e-rā-mus, rec′-ti e-rā′-tis *or* fu-e-rā′-tis, rec′-ti e′-rant *or* fu′-ĕ-rant.
Future Perfect.	
I shall have ruled.	*I shall have been ruled.*
S. rex′-ĕ-ro, rex′-ĕ-ris, rex′-ĕ-rit;	*S.* rec′-tus e′-ro *or* fu′-ĕ-ro, rec′-tus e′-ris *or* fu′-ĕ-ris, rec′-tus e′-rit *or* fu′-ĕ-rit;
P. rex-er′-ĭ-mus, rex-er′-ĭ-tis, rex′-ĕ-rint.	*P.* rec′-ti er′-ĭ-mus *or* fu-er′-ĭ-mus, rec′-ti er′-ĭ-tis *or* fu-er′-ĭ-tis, rec′-ti e′-runt *or* fu′-ĕ-rint.

ACTIVE. PASSIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

I may or *can rule.*	*I may* or *can be ruled.*
S. re′-gam, re′-gas, re′-gat;	*S.* re′-gar, re-gā′-ris *or* -re, re-gā′-tur;
P. re-gā′-mus, re-gā′-tis, re′-gant.	*P.* re-gā′-mur, re-gam′-ĭ-ni, re-gan′-tur.

Imperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should rule.*	*I might, could, would,* or *should be ruled.*
S. reg′-ĕ-rem, reg′-ĕ-res, reg′-ĕ-ret;	*S.* reg′-ĕ-rer, reg-e-rē′-ris *or* -re, reg-e-rē′-tur;
P. reg-e-rē′-mus, reg-e-rē′-tis, reg′-ĕ-rent.	*P.* reg-e-rē′-mur, reg-e-rem′-ĭ-ni, reg-e-ren′-tur.

Perfect.

I may have ruled.	*I may have been ruled.*
S. rex′-ĕ-rim, rex′-ĕ-ris, rex′-ĕ-rit;	*S.* rec′-tus sim *or* fu′-ĕ-rim, rec′-tus sis *or* fu′-ĕ-ris, rec′-tus sit *or* fu′-ĕ-rit;
P. rex-er′-ĭ-mus, rex-er′-ĭ-tis, rex′-ĕ-rint.	*P.* rec′-ti si′-mus *or* fu-er′-ĭ-mus, rec′-ti si′-tis *or* fu-er′-ĭ-tis, rec′-ti sint *or* fu′-ĕ-rint.

Pluperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should have ruled.*	*I might, could, would,* or *should have been ruled.*
S. rex-is′-sem, rex-is′-ses, rex-is′-set;	*S.* rec′-tus es′-sem *or* fu-is′-sem, rec′-tus es′-ses *or* fu-is′-ses, rec′-tus es′-set *or* fu-is′-set;
P. rex-is-sē′-mus, rex-is-sē′-tis, rex-is′-sent.	*P.* rec′-ti es-sē′-mus *or* fu-is-sē′-mus, rec′-ti es-sē′-tis *or* fu-is-sē′-tis, rec′-ti es′-sent *or* fu-is′-sent.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

rule thou.	*be thou ruled.*
S. re′-ge, *or* reg′-ĭ-to, reg′-ĭ-to ;	*S.* reg′-ĕ-re, *or* reg′-ĭ-tor, reg′-ĭ-tor ;
P. reg′-ĭ-te, *or* reg-i-tō′-te, re-gun′-to.	*P.* re-gim′-ĭ-ni, re-gun′-tor.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. reg′-ĕ-re, *to rule.*	*Pres.* re′-gi, *to be ruled.*
Perf. rex-is′-se, *to have ruled.*	*Perf.* rec′-tus es′-se *or* fu-is′-se, *to have been ruled.*
Fut. rec-tū′-rus es′-se, *to be about to rule.*	*Fut.* rec′-tum i′-ri, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. re′-gens, *ruling.*	*Perf.* rec′-tus, *ruled.*
Fut. rec-tū′-rus, *about to rule.*	*Fut.* re-gen′-dus, *to be ruled.*

GERUND.

G. re-gen′-di, *of ruling,*
D. re-gen′-do, &c.
Ac. re-gen′-dum,
Ab. re-gen′-do.

SUPINES.

Former. rec′-tum, *to rule.* | *Latter.* rec′-tu, *to be ruled.*

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *reg*, are derived,

	Active.	*Passive.*
Ind. pres.	rego,	regor,
—— *imperf.*	regĕbam,	regĕbar,
—— *fut.*	regam,	regar,
Subj. pres.	regam,	regar,
—— *imperf.*	regĕrem,	regĕrer,
Imperat.	rege,	regĕre,
Inf. pres.	regĕre,	regi,
Part. pres.	regens,	
—— *fut.*		regendus.
Gerund.	regendi.	

From the second root, *rex*, are derived,

	Active.	*Passive.*
Ind. perf.	rexi,	rectus sum, &c.
—— *plup.*	rexĕram,	rectus eram, &c.
—— *fut. perf.*	rexĕro,	rectus ero, &c.
Subj. perf.	rexĕrim,	rectus sim, &c.
—— *plup.*	rexissem,	rectus essem, &c.
Inf. perf.	rexisse.	rectus esse, &c.

From the third root, *rectu*, are derived,

From the third root,

Inf. fut.	rectūrus esse,	rectum iri,
Part. fut.	rectūrus,	
—— *perf.*		rectus,
Form. Sup.	rectum.	*Lat. Sup.* rectu.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.

§ 159. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind. Ca′-pi-o, *to take,*	*Pres. Ind.* ca′-pi-or, *to be taken,*
Pres. Inf. cap′-ĕ-re,	*Pres. Inf.* ca′-pi,
Perf. Ind. ce′-pi,	*Perf. Part.* cap′-tus.
Supine. cap′-tum.	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

S. ca′-pi-o,	*S.* ca′-pi-or,
ca′-pis,	cap′-ĕ-ris *or* -re,
ca′-pit;	cap′-ĭ-tur;
P. cap′-ĭ-mus,	*P.* cap′-ĭ-mur,
cap′-ĭ-tis,	ca-pim′-ĭ-ni,
ca′-pi-unt.	ca-pi-un′-tur.

Imperfect.

S. ca-pi-ē′-bam,	*S.* ca-pi-ē′-bar,
ca-pi-ē′-bas,	ca-pi-e-bā′-ris *or* -re,
ca-pi-ē′-bat;	ca-pi-e-bā′-tur;
P. ca-pi-e-bā′-mus,	*P.* ca-pi-e-bā′-mur,
ca-pi-e-bā′-tis,	ca-pi-e-bam′-ĭ-ni,
ca-pi-ē′-bant.	ca-pi-e-ban′-tur.

Future.

S. ca′-pi-am,	*S.* ca′-pi-ar,
ca′-pi-es,	ca-pi-ē′-ris *or* -re,
ca′-pi-et;	ca-pi-ē′-tur;
P. ca-pi-ē′-mus,	*P* ca-pi-ē′-mur,
ca-pi-ē′-tis,	ca-pi-em′-ĭ-ni,
ca′-pi-ent.	ca-pi-en′-tur.

The parts formed from the second and third roots being entirely regular, only a synopsis of them is given.

Perf. ce′-pi.	*Perf.* cap′-tus sum *or* fu′-i.
Plup. cep′-ĕ-ram.	*Plup.* cap′-tus e′-ram *or* fu′-ĕ-ram.
Fut. perf. cep′-ĕ-ro.	*Fut. perf.* cap′-tus e′-ro *or* fu′-ĕ-ro.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
S. ca′-pi-am ca′-pi-as, ca′-pi-at ; *P.* ca-pi-ā′-mus, ca-pi-ā′-tis, ca′-pi-ant.	*S.* ca′-pi-ar, ca-pi-ā′-ris *or* -re, ca-pi-ā′-tur ; *P.* ca-pi-ā′-mur, ca-pi-am′-ĭ-ni, ca-pi-an′-tur.

Imperfect.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
S. cap′-ĕ-rem, cap′-ĕ-res, cap′-ĕ-ret ; *P.* cap-e-rē′-mus, cap-e-rē′-tis, cap′-ĕ-rent.	*S.* cap′-ĕ-rer, cap-e-rē′-ris *or* -re, cap-e-rē′-tur ; *P.* cap-e-rē′-mur, cap-e-rem′-ĭ-ni, cap-e-ren′-tur.
Perf. cep′-ĕ-rim. *Plup.* ce-pis′-sem.	*Perf.* cap′-tus sim *or* fu′-ĕ-rim. *Plup.* cap′-tus es′-sem *or* fu-is′-sem.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
S. ca′-pe, *or* cap′-ĭ-to, cap′-ĭ-to ; *P.* cap′-ĭ-te, *or* cap-i-tō′-te, ca-pi-un′-to.	*S.* cap′-ĕ-re, *or* cap′-ĭ-tor cap′-ĭ-tor ; *P.* ca-pim′-ĭ-ni, ca-pi-un′-tor.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Pres. cap′-ĕ-re. *Perf.* ce-pis′-se. *Fut.* cap-tū′-rus es′-se.	*Pres.* ca′-pi. *Perf.* cap′-tus es′-se *or* fu-is′-se. *Fut.* cap′-tum i′-ri.

PARTICIPLES.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Pres. ca′-pi-ens. *Fut.* cap-tū′-rus.	*Perf.* cap′-tus. *Fut.* ca-pi-en′-dus.

GERUND.

G. ca-pi-en′-di, &c.

SUPINES.

Former. cap′-tum. | *Latter.* cap′-tu.

ACTIVE. PASSIVE.

§ 160. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind. Au′-di-o,	*Pres. Ind.* au′-di-or,
Pres. Inf. au-dī′-re,	*Pres Inf.* au-dī′-ri,
Perf. Ind. au-dī′-vi,	*Perf. Part.* au-dī′-tus.
Supine. au-dī′-tum.	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

I hear.	*I am heard.*
S. au′-di-o,	*S.* au′-di-or,
au′-dis,	au-dī′-ris *or* -re,
au′-dit;	au-dī′-tur;
P. au-dī′-mus,	*P.* au-dī′-mur,
au-dī′-tis,	au-dim′-ĭ-ni,
au′-di-unt.	au-di-un′-tur.

Imperfect.

I was hearing.	*I was heard.*
S. au-di-ē′-bam,	*S.* au-di-ē′-bar,
au-di-ē′-bas,	au-di-e-bā′-ris *or* -re,
au-di-ē′-bat;	au-di-e-bā′-tur;
P. au-di-e-bā′-mus,	*P.* au-di-e-bā′-mur,
au-di-e-bā′-tis,	au-di-e-bam′-ĭ-ni,
au-di-ē′-bant.	au-di-e-ban′-tur.

Future.

I shall or *will hear.*	*I shall* or *will be heard.*
S. au′-di-am,	*S.* au′-di-ar,
au′-di-es,	au-di-ē′-ris *or* -re,
au′-di-et;	au-di-ē′-tur;
P. au-di-ē′-mus,	*P.* au-di-ē′-mur,
au-dī-ē′-tis,	au-di-em′-ĭ-ni,
au′-di-ent.	au-di-en′-tur.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.

Perfect.

I heard or *have heard.*	*I have been* or *was heard.*
S. au-dī′-vi, au-di-vis′-ti, au-dī′-vit;	*S.* au-dī′-tus sum *or* fu′-i, au-dī′-tus es *or* fu-is′-ti, au-dī′-tus est *or* fu′-it;
P. au-div′-ĭ-mus, au-di-vis′-tis, au-di-vē′-runt *or* -re.	*P.* au-dī′-ti su′-mus *or* fu′-ĭ-mus, au-dī′-ti es′-tis *or* fu-is′-tis, au-dī′-ti sunt, fu-ē′-runt *or* -re

Pluperfect.

I had heard.	*I had been heard.*
S. au-div′-ĕ-ram, au-div′-ĕ-ras, au-div′-ĕ-rat;	*S.* au-dī′-tus e′-ram *or* fu′-ĕ-ram, au-dī′-tus e′-ras *or* fu′-ĕ-ras, au-dī′-tus e′-rat *or* fu′-ĕ-rat;
P. au-di-ve-rā′-mus, au-di-ve-rā′-tis, au-div′-ĕ-rant.	*P.* au-dī′-ti e-rā′-mus *or* fu-e-rā′-mus, au-dī′-ti e-rā′-tis *or* fu-e-rā′-tis, au-dī′-ti e′-rant *or* fu′-ĕ-rant.

Future Perfect

I shall have heard.	*I shall have been heard.*
S. au-div′-ĕ-ro, au-div′-ĕ-ris, au-div′-ĕ-rit;	*S.* au-dī′-tus e′-ro *or* fu′-ĕ-ro, au-dī′-tus e′-ris *or* fu′-ĕ-ris, au-dī′-tus e′-rit *or* fu′-ĕ-rit;
P. au-di-ver′-ĭ-mus, au-di-ver′-ĭ-tis, au-div′-ĕ-rint.	*P.* au-dī′-ti er′-ĭ-mus *or* fu-er′-ĭ-mus, au-dī′-ti er′-ĭ-tis *or* fu-er′-ĭ-tis, au-dī′-ti e′-runt *or* fu′-ĕ-rint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

I may or *can hear.*	*I may* or *can be heard.*
S. au′-di-am, au′-di-as, au′-di-at;	*S.* au′-di-ar, au-di-ā′-ris *or* -re, au-di-ā′-tur;
P. au-di-ā′-mus, au-di-ā′-tis, au′-di-ant.	*P.* au-di-ā′-mur, au-di-am′-ĭ-ni, au-di-an′-tur.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.

Imperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should hear.*	*I might, could, would,* or *should be heard.*
S. au-dī′-rem, au-dī′-res, au-dī′-ret;	*S.* au-dī′-rer, au-di-rē′-ris *or* -re, au-di-rē′-tur;
P. au-di-rē′-mus, au-di-rē′-tis, au-dī′-rent.	*P.* au-di-rē′-mur, au-di-rem′-ĭ-ni, au-di-ren′-tur.

Perfect.

I may have heard.	*I may have been heard.*
S. au-div′-ĕ-rim, au-div′-ĕ-ris, au-div′-ĕ-rit;	*S.* au-dī′-tus sim *or* fu′-ĕ-rim, au-dī′-tus sis *or* fu′-ĕ-ris, au-dī′-tus sit *or* fu′-ĕ-rit;
P. au-di-ver′-ĭ-mus, au-di-ver′-ĭ-tis, au-div′-ĕ-rint.	*P.* au-dī′-ti sī′-mus *or* fu-er′-ĭ-mus, au-dī′-ti sī′-tis *or* fu-er′-ĭ-tis, au-dī′-ti sint *or* fu′-ĕ-rint.

Pluperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should have heard.*	*I might, could, would,* or *should have been heard.*
S. au-di-vis′-sem, au-di-vis′-ses, au-di-vis′-set;	*S.* au-dī′-tus es′-sem *or* fu-is′-sem, au-dī′-tus es′-ses *or* fu-is′-ses, au-dī′-tus es′-set *or* fu-is′-set;
P. au-di-vis-sē′-mus, au-di-vis-sē′-tis, au-di-vis′-sent.	*P.* au-dī′-ti es-sē′-mus *or* fu-is-sē′-mus, au-dī′-ti es-sē′-tis *or* fu-is-sē′-tis, au-dī′-ti es′-sent *or* fu-is′-sent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

hear thou.	*be thou heard.*
S. au′-di, *or* au-dī′-to, au-dī′-to;	*S.* au-dī′-re, *or* au-dī′-tor, au-dī′-tor;
P. au-dī′-te, *or* au-di-tō′-te, au-di-un′-to.	*P.* au-dim′-ĭ-ni, au-di-un′-tor.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. au-dī′-re, *to hear.*	*Pres.* au-dī′-ri, *to be heard.*
Perf. au-di-vis′-se, *to have heard.*	*Perf.* au-dī′-tus es′-se *or* fu-is′-se, *to have been heard.*
Fut. au-di-tū′-rus es′-se, *to be about to hear.*	*Fut.* au-dī′-tum i′-ri, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. au′-di-ens, *hearing.*	*Perf.* au-dī′-tus, *heard.*
Fut. au-di-tū′-rus, *about to hear.*	*Fut.* au-di-en′-dus, *to be heard.*

GERUND.

G. au-di-en′-di, *of hearing,*
D. au-di-en′-do, &c.
Ac. au-di-en′-dum,
Ab. au-di-en′-do.

SUPINES.

Former. au-dī′-tum, *to hear.* | *Latter.* au-dī′-tu, *to be heard.*

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *aud*, are derived,

	Active.	*Passive.*
Ind. pres.	audi*o*,	audi*or*,
— *imperf.*	audi*ēbam*,	audi*ēbar*,
— *fut.*	audi*am*,	audi*ar*,
Subj. pres.	audi*am*,	audi*ar*,
— *imperf.*	audi*rem*,	audi*rer*,
Imperat.	audi,	audi*re*,
Inf. pres.	audi*re*,	audi*ri*,
Part. pres.	audi*ens*,	
— *fut.*		audi*endus*.
Gerund.	audi*endi*.	

From the second root, *audiv*, are derived,

	Active.	*Passive.*
Ind. perf.	audīv*i*,	audīt*us* sum, &c.
— *plup.*	audiv*ĕram*,	audīt*us* eram, &c.
— *fut. perf.*	audiv*ĕro*,	audīt*us* ero, &c.
Subj. perf.	audiv*ĕrim*,	audīt*us* sim, &c.
— *plup.*	audiv*issem*,	audīt*us* essem, &c.
Inf. perf.	audiv*isse*.	audīt*us* esse, &c.

From the third root, *audīt*,

Inf. fut.	audītūr*us* esse,	audīt*um* iri,
Part. fut.	audītūr*us*,	
— *perf.*		audīt*us*,
Form. Sup.	audīt*um*.	*Lat. Sup.* audīt*u*.

DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 161. Deponent verbs are conjugated like the passive voice, and have also all the participles and participial formations of the active voice. Neuter deponent verbs, however,

want the future passive participle, except that the neuter in *dum* is sometimes used impersonally.

The following is an example of an active deponent verb of the first conjugation :—

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Mi'-ror, mi-rā'-ri, mi-rā'-tus, *to admire.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	mi'-ror, mi-rā'-ris, &c.	*I admire*, &c.
Imperf.	mi-rā'-bar, &c.	*I was admiring.*
Fut.	mi-rā'-bor,	*I shall admire.*
Perf.	mi-rā'-tus sum *or* fu'-i,	*I have admired.*
Plup.	mi-rā'-tus e'-ram *or* fu'-ĕ-ram,	*I had admired.*
Fut. perf.	mi-rā'-tus e'-ro *or* fu'-ĕ-ro,	*I shall have admired.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.	mi'-rer, mi-rē'-ris, &c.	*I may admire*, &c.
Imperf.	mi-rā'-rer,	*I would admire.*
Perf.	mi-rā'-tus sim *or* fu'-ĕ-rim,	*I may have admired.*
Plup.	mi-rā'-tus es'-sem *or* fu-is'-sem,	*I would have admired.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

mi-rā'-re, *or* mi-rā'-tor, *admire thou*, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	mi-rā'-ri,	*to admire.*
Perf.	mi-rā'-tus esse *or* fu-is'-se,	*to have admired.*
Fut. act.	mir-a-tū'-rus es'-se,	*to be about to admire.*
Fut. pass.	mi-rā'-tum i'-ri,	*to be about to be admired.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	mi'-rans,	*admiring.*
Perf.	mi-rā'-tus,	*having admired.*
Fut. act.	mir-a-tū'-rus,	*about to admire.*
Fut. pass.	mi-ran'-dus,	*to be admired.*

GERUND.

G. mi-ran'-di, *of admiring*, &c.

SUPINES.

Former. mi-rā'-tum, *to admire.* —*Latter.* mi-rā'-tu, *to be admired.*

Remarks on the Conjugations.

Of the Tenses formed from the First Root.

§ 162. 1. A few words in the present subjunctive of the first and third conjugations, in the earlier writers, end in *im;* as, *edim* for *edam*, *duim* for *dem* (from an old form *duo*), *creduim* and *perduim* for *credam* and *perdam*. This was retained as the regular form in *sim* and *velim*, from *sum* and *volo*, and in their compounds.

2. The imperfect indicative in the fourth conjugation, sometimes, especially in the more ancient writers, ends in *ibam* and *ibar*, for *iēbam* and *iēbar*, and the future in *ibo* and *ibor*, for *iam* and *iar;* as, *vestībam*, *largībar*, for *vestiēbam*, *largiēbar;* *scibo*, *opperībor*, for *sciam*, *opperiar*.

3. The termination *re*, in the second person singular of the passive voice, is rare in the present, but common in the other simple tenses.

4. The imperatives of *dico*, *duco*, *facio*, and *fero*, are usually written *dic*, *duc*, *fac*, and *fer*; in like manner their compounds, except those compounds of *facio* which change *a* into *i*. *Scio* has not *sci*, but *scito*.

5. In the second person of the imperative passive, an ancient form in *mĭno* in the singular, and *mĭnor* in the plural, is very rarely found; as, *famĭno* for *fare*, *progredimĭnor* for *progredimĭni*.

6. The syllable *er* was often added to the present infinitive passive by the early poets; as, *amarier* for *amāri*, *dicier* for *dici*.

Of the Tenses formed from the Second Root.

7. When the second root ends in *v*, a contraction often occurs in the tenses formed from it, by omitting *v*, with the first vowel of the termination, when followed, in the fourth conjugation, by *s*, and in the other conjugations, by *s* or *r;* as, *audīssem* for *audivissem*, *amāsti* for *amavisti*, *implērunt* for *implevērunt*, *nōram* and *nōsse* for *novēram* and *novisse*.

When the second root ends in *iv*, *v* alone is often omitted; as, *audiēro* for *audivēro;* *audiisse* for *audivisse*.

When this root ends in *s* or *x*, the syllables *is*, *iss*, and *sis*, are sometimes omitted in the termination of tenses derived from it; as, *evasti* for *evasisti*, *extinxti* for *extinxisti*, *divisse* for *divisisse;* *extinxem* for *extinxissem*, *surrexe* for *surrexisse;* *accestis* for *accessistis*, *justi* for *jussisti*. So *faxem* for (*facsissem,*) *fecissem*.

8. In the third person plural of the perfect indicative active, the form in *ēre* is less common than that in *ērunt*, especially in prose.

9. Ancient forms of a future perfect in *so*, and a perfect subjunctive in *sim*, sometimes occur. They may, in general, be formed by adding these terminations to the second root of the verb; as, *recepso*, *emissim*. But when the root ends in *x*, and frequently when it ends in *s*, only *o* and *im* are added; as, *jusso*, *dixis*. *V*, at the end of the root, is changed into *s;* as, *levasso*, *locassim*. *U*, at the end of the root, is changed into *esso;* as, *habesso*. Sometimes the vowel of the present is retained in these forms, though changed in the other parts derived from the second root; as, *capso*, *faxo* (*facso*), *faxim* (*facsim*).

Note. *Faxo* and *faxim* sometimes have the meaning of the future tense.

10. A future infinitive in *sĕre* is also sometimes found, which is formed by adding that termination to the second root, changing, as before, *v* into *s* as, *impetrassĕre* for *impetratūrus esse*.

Of the Tenses formed from the Third Root.

11. The supine in *um*, though called one of the principal parts of the verb, belongs in fact to very few verbs, the whole number which have supines not amounting to three hundred. The part called in dictionaries the supine in *um* must therefore, in most cases, be considered as the neuter gender of the perfect participle.

12. In the compound tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods the participle is always in the nominative case, but it is used in both numbers, and in all genders, to correspond with the number and gender of the subject of the verb; as, *amātus, -a, -um, est; amāti, -æ, -a, sunt*, &c.

Fui, fuĕram, fuĕrim, and *fuissem*, are seldom used in the compound tenses of deponent verbs, and not so often as *sum*, &c., in those of other verbs, but they express more emphatically than the latter the completion of the action.

13. The participles in the perfect and future infinitive, are used only in the nominative and accusative, but in all genders and in both numbers; as, *amātus, -a, -um, esse* or *fuisse; amātum, -am, -um, esse* or *fuisse; amāti, -æ, -a, esse* or *fuisse; amātos, -as, -a, esse* or *fuisse;* and so of the others.

But these participles in this combination with *esse*, are sometimes used as indeclinable; as, *cohortes ad me* missum *facias*. Cic.

Periphrastic Conjugations.

14. The participle in *rus*, joined to the tenses of the verb *sum*, denotes *intention*, or *being upon the point* of doing something. Hence arises what is called the *periphrastic conjugation.*

INDICATIVE.

amatūrus sum,	*I am about to love.*
amatūrus eram,	*I was about to love.*
amatūrus ero,	*I shall be about to love.*
amatūrus fui,	*I was* or *have been about to love.*
amatūrus fuĕram,	*I had been about to love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

amatūrus sim,	*I may be about to love.*
amatūrus essem,	*I would be about to love.*
amatūrus fuĕrim,	*I may have been about to love.*
amatūrus fuissem,	*I would have been about to love*

INFINITIVE.

amatūrus ēsse,	*to be about to love.*
amatūrus fuisse,	*to have been about to love.*

***Fŭro* is not found joined with the participle in *rus*.**

15. The participle in *dus*, with the verb *sum*, expresses *necessity* or *propriety;* as, *amandus sum*, I must be loved, *or* deserve to be loved. With the various moods and tenses of *sum*, it forms a second periphrastic conjugation;—thus:

amandus sum,	amandus sim,
amandus eram,	amandus essem,
amandus ero,	amandus fŭerim,
amandus fui,	amandus fuissem,
amandus fŭeram,	amandus esse,
amandus fŭero.	amandus fuisse.

Participles.

16. Neuter verbs, as they want the passive voice, have usually only the participles of the active. Some of them, however, have perfect participles, of which a part are to be translated passively, others by past participles of English neuter verbs. Such are *adultus, cessātus, clamātus, coalĭtus, concrētus, defectus, deflagrātus, emersus, errātus, interĭtus, oblĭtus, occāsus, placĭtus, redundātus, regnātus, requiētus, sudātus, suētus, triumphātus, ululātus, vigilātus.*

The following perfect participles, from verbs which are sometimes active, are also translated by active participles:—*cænātus*, having supped; *potus*, having drunk; *pransus*, having dined; and sometimes *jurātus*, having sworn.

Some neuter verbs, also, have future passive participles; as, *dormiendus, errandus, regnandus, vigilandus*, &c.

NOTE. Most passive participles of neuter verbs are indicated in the lists which follow.

For the active meaning of *osus* and its compounds, see § 183, 1.

17. The perfect participles of some deponent verbs have both an active and a passive sense; as, *adeptus libertātem*, having obtained liberty, *or adeptā libertāte*, liberty having been obtained.

So *abominātus, comĭtātus, commentātus, complexus, confessus, contestātus, detestātus, dignātus, dimensus, emensus, ementĭtus, emeritus, expertus, exsecrātus, interpretātus, largītus, machinātus, meditātus, mercātus, metātus, oblĭtus, orsus, pactus, partĭtus, perfunctus, pollicĭtus, testātus, venerātus, ultus.*

18. The participles of neuter passive verbs have the signification of the active voice; as, *gavīsus*, having rejoiced. (See in lists.)

But *ausus* is used both in an active and passive sense; as, *ausi omnes immāne nefas, ausoque potiti.* Virg.

19. The genitive plural of participles in *rus* is not used, except that of *futūrus*.

20. In the third and fourth conjugations, the future passive participle sometimes ends in *undus*, especially when *i* precedes. *Potior* has usually *potiundus*. In these conjugations the gerund also has sometimes *undi*, &c.

21. Many present and perfect participles are compounded with *in*, sig-

nifying *not*, whose verbs do not admit of such composition; they thus become adjectives; as, *insciens*, ignorant; *imparātus*, unprepared.

22. Participles, when they do not express distinctions of time, become adjectives, and as such are compared; as, *amans*, loving; *amantior*, *amantissĭmus*. In some instances, they become substantives; as, *præfectus*, a commander.

NOTE. Many words derived from substantives, with the terminations of participles, *ātus*, *ĭtus*, and *ūtus*, are yet adjectives; as, *alātus*, winged; *turrītus*, turreted, &c. See § 128, 7.

GENERAL RULES OF CONJUGATION.

§ 163. 1. Verbs which have *a* in the first root have it also in the third, though it be changed in the second; as, *facio, factum; habeo, habĭtum.*

2. The connecting vowel is often omitted in the second root, and in such cases, if *v* follows, it is changed into *u*. This happens in most verbs of the second conjugation.

REMARK. Some verbs prefix to the second root their initial consonant, with the vowel which follows it, or with *e*; as, *curro, cucurri; fallo, fefelli; cano, cecĭni; parco, peperci.* This prefix is called a *reduplication*. The verbs in which it is found will be specified hereafter. See §§ 165, 168 and 171, Exc. 1, (*b*.)

3. Verbs which want the second root want also the third.

4. Compound verbs form their second and third roots like the simple verbs from which they are derived; as, *audio, audīvi, audītum; exaudio, exaudīvi, exaudītum.*

Some compound verbs, however, are defective, whose simples are complete, and some are complete, whose simples are defective.

EXC. 1. Compound verbs omit the reduplication; but the compounds of *do, sto, disco, posco*, and some of those of *curro*, retain it.

EXC. 2. Verbs which, in composition, change *a* into *e* in the first root, (see § 189, 2,) retain *e* in the second and third roots of the compound; as, *scando, scandi, scansum; descendo, descendi, descensum.*

EXC. 3. When *a*, *æ*, or *e*, in the first root of the simple verb, is changed in the compound into *i*, the same is retained in the second and third roots, in case the third root of the simple is a trisyllable; as, *habeo, habui, habĭtum; prohibeo, prohibui, prohibĭtum.*

But if the third root is a dissyllable, the second root of the compound has usually the same vowel as that of the simple,

but sometimes changes *e* into *i*, and the third root has *e*; as, *facio, feci, factum; conficio, confēci, confectum; teneo, tenui, tentum; retineo, retinui, retentum.*

NOTE. The compounds of *cado, ago, frango, pango*, and *tango*, retain *a*, and those of *sa.io* retain *u*, in the third root.

EXC. 4. Compounds of *pario*, and some of *do* and *cubo*, are of different conjugations from their simple verbs.

A few other exceptions will be noticed in the following lists.

FORMATION OF SECOND AND THIRD ROOTS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 164. In regular verbs of this conjugation, the second root ends in *āv*, and the third in *ātu*; as, amo, amāvi, amātum. The following list contains such regular verbs of this conjugation as are of most frequent occurrence.

NOTE. In this and the subsequent lists, those verbs which are marked * are said to have no perfect participle; those marked † to have no present participle. A dash (—) after the present, denotes that there is no second root. The participles in *rus* and *dus*, and the supines in *um* and *u* which are in use, are indicated respectively by the letters *r.*, *d.*, *m.*, and *u.* *Abundo*, for example, has no perfect participle, no supine, no participle in *dus*; but it has a present participle, and a participle in *rus*.

In the lists of irregular verbs, those compounds only are given, whose conjugation differs from that of their simples.

When *p.* is subjoined to a deponent verb, it denotes that some of the parts which have commonly an active meaning, are used either actively and passively, or passively alone. Such verbs are by some grammarians called *common*.

*Abundo, r. *to overflow.*
Accūso, m. r. d. *to accuse.*
†Adumbro, *to delineate.*
Ædifico, r. d. *to build.*
Æquo, r. d. *to level.*
Æstīmo, r. d. *to value.*
*Ambūlo, m. d. *to walk.*
Amo, r. d. *to love.*
†Amplio, d. *to enlarge.*
Appello, d. *to call.*
Apto, d. *to fit.*
Aro, r. d. *to plough.*
*†Ausculto, *to listen.*
*†Autūmo, *to suppose.*
†Basio, —, d. *to kiss.*
*Bello, m. r. d. *to wage war.*
†Beo, *to bless.*
*Boo, *to bellow.*
†Brevio, *to shorten.*
†Cæco, *to blind.*
†Cælo, *to carve.*
†Calcĕo, d. *to shoe.*
*†Calcītro, *to kick.*
Canto, m. *to sing.*
Capto, m. r. d *to sieze.*
†Castīgo, m. d. *to chastise.*
Celebro, d. *to celebrate.*
Celo, d. *to conceal.*
Cesso, d. *to cease.*
Certo, r. d. *to strive.*
Clamo, *to shout.*
Cogīto, d. *to think.*
Compāro, d. *to compare.*
Concilio, r. d. *to reconcile.*
Considĕro, r. d. *to consider.*
Cremo, d. *to burn.*
concrĕmo, r.
†Creo, r. d. *to create.*
Crucio, d. *to torment.*
Culpo, r. d. *to blame.*
†Cuneo, d. *to wedge.*
Curo, r. d. *to cure.*
Damno, m. r. d. *to condemn.*
Decŏro, d. *to adorn.*
*†Delineo, *to delineate.*
Desiděro, r. d. *to desire.*
Destīno, d. *to design.*
Dico, m. r. d. *to dedicate.*
Dicto, *to dictate.*
†Dolo, *to hew.*
Dono, r. d. *to bestow.*
Duplīco, r. d. *to double.*

Duro, r. *to harden.*
‖Effigio, *to portray.*
Equito, *to ride.*
†Enucleo, *to explain.*
Erro, *to wander.*
Existimo, u. r. d. *to think.*
Explōro, m. d. *to search.*
Exŭlo, m. r. *to be banished.*
Fabrĭco, d. *to frame.*
†Fatīgo, r. d. *to weary.*
Festino, r. *to hasten.*
Firmo, r. d. *to strengthen.*
Flagĭto, m. d. *to demand.*
*Flagro, r. *to be on fire.*
conflagro, r.
deflagro.
Flo, d. *to blow.*
Formo, r. d. *to form.*
Foro, d. *to bore.*
†Fræno, *to bridle.*
†Fraudo, d. *to defraud.*
‡Frio, —, *to crumble.*
Fugo, r. d. *to put to flight.*
‡Fundo, r. *to found.*
†Furio, —, *to madden.*
†Galeo, —, *to put on a helmet.*
Gesto, d. *to bear.*
Glacio, —, *to congeal.*
Gravo, d. *to weigh down.*
Gusto, d. *to taste.*
Habĭto, m. d. *to dwell.*
*Halo, —, *to breathe.*
Hiēmo, m. *to winter.*
*Hio, d. *to gape.*
†Humo, r. d. *to bury.*
Jacto, r. d. *to throw.*
Ignōro, r. d. *to be ignorant.*
Impĕro, r. d. *to command.*
†Impetro, r. d. *to obtain.*
Inchoo, r. *to begin.*
†Indāgo, r. d. *to trace out.*
Indĭco, m. r. d. *to show.*
†Inebrio, —, *to inebriate.*
Initio, *to initiate.*
Inquīno, *to pollute.*
Instauro, d. *to renew.*
Intro, r. d. *to enter.*
Invīto, d. *to invite.*
Irrīto, r. d. *to irritate.*
Itĕro, u. d. *to do again.*
Judĭco, r. d. *to judge.*
Jugo, d. *to couple.*
Jugŭlo, m. d. *to butcher.*
Juro, d. *to swear.*
Labōro, r. d. *to labor.*
Lacĕro, d. *to tear.*
*Lacto, *to suckle.*
†Lanio, d. *to butcher.*
Latro, *to bark.*
Laudo, r. d. *to praise.*
Laxo, d. *to loose.*
†Lego, *to depute.*
Levo, r. d. *to lighten.*
Libĕro, r. d. *to free.*
Libo, d. *to pour out.*
Ligo, *to bind.*
†Liquo, d. *to melt.*
Lito, *to appease.*
Loco, r. d. *to place.*
Lustro, d. *to survey.*
Luxurio, *to abound.*
Macto, d. *to slay.*
Macŭlo, *to stain.*
Mando, r. d. *to command.*
Mandūco, *to chew.*
*Mano, *to flow.*
Matūro, d. *to ripen.*
Memŏro, u. d. *to tell.*
*Meo, *to go.*
*Migro, u. r. d. *to depart.*
*Milĭto, m. r. *to serve in war.*
†Minio, d. *to paint red*
Ministro, d. *to serve.*
Mitīgo, d. *to pacify.*
Monstro, r. *to show.*
†demonstro, d.
Muto, r. d. *to change.*
Narro, r. d. *to tell.*
Nato, m. r. *to swim.*
†Navīgo, r. d. *to sail.*
Navo, r. d. *to perform.*
*Nauseo, *to loathe.*
Nego, m. r. d. *to deny.*
*No, *to swim.*
Nomĭno, r. d. *to name.*
Noto, d. *to mark.*
Novo, r. d. *to renew.*
Nudo, d. *to make bare.*
Nuncūpo, r. d. *to name.*
Nuntio, m r. *to tell.*
renuntio, d.
*Nuto, r. *to nod.*
Obsecro, r. d. *to beseech.*
Obtrunco, r. *to kill.*
Onĕro, r. d. *to load*
Opto, d. *to wish.*
†Orbo, r. *to deprive.*
Orno, r. d. *to adorn.*
Oro, m. r. d. *to beg.*
Paco, d. *to subdue.*
Paro, r. d. *to prepare.*
Patro, r. d. *to perform.*
*Pecco, r. d. *to sin.*
†Pio, d. *to propitiate.*
Placo, r. d. *to appease.*
Ploro, m. d. *to bewail.*
Porto, u. r. d. *to carry.*
Postŭlo, m. r. d. *to demand.*
Privo, d. *to deprive.*
Probo, m. u. r. d. *to approve.*
comprōbo, m.
Profligo, d. *to rout.*
Propĕro, d. *to hasten.*
*†Propīno, *to drink to.*
Propitio, d. *to appease.*
Pugno, r. d. *to fight.*
Pulso, d. *to beat.*
Purgo, u. r. d. *to cleanse.*
Puto, d. *to think.*
Quasso, d. *to shake.*
Radio, *to emit rays.*
Rapto, d. *to drag.*
Recupĕro, m. r. d. *to recover.*
Recūso, r. d. *to refuse.*
Redundo, *to overflow.*
Regno, r. d. *to rule.*
†Repudio, r. d. *to reject.*
Resēro, d. *to unlock.*
*†Retalio, —, *to retaliate.*
Rigo, *to water.*
Rogo, m. r. d. *to ask.*
Roto, *to whirl.*
Sacrifĭco, m. *to sacrifice.*
Sacro, d. *to consecrate.*
†Sagīno, d. *to fatten.*
Salto, r. *to dance.*
Salūto, m. r. d. *to salute.*
Sano, r. d. *to heal.*
Satio, *to satiate.*
†Satūro, *to fill.*
Saucio, d. *to wound.*
*Secundo, *to prosper.*
Sedo, m. d. *to allay.*
Servo, r. d. *to keep.*
*†Sibĭlo, *to hiss.*
Sicco, d. *to dry.*
Signo, r. d. *to mark out.*
assigno, m.

Simŭlo, r. d. *to pretend.*
Socio, d. *to associate.*
*Somnio, *to dream.*
Specto, m. r. d. *to behold.*
Spero, r. d. *to hope.*
*Spiro, *to breathe.*
conspīro.
exspīro, r.
suspīro, d.
Spolio, m. d. *to rob.*
Spumo, *to foam.*
Stillo, *to drop.*
Stimŭlo, *to goad.*
Stipo, *to stuff.*
Sudo, *to sweat.*
Suffōco, *to strangle.*
Sugillo, d. *to taunt.*
Supĕro, r. d. *to overcome.*
Suppedĭto, *to afford.*
*Supplĭco, m. *to supplicate.*
*Susurro, *to whisper.*
Tardo, *to delay.*
Taxo, d. *to rate.*
Temĕro, d. *to defile.*
Tempĕro, r. d. *to temper.*
obtempĕro, r. *to obey.*
Tento, m. r. d. *to try.*
Terebro, *to bore.*
Termĭno, r. d. *to limit.*
Titūbo, *to stagger.*
Tolĕro, u. r. d. *to bear.*
Tracto, u. d. *to handle.*
*†Tripudio, *to dance.*
Triumpho, r. *to triumph.*
Trucīdo, r. d. *to kill.*
Turbo, d. *to disturb.*
*Vaco, *to be at leisure.*
*Vapŭlo, m. d. *to be beaten.*
Vario, *to diversify.*
Vasto, d. *to lay waste.*
Vellĭco, *to pluck.*
Verbĕro, r. d. *to beat.*
*Vestīgo, *to search for.*
Vexo, d. *to tease.*
Vibro, d. *to brandish.*
Vigĭlo, d. *to watch.*
Violo, m. r. d. *to violate.*
Vitio, d. *to vitiate.*
Vito, u. d. *to shun.*
Ulŭlo, *to howl.*
Umbro, r. *to shade.*
Voco, r. d. *to call.*
*Volo, *to fly.*
Voro, r. *to devour.*
Vulgo, r. d. *to publish.*
Vulnĕro, d. *to wound.*

§ 165. The following verbs of the first conjugation are irregular or defective in their second and third roots:—

*Crepo, crepui, *to make a noise.*
*discrĕpo, -ui *or* -āvi.
incrĕpo, -ui *or* -āvi, -ĭtum. *or* ātum,
*†percrĕpo, —.
*†recrĕpo, —.
*Cubo, cubui, cubĭtum (*sup.*), *to recline.*
incŭbo, -ui *or* -āvi, d.
Those compounds of cubo *which take* m *before* b, *are of the third conjugation.*
Do, dedi, datum, m. r. d. *to give.*
So circumdo, pessumdo, satisdo, *and* venumdo; *the other compounds of* do *are of the third conjugation.*
Domo, domui, domĭtum, r. d. *to tame.*
Frico, fricui, frictum *or* fricātum, d. *to rub.*
confrico, —, -ātum.
infrico, —, -ātum.
Juvo, juvi, jūtum, r. d., *also* juvatūrus, *to help.*
So adjūvo, -jūvi, -jūtum, m. r. d.
*Labo, —, *to totter.*
Lavo, lavi, lavātum, lautum *or* lotum; (*sup.*) lautum *or* lavātum, lavatūrus, d. *to wash.*
Lavo *is also sometimes of the third conjugation.*
*Mico, micui, *to glitter.*
dimĭco, -āvi *or* -ui, r. (-atūrus).
*emĭco, -ui, r. (-atūrus).
*intermĭco, —.
*promĭco, —, d.
Neco, necāvi *or* necui, necātum, r. d. *to kill.*
enĕco, -āvi *or* -ui, -ātam, *or* -tum, d.
†interněco, —, -ātum.
*†Nexo, —, *to tie.*
Plico, —, plicātum, *to fold.*
duplĭco, -āvi, -ātum, r. d.
multiplĭco *and* replĭco *have* -āvi, -ātum.
*supplĭco, -āvi, m. r.
applĭco, -āvi *or* -ui, -ātum *or* -ĭtum, -itūrus. *So* implĭco.
complĭco, -ui, -ĭtum *or* -ātum.
explĭco, -āvi *or* -ui, -ātum *or* -ĭtum, r. r.
Poto, potāvi, potātum *or* potum, r. r. m. m. d. *to drink.*
†epōto, -āvi, -um.
*perpōto, -āvi.
Seco, secui, sectum, secatūrus, d. *to cut.*
*circumsĕco, —.
*intersĕco, —, d.
*persĕco, -ui
præsĕco, -ui, -tum *or* -ātum. *So* resĕco, d.

*Sono, sonui, -atūrus, d. *to sound.*
*consŏno, -ui. *So* ex-, in-, per-, præ-sŏno.
*resŏno, -āvi.
*assŏno, —. *So* circumsŏno *and* dissŏno.
*Sto, steti, statūrus, *to stand.*
*antesto, -stĕti. *So* circumsto, intersto, supersto.
*consto, -stĭti, -statūrus. *So* exto, insto, obsto, persto.
*præsto, -stĭti, -statūrus, d.
*adsto, -stĭti, -stitūrus.
*prosto, -stĭti. *So* resto.
*disto, —. *So* substo.
*Tono, tonui, *to thunder.* *So* circumtŏno.
attŏno, -ui, -itum.
intŏno, -ui, -ātum.
*retŏno, —.
Veto, vetui, *or* āvi, vetĭtum, *to forbid.*

§ 166. All deponent verbs, of the first conjugation, are regular, and are conjugated like *miror;* as,

Abomĭnor, d. *to abhor.*
Adŭlor, d. *to flatter.*
Æmŭlor, d. *to rival.*
*Aprīcor, *to bask in the sun.*
Arbitror, r. d. *to think.*
Aspernor, d. p. *to despise.*
Aucŭpor, r. p. *to hunt after.*
Auxilior, p. *to help.*
Aversor, d. *to dislike.*
Calumnior, *to calumniate.*
Causor, *to allege.*
*Comissor, m. *to revel.*
Comĭtor, p. *to accompany.*
Concĭōnor, *to harangue.*
*Confabŭlor, m. *to discourse.*
Conor, d. *to endeavor.*
†Conspĭcor, *to see.*
Contemplor, d. p. *to view.*
Crimĭnor, m. p. *to blame.*
Cunctor, d. p. *to delay.*
Deprĕcor, m. r. d. p. *to deprecate.*
*†Digladior, *to fence.*
Dignor, d. p. *to think worthy.*
Domĭnor, *to rule.*
Epŭlor, r. d. *to feast.*
*Famŭlor, m. *to wait on.*
Fatur, (defect.) u. d. *to speak. See* § 183, 6.
†Ferior, r. *to keep holiday.*
*Frumentor, m. *to forage.*
Furor, m. *to steal.*
Glorior, r. d. *to boast.*
Gratŭlor, m. d. *to congratulate.*
Hortor, d. *to encourage.*
Imĭtor, u. r. d. *to imitate.*
Indignor, d. *to disdain.*
Infitior, d. *to deny.*
Insector, *to pursue.*
Insidior, r. d. *to lie in wait.*
Jacŭlor, p. *to dart.*
Jocor, *to jest.*
Lætor, r. d. p. *to rejoice.*
Lamentor, d. p. *to bewail.*
*†Lignor, m. *to gather fuel.*
Luctor, d. *to wrestle.*
Medĭcor, r. d. p. *to heal.*
Medĭtor, p. *to meditate.*
Mercor, m. r. d. p. *to buy.*
Minor, *to threaten.*
Miror, u. r. d. *to admire.*
Misĕror, d. *to pity.*
Moděror, u. d. *to rule.*
Modŭlor, d. p. *to modulate.*
Moror, r. d. *to delay.*
†Mutuor, p. *to borrow.*
Negotior, r. *to traffic.*
*†Nugor, *to trifle.*
Obtestor, p. *to beseech.*
Opĕror, *to work.*
Opīnor, u. r. d. *to think.*
Opitŭlor, m. *to help.*
Opsōnor, m. *to cater.*
†Ōtior, *to be at leisure.*
Pabŭlor, m. d. *to graze.*
Palor, *to wander.*
Percontor, m. *to inquire.*
Periclĭtor, d. p. *to try.*
†Piscor, m. *to fish.*
Popŭlor, r. d. p. *to lay waste.*
Prædor, m. *to plunder.*
Prœlior, *to fight.*
Precor, m. u. r. d. *to pray.*
Recordor, d. *to remember.*
Rimor, d. *to search.*
Rixor, *to scold.*
*Rustĭcor, *to live in the country.*
Sciscĭtor, m. p. *to inquire.*
*Scitor, m. *to ask.*
Scrutor, p. *to search.*
Solor, d. *to comfort.*
Spatior, *to walk about.*
Specŭlor, m. r. d. *to view.*
†Stipŭlor, p. *to stipulate.*
†Suavior, d. *to kiss.*
Suspĭcor, *to suspect.*
Testor, d. p. *to witness.* *So* detestor.
Tutor, d. *to defend.*
Vagor, *to wander.*
Venĕror, d. p. *to worship.*
Venor, m. *to hunt.*
Versor, *to be employed*
Vociferor, *to bawl.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 167. Verbs of the second conjugation end in *eo*. The second and third roots, instead of *ēv* and *ētu*, commonly end in *u* and *ĭtu;* as, mon*eo*, mon*ui*, mon*ĭtum*.

The following list contains most verbs so conjugated, and also some which want the second and third roots :—

*Aceo, *to be sour.*
*Albeo, —, *to be white.*
Arceo, d. *to drive away.*
coerceo, d. *to restrain.*
exerceo, d. *to exercise.*
*Areo, *to be dry.*
*Aveo, —, *to covet.*
*Caleo, r. *to be warm.*
*Calleo, —, *to be hard.*
*percalleo, *to be hardened.*
*Calveo, —, *to be bald.*
*Candeo, *to be white.*
*Caneo, *to be hoary.*
*Careo, r. d. *to want.*
*Ceveo, —, *to fawn.*
*Clareo, *to be bright.*
*Clueo, —, *to be famous.*
*Denseo, —, *to thicken.*
*Diribeo, —, *to distribute.*
*Doleo, r. d. *to grieve.*
*Egeo, r. *to want.*
*Emineo, *to rise above.*
*Flacceo, *to wither.*
*Flaveo, —, *to be yellow.*
*Floreo, *to flourish.*
*Fœteo, —, *to be fetid.*
*Frigeo, —, *to be cold.*
*Frondeo, —, *to bear leaves.*
Habeo, r. d. *to have.*
So ad-, ex-, pro-hibeo.
cohibeo, d. *to restrain.*
inhibeo, d. *to hinder.*
*†perhibeo, d. *to report.*
†posthabeo, *to postpone.*
præbeo, r. d. *to afford.*
debeo, r. d. *to owe.*
*Hebeo, —, *to be dull.*
*Horreo, d. *to be rough.*
*Humeo, —, *to be moist.*
*Jaceo, r. *to lie.*
*Lacteo, —, *to suck.*
*Langueo, *to languish.*
*Lateo, *to lie hid.*
*Lenteo, —, *to be slow.*
*Liceo, *to be valued.*
*Liveo, —, *to be livid.*
*Maceo, —, *to be lean.*
*Madeo, *to be wet.*
Mereo, r *to deserve.*
†commereo, *to deserve.*
†demereo, d. *to earn.*
†emereo, *to merit.*
*†permereo, *to serve in war.*
promereo, *to deserve.*
*Mœreo, —, *to grieve.*
Moneo, r. d. *to advise.*
admoneo, m. r. d. *to admonish.*
commoneo, *to warn.*
præmoneo, *to forewarn.*
*Muceo, —, *to be mouldy.*
*Nigreo, *to be black.*
*Niteo, *to shine.*
Noceo, m. r. *to hurt.*
*Oleo, *to smell.*
*Palleo, *to be pale.*
*Pareo, m. r. d. *to obey.*
*Pateo, *to be open.*
Placeo, *to please.*
*Polleo, —, *to be able.*
*Puteo, *to be nauseous.*
*Putreo, *to be putrid.*
*Renideo, —, *to glitter.*
*Rigeo, *to be stiff.*
*Rubeo, *to be red.*
*Scateo, —, *to overflow.*
*Sileo, d. *to be silent.*
*Sordeo, *to be filthy.*
*Splendeo, —, *to shine.*
*Squaleo, *to be foul.*
*Strideo, —, *to creak.*
*Studeo, d. *to study.*
*Stupeo, *to be amazed.*
Taceo, r. d. *to be silent.*
*Tepeo, *to be warm.*
Terreo, d. *to terrify.*
So deterreo, *to deter.*
†absterreo, *to deter.*
†conterreo, †exterreo, †perterreo, } *to frighten.*
*Timeo, d. *to fear.*
*Torpeo, *to be torpid.*
*Tumeo, *to swell.*
*Valeo, r. *to be able.*
*Vegeo, —, *to be strong.*
*Vieo, —, *to bind.*
*Vigeo, *to be strong.*
*Vireo, *to be green.*
*Uveo, —, *to be moist.*

§ 168. The following list contains those verbs of the second conjugation which do not form their second and third roots in *u* and *ĭtu*, including those which form them regularly in *ēv* and *ētu*.

NOTE. Some verbs of this conjugation are irregular in the second and third roots, in consequence of imitating the common forms of the third conjugation.

Aboleo, -ēvi, -ĭtum, r. d. *to efface.*
*Algeo, alsi, *to be cold.*
Ardeo, arsi, arsum, r. *to burn.*
Audeo, ausus sum, r. d. *to dare.*
Augeo, auxi, auctum, r. d. *to increase.*
Caveo, cavi, cautum, m. d. *to beware.*
Censeo, censui, censum, d. *to think.*
recenseo, -ui, -um *or* -ĭtum.
*percenseo, -ui.
*succenseo, -ui, d.
Cieo, civi, citum, *to excite. The perfect* civi *seems to come from* cio, *of the fourth conjugation.*
Compleo, -ēvi, -ētum, *to fill. So the other compounds of* pleo.
*Conniveo, -nīvi, *to wink at.*
Deleo, -ēvi, -ētum, d. *to blot out.*
Doceo, docui, doctum, d. *to teach.*
*Faveo, favi, fautūrus, *to favor.*
*Ferveo, ferbui, *to boil. It is sometimes of the third conjugation.*
Fleo, flevi, fletum, r. d. *to weep.*
Foveo, fovi, fotum, d. *to cherish.*
Frendeo, —, fressum *or* fresum, *to gnash.*
*Fulgeo, fulsi, *to shine.*
Fulgo, *of the third conjugation, is also in use.*
Gaudeo, gavīsus sum, r. *to rejoice.*
*Hæreo, hæsi, hæsūrus, *to stick.*
Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, r. d. *to indulge.*
Jubeo, jussi, jussum, r. *to order.*
*Luceo, luxi, *to shine.*
polluceo, -luxi, -luctum.
*Lugeo, luxi, d. *to mourn.*
*Maneo, mansi, mansum, m. r. d. *to remain.*
Misceo, miscui, mistum *or* mixtum, mistūrus, d. *to mix.*
Mordeo, momordi, morsum, d. *to bite.*
Moveo, movi, motum, r. d. *to move.*
Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, d. *to soothe.*
*Mulgeo, mulsi *or* mulxi, *to milk.*
Neo, nevi, netum, *to spin.*
*Paveo, pavi, d. *to fear.*
*Pendeo, pependi, *to hang.*
propendeo, —, propensum.
Pleo, (*obsolete.*) *See* compleo.
Prandeo, prandi, pransum, r. *to dine.*
Rideo, risi, risum, m. r. d. *to laugh.*
*Sedeo, sedi, sessum, m. r. *to sit. The compounds change* e *into* i.
*dissideo, -sēdi. *So* præsideo.
*Seneo, senui, *to be old.*
Soleo, solĭtus sum *or* soli, *to be accustomed.*
*Sorbeo, sorbui, *to suck in.*
*absorbeo, -sorbui *or* -sorpsi.
Spondeo, spopondi, sponsum, *to promise.*
Suadeo, suasi, suasum, r. d. *to advise.*
Teneo, tenui, tentum, r. d. *to hold. The compounds change* e *into* i.
*attĭneo, -tinui. *So* pertineo.
Tergeo, tersi, tersum, *to wipe.*
Tergo, *of the third conjugation, is also in use.*
Tondeo, —, tonsum, *to shear. The compounds have the perfect* tondi.
Torqueo, torsi, tortum, d. *to twist.*
Torreo, torrui, tostum, *to roast.*
*Turgeo, tursi, *to swell.*
*Urgeo *or* urgueo, ursi, d. *to urge.*
Video, vidi, visum, m. u. r. d. *to see*
Voveo, vovi, votum, d. *to vow.*

§ 169. *Impersonal Verbs of the Second Conjugation.*

Decet, decuit, *it becomes.*
Libet, libuit *or* libĭtum est, *it pleases.*
Licet, licuit *or* licĭtum est, *it is lawful.*
Liquet, liquit, *it is clear.*
*Misĕret, miseruit *or* miserĭtum est, *it pities.*
Oportet, oportuit, *it behoves.*
Piget, piguit *or* pigĭtum est, d. *it grieves.*
Pœnĭtet, pœnituit, pœnitūrus, d. *it repents.*
Pudet, puduit *or* pudĭtum est, d. *it shames.*
Tædet, tæduit *or* tæsum est, *it wearies.*
So pertædet.

NOTE. *Lubet*, &c., are sometimes written for *libet*, &c., especially in the comic writers.

§ 170. *Deponent Verbs of the Second Conjugation.*

Fateor, fassus, r. d. *to confess.*
The compounds change a *into* i.
confiteor, confessus, d. p *to acknowledge.*
*†diffiteor, *to deny.*
profiteor, professus, d. p. *to declare.*
Liceor, licĭtus, *to bid a price.*
*Medeor, d. *to cure.*
Mereor, merĭtus, *to deserve.*
Misereor, miserĭtus *or* misertus, *to pity.*
Polliceor, pollicĭtus, p. *to promise.*
Reor, ratus, *to think.*
Tueor, tŭĭtus, d. p. *to protect.*
Vereor, verĭtus, d. *to fear.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 171. In the third conjugation, when the first root ends with a consonant, the second root is formed by adding *s*; when it ends with a vowel, the first and second roots are the same: the third root is formed by adding *tu;* as, carpo, carpsi, carptum; arguo, argui, argūtum.

In annexing *s* and *tu*, certain changes occur in the final consonant of the root:—

1. *C, g, h,* and *qu*, at the end of the root, form with *s* the double letter *x* in the 2d root; in the 3d root, *c* remains, and the others are changed into *c* before *tu;* as, *rego (regsi), rexi, rectum; veho, vexi, vectum, coquo, coxi, coctum.*

Note. In *fluo, fluxi,* and *struo, struxi, h* seems to have been lost in the root of the verb.

2. *B* is changed into *p* before *s* and *tu;* as, *scribo, scripsi, scriptum.*

3. *D* and *t*, before *s*, are either dropped, or changed into *s;* as, *claudo, clausi; cedo, cessi.* After *m, p* is sometimes inserted before *s;* as, *sumo, sumpsi.*

Some other consonants are dropped, or changed into *s*, in certain verbs.

Exc. 1. Many verbs whose first root ends in a consonant, do not add *s* to form the second root.

(*a.*) Of these, some have the second root the same as the first; as,

Bibo,	Excūdo,	Ico,	Mando,	Scabo,	Solvo,	Verro,
Edo,	Fodio,	Lambo,	Prehendo,	Scando,	Strido,	Verto,
Emo,	Fugio,	Lego,	Psallo,	Sido,	Tollo,	Volvo;

to which add the compounds of the obsolete *cando, fendo,* and *nuo.*

(*b.*) Some make a change in the first root. Of these, some change a vowel, some drop a consonant, some prefix a reduplication, others admit two or more of these changes; as,

Ago,	Facio,	Frango,	Jacio,	Rumpo,	Scindo,
Capio,	Findo,	Fundo,	Linquo,	Sisto,	Vinco.

Those which have a reduplication are

Cado,	Curro,	Parco,	Pendo,	Tango,
Cædo,	Disco,	Pario,	Posco,	Tendo,
Cano,	Fallo,	Pello,	Pungo,	Tundo.

Exc. 2. Some add *u* to the root of the verb; as,

Alo,	Consŭlo,	Gemo,	Rapio,	Tremo,
Colo,	Depso,	Geno, (*obs.*)	Strepo,	Volo,
Compesco,	Fremo,	Molo,	Texo,	Vomo.

Meto and *pono* add *su*, with a change in the root.

Exc. 3. The following add *tu*:—

Arcesso,	Cupio,	Lacesso,	Rudo,
Capesso,	Incesso,	Peto,	Quæro, *with a change of* r *into* s.

Exc. 4. The following add *v*, with a change in the root; those in *sco* dropping *sc*:—

Cresco,	Pasco,	Scisco,	Lino,	Sino,	Sterno,
Nosco,	Quiesco,	Cerno,	Sero,	Sperno,	Tero.

Exc. 5. The 3d roots of verbs whose root ends in *d* or *t*, add *su*, instead of *tu*,, to the root, either dropping those letters, or changing them into *s*; as, *claudo, clausum; defendo, defensum; cedo, cessum.* But the compounds of *do* add *tu.*

The following, also, add *su*, with a change of the root:—

Excello,	Fallo,	Pello,	Spargo,	Verro.
Percello,	Mergo,	Premo,	Vello,	

Exc. 6. The following add *tu*, with a change of the root:—

Cerno,	Fingo,	Gero,	Sero,	Sperno,	Stringo,	Uro,
Colo,	Frango,	Rumpo,	Sisto,	Sterno,	Tero,	Vinco;

to which add those in *sco*, with the 2d root in *v*; these drop *sc* before *tu*, except *pasco*, which drops *c* only.

Exc. 7. The following have *itu*:—

Bibo,	Molo,	Pono, *with a change of* n *into* s.
Geno, (*obs.*)	Vomo,	

The following have *itu*:—

Arcesso,	Cupio,	Peto,
Facesso,	Lacesso,	Quæro, *with a change of* r *into* s.

Some other irregularities occur in this conjugation.

§ 172. The following list contains both the regular and irregular formations of the second and third roots in the third conjugation:—

Acuo, acui, acūtum, d. *to sharpen.*
Ago, egi, actum, r. d. *to drive.*
So circumăgo, cogo, *and* perăgo.
*ambĭgo, —, *to doubt. So* satăgo.
The other compounds change a *into* i. See § 189. 2.
*prodĭgo, -ēgi, *to squander.*
Alo, alui, alĭtum *or* altum, d. *to nourish.*
*Ango, anxi, *to strangle.*
Arguo, argui, argūtum, d. *to convict.*
Arcesso, -cessīvi, -cessītum, r. d. *to call for.*
*Batuo, batui, d. *to beat.*
Bibo, bibi, bibĭtum, d. *to drink.*
*Cado, cecĭdi, casūrus, *to fall. The compounds change* a *into* i, *and drop the reduplication.*
occīdo, -cīdi, -cāsum, r. *to set.*
Cædo, cecīdi, cæsum, r. d. *to cut. The compounds change* æ *into* I, *and drop the reduplication.*
From candeo, *of the second conjugation, is formed*
accendo, -cendi, -censum, d. *to*

kindle. So the other compounds.

*Cano, cecĭni, d. *to sing. The compounds change* a *into* i.
*concĭno, -cinŭi. *So* occĭno, præcĭno.
*accĭno, —. *So* incĭno, intercĭno, succĭno, recĭno.

*Capesso, -īvi, r. d. *to undertake.*

Capio, cepi, captum, r. d. *to take. The compounds change* a *into* i.

Carpo, carpsi, carptum, d. *to pluck. The compounds change* a *into* e.

Cedo, cessi, cessum, r. *to yield.*

Cello, (*obsolete.*)
excello, -cellŭi, -celsum, *to excel.*
*antecello, —. *So* præcello, recello.
percello, -cŭli, -culsum, *to strike.*

Cerno, crevi, cretum, d. *to decree.*
Cerno, *to see, has no second or third root.*

Cingo, cinxi, cinctum, d. *to gird.*

*Clango, —, *to clang.*

Claudo, clausi, clausum, r. d. *to shut. The compounds change* au *into* u.

*†Clepo, clepsi, *or* clepi, *to steal.*

Colo, colui, cultum, d. *to till.*
†occulo, -cului, -cultum, d. *to hide.*

Como, compsi, comptum, *to deck.*

*Compesco, -pescui, *to restrain.*

Consŭlo, -sului, -sultum, m. r. d. *to consult.*

Coquo, coxi, coctum, m. d. *to cook.*

Credo, credĭdi, credĭtum, r. d. *to believe.*

*Cresco, crevi, *to grow.*
concresco, -crevi, -cretum.

Cubo *is of the first conjugation.*
*accumbo, -cubui, *to lie down. So the other compounds which*

*Cudo, —, *to forge.* [*insert* m.
excūdo, -cūdi, -cūsum, d. *to stamp.*

Cupio, cupīvi, cupītum, d. *to desire.*

*Curro, cucurri, cursūrus, *to run.*
Concurro, circumcurro, succurro, *and* transcurro, *drop the reduplication; the other compounds sometimes drop, and sometimes retain it.*
decurro, decurri, decursum.

*Dego, degi, d. *to live.* [*take away.*

Demo, dempsi, demptum, r. d. *to*

†Depso, depsui, depstum, *to knead.*

Dico, dixi, dictum, u. r. d. *to say.*

*Disco, didĭci, discitūrus, d. *to learn.*

*Dispesco, —, *to separate.*

Divīdo, divīsi, divīsum, r. d. *to divide.*

Do *is of the first conjugation.*
abdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, d. *to hide. So* condo, indo.
addo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, r. d. *to add. So* dedo, edo, prodo, reddo, trado, vendo.
†dido, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, *to divide. So* abdo, subdo.
perdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, m. r. d. *to destroy.*

Duco, duxi, ductum, m. r. d. *to lead.*

Edo, edi, esum, m. u. r. d. *to eat.*

Exuo, exui, exūtum, d. *to strip off.*

Emo, emi, emptum, r. d. *to buy.*

Facesso, -cessi, -cessītum, *to execute*

Facio, feci, factum, m. u. r. d. *to do. Compounded with a preposition, it changes* a *into* i, *and has a regular passive. Compounded with other words, it retains* a *when of this conjugation, and has the passive,* fio, factus. *See* § 180.

Fallo, fefelli, falsum, d. *to deceive.*
*refello, -felli, d. *to refute.*

Fendo, (*obsolete.*)
defendo, -fendi, -fensum, m. u. r. d. *to defend.*
offendo, -fendi, -fensum, d. *to offend.*

Fero, tuli, latum, r. d. *to bear. See* § 179. A perfect *tetŭli* is rare.
*suffĕro, —.

Fido, —, fisus, *to trust. See* § 162, 18.
confīdo, confīsus sum *or* confĭdi, *to rely on.*
diffīdo, diffīsus sum, *to distrust.*

Figo, fixi, fixum, r. *to fix.*

Findo, fidi, fissum, d. *to cleave.*

Fingo, finxi, fictum, d. *to feign.*

Flecto, flexi, flexum, r. d. *to bend.*

*Fligo, flixi, *to dash. So* conflīgo.
affligo, -flixi, -flictum, *to afflict. So* inflīgo.
profligo *is of the first conjugation.*

Fluo, fluxi, fluxum, r. *to flow.*

Fodio, fodi, fossum, d. *to dig.*

Frango, fregi, fractum, r. d. *to break. The compounds change* a *into* i.

*Fremo, fremui, d. *to roar.*

Frendo, —, fresum *or* fressum, *to gnash.*

Frigo, frixi, frictum *or* frixum, *to roast.*

*Fugio, fugi, fugitūrus, d. *to flee.*
Fundo, fudi, fusum, r. d. *to pour*
*Furo, —, *to rage.*
*Gemo, gemui, d. *to groan.*
Gigno, (*obsolete* geno,) genui, genĭtum, r. d. *to beget.*
*Glisco, —, *to grow.*
*Glubo, —, *to peel.*
deglūbo, —, -gluptum.
Gruo, (*obsolete.*) ſingruo.
*congruo, -grui, *to agree.* *So*
Gero, gessi, gestum, r. d. *to bear.*
Jacio, jeci, jactum, d. *to cast.* *The compounds change* a *into* i.
Ico, ici, ictum, r. *to strike.*
Imbuo, imbui, imbūtum, d. *to imbue.*
*Incesso, -cessīvi, *to attack.*
†Induo, indui, indūtum, *to put on.*
Jungo, junxi, junctum, r. d. *to join.*
Lacesso, -cessīvi, -cessītum, r. d. *to provoke.*
Lacio, (*obsolete.*) *The compounds change* a *into* i.
allicio, -lexi, -lectum, d. *to allure.* *So* illicio, pellicio.
elicio, -licui, -licĭtum, *to draw out.*
Lædo, læsi, læsum, m. r. *to hurt.* *The compounds change* æ *into* i.
*Lambo, lambi, *to lick.*
Lego, legi, lectum, r. d. *to read.* *So* allĕgo, perlĕgo, prælĕgo, relĕgo, sublĕgo, *and* translĕgo; *the other compounds change* e *into* i.
dilĭgo, -lexi, -lectum, *to love.*
intellĭgo, -lexi, -lectum, u. r. d. *to understand.*
neglĭgo, -lexi, -lectum, r. d. *to neglect.*
Lingo, —, linctum, d. *to lick.*
*delingo, —.
Lino, livi *or* levi, litum, d. *to daub.*
*Linquo, liqui, d. *to leave.*
relinquo, -lĭqui, -lictum, r. d.
delinquo, -lĭqui, -lictum. *So* derelinquo.
Ludo, lusi, lusum, m. r. *to play.*
*Luo, lui, luitūrus, d. *to atone.*
abluo, -lui, -lūtum, r. d.
diluo, -lui, -lūtum, d. *So* eluo.
Mando, mandi, mansum, d. *to chew.*
Mergo, mersi, mersum, r. d. *to dip.*
Meto, messui, messum, d. *to reap.*
Metuo, metui, metūtum, d. *to fear.*
*Mingo, minxi, mictum, (*sup.*) *to make water.*
Minuo, minui, minūtum, d. *to lessen.*
Mitto, misi, missum, r. d. *to send.*
Molo, molui, molĭtum, *to grind.*
Mungo, (*obsolete.*)
emungo, -munxi, -munctum, *to wipe.*
Necto, nexi, nexum, d. *to knit.*
innecto, -nexui, -nexum. *So* annecto, connecto.
Nosco, novi, notum, d *to learn.*
agnosco, -nōvi, -nītum, d. *to recognize.*
cognosco, -nōvi, -nĭtum, u. r. d. *to know.*
*dignosco, —. *So* prænosco.
ignosco, -nōvi, -nōtum, d. *to pardon.*
Nubo, nupsi, *or* nupta sum, nuptum, [m. r. *to marry.*
Nuo, (*obsolete.*)
*abnuo, -nui, -nuitūrus, d. *to refuse.*
*annuo, -nui. *So* innuo, renuo.
Pando, —, passum *or* pansum, *to open.* *So* expando.
dispando, —, -pansum.
Pago, (*obs.*) pepĭgi, pactum, *to bargain.*
Pango, panxi, pactum, panctūrus, d. *to drive in.*
compingo, -pēgi, -pactum. *So* impingo.
*oppango, -pēgi.
*depango, —. *So* repango, suppingo.
*Parco, peperci *or* parsi, parsūrus, *to spare.*
Pario, pepĕri, partum, paritūrus, d. *to bring forth. The compounds are of the fourth conjugation.*
Pasco, pavi, pastum, m. r. d. *to feed.*
Pecto, —, pexum, d. *to comb.*
Pello, pepŭli, pulsum, d. *to drive. The compounds drop the reduplication.*
Pendo, pependi, pensum, r. *to weigh. The compounds drop the reduplication.*
Peto, petīvi, petītum, m.u.r. d. *to ask.*
Pingo, pinxi, pictum, *to paint.*
Pinso, pinsi, pinsītum, pinsum *or* pistum, *to grind.*
*Plango, planxi, planctūrus, *to lament.*
Plaudo, plausi, plausum, d. *to applaud.* *So* applaudo. *The other compounds change* au *into* o.
Plecto, —, plexum, d. *to twine.*
*Pluo, plui *or* pluvi, *to rain.*

Pono, posui, posĭtum, r. d. *to place.*
Pono, *and its compounds, anciently had* posīvi *in the perfect.*
*Posco, poposci; d. *to demand.*
Prehendo, } -di, -sum, r. d. *to seize.*
Prendo, }
Premo, pressi, pressum, r. d. *to press. The compounds change* e *into* i.
Promo, prompsi, promptum, r. d. *to bring out.*
*Psallo, psalli, *to play on an instrument.*
Pungo, pupŭgi, punctum, *to prick.*
compungo, -punxi, -punctum. *So* dispungo, expungo.
interpungo, —, -punctum.
*repungo, —.
Quæro, quæsīvi, quæsītum, m. r. d. *to seek. The compounds change* æ *into* i.
Quatio, —, quassum, *to shake. The compounds change* qua *into* cu; *as,*
concutio, -cussi, -cussum, d.
discutio, -cussi, -cussum, r. d.
Quiesco, quiēvi, quietum, r. d. *to rest.*
Rado, rasi, rasum, d. *to shave.*
Rapio, rapui, raptum, r. d. *to snatch. The compounds change* a *into* i.
diripio, -ripui, -reptum, m. r. *So* eripio *and* præripio.
Rego, rexi, rectum, r. d. *to rule. The compounds change* e *into* i.
*pergo (*for* perrĭgo), perrexi, r. *to go forward.*
surgo (*for* surrĭgo), surrexi, surrectum, r. d. *to rise.*
*Repo, repsi, *to creep.*
Rodo, rosi, rosum, r. *to gnaw.*
ab-, ar-, e-, ob-, præ-rōdo, *want the perfect.*
*Rudo, rudīvi, *to bray.*
Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, r. d. *to break.*
Ruo, rui, rutum, ruitūrus, *to fall.*
diruo, -rui, -rūtum, d. *So* obruo.
*corruo, -rui. *So* irruo.
*Sapio, sapīvi, *to be wise. The compounds change* a *into* i.
resipio, -sipīvi *or* -sipui.
*†Scabo, scabi, *to scratch.*
Scalpo, scalpsi, scalptum, *to engrave.*
*Scando, —, d. *to climb. The compounds change* a *into* e; *as,*
ascendo, ascendi, ascensum, r. d.
Scindo, scidi, scissum, d. *to cut.*
Scisco, scivi, scitum, d. *to ordain.*
Scribo, scripsi, scriptum, r. d. *to write.*
Sculpo, sculpsi, sculptum, d. *to carve.*
Sero, sevi, satum, r. d. *to sow.*
consĕro, -sēvi, -sĭtum. *So* insĕro, r.
Sero, —, sertum, *to knit. Its compounds have* serui; *as,*
assĕro, -serui, -sertum, r. d.
*Serpo, serpsi, *to creep.*
*Sido, sidi, *to settle. Its compounds have generally* sedi, sessum, *from* sedeo.
*Sino, sivi, sītūrus, *to permit.*
desīno, desīvi, desītum, r.
Sisto, stiti, statum, *to stop.*
*absisto, -stĭti. *So the other compounds; but* circumsisto *wants the perfect.*
Solvo, solvi, solūtum, r. d. *to loose.*
Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, r. d. *to spread. The compounds change* a *into* e.
Specio, (*obsolete.*) *The compounds change* e *into* i; *as,*
aspicio, aspexi, aspectum, d. *to look at.*
inspicio, inspexi, inspectum, r. d.
Sperno, sprevi, spretum, d. *to despise.*
*†Spuo, spui, *to spit.*
*respuo, respui, d.
Statuo, statui, statūtum, d. *to place. The compounds change* a *into* i.
Sterno, stravi, stratum, d. *to strew.*
*Sternuo, sternui, *to sneeze.*
*Sterto, —, *to snore.*
*†desterto, destertui.
*Stinguo, —, *to extinguish.*
distinguo, distinxi, distinctum. *So* extinguo, r. d.
*Strepo, strepui, *to make a noise.*
*Strido, stridi, *to creak.*
Stringo, strinxi, strictum, r. d. *to tie hard.*
Struo, struxi, structum, d. *to build.*
Sugo, suxi, suctum, *to suck.*
Sumo, sumpsi, sumptum, r. d. *to take.*
Suo, —, sutum, d. *to sew. So* consuo, dissuo.
insuo, -sui, sūtum.
*assuo, —.
Tango, tetĭgi, tactum, r. d. *to touch. The compounds change* a *into* i, *and drop the reduplication.*
contingo, contĭgi, contactum, r.

Tego, texi, tectum, r. d. *to cover.*
*Temno, —, d. *to despise.*
contemno, -tempsi, -temptum, d.
Tendo, tetendi, tensum *or* tentum, *to stretch. The compounds drop the reduplication; as,*
extendo, -tendi, -tensum *or* -tentum. *So* in-, os- *and* re-tendo.
detendo *has* tensum. *The other compounds have* tentum.
*†Tergo, tersi, tersum, *to wipe.* Tergeo, *of the second conjugation, has the same second and third roots.*
Tero, trivi, tritum, d. *to rub.*
Texo, texui, textum, d. *to weave.*
Tingo *or* tinguo, tinxi, tinctum, r. d. *to tinge.*
*Tollo, tolli, d. *to raise.*
sustollo, sustŭli, sublātum, r. *to take away.*
*attollo, —. *So* extollo.
Traho, traxi, tractum, r. d. *to draw.*
*Tremo, tremui, d. *to tremble.*
Tribuo, tribui, tribūtum, r. d. *to ascribe.*
Trudo, trusi, trusum, *to thrust.*
Tundo, tutŭdi, tunsum *or* tusum, *to beat. The compounds drop the reduplication, and have* tusum. *Yet* detunsum, obtunsum, *and* retunsum, *are also found.*
Ungo, unxi, unctum, d. *to anoint.*
Uro, ussi, ustum, d. *to burn.*
*Vado, —, *to go. So* supervādo. *The other compounds have* vāsi; *as,*
*evādo, evāsi, r. *So* pervādo; *also* invādo, r. d.
Veho, vexi, vectum, r. *to carry.*
Vello, velli *or* vulsi, vulsum, d. *to pull.*
So avello, d., divello, evello, d., revello.
The other compounds have velli *only, except* intervello, *which has* vulsi.
*Vergo, versi, *to incline.*
Verro, — versum, d. *to brush.*
Verto, verti, versum, r. d. *to turn.*
Vinco, vici, victum, r. d. *to conquer.*
*Viso, —, d. *to visit.*
*Vivo, vixi, victūrus, d. *to live.*
Volvo, volvi, volūtum, d. *to roll.*
Vomo, vomui, vomĭtum, r. d. *to vomit.*

Inceptive Verbs.

§ 173. Inceptive verbs in general want the third root, and their second root, when used, is the same as that of their primitives. Of those derived from nouns and adjectives, some want the perfect, and some form it by adding *ui* to the root of the primitive. See § 187, II. 2.

In the following list, those verbs to which *s* is added, have a simple verb in use from which they are formed:—

*Acesco, acui, s. *to grow sour.*
*Ægresco, *to grow sick.*
*Albesco, —, s. *to grow white.*
*Alesco, —, s. *to grow.*
coalesco, -alui, -alĭtum, *to grow together.*
*Ardesco, arsi, s. *to take fire.*
*Aresco, —, s. *to grow dry.*
*exaresco, -arui. *So* inaresco, peraresco.
*Augesco, auxi, s. *to increase.*
*Calesco, calui, s. *to grow warm.*
*Calvesco, —, s. *to become bald.*
*Candesco, candui, s. *to grow white.*
*Canesco, canui, s. *to become hoary.*
*Claresco, clarui, s. *to become bright.*
*Condormisco, -dormīvi, s. *to go to sleep.*
*Conticesco, -ticui, *to become silent.*
*Crebresco, -crebui *and* crebrui, *to increase.*
*Crudesco, crudui, *to become raw.*
*Ditesco, —, *to grow rich.*
*Dulcesco, —, *to grow sweet.*
*Duresco, durui, *to grow hard.*
*Evilesco, evilui, *to become worthless.*
*Extimesco, -timui, *to be afraid.*
*Fatisco, —, *to gape.*
*Flaccesco, flaccui, s. *to grow weak.*

*Fervesco, ferbui, s. *to grow warm.*
*Floresco, florui, s. *to begin to flourish.*
*Fracesco, fracui, *to grow mouldy.*
*Frigesco, —, s. *to grow cold.*
*perfrigesco, -frixi. *So* refrigesco.
*Frondesco, —, s. *to put forth leaves.*
*Fruticesco, —, *to put forth fruit.*
*Gelasco, —, s. *to freeze.*
*congelasco, -avi, s. *to congeal.*
*Gemisco, —, s. *to groan.*
*Gemmasco, —, *to bud.*
*Generasco, —, s. *to be produced.*
*Grandesco, —, *to grow large.*
*Gravesco, —, *to grow heavy.*
*Hæresco, hæsi, s. *to adhere.*
*Hebesco, —, s. *to grow dull.*
*Horresco, horrui, s. *to grow rough.*
*Humesco, —, s. *to grow moist.*
*Ignesco, —, *to take fire.*
*Indolesco, -dolui, d. *to be grieved.*
*Insolesco, —, *to become haughty.*
*Integrasco, —, *to be renewed.*
*Juvenesco, —, *to grow young.*
*Languesco, langui, s. *to grow languid.*
*Lapidesco, —, *to become stone.*
*Latesco, —, *to grow broad.*
*Latesco, latui, *to be concealed.* s. *So* delitesco, -litui; oblitesco, -litui.
*Lentesco, —, *to become soft.*
*Liquesco, —, s. *to become liquid.*
*deliquesco, -licui.
*Lucesco, luxi, s. *to grow light.*
*Lutesco, —, s. *to become muddy.*
*Macesco, —, s. } *to grow lean.*
*Macresco, —, }
*remacresco, -macrui.
*Madesco, madui, s. *to grow moist.*
*Marcesco, marcui, s. *to pine away.*
*Maturesco, maturui, *to ripen.*
*Miseresco, miserui, s. *to pity.*
*Mitesco, —, *to grow mild.*
*Mollesco, —, *to grow soft.*
*Mutesco, —, *to become silent.*
*obmutesco, obmutui.
*Nigresco, nigrui, s. *to grow black.*
*Nitesco, nitui, s. *to grow bright.*
*Notesco, notui, *to become known.*
*Obbrutesco, —, *to become brutish.*
*Obcallesco, -callui, *to become callous.*
*Obdormisco, -dormīvi, s. *to fall asleep.*
*Obsurdesco, -surdui, *to grow deaf.*
*Olesco, (*scarcely used.*)
abolesco, -olēvi, -olĭtum, s. *to cease.*
adolesco, -olēvi, -ultum, s. *to grow up.*
exolesco, -olevi, -olētum, *to grow old.* *So* obsolesco.
*inolesco, -olēvi, d. *to increase.*
*Pallesco, pallui, s. *to grow pale.*
*Patesco, patui, s *to be open.*
*Pavesco, pavi, s. *to grow fearful.*
*Pertimesco, -timui, d. *to fear greatly.*
*Pinguesco, —, *to grow fat.*
*Pubesco, —, *to come to maturity.*
*Puerasco, —, *to become a boy.*
*Putesco, putui, s. } *to become putrid.*
*Putresco, putrui, s. }
*Raresco, —, *to become thin.*
*Rigesco, rigui, s. *to grow cold.*
*Rubesco, rubui, s. *to grow red.*
*erubesco, -rubui, d.
*Resipisco, -sipui, s. *to recover wisdom.*
*Sanesco, —, *to become sound.*
*consanesco, -sanui.
*Senesco, senui, s. d. *to grow old.* *So* consenesco.
*Sentisco, sensi, s. *to perceive.*
*Siccesco, —, *to become dry.*
*Silesco, silui, s. *to grow silent.*
*Solidesco, —, *to become solid.*
*Sordesco, sordui, s. *to become filthy.*
*Splendesco, splendui, s. *to become bright.*
*Spumesco, —, *to foam.*
*Sterilesco, —, *to become barren.*
*Stupesco, stupui, s. *to be astonished.*
Suesco, suevi, suetum, s. *to become accustomed.*
*Tabesco, tabui, s. *to waste away.*
*Teneresco *and* -asco, *to become tender.*
*Tepesco, tepui, s. *to grow warm.*
*Torpesco, torpui, s. *to grow torpid.*
*Tremisco, tremui, s. *to begin to tremble.*
*Tumesco, tumui, s. *to be inflated.*
*Turgesco, tursi, s. *to swell.*
*Valesco, valui, s. *to become strong.*
*Vanesco, —, *to vanish.*
*evanesco, evanui.
*Veterasco, veteravi, *to grow old.*
*Viresco, virui, s. *to grow green.*
*Vivesco, vixi, s *to come to life.*
*revivisco, -vixi.
*Uvesco, —, *to become moist.*

§ 174. *Deponent Verbs of the Third Conjugation.*

Apiscor, aptus, *to get. The compounds change* a *into* i.
adipiscor, adeptus. *So* indipiscor.
Expergiscor, experrectus, *to awake.*
Fruor, fruĭtus *or* fructus, fruiturus, d. *to enjoy.*
Fungor, functus, r. d. *to perform.*
Gradior, gressus, *to proceed. The compounds change* a *into* e; *as,*
aggredior, aggressus, *to attack.*
*Irascor, *to be angry.*
Labor, lapsus, r. *to fall.*
*Liquor, *to melt, flow.*
Loquor, locūtus, r. d. *to speak.*
Miniscor, (*obsolete.*)
comminiscor, commentus, p. *to invent.*
*reminiscor, *to remember.*
Morior, (mori, *rarely* morīri,) mortuus, moritūrus, d. *to die.*
Nanciscor, nactus *or* nanctus, *to obtain.*
Nascor, natus, nascitūrus, u. *to be born.*
Nitor, nixus *or* nisus, nisūrus, *to lean upon.*
Obliviscor, oblītus, d. *to forget.*
Paciscor, pactus, d. *to bargain. Compound* depeciscor.
Patior, passus, r. d. *to suffer.*
perpetior, -pessus. *From* plecto, *to twine,*
amplector, amplexus, d. p. *to embrace.*
complector, complexus, p. *So* circumplector.
Proficiscor, profectus, r. *to depart.*
Queror, questus, m. u. d. *to complain.*
*Ringor, *to grin.*
Sequor, secūtus, r. d. *to follow.*
Tuor, tutus, *to protect.*
*Vescor, d. *to eat.*
Ulciscor, ultus, m. d. p. *to avenge.*
Utor, usus, r. d *to use.*

NOTE. *Devertor, prævertor, revertor,* compounds of *verto,* are used as deponents in the present and imperfect tenses; *revertor* also, sometimes, in the perfect.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ 175. Verbs of the fourth conjugation regularly form their second root in *īv,* and the third in *ītu;* as, aud*io,* audīv*i,* audīt*um.*

The following list contains most regular verbs of this conjugation :—

Audio, -īvi *or* -ii, m. u. r. d. *to hear.*
*Cio, civi, *to excite.*
Condio, -īvi *or* -ii, *to season.*
Custodio, -īvi *or* -ii, d. *to keep.*
*Dormio, -īvi *or* -ii, m. r. d. *to sleep.*
Erudio, -īvi *or* -ii, d. *to instruct.*
Expedio, -īvi *or* -ii, d. *to disentangle.*
Finio, -īvi *or* -ii, r. d. *to finish.*
*Gestio, -īvi *or* -ii, *to desire.*
Impedio, -īvi *or* -ii, r. d. *to entangle.*
Insanio, -īvi *or* -ii, *to be mad.*
Irretio, -īvi *or* -ii, *to ensnare.*
Lenio, -īvi *or* -ii, d. *to mitigate.*
Mollio, -īvi *or* -ii, d. *to soften.*
*Mugio, -īvi *or* -ii, *to bellow.*
Munio, -īvi *or* -ii, r. d. *to fortify.*
Mutio, -īvi, *to mutter.*
Nutrio, -īvi *or* -ii, d. *to nourish.*
Partio, -īvi *or* -ii, r. *to divide.*
Polio, -īvi, d. *to polish.*
Punio, -īvi *or* -ii, d. *to punish.*
Redimio, -īvi, *to crown.*
Sarrio, -īvi, d. *to weed.*
Scio, -ivi, u. r. *to know.*
Servio, -īvi *or* -ii, m. r. d. *to serve.*
Sopio, -īvi *or* -ii, *to lull asleep.*
Stabilio, -īvi *or* -ii, *to establish.*
Tinnio, -īvi *or* -ii, r. *to tinkle.*
Vestio, -īvi *or* -ii, *to clothe.*

§ 176. The following list contains those verbs of the fourth conjugation which form their second and third roots irregularly, and those which want either or both of them:—

Amicio, —, amictum, d. *to clothe*.
*Balbutio, —, *to stammer*.
Bullio, —, *to boil*.
*Cæcutio, —, *to be dim-sighted*.
*Cambio, —, *to exchange*.
*Dementio, —, *to be mad*.
Effutio, —, *to speak foolishly*.
Eo, ivi *or* ii, itum, r. d. *to go. The compounds have only* ii *in the perfect, except* obeo, præeo, *and* subeo, *which have* īvi *or* ii. *All the compounds want the supine and perfect participles, except* adeo, ambio, ineo, obeo, præstereo, subeo, *and* transeo.
Farcio, farsi, farctum, *to cram*.
Fastidio, -ii, -itum, d. *to disdain*.
*Ferio, —, d. *to strike*.
*Ferocio, —, *to be fierce*.
Fulcio, fulsi, fultum, d. *to prop*.
*Gannio, —, *to yelp*.
*Glocio, —, *to cluck*.
*Glutio, glutii, *to swallow*.
*Grunnio, grunnii, *to grunt*.
Haurio, hausi, haustum, haustūrus, hausūrus, d. *to draw*.
*Hinnio, —, *to neigh*.
*Ineptio, —, *to trifle*.
*Lascivio, lascivii, *to be wanton*.
*Ligurio, ligurii, *to feed delicately*.
*Lippio, —, r. *to be blear-eyed*.
*Obedio, obedii, r. *to obey*.
Pario *is of the third conjugation, but its compounds are of the fourth*.
aperio, aperui, apertum, r. d. *to open*. *So* operio, d.
comperio, compĕri, compertum, *to find out*. *So* reperio, r. d.
Pavio, —, *to beat*.
*Prurio, —, *to itch*.
*Queo, quivi *or* quii, *to be able*. *So* nequeo.
*Rugio, —, *to roar*.
Sævio, sævii, r. *to rage*.
*Sagio, —, *to foresee*.
*Salio, salui *or* salii, *to leap*. *The compounds change* a *into* i.
*absilio, —. *So* circumsilio.
*assilio, -ui. *So* dissilio, insilio.
*desilio, -ui *or* -ii. *So* exsilio, resilio, subsilio.
*transilio, -ui *or* -īvi, d. *So* prosilio.
Sancio, sanxi, sanctum *or* sanctum, d. *to ratify*.
Sarcio, sarsi, sartum, d. *to patch*.
*Scaturio, —, *to gush out*.
Sentio, sensi, sensum, r. *to feel*.
Sepelio, sepelivi *or* -ii, sepultum, r. d. *to bury*.
Sepio, sepsi, septum, d. *to hedge in*.
*Singultio, —, *to sob*.
*Sitio, sitii, *to thirst*.
Suffio, -ii, -itum, d. *to fumigate*.
*Tussio, —, *to cough*.
*Vagio, vagii, *to cry*.
*†Veneo, venii, r. *to be sold*.
Venio, veni, ventum, r. *to come*.
Vincio, vinxi, vinctum, r. d. *to bind*.

NOTE. Desiderative verbs want both the second and third roots, except these three;—*esurio, -īvi*, r. to desire to eat; **nupturio, -īvi*, to desire to marry; **parturio, -īvi*, to be in travail. See § 187, II. 3.

§ 177. *Deponent Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.*

Assentior, assensus, r. d. p. *to assent*.
Blandior, blandītus, *to flatter*.
Experior, expertus, r. d. *to try*.
Largior, largītus, p. *to lavish*.
Mentior, mentītus, r. *to lie*.
Metior, mensus, d. *to measure*.
Molior, molītus, d. *to move a mass*.
Opperior, oppertus *or* opperītus, d. *to wait for*.
Ordior, orsus, d. p. *to begin*.
Orior, ortus, oritūrus, d. *to spring up*. *Except in the present infinitive, this verb seems to be of the third conjugation*.

Partior, partītus, d. *to divide.*
Potior, potītus, r. d. *to obtain. The present indicative and imperfect subjunctive are sometimes of the third conjugation in the poets.*
Sortior, sortītus, r. *to cast lots.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 178. Irregular verbs are such as deviate from the common forms in some of the parts derived from the first root.

They are *sum, volo, fero, edo, fio, eo,* and their compounds.

Sum and its compounds have already been conjugated. See § 153. In the conjugation of the rest, the parts which are irregular are fully exhibited, and a synopsis of the other parts is, in general, given. Some parts of *volo* and its compounds are wanting.

1. VOLO is irregular only in the present indicative and infinitive, and in the present and imperfect subjunctive.

It is made irregular partly by syncope, and partly by a change in the vowel of the root. In the present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive, after *e* was dropped, *r* was changed into *l*.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	
Vŏ′-lo,	vel′-le,	vŏl′-u-i,	*to be willing, to wish.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres. *S.* vŏ′-lo, vis, vult;
P. vŏl′-ŭ-mus, vŭl′-tis, vŏ′-lunt.
Imperf. vo-lē′-bam.
Fut. vŏ′-lam.
Perf. vŏl′-u-i.
Plup. vo-lu′-ĕ-ram.
Fut. perf. vo-lu′-ĕ-ro.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. *S.* vĕ′-lim, vĕ′-lis, vĕ′-lit;
P. ve-lī′-mus, ve-lī′-tis, vĕ′-lint.
Imperf. *S.* vel′-lem, vel′-les, vel′-let;
P. vel-lē′-mus, vel-lē′-tis, vel′-lent.
Perf. vo-lu′-ĕ-rim.
Plup. vol-u-is′-sem.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. vel′-le.	*Pres.* vŏ′-lens.
Perf. vol-u-is′-se.	

NOTE. *Volt* and *voltis*, for *vult* and *vultis*, are found in Plautus and other ancient authors.

2. NOLO is compounded of *non* and *volo*. *Non* drops its final *n*, and *volo* its *v*, and the vowels (*o o*) are contracted into *ō*.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	
No′-lo,	nol′-le,	nol′-u-i,	*to be unwilling.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres. *S.* no′-lo, non′-vis, non′-vult; *Perf.* nol′-u-i.
P. nol′-ū-mus, non-vul′-tis, no′-lunt. *Plup.* no-lu′-ĕ-ram.
Imperf. no-lē′-bam. *Fut. perf.* no-lu′-ĕ-ro
Fut. no′-lam.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. *S.* no′-lim, no′-lis, no′-lit; *Perf.* no-lu′-ĕ-rim.
P. no-lī′-mus, no-lī′-tis, no′-lint. *Plup.* nol-u-is′-sem.
Imperf. *S.* nol′-lem, nol′-les, nol′-let;
P. nol-lē′-mus, nol-lē′-tis, nol′-lent.

IMPERATIVE.

S. 2. no′-li, *or* no-lī′-to; *P.* 2. no-lī′-te, *or* nol-i-tŏ′-te.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. nol′-le.	*Pres.* no′-lens.
Perf. nol-u-is′-se.	

NOTE. *Nevis* and *nevolt*, for *nonvis* and *nonvult*, occur in Plautus.

3. MALO is compounded of *magis* and *volo*. In composition, *magis* drops its final syllable, and *volo* its *v*. The vowels (*ă ŏ*) are then contracted into *ā*.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	
Ma′-lo,	mal′-le,	mal′-u-i,	*to be more willing.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres. *S.* ma′-lo, ma′-vis, ma′-vult; *Perf.* mal′-u-i.
P. mal′-ū-mus, ma-vul′-tis, ma′-lunt. *Plup.* ma-lu′-ĕ-ram.
Imperf. ma-lē′-bam. *Fut. perf.* ma-lu′-ĕ-ro.
Fut. ma′-lam.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. *S.* ma′-lim, ma′-lis, ma′-lit; *Perf.* ma-lu′-ĕ-rim.
P. ma-lī′-mus, ma-lī′-tis, ma′-lint. *Plup.* mal-u-is′-sem.
Imperf. *S.* mal′-lem, mal′-les, mal′-let;
P. mal-lē′-mus, mal-lē′-tis, mal′-lent.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. mal′-le. *Perf.* mal-u-is′-se.

NOTE. *Mavŏlo*, *mavōlam*, *mavĕlim*, and *mavellem*, for *malo*, *malam*, &c., occur in Plautus.

§ 179. FERO is irregular in two respects:—1. its second and third roots are not derived from the first:—2. in the present infinitive active, and in the imperfect subjunctive, and certain parts of the present indicative and imperative, of both voices, the connecting vowel is omitted. In the present infinitive passive, *r* is doubled.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
Pres. Indic. Fe′-ro, (*to bear.*)	*Pres. Indic.* fe′-ror, (*to be borne.*)
Pres. Infin. fer′-re,	*Pres. Infin.* fer′-ri,
Perf. Indic. tu′-li,	*Perf. Part.* la′-tus.
Supine. la′-tum.	

INDICATIVE.

Pres. S. fe′-ro,	*Pres. S.* fe′-ror,
fers,	fer′-ris *or* -re,
fert;	fer′-tur;
P. fer′-ĭ-mus,	*P.* fer′-ĭ-mur,
fer′-tis,	fe-rim′-ĭ-ni,
fe′-runt.	fe-run′-tur.
Imperf. fe-rē′-bam.	*Imperf.* fe-rē′-bar.
Fut. fe′-ram.	*Fut.* fe′-rar.
Perf. tu′-li.	*Perf.* la′-tus sum *or* fu′-i.
Plup. tu′-lĕ-ram.	*Plup.* la′-tus e′-ram *or* fu′-ĕ-ram.
Fut. perf. tu′-lĕ-ro.	*Fut. perf.* la′-tus e′-ro *or* fu′-ĕ-ro.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. fe′-ram.	*Pres.* fe′-rar.
Imperf. fer′-rem.	*Imperf.* fer′-rer.
Perf. tu′-lĕ-rim.	*Perf.* la′-tus sim *or* fu′-ĕ-rim.
Plup. tu-lis′-sem.	*Plup.* la′-tus es -sem *or* fu-is′sem

IMPERATIVE.

S. fer, *or* fer′-to,	*S.* fer′-re, *or* fer′-tor,
fer′-to;	fer′-tor;
P. fer′-te, *or* fer-tō′-te,	*P.* fe-rim′-ĭ-ni,
fe-run′-to.	fe-run′-tor.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. fer′-re.	*Pres.* fer′-ri.
Perf. tu-lis′-se.	*Perf.* la′-tus es′-se *or* fu-is′-se.
Fut. la-tū′-rus es′-se.	*Fut.* la′-tum i′-ri.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. fe′-rens.	*Perf.* la′-tus.
Fut. la-tū′-rus.	*Fut.* fe-ren′-dus.

GERUND.

fe-ren′-di, &c.

SUPINES.

Former. la′-tum.	*Latter.* la′-tu.

§ 180. FIO has the meaning of the passive voice, though the parts formed from the *first* root, except the present infinitive

and the participle in *dus*, have the terminations of the active. In its other parts, it has passive terminations. It is used as the passive voice of *facio*, which has no regular passive.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Fi′-o,	fi′-ĕ-ri,	fac′-tus,	*to be made* or *to become.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres. S.	fi′-o, fis, fit;	*Perf.*	fac′-tus sum *or* fu′-i.
P.	fi′-mus, fi′-tis, fi′-unt.	*Plup.*	fac′-tus e′-ram *or* fu′-ĕ-ram.
Imperf.	fi-ē′-bam.	*Fut. perf.*	fac′-tus e′-ro *or* fu′-ĕ-ro.
Fut.	fi′-am.		

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	fi′-am.	*Plup.*	fac′-tus es′-sem *or* fu-is′-sem.
Imp.	fi′-ĕ-rem.		
Perf.	fac′-tus sim *or* fu′-ĕ-rim.		

IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.
S. fi *or* fi′-to, fi′-to;	*Pres.* fi′-ĕ-ri.
P. fi′-te *or* fi-tō′-te, fi-un′-to.	*Perf.* fac′-tus es′-se *or* fu-is′-se.
	Fut. fac′-tum i′-ri.

PARTICIPLES.	SUPINE.
Perf. fac′-tus.	*Latter.* fac′-tu.
Fut. fa-ci-en′-dus.	

NOTE. The compounds of *facio* which retain *a*, have also *fio* in the passive; as, *calefacio*, to warm; passive, *calefio*; but those which change *a* into *i* form the passive regularly. Yet *confit*, *defit*, and *infit*, occur. See § 183, 12, 13, 14.

§ 181. EDO, to eat, is a regular verb of the third conjugation; but in the present of the indicative, imperative, and infinitive moods, and in the imperfect of the subjunctive, it resembles, in some of its persons, the same tenses of *sum*:— Thus,

Ind. pres.	——,	——,	est;	——,	——, ——.
Subj. imperf.	——,	es′-ses,	es′-set;	es-sē′-mus,	——, ——.
Imperat.	es *or* es′-to,	——;		es′-te,	——.
Inf. pres.	es′-se.				
Ind. pres. pass.	——,	——,	es′-tur.		

NOTE. In the present subjunctive, *edim*, *edis*, &c., are found, for *edam*, *edas*, &c.

In the compounds of *edo*, also, forms resembling those of *sum* occur.

§ 182. Eo is irregular in the parts which, in other verbs, are formed from the first root, except the imperfect subjunctive,

and the present infinitive. In these, and in the parts formed from the second and third roots, it is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

NOTE. *Eo* has no first root, and the parts usually derived from that root, consist, in this verb, of terminations only.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	*Perf. Part.*	
E′-o,	i′-re,	i′-vi,	i′-tum,	*to go.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	*S.*	e′-o, is, it;	*Fut.* *S.*	i′-bo, i′-bis, i′-bit;
	P.	i′-mus, i′-tis, e′-unt.	*P.*	ib′-i-mus, ib′-i-tis, i′-bunt.
Imperf.	*S.*	i′-bam, i′-bas, i′-bat;	*Perf.*	i′-vi.
	P.	i-bā′-mus, i-bā′-tis, i′-bant.	*Plup.*	iv′-ĕ-ram.
			Fut. perf.	iv′-ĕ-ro.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	*S.*	e′-am, e′-as, e′-at;	*Perf.*	iv′-ĕ-rim.
	P.	e-ā′-mus, e-ā′-tis, e′-ant.	*Plup.*	i-vis′-sem.
Imperf.	*S.*	i′-rem, i′-res, i′-ret;		
	P.	i-rĕ′-mus, i-rĕ′-tis, i′-rent.		

IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.
S. i *or* i′-to, i′-to;	*Pres.* i′-re.
P. i′-te *or* i-tō′-te, e-un′-to.	*Perf.* i-vis′-se.
	Fut. i-tū′-rus es′-se.

PARTICIPLES.	GERUND.
Pres. i′-ens, (*gen.* e-un′-tis.)	e-un′-di, &c.
Fut. i-tū′-rus.	

Remarks.

1. *Iam, ies, iet,* are sometimes found in the future. *Istis, issem,* and *isse,* are formed by contraction for *ivistis, ivissem,* and *ivisse.* See § 162, 7.

2. In the passive voice are found the infinitive *iri,* and the third persons singular *itur, ibātur, ibĭtur, itum est,* &c.; *eātur, irētur,* &c., which are used impersonally.

3. The compounds of *eo,* including *veneo,* are conjugated like the simple verb, but most of them have *ii* in the perfect rather than *ivi.* (See § 176.) *Adeo, ineo, prætereo, subeo,* and *transeo,* being used actively, are found in the passive voice. *Iniĕtur* occurs as a future passive of *ineo. Ambio* is regular, like *audio.*

Queo and *nequeo* are conjugated like *eo,* but they want the imperative mood and the gerund, and their participles rarely occur.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 183. Defective verbs are those which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, or persons.

There are many verbs which are not found in all the tenses, numbers, and persons, exhibited in the paradigms. Some, not originally defective, are considered so, because they do not occur in the classics now extant. Others are in their nature defective. Thus, the first and second persons of many verbs in the passive voice must be wanting, from the nature of their signification.

The following list contains such verbs as are remarkable for wanting many of their parts :—

1. Odi, *I hate.*
2. Cœpi, *I have begun.*
3. Memĭni, *I remember.*
4. Aio, } *I say.*
5. Inquam, }
6. Fari, *to speak.*
7. Quæso, *I pray.*
8. Ave, } *hail.*
9. Salve, }
10. Apăge, *begone.*
11. Cedo, *tell, or give me.*
12. Confit, *it is done.*
13. Defit, *it is wanting.*
14. Infit, *he begins.*
15. Ovat, *he rejoices.*

1. *Odi, cœpi,* and *memĭni*, are used chiefly in the perfect and in the other parts formed from the second root, and are thence called *preteritive* verbs :—Thus,

IND. *perf.* o′-di *or* o′-sus sum ; *plup.* od′-ĕ-ram ; *fut. perf.* od′-ĕ-ro.
SUBJ. *perf.* od′-ĕ-rim ; *plup.* o-dis′-sem. INF. *perf.* o-dis′-se.
PART. *fut.* o-sū′-rus ; *perf.* o′-sus.

NOTE. *Exōsus* and *perōsus*, like *osus*, are used actively. *Odivit*, for *odit*, occurs in Cicero.

2. IND. *perf.* cœ′-pi ; *plup.* cœp′-ĕ-ram ; *fut. perf.* cœp′-ĕ-ro.
SUBJ. *perf.* cœp′-ĕ-rim ; *plup.* cœ-pis′-sem. INF. *perf.* cœ-pis′-se.
PART. *fut.* cœp-tū′-rus ; *perf.* cœp′-tus.

NOTE. In Plautus are found a present, *cæpio*, present subjunctive, *cæpiam*, and infinitive *cæpĕre*. Before an infinitive passive, *cæptum est*, &c., rather than *cæpi*, &c., are commonly used.

3. IND. *perf.* mem′-ĭ-ni ; *plup.* me-min′-ĕ-ram ; *fut. perf.* me-min′-ĕ-ro.
SUBJ. *perf.* me-min′-ĕ-rim ; *plup.* mem-i-nis′-sem.
INF. *perf.* mem-i-nis′-se.
IMPERAT. 2 *pers.* me-men′-to, mem-en-tō′-te.

NOTE. *Odi* and *memĭni* have, in the perfect, the sense of the present, and, in the pluperfect and future perfect, the sense of the imperfect and future. In this respect, *novi*, I know, the perfect of *nosco*, to learn, agrees with *odi* and *memĭni*.

4. IND. *pres.* ai′-o,* a′-is,† a′-it ; ——, ——, ai′-unt.*
—— *imp.* ai-ē′-bam, ai-ē′-bas, ai-ē′-bat ; ——, ai-e-bā′-tis, ai-ē′-bant.
SUBJ. *pres.* ——, ai′-as, ai′-at ; ——, ——, ai′-ant.
IMPERAT. a′-i. PART. *pres.* ai′-ens.

5. IND. *pres.* in′-quam *or* in′-qui-o, in′-quis, in′-quit ; in′-quĭ-mus, in′-quĭ-tis, in′-qui-unt.
—— *imp.* ——, ——, in-qui-ē′-bat ; ——, ——, ——.
—— *fut.* ——, in′-qui-es, in′-qui-et ; ——, ——, ——.
—— *perf.* ——, in-quis′-ti, in′-quit ; ——, ——, ——.
SUBJ. *pres.* ——, ——, in′-qui-at ; ——, ——, ——.
IMPERAT. in′-que, in′-quĭ-to.

* Pronounced *a′-yo, a′-yunt*, &c. See § 9. † *ais* with *ne* is contracted to *ain′*.

6. IND. *pres.* ——, ——, fă'-tur; *fut.* fă'-bor, ——, făb'-ĭ-tur.
IMPERAT. fă'-re. PART. *pres.* fans; *perf.* fā'-tus; *fut.* fan'-dus.
INFIN. *pres.* fă'-ri. GERUND, *gen.* fan'-di; *abl.* fan'-do. SUPINE, fā'-tu.

In like manner the compounds *affāri*, *effāri*, and *profāri*.

7. IND. *pres.* quæ'-so, ——, quæs'-sit; quæs'-ŭ-mus, ——, ——.
INF. *pres.* quæs'-ĕ-re.

8. IMPERAT. a'-ve, a-vē'-to; a-vē'-te. INF. a-vē'-re.

9. IND. *pres.* sal'-ve-o. *fut.* sal-vē'-bis. INF. *pres.* sal-vē'-re.
IMPERAT. sal'-ve, sal-vē'-to; sal-vē'-te.

10. IMPERAT. ap'-ă-ge.

11. IMPERAT. *sing.* and *plur.* ce'-do; *pl.* cet'-te *for* ced'-ĭ-te.

12. IND. *pres.* con'-fit; *fut.* con-fī'-et.
SUBJ. *pres.* con-fī'-at; *imperf.* con-fi'-ĕ-ret. INF. *pres.* con-fi'-ĕ-ri.

13. IND. *pres.* de'-fit; *pl.* de-fī'-unt. SUBJ. *pres.* de-fī'-at.
INF. *pres.* de-fi'-ĕ-ri.

14. IND. *pres.* in'-fit; *pl.* in-fī'-unt.

15. IND. *pres.* o'-vat. SUBJ. *pres.* o'-vet; *imperf.* o-vā'-ret.
PART. *pres.* o'-vans; *perf.* o-vā'-tus. GERUND, o-van'-di.

REMARK 1. Among defective verbs are sometimes, also, included the following:—*Forem*, *fores*, &c., *fore*, (see §154, 3.) *Ausim*, *ausit*; *ausint*. *Faxo* and *faxim*, *faxis*, *faxit*, *faximus*, *faxītis*, *faxint*. *Faxem*. The form in *o* is an old future perfect; that in *im* a perfect, and that in *em* a pluperfect, subjunctive. See § 162, 9.

2. In the present tense, the first person singular, *furo*, to be mad, and *dor* and *der*, from *do*, to give, are not used.

3. A few words, sometimes classed with defectives, are formed by contraction from a verb and the conjunction *si*; as, *sis* for *si vis*, *sultis* for *si vultis*, *sodes* for *si audes*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 184. Impersonal verbs are those which are used only in the third person singular, and do not admit of a *personal* subject.

1. Their English is generally preceded by the pronoun *it*, especially in the active voice; as, *delectat*, it delights; *decet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *evĕnit*, it happens; *scribĭtur*, it is written, &c.

They are thus conjugated:—

		1*st Conj.*	2*d Conj.*	3*d Conj.*	4*th Conj.*
IND.	*Pres.*	delectat,	decet,	contingit,	evĕnit,
	Imp.	delectābat,	decēbat,	contingēbat,	eveniēbat,
	Fut.	delectābit,	decēbit,	continget,	eveniet,
	Perf.	delectāvit,	decuit,	contĭgit,	evēnit,
	Plup.	delectavĕrat,	decuĕrat,	contigĕrat,	evenĕrat,
	Fut. perf.	delectavĕrit.	decuĕrit.	contigĕrit.	evenĕrit.

		1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Sub.	*Pres.*	delectet,	deceat,	contingat,	eveniat,
	Imp.	delectāret,	decēret,	contingĕret,	evenīret,
	Perf.	delectavĕrit,	decuĕrit,	contigĕrit,	evenĕrit,
	Plup.	delectavisset.	decuisset.	contigisset.	evenisset.
Inf.	*Pres.*	delectāre,	decēre,	contingĕre,	evenīre,
	Perf.	delectavisse.	decuisse.	contigisse.	evenisse.

2. As the passive voice of an active verb may be substituted for the active, (see § 141, Rem.) so that of a neuter verb may be used in the *third person singular*, instead of the active form, the personal subject of the latter being put in the ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab;* as, *faveo tibi*, I favor thee, or *favētur tibi a me*, thou art favored by me.

	Indicative Mood.			
Pres.	pugnātur,	favētur,	currītur,	venītur,
Imp.	pugnabātur,	favebātur,	currebātur,	veniebātur,
Fut.	pugnabĭtur,	favebĭtur,	currētur,	veniētur,
Perf.	pugnātum est *or* fuit,	fautum est *or* fuit,	cursum est *or* fuit,	ventum est *or* fuit,
Plup.	pugnātum erat *or* fuĕrat,	fautum erat *or* fuĕrat,	cursum erat *or* fuĕrat,	ventum erat *or* fuĕrat,
Fut.p.	pugnātum erit *or* fuĕrit.	fautum erit *or* fuĕrit.	cursum erit *or* fuĕrit.	ventum erit *or* fuĕrit.
	Subjunctive Mood.			
Pres.	pugnētur,	faveātur,	currātur,	veniātur,
Imp.	pugnarētur,	faverētur,	currerētur,	venirētur,
Perf.	pugnātum sit *or* fuĕrit,	fautum sit *or* fuĕrit,	cursum sit *or* fuĕrit,	ventum sit *or* fuĕrit,
Plup.	pugnātum esset *or* fuisset.	fautum esset *or* fuisset.	cursum esset *or* fuisset.	ventum esset *or* fuisset.
	Infinitive Mood.			
Pres.	pugnāri,	favēri,	curri,	venīri,
Perf.	pugnātum esse *or* fuisse,	fautum esse *or* fuisse,	cursum esse *or* fuisse,	ventum esse *or* fuisse,
Fut.	pugnātum iri.	fautum iri.	cursum iri.	ventum iri.

In like manner the neuter gender of the participle in *dus*, formed from neuter verbs, is used impersonally with *est*, &c., in the periphrastic conjugation; as, *moriendum est omnĭbus*, all must die. See § 162, 15.

Remarks.

1. Grammarians usually reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, all of which are of the second conjugation. (See § 169.) There seems, however, to be no good reason for distinguishing those from other impersonal verbs. The following are such other verbs as are most commonly used impersonally:—

(*a*.) In the first conjugation;—

Constat, *it is evident.*	Spectat, *it concerns.*	Certātur, *it is contended.*
Juvat, *it delights.*	Stat, *it is resolved.*	
Præstat, *it is better.*	Vacat, *there is leisure.*	Peccātur, *a fault is committed.*
Restat, *it remains.*		

(*b*.) In the second conjugation;—

Appāret, *it appears.*		Solet, *it is usual.*
Attĭnet, *it belongs to.*	Nocet, *it is hurtful.*	Fletur, *there is weeping.*
Debet, *it ought.*	Patet, *it is plain.*	
Displĭcet, *it displeases.*	Pertĭnet, *it pertains.*	Persuadētur. (*See above*, 2.)
Dolet, *it grieves.*	Placet, *it pleases.*	

(*c*.) In the third conjugation;—

Accĭdit, *it happens.*	Creditur, *it is believed.*	Mittĭtur, *it is sent.*
Incīpit, *it begins.*	Desinĭtur, *there is an end.*	Scribĭtur, *it is written.*
Sufficit, *it suffices.*		

(*d*.) In the fourth conjugation;—

Convĕnit, *it is agreed on.*	Aperītur, *it is opened.*
Expĕdit, *it is expedient.*	Sentītur, *it is meant.*

(*e*.) Among irregular verbs;—

Abeundum est, *it is necessary to depart.*	Fit, *it happens.*	Prodest, *it avails.*
	Intĕrest, *it concerns.*	Refert, *it concerns.*
Adītur. (*See above*, 2.)	Obest, *it is hurtful.*	Supĕrest, *it remains.*

(*f*.) To these may be added verbs signifying the state of the weather, or the operations of nature; as,

Fulgŭrat, *it lightens.*	Lapĭdat, *it rains stones.*	Regĕlat, *it thaws.*
Fulmĭnat, *it thunders.*	Lucescit, *it grows light.*	Tonat, *it thunders.*
Gelat, *it freezes.*	Ningit, *it snows.*	Vesperascit, *it approaches evening.*
Grandĭnat, *it hails.*	Pluit, *it rains.*	

2. Impersonal verbs, not being used in the imperative, take the subjunctive in its stead; as, *delectet*, let it delight. In the passive voice, their perfect participles are used only in the neuter.

3. Most of the impersonal verbs want participles, gerunds and supines; but *pœnĭtet* has a present participle, futures in *rus* and *dus*, and the gerund. *Pudet* and *piget* have also the gerund and future passive participle.

4. Most of the above verbs are also used personally, but frequently in a somewhat different sense; as, *ut Tiberis inter eos et pons interesset*, so that the Tiber and bridge were between them.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

§ 185. Redundant verbs are those which have different forms to express the same sense.

Verbs may be redundant in *termination;* as, *fabrĭco* and *fabrĭcor*, to frame;—in conjugation; as, *lavo*, *-āre*, and *lavo*, *-ĕre*, to wash;—or in certain tenses; as, *odi* and *osus sum*, I hate.

1. The following deponent verbs, besides their passive form, have an active in *o*, of the same meaning. The latter, however, is, in general, rarely used.

Adūlor, *to flatter.*
Altercor, *to dispute.*
Amplexor, *to embrace.*
Assentior, *to assent.*
Aucŭpor, *to hunt after.*
Augŭror, *to foretell.*
Cachinnor, *to laugh aloud.*
Comĭtor, *to accompany.*
Cunctor, *to delay.*
Depascor, *to feed upon.*
Elucubror, *to elaborate.*
Fabrĭcor, *to frame.*
Frustror, *to disappoint.*
Frutĭcor, *to sprout.*
Impertior, *to impart.*
Lachrўmor, *to weep.*
Ludifĭcor, *to ridicule.*
Medĭcor, *to heal.*
Mereor, *to deserve.*
Metor, *to measure.*
Palpor, *to caress.*
Popŭlor, *to lay waste.*
Rumĭnor, *to ruminate.*
Velifĭcor, *to set sail.*
Vocifĕror, *to bawl.*
Urĭnor, *to dive.*

2. The following verbs are redundant in conjugation:—

Cieo, -ēre, Cio, -īre, r. } *to excite.*
Denso, -āre, Denseo, -ēre, r. } *to thicken.*
Ferveo, -ēre, Fervo, -ēre, r. } *to boil.*
Fodio, -ēre, Fodio, -īre, r. } *to dig.*
Fulgeo, -ēre, Fulgo, -ēre, r. } *to shine.*
Lavo, -āre, Lavo, -ēre, r. } *to wash.*
Lino, -ēre, Linio, -īre, r. } *to anoint.*
Scateo, -ēre, Scato, -ēre, r. } *to abound.*
Strideo, -ēre, Strido, -ēre, } *to creak.*
Tergeo, -ēre, Tergo, -ēre, } *to wipe.*
Tueor, -ēri, Tuor, -i, r. } *to protect.*

Those marked r. *are rarely used.*

Morior, *orior*, and *potior*, also, are redundant in conjugation in certain parts. See in lists §§ 174 and 177.

§ 186. 1. Some verbs, also, are spelled alike, or nearly alike, but differ in conjugation, quantity, pronunciation, or signification, or in two or more of these respects.

Such are the following:—

Abdīco, -āre, *to abdicate.*
Abdĭco, -ĕre, *to refuse.*
Accīdo, -ĕre, *to happen.*
Accĭdo, -ĕre, *to cut short.*
Addo, -ĕre, *to add.*
Adeo, -īre, *to go to.*
Aggĕro, -āre, *to heap up.*
Aggĕro, -ĕre, *to heap upon.*
Allĕgo, -āre, *to depute.*
Allĕgo, -ĕre, *to choose.*
Appello, -āre, *to call.*
Appello, -ĕre, *to drive to.*
Cădo, -ĕre, *to fall.*
Cædo, -ĕre, *to cut.*
Cĕdo, -ĕre, *to yield.*
Căleo, -ēre, *to be hot.*
Calleo, -ēre, *to be hard.*
Căno, -ĕre. *to sing.*
Caneo, -ēre, *to be white.*
Careo, -ēre, *to want.*
Caro, -ĕre, *to card wool.*
Cēlo, -āre, *to conceal.*
Cælo, -āre, *to carve.*
Censeo, -ēre, *to think.*
Sentio, -īre, *to feel.*
Claudo, -ĕre, *to shut.*
Claudo, -ĕre, *to be lame.*
Collīgo, -āre, *to tie together.*
Collĭgo, -ĕre, *to collect.*
Cōlo, -āre, *to strain.*
Cŏlo, -ĕre, *to cultivate.*
Compello, -āre, *to accost.*
Compello, -ĕre, *to force.*
Concīdo, -ĕre, *to chop off.*
Concĭdo, -ĕre, *to fall.*
Conscendo, -ĕre, *to climb.*
Conscindo, -ĕre *to cut in pieces.*
Consterno, -āre, *to terrify.*
Consterno, -ĕre, *to strew over.*
Decīdo, -ĕre, *to fall down.*
Decĭdo, -ĕre, *to cut off.*
Decipio, -ĕre, *to deceive.*
Desipio, -ĕre, *to dote.*
Deligo, -āre, *to tie up.*
Deligo, -ĕre, *to choose.*
Dilīgo, -ĕre, *to love.*
Dīco, -ĕre, *to say.*
Dĭco, -āre, *to dedicate.*
Ēdo, -ĕre, *to eat.*
Ĕdo, -ĕre, *to publish.*
Edūco, -āre, *to educate.*
Edŭco, -ĕre, *to draw out.*
Efferо, -āre, *to make wild.*
Efferо, -re, *to carry out.*
Excīdo, -ĕre, *to fall out.*
Excĭdo, -ĕre, *to cut off.*

Ferio, -īre, *to strike.*
Fĕro, -re, *to bear.*
Fĕrior, -āri, *to keep holiday.*
Frigeo, -ēre, *to be cold.*
Frigo, -ĕre, *to fry.*
Fugo, -āre, *to put to flight.*
Fugio, -ĕre, *to fly*
Fundo, -āre, *to found.*
Fundo, -ĕre, *to pour out.*
Incīdo, -ĕre, *to fall into.*
Incīdo, -ĕre, *to cut.*
Indīco, -āre, *to show.*
Indīco, -ĕre, *to proclaim.*
Inficio, -ĕre, *to infect.*
Infitior, -āri, *to deny.*
Intercīdo, -ĕre, *to happen.*
Intercīdo, -ĕre, *to cut asunder.*
Jaceo, -ēre, *to lie down.*
Jacio, -ĕre, *to throw.*
Lăbo, -āre, *to totter.*
Lăbor, -i, *to glide.*
Lacto, -āre, *to suckle.*
Lacto, -āre, *to deceive.*
Lĕgo, -āre, *to send.*
Lĕgo, -ĕre, *to read.*
Liceo, -ēre, *to be lawful.*
Liceor, -ēri, *to bid for.*
Liquo, -āre, *to melt.*
Liqueo, -ēre, *to be manifest.*
Liquor, -i, *to melt.*
Mano, -āre, *to flow.*
Măneo, -ēre, *to stay.*
Mando, -āre, *to command.*
Mando, -ĕre, *to eat.*
Mĕto, -ĕre, *to reap.*
Mĕtor, -āri, *to measure.*
Mētior, -īri, *to measure.*
Mĕtuo, -ĕre, *to fear.*
Misĕror, -āri, *to pity.*
Misĕreor, -ēri, *to pity.*
Moror, -āri, *to delay.*
Morior, -i, *to die.*
Niteo, -ēre, *to glitter.*
Nitor, -i, *to strive.*
Obsĕro, -āre, *to lock up.*
Obsĕro, -ĕre, *to sow.*
Occīdo, -ĕre, *to fall.*
Occīdo, -ĕre, *to kill.*
Operio, -ĕre, *to cover.*
Opĕror, -āri, *to work.*
Opperior, -īri, *to wait for.*
Pando, -āre, *to bend.*
Pando, -ĕre, *to open.*
Păro, -āre, *to prepare.*
Păreo, -ēre, *to appear.*
Părio, -ĕre, *to bring forth.*
Părio, -āre, *to balance.*
Pendeo, -ēre, *to hang.*
Pendo, -ĕre, *to weigh.*
Percōlo, -āre, *to filter.*
Percōlo, -ĕre, *to adorn.*
Permăneo, -ēre, *to remain.*
Permāno, -āre, *to flow over.*
Prædīco, -āre, *to publish.*
Prædīco, -ĕre, *to foretell.*
Prōdo, -ĕre, *to betray.*
Prōdeo, -īre, *to come forth.*
Recēdo, -ĕre, *to retire.*
Recīdo, -ĕre, *to fall back.*
Recīdo, -ĕre, *to cut off.*
Reddo, -ĕre, *to restore.*
Redeo, -īre, *to return.*
Refĕro, -re, *to bring back.*
Refĕrio, -īre, *to strike back.*
Relĕgo, -āre, *to remove.*
Relĕgo, -ĕre, *to read, over.*
Sēdo, -āre, *to allay.*
Sĕdeo, -ēre, *to sit.*
Sīdo, -ĕre, *to sink.*
Sĕro, -ēre, *to sow.*
Sĕro, -ĕre, *to knit.*
Succīdo, -ĕre, *to fall down.*
Succīdo, -ĕre, *to cut down.*
Vādo, -ĕre, *to go.*
Vădor, -āri, *to give bail.*
Vēneo, -īre, *to be sold.*
Vĕnio, -īre, *to come.*
Vēnor, -āri, *to hunt.*
Vincio, -īre, *to bind.*
Vinco, -ĕre, *to conquer.*
Vŏlo, -āre, *to fly.*
Vŏlo, velle, *to be willing.*

2. Different verbs have sometimes the same perfect; as,

Aceo, acui, *to be sour.*
Acuo, acui, *to sharpen.*
Cresco, crevi, *to grow.*
Cerno, crevi, *to decree.*
Fulgeo, fulsi, *to shine.*
Fulcio, fulsi, *to prop.*
Luceo, luxi, *to shine.*
Lugeo, luxi, *to mourn.*
Mulceo, mulsi, *to soothe.*
Mulgeo, mulsi, *to milk.*
Paveo, pavi, *to fear.*
Pasco, pavi, *to feed.*
Pendeo, pependi, *to hang.*
Pendo, pependi, *to weigh.*

To these add some of the compounds of *sto* and *sisto*.

3. Different verbs have sometimes, also, the same supine or perfect participle; as,

Frico, frictum, *to rub.*
Frigo, frictum, *to roast.*
Maneo, mansum, *to remain.*
Mando, mansum, *to chew.*
Pango, pactum, *to drive in.*
Paciscor, pactus, *to bargain.*
Pando, passum, *to open.*
Patior, passus, *to suffer.*
Teneo, tentum, *to hold.*
Tendo, tentum, *to stretch.*
Verro, versum, *to brush.*
Verto, versum, *to turn.*

DERIVATION OF VERBS.

§ 187. Verbs are derived either from nouns, adjectives, or other verbs.

I. Verbs derived from nouns or adjectives are called *denominatives*.

1. Those which are active are generally of the first conjugation; those which are neuter of the second. They are usually formed by adding *o* or *eo* to the root; as,

Actives from Nouns.	*Neuters from Nouns.*
Arm*o*, *to arm*, (arma.)	Flor*eo*, *to bloom*, (flos.)
Fraud*o*, *to defraud*, (fraus.)	Frond*eo*, *to produce leaves*, (frons.)
Nomĭn*o*, *to name*, (nomen.)	Luc*eo*, *to shine*, (lux.)
Numĕr*o*, *to number*, (numĕrus.)	Vir*eo*, *to flourish*, (vis.)

From Adjectives.

Alb*o*, *to whiten*, (albus.)	Alb*eo*, *to be white*, (albus.)
Celebr*o*, *to celebrate*, (celĕber.)	Calv*eo*, *to be bald*, (calvus.)
Libĕr*o*, *to free*, (liber.)	Flav*eo*, *to be yellow*, (flavus.)

Sometimes a preposition is prefixed in forming the derivative; as,

Coacervo, *to heap together*, (acervus.)	Extirpo, *to extirpate*, (stirps.)
Excăvo, *to excavate*, (cavus.)	Illaqueo, *to insnare*, (laqueus.)

2. Many deponents of the first conjugation, derived from nouns, express the exercise of the character, office, &c. denoted by the primitive; as, *architector*, to build; *comĭtor*, to accompany; *furor*, to steal; from *architectus*, *comes*, and *fur*.

3. Such as denote resemblance or imitation are called *imitatives*; as, *curnĭcor*, to imitate a crow, from *cornix*; *Græcor*, to imitate the Greeks. Some of these end in *isso*; as, *patrisso*, to imitate a father.

II. Verbs derived from other verbs are either *frequentatives*, *inceptives*, *desideratives*, *diminutives*, or *intensives*.

1. *Frequentatives* express the frequent repetition of the action denoted by the primitive.

They are all of the first conjugation, and are formed from the third root. In verbs of the first conjugation, *ātu* is changed into *ĭto*, rarely into *o*; as, *clamo*, to cry, (*clamātu*,) *clamĭto*, to cry frequently; *no*, to swim, (*natu*,) *nato*. In verbs of the other three conjugations, *u* is changed into *o*, rarely into *ĭto*; as, *curro*, to run, (*cursu*,) *curso*, or *cursĭto*, to run frequently.

Some are derived from the present, or perhaps from an obsolete third root; as *ago*, (*agĭtu*,) *agĭto*; *cogo*, *cogĭto*.

Some frequentatives are deponent; as, *minitor*, from *minor* (*minātu*); *versor*, from *verto* (*versu*). So *sector*, *loquitor*, from *sequor* and *loquor*.

Verbs of this class do not always express frequency of action, but have sometimes nearly the same meaning as their primitives.

2. *Inceptives*, or *inchoatives*, mark the beginning, or increased degree of the action or state expressed by the primitive.

They all end in *sco*, and are formed by adding that termination to the root of the primitive, with its connecting vowel, which, in the third conjugation, is *i*; as, *caleo*, to be hot; *calesco*, to grow hot.

So *labo*, *labasco*; *ingĕmo*, *ingemisco*; *obdormio*, *obdormisco*. *Hisco* is contracted for *hiasco*, from *hio*.

Most inceptives are formed from verbs of the second conjugation.

Some inceptives are formed from nouns and adjectives, by adding *asco* or *esco* to the root; as, *puerasco*, from *puer*; *juvenesco*, from *juvĕnis*.

Some inceptives have the same meaning as their primitives; as, *adhæresco*.

Note. Inceptives are all neuter, and of the third conjugation. See § 173.

Some verbs in *sco* which are not inceptives are active; as, *disco*, *posco*.

3. *Desideratives* express a desire of doing the act denoted by the primitive.

They are formed from the third root, by shortening the final *u*, and adding *rio*; as, *cæno*, to sup, (*cænātu*,) *cænaturio*, to desire to sup.

Desideratives are all of the fourth conjugation. See § 176, Note.

Verbs in *urio*, having *u* long, are not desideratives; as, *prūrio*, *decūrio*.

4. *Diminutives* denote a feeble or trifling action. They are formed by adding *illo* to the root of the primitive; as, *cantillo*, to sing a little—from *canto*.

They are few in number, and are all of the first conjugation.

5. *Intensives* denote eager action. They are usually formed by adding *esso* or *isso* to the root of the primitive; as, *facesso*, to act earnestly—from *facio*.

So *capesso*, *arcesso*, from *capio* and *arceo*. *Concupisco*, to desire greatly, is also an intensive.

COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

§ 188. Verbs are compounded variously:—

1. Of a noun and a verb; as, *ædifico*, *belligĕro*, *lucrifacio*.

2. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *amplifico*, *multiplico*, *vilipendo*.

3. Of two verbs; as, *calefacio*, *madefacio*, *patefacio*.

4. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *benefacio*, *maledico*, *satăgo*, *nolo*

5. Of a preposition and a verb; as, *addūco, excŏlo, prodo, subrēpo, discerno, sejungo.*

6. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *pernocto, irretio.*

§ 189. In composition, certain changes often occur in the radical letters of the simple verb.

1. The following simple verbs in composition change *a* into *e*:

Arceo,	Carpo,	Farcio,	Jacto,	Pario,	Patro,	Spargo,
Candeo,	Damno,	Fatiscor,	Lacto,	Partio,	Sacro,	Tracto.
Capto,	Fallo,	Gradior,	Mando,	Patior,	Scando,	

Exc. *A* is retained in *amando, præmando, desacro*, and *retracto; prædamno* and *pertracto* sometimes also occur. *A* is also changed into *e* in *depeciscor* from *paciscor, occento* from *cano*, and *anhēlo* from *halo; comperco* also is found.

2. The following change *a, æ*, and *e*, into *i*:

Ago,	Capio,	Habeo,	Pango,	Rego,	Statuo,
Apiscor,	Egeo,	Jacio,	Placeo,	Salio, (*to leap,*)	Taceo,
Cado,	Emo,	Lacio,	Premo,	Sapio,	Tango,
Cædo,	Fateor,	Lædo,	Quæro,	Sedeo,	Teneo.
Cano,	Frango,	Lateo,	Rapio,	Specio,	

Exc. *A* is retained in *circumăgo, perăgo, satăgo; antehabeo, posthabeo; depango, repango; complaceo* and *perplaceo. Occăno* and *recăno* also sometimes occur. *E* is retained in *coĕmo, circumsedeo*, and *supersedeo. Ante capio* and *anticipo* are both used; so also are *superjacio* and *superjicio.*

Cogo and *dego* are formed, by contraction, from *con, de*, and *ago; demo, promo*, and *sumo*, from *de, pro, sub*, and *emo; præbeo*, and perhaps *debeo*, from *præ, de*, and *habeo; pergo* and *surgo*, from *per, sub*, and *rego.*

Note 1. *Facio*, compounded with a preposition, changes *a* into *i*; as, *afficio.* Some compounds of *facio* with nouns and adjectives, change *a* into *i*, and also drop *i* before *o*, and are of the first conjugation; as, *significo, lætifico, magnifico. Specio* forms some compounds in the same manner; as, *conspicor* and *suspicor.*

Note 2. *Lego*, compounded with *con, de, di, e, inter, nec*, and *se*, changes *e* into *i*; as, *colligo, negligo*, &c.; but with *ad, præ, per, re, sub*, and *trans*, it retains *e*; as, *allĕgo.*

Note 3. *Calco* and *salto*, in composition, change *a* into *u*; as, *inculco, insulto. Plaudo* changes *au* into *ō*; as, *explōdo*; except *applaudo. Audio* changes *au* into *ĕ* in *obedio. Causo, claudo*, and *quatio*, drop *a*; as, *accūso, reclūdo, percutio. Juro* changes *u* into *e* in *dejĕro* and *pejĕro.*

Note 4. The simple verbs with which the following are compounded are not used:—

Defendo,	Impedio,	Confūto,	Instīgo,	Conniveo,	
Offendo,	Imbuo,	Refūto,	Impleo,	Percello,	
Experior,	Compello, (-āre,)	Ingruo,	Compleo,	Induo,	and some
Expedio,	Appello, (-āre,)	Congruo,	Renideo,	Exuo,	others.

For the changes produced in prepositions by composition with verbs see § 196, I.

PARTICLES.

§ 190. The parts of speech which are not inflected, are called by the general name of *particles*. They are adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections. A word may sometimes belong to two or more of these classes, according to its connection.

ADVERBS.

An adverb is a particle used to modify or limit the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as, benè *et* sapienter *dixit*, he spoke *well* and *wisely*; egregiè *fidelis*, *remarkably* faithful; valdè *benè*, *very* well.

REMARK. The modifications of adjectives and verbs which are effected by adverbs, may also generally be made by means of the oblique cases of nouns and adjectives; and many modifications may be denoted by these, for expressing which no adverbs are in use. In general, those modifications which are most common are expressed by adverbs. Thus, for *cum sapientiâ*, *sapienter* is used; *hìc*, for *in hoc loco*; *benè*, for *in bono modo*; *nunc*, for *hoc tempore*, &c.

Adverbs are divided into various classes, according to the nature of the modification denoted by them; as adverbs of *place*, *time*, *manner*, &c.

§ 191. The following lists contain a great part of the more common adverbs, except those which are formed, with certain regular terminations, from nouns, adjectives, and participles. These will be noticed subsequently.

I. Adverbs of *Place* and *Order*.

Alià, *by another way.*
Alĭbi, *elsewhere.*
Alicŭbi, *somewhere.*
Alicunde, *from some place.*
Aliŏ, *to another place.*
Aliquò, *to some place.*
Aliunde, *from elsewhere.*
Dehinc, *henceforth.*
Deinceps, *successively.*
Deinde, *after that.*
Denĭque, *finally.*
Denuo, *again.*
Deorsum, *downward.*
Dextrorsum, *towards the right.*
Eà, *that way.*
Eò, *to that place.*
Eŏdem, *to the same place.*
Exinde, *after that.*
Foras, *out of doors.*
Foris, *without.*
Hàc, *this way.*
Hìc, *here.*
Hinc, *hence.*
Huc, *hither.*
Horsum, *hitherward.*
Ibi, *there.* [*place.*
Ibĭdem, *in the same*
Illàc, *that way.*
Illìc, *there.*
Illinc, *thence.*
Illorsum, *thitherward.*
Illò, *thither.*
Illuc, *thither.*
Inde, *then*, *thence.*
Indĭdem, *from the same place.*
Intrò, Introrsum, } *within.*
Intus, *within.*
Istàc, *that way.*
Istìc, *there.*
Istinc, *thence.*
Istò, Istuc, } *thither.*
Necŭbi, *lest any where*
Neutrò, *neither way.*
Nusquam, *no where*
Porro, *moreover.*
Prorsum, *forward.*
Quà? *by which way?*

Quò? *whither?*
Quorsum? *whitherward?*
Retro, Retrorsum, Rursum, *backward.*
Sicŭbi, *if any where.*
Sicunde, *if from any place.*
Sinistrorsum, *towards the left.*
Sursum, *upward.*
Ubi? *where?*
Ubīque, *every where.*
Ubīvis, *any where.*
Unde? *whence?*
Undīque, *from all sides.*
Uspiam, Usquam, *any where.*
Utrinque, *on both sides.*
Utrò? *which way?*
Utrōbi? *in which place?*
Utrobīque, *in both places.*
Utrōque, *each way.*

REMARK 1. Most adverbs of place which answer the questions *where? whence? whither? by which way?* and *whitherward?* have a mutual relation and resemblance:—Thus,

Ubi?	Unde?	Quò?	Quà?	Quorsum?
Hìc,	Hinc,	Huc,	Hàc,	Horsum,
Illìc,	Illinc,	Illuc,	Illàc,	Illorsum,
Istìc,	Istinc,	Istuc,	Istàc,	Istorsum,
Ibi,	Inde,	Eò,	Eà,	———,
Ibĭdem,	Indĭdem,	Eŏdem,	Eădem,	———,
Alĭbi,	Aliunde,	Aliò,	Alià,	Aliorsum,
Alicŭbi,	Alicunde,	Alĭquò,	Alĭquà,	Aliquoversum.

REM. 2. *Hìc, hinc, huc,* refer to the place of the speaker; *istìc, istinc, istuc,* to the place of the person addressed; and *illìc, illinc, illuc,* to that of the person or thing spoken of.

II. Adverbs of *Time.*

Aliquando, *sometimes.*
Aliquoties, *several times.*
Bis, (see § 119,) *twice.*
Cras, *to-morrow.*
Cùm, *when.*
Demum, *at length.*
Diu, *long.*
Dudum, *heretofore.*
Heri, *yesterday.*
Hodie, *to-day.*
Identĭdem, *now and then.*
Illĭco, *immediately.*
Interdum, *sometimes.*
Intĕrim, *in the mean time.*
Ītĕrum, *again.*
Jam, *now.*
Jamdiu, Jamdūdum, *long ago.*
Jamjam, *presently.*
Jampridem, *long since.*
Mox, *immediately.*
Nondum, *not yet.*
Nonnunquam, *sometimes.*
Nudius tertius, *three days ago.*
Nunc, *now.*
Nunquam, *never.*
Nuper, *lately.*
Olim, *formerly.*
Parumper, *a little while.*
Perendie, *two days hence.*
Postridie, *the day after.*
Pridem, *heretofore.*
Pridie, *the day before.*
Protĭnus, *instantly.*
Quamdiu? *how long?*
Quando? *when?*
Quater, *four times.*
Quondam, *formerly.*
Quotidie, *daily.*
Quoties? *how often?*
Rarò, *seldom.*
Rursus, *again.*
Sæpe, *often.*
Semel, *once.*
Semper, *always.*
Statim, *immediately.*
Subinde, *now and then, frequently.*
Tamdiu, *so long.*
Tandem, *at length.*
Ter, *thrice.*
Toties, *so often.*
Tum, Tunc, *then.*
Vicissim, *by turns.*
Unquam, *ever.*

REM. 3. Some adverbs are used to denote either place, time, or order, according to the connection:—Thus,

Ubi may signify either where or when; *inde,* from that place or time; *hactĕnus,* hitherto, in regard to place or time.

REM. 4. The interrogative adverbs, like the interrogative pronouns, are often used indefinitely; as, *nescio ubi sit,* I know not where he is. (See § 137, NOTE.) They are made general by adding *vis, libet,* or *que;*

as, *ubīvis, ubīque,* every where; *undelĭbet,* from every where. The termination *cunque* is equivalent to the English *soever;* as, *ubicunque,* wheresoever. The repetition of an adverb has sometimes the same effect; as *quoquò,* whithersoever; *ubiūbi,* wheresoever.

III. Adverbs of *Manner, Quality,* &c.

Adeò, *so, to such a pass.*
Admŏdum, *very much.*
Aliter, *otherwise.*
An? *whether?*
Ceu, *as, like as.*
Cur? *why?*
Duntaxat, *only, at least.*
Etiam, *truly, yes.*
Fere, *almost.*
Ferme, *almost, nearly.*
Fortasse, *perhaps.*
Frustra, *in vain.*
Gratis, *freely.*
Haud, *not.*
Immo, *yes, truly.*
Ita, *so.*
Itĭdem, *in like manner.*
Juxtà, *alike.*
Magis, *more.*
Modò, *only.*
Næ, *verily.*
Ne, *not.*
Nedum, *much less.*
Nempe, *to wit, truly.*
Nequāquam, Neutĭquam, *by no means.*
Nimīrum, *certainly.*
Nimis, *too much.*
Nimium, *too much.*
Non, *not.*
Num? *whether?*
Omnĭno, *altogether, only.*
Palam, *openly.*
Parĭter, *equally.*
Parùm, *little.*
Paulātim, *by degrees.*
Paulò, Paulùm, *a little.*
Pæne, *almost.*
Penĭtùs, *within, wholly.*
Perquam, *very much.*
Plerùmque, *for the most part.*
Potiùs, *rather.*
Præsertim, *especially.*
Profectò, *truly.*
Propè, *almost, near.*
Propemŏdum, *almost.*
Prorsus, *wholly.*
Quàm, *as.*
Quamobrem, *wherefore.*
Quarè? *why? wherefore?*
Quasi, *as if, almost.*
Quemadmŏdum, *as.*
Quomŏdo? *how? in what manner?*
Sanè, *truly.*
Satis, *enough.*
Satiùs, *rather.*
Scilĭcet, *truly.*
Secus, *otherwise.*
Seorsum, *separately.*
Sic, *so.*
Sicut, Sicŭti, *as.*
Sigillātim, *one by one.*
Simul, *together.*
Solùm, *only.*
Tam, *so.*
Tanquam, *as if.*
Tantùm, Tantummŏdo, *only.*
Unà, *together.*
Ut, *as.*
Uti, *as.*
Utĭque, *therefore, verily.*
Utpŏte, *as, inasmuch as.*
Valdè, *very much.*
Velut, Velŭti, *as, like as.*
Videlĭcet, *certainly.*
Vix, *scarcely.*

Rem. 5. Adverbs denoting quality, manner, &c., are sometimes divided into those of, 1. Quality; as, *benè, malè.* 2. Certainty; as, *certè, planè.* 3. Contingence; as, *fortè.* 4. Negation; as, *haud, non.* 5. Prohibition; as, *ne.* 6. Swearing; as, *hercle.* 7. Explaining; as, *videlĭcet, utpŏte.* 8. Separation; as, *seorsum.* 9. Joining together; as, *simul, unà.* 10. Interrogation; as, *cur? quarè?* 11. Quantity or degree; as, *satis, adeò.* 12. Excess; as, *valdè, maxĭmè.* 13. Defect; as, *parùm pæne.* 14. Preference; as, *potiùs, satiùs.* 15. Likeness; as, *ita, sic* 16. Unlikeness; as, *aliter.* 17. Exclusion; as, *tantùm, solùm.*

DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

§ 192. Adverbs are derived from nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and participles.

I. From nouns.

1. Of these a few end in *im,* and denote manner; as,

gregātim, in herds; *membrātim,* limb by limb; *partim,* by parts; *vicissim,* by turns; from *grex, membrum, pars,* and *vicis.*

2. Some end in *ĭtus*, and denote manner or origin; as,

cælĭtus, from heaven; *fundĭtus*, from the bottom; *radicĭtus*, by the roots; from *cælum*, *fundus*, and *radix*.

3. Some are ablative cases of nouns used adverbially; as, *modò*, only; *vulgò*, commonly.

II. From adjectives.

1. Those which are derived from adjectives of the first and second declension, are generally formed by adding *e* to the root; as,

ægrè, scarcely; *altè*, high; *libĕrè*, freely; *longè*, far; *misĕrè*, miserably; *plenè*, fully; from *æger*, *altus*, *liber*, *longus*, *miser*, and *plenus*. *Benè*, well, is from *bonus*, or an older form *benus*.

A few end in *ĭter*, *ĭtus*, and *im*; as,

navĭter, actively; *alĭter*, otherwise; *antiquĭtus*, anciently; *divinĭtus*, divinely; *privātim*, privately; *singulātim*, severally; from *navus*, *alius*, *antiquus*, *divinus*, *privātus*, and *singŭli*.

Some adverbs are formed with two or more of the above terminations with the same meaning; as, *durè* and *durĭter*, harshly: so *cautè* and *cautim*; *humānè*, *humanĭter*, and *humanĭtus*; *publĭcè* and *publicĭtus*.

2. Adjectives of the third declension form adverbs by adding *ĭter* to the root, except when it ends in *t*, in which case *er* only is added; as,

acrĭter, sharply; *felicĭter*, happily; *turpĭter*, basely;—*eleganter*, elegantly; *prudenter*, prudently; from *acer*, *felix*, *turpis*, *elegans*, and *prudens*.

From *omnis* is formed *omnĭno*.

3. From the cardinal numerals are formed numeral adverbs in *ies*; as,

quinquies, *decies*, from *quinque* and *decem*. So *toties* and *quotics*, from *tot* and *quot*. See § 119.

4. Some adverbs are merely certain cases of adjectives. Such are,

(*a*.) Ablatives in *o* or *a*; as, *citò*, quickly; *continuò*, immediately; *falsò*, falsely; *rectâ*, straight on; *unâ*, together. In like manner, *repentè*, suddenly, from *repens*.

(*b*.) Nominatives or accusatives neuter, in the singular, and sometimes in the plural; as, *solùm*, only; *perfĭdĭum*, perfidiously; *sublĭmè*, on high; *facĭlè*, easily; *multa*, much; *tristia*, sadly.

(*c*.) From some adjectives of the first and second declension, chiefly ordinal adjectives, forms both in *um* and *o* are used; as, *primùm* and *primò*, first; *postrēmùm* and *postrēmò*, finally.

Note 1. These adverbs are properly adjectives agreeing with some noun understood, either definite, as, *rectâ*, sc. *viâ*, or indefinite. Those in *o* are the most numerous. The plural forms occur chiefly in poetry.

Note 2. Some adjectives, from the nature of their signification, have no corresponding adverbs. Of some others, also, none occur in the classics.

III. From the adjective pronouns are derived adverbs of place, &c. (See § 191, Rem. 1.)

The ablative in *o* is used to denote a place whither, instead of the accusative with a preposition; as, *eō* for *ad eum locum;* and the ablative in *a*, to denote by or through a place; as, *hac; viâ* or *parte* being understood.

IV. From participles are derived adverbs denoting manner. Those from present participles are formed by adding *er* to the root; those from perfects by adding *e*, and sometimes *im;* as,

amanter, lovingly; *properanter*, hastily; from *amans* and *properans;*—*doctè*, learnedly; *ornātè*, elegantly; *raptim*, by rapine; *strictim*, closely; from *doctus*, *ornātus*, *raptus*, and *strictus*.

The ablative in *o* of some perfect participles, like that of adjectives, is used adverbially; as, *auspicātò*, auspiciously; *consultò*, designedly.

Note. A few adverbs are derived from prepositions; as, *clanculum*, privately; from *clam;*—*subtus*, beneath; from *sub*.

COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

§ 193. Adverbs are compounded variously:—

1. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *postridie*, *magnopĕre*, *summopĕre*, *multimŏdis*, *quotannis*—of *postĕro die*, *magno opĕre*, *summo opĕre*, *multis modis*, *quot annis*.

2. Of a pronoun and a noun; as, *hodie*, *quarè*, *quomŏdò*—of *hoc die*, *quâ re*, &c.

3. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *nudius*, *sæpenumĕro*—of *nunc dies*, &c.

4. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *comĭnus*, *emĭnus*, *illĭco*, *obviam*, *postmŏdo*, *propediem*—of *con*, *e*, and *manus;* *in* and *loco;* *ob* and *viam*, &c.

5. Of an adjective and a pronoun; as, *aliŏqui*, *ceterōqui*—of *alius*, *ceter*, and *qui*.

6. Of a pronoun and an adverb; as, *aliquandiu*, *alicŭbi*—of *aliquis*, *diu*, and *ubi;* *nequāquam*—of *ne* and *quisquam*.

7. Of two verbs; as, *ilĭcet*, *scilĭcet*, *videlĭcet*—of *ire*, *scire*, *vidēre*, and *licet*.

8. Of a verb and an adverb; as, *quolĭbet*, *ubĭvis*, *undelĭbet*. So *deinceps*—from *dein* and *capio*.

9. Of a participle with various parts of speech; as, *deorsum*, *dextrorsum*, *horsum*, *retrorsum*, *sursum*—of *de*, *dexter*, *hic*, *retro*, *super*, and *vorsus* or *versus*.

10. Of two adverbs; as, *jamdūdum*, *quousque*, *sicut*.

11. Of a preposition and an adjective; as, *denuo*, *imprīmis*—of *de novo*, *in primis*.

12. Of a preposition and a pronoun; as, *quapropter*, *postea*, *interea*, *præterea*—of *propter quæ*, *post ea*, &c.

13. Of a preposition and an adverb; as, *abhinc*, *adhuc*, *derepente*, *persæpe*.

14. Of two or three prepositions; as, *insŭper, protĭnus, inde, dein, deinde, perinde.*

15. Of a conjunction and an adverb; as, *necŭbi, sicŭbi*—of *ne, si,* and *alicŭbi.*

16. Of an adverb and a termination scarcely used except in composition; as, *ibĭdem, parumper, quandocunque, ubique, utcunque.*

17. Of three different parts of speech; as, *forsĭtan*—of *fors, sit, an; quemadmŏdum, quamobrem,* &c.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

§ 194. Adverbs derived from adjectives with the terminations *e* and *ter,* and most of those in *o,* are compared like their primitives. The comparative, like the neuter comparative of the adjective, ends in *ius;* the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing *us* into *e;* as,

durè, durĭus, durissĭmè; facĭlè, faciliùs, facillĭmè; acrĭter, acriùs, acerrĭmè; rarò, rariùs, rarissĭmè.

Some adverbs have superlatives in *o* or *um;* as, *meritissĭmò, plurĭmùm, primò* or *primùm, potissĭmùm.*

If the comparison of the adjective is irregular or defective, that of the adverb is so likewise; as,

benè, melĭùs, optĭmè; malè, pejùs, pessĭmè; parùm, minùs, minĭmè; multò or *multùm, plùs, plurĭmùm; —, prĭus, primò* or *primùm; —, ociùs, ocissĭmè; meritò, —, meritissĭmò; satĭs, satiùs, —. Magis, maxĭmè,* (from *magnus,*) has no positive; *supĕr, superrĭmè,* has no comparative.

Diu and *sæpe,* though not derived from adjectives, are yet compared;—*diu, diutius, diutissĭme; sæpe, sæpius, sæpissĭme.* A comparative *tempe rius,* from *tempĕri* or *tempŏri,* also sometimes occurs.

Adverbs, like adjectives, are sometimes compared by prefixing *magis* and *maxĭmè;* as, *magis apertè, maxĭmè accommodātè.*

PREPOSITIONS.

§ 195. A preposition is a particle which expresses the relation between a noun or pronoun and some preceding word.

Twenty-six prepositions have an accusative after them :—

Ad, *to, at, for, before.*	Circa, } *around,*	Erga, *towards, opposite.*
Adversùs, } *against,*	Circùm, } *about.*	Extra, *without, beyond, besides.*
Adversùm, } *towards.*	Circĭter, *about, near.*	
Ante, *before.*	Cis, } *on this side,*	Infra, *under, beneath.*
Apud, *at, with, among, before.*	Citra, } *without.*	Inter, *between, among, at, in time of.*
	Contra, *against, opposite.*	

Intra, *within.*
Juxta, *near.*
Ob, *for, on account of, before.*
Penes, *in the power of.*
Per, *through, by, during.*
Ponè, *behind.*
Post, *after, since, behind.*
Præter, *beyond, except, contrary to, before.*
Prope, *nigh, by, beside.*
Propter, *for, on account of, near.*
Secundùm, *according to, along, next to, for.*
Supra, *above.*
Trans, *over, beyond.*
Ultra, *beyond.*

Eleven prepositions have an ablative after them:—

A, Ab, Abs, *from, by, after.*
Absque, *without, but for.*
Coram, *before, in presence of.*
Cum, *with.*
De, *of, concerning, from, after, for.*
E, Ex, *from, of, out of, by, for, since.*
Palam, *before, with the knowledge of.*
Præ, *before, for, on account of, in comparison of.*
Pro, *for, before, considering, according to.*
Sine, *without.*
Tenus, *as far as, up to.*

Five prepositions take after them sometimes an accusative, and sometimes an ablative:—

In, *in, into.* Sub, *under, near.* Super, *above.* Subter, *under, beneath.* Clam, *without the knowledge of.*

Remark 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally *placed before* the noun or pronoun whose relation they express. They sometimes, however, stand after it.

Rem. 2. *A* is used only before consonants; *ab* before vowels, and sometimes before consonants; *abs* before *q* and *t*.

E is prefixed only to consonants, *ex* both to vowels and consonants.

Rem. 3. *Versùs*, towards, and *usque*, as far as, which by some are considered prepositions, seem to be more properly classed with adverbs. *Palam* also is commonly an adverb. *Secus*, in the sense of *by, along*, wants good authority.

PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

§196. Prepositions are compounded with various parts of speech. In composition, they may be considered either in reference to their form, or their force.

I. Prepositions in composition sometimes retain their final consonants, and sometimes change them, to adapt them to the sounds of the initial consonants of the words with which they are compounded. In some words, both forms are in use; in others, the final consonant or consonants are omitted.

1. *A*, in composition, is used only before *m* and *v*; as, *amoveo, avello.* *Ab* is used before vowels, and before *d, f, h, j, l, n, r*, and *s*; as, *abjūro, abrŏgo*, &c. *Abs* occurs only before *c, q*, and *t*; as, *abscondo, absque, abstineo.* In *asporto*, *b* is dropped; in *aufĕro* and *aufugio*, it is changed into *u*.

2. *Ad* often changes *d* into *c, f, g, l, n, p, r, s, t*, before those letters respectively; as, *accĕdo, affĕro, aggredior, allĕgo, annītor, appōno, arrīgo, assĕquor, attollo.* *D* is usually omitted before *s* followed by a consonant,

and before *gn;* as, *aspergo, aspicio, agnosco, agnātus.* Before *q*, *d* is changed into *c;* as, *acquīro.*

3. *Circùm* usually omits *m* before a vowel; as, *circueo, circuĭtus.* It sometimes changes *m* into *n* before *d;* as, *circundo.*

4. *Cum* (in composition, *com*) retains *m* before *b, m, p;* as, *combĭbo, committo, compōno:* before *l, n, r*, its *m* is changed into those letters respectively; as, *colligo, connītor, corripio:* before other consonants, it becomes *n;* as, *condūco, conjungo,* &c. Before a vowel, *gn* or *h*, *m* is commonly omitted; as, *coĕo, coopto, cogo* (*com ago*), *cognosco, cohabĭto;* but it is sometimes retained; as, *comĕdo, comes, comītor.* In *combūro, b* is inserted.

5. *Ex* is prefixed to vowels, and to *c, h, p, q, s, t;* as, *exeo, exĭgo, excurro, exhibeo, expedio,* &c. Before *f*, *x* is changed into *f;* as, *effĕro:* before *s*, it is often omitted; as, *exĕquor. E* is prefixed to the other consonants; as, *elĭdo, edūco,* &c. These, with the exception of *n* and *r*, are also very rarely preceded by *ex;* as, *exnoveo. P* is sometimes preceded by *e;* as, *epōto.*

6. *In*, before *b, m, p*, changes *n* into *m;* as, *imbuo, immitto, impōno:* before *l* and *r*, it changes *n* into those letters respectively; as, *illĭgo, irretio:* before *gn, n* is omitted; as, *ignārus.* In some compounds, *in* retains *d* before a vowel, from an ancient form *indu;* as, *indāgo, indigeo, indolesco.*

7. *Ob* changes *b* into *c, f, g, p*, before those letters respectively; as, *occurro, officio, ogganio, oppĕto.* In *omitto, b* is dropped.

8. *Per* changes *r* into *l* in *pellicio* and *pelluceo.*

9. *Pro* sometimes takes *d* before a vowel; as, *prodeo, prodesse.*

10. *Sub* sometimes changes *b* into *c, f, g, m, p, r*, before those letters respectively; as, *succēdo, sufffĕro, suggĕro, summoveo, supplĭco, surripio.* Before *c, p*, and *t, b* is sometimes changed into *s;* as, *suscipio, suspendo, sustollo:* it is omitted before *s*, followed by a consonant; as, *suspicio.*

11. *Trans* omits *s* before *s;* as, *transcendo:* before other consonants, it often omits *ns;* as, *trajicio, tramitto, trano,* &c.

The following words are called *inseparable prepositions*, because they are found only in composition :—

Amb, *around, about.*	Red *or* re, *again, back.*	Ve, *not.*
Dis *or* di, *asunder.*	Se, *apart, aside.*	

12. *Amb* before a vowel is unchanged; as, *ambarvālis, ambio, ambustus:* before consonants, *b* is omitted, and *m*, except before *p*, is changed into *n;* as, *anfractus, anquīro, ampŭto.*

13. *Dis* is prefixed to words beginning with *c, p, q, s, t;* as, *discutio, dispōno, disquīro, dissĕro, distendo:* before *f, s* is changed into *f;* as, *differo:* in *dirimo, s* becomes *r. Di* is prefixed to the other consonants, and to *s* when followed by a consonant; as, *didūco, dimitto, distinguo, dispicio.* But both *dis* and *di* are used before *j* and *r;* as, *disjungo, dijudĭco, disrumpo* or *dirumpo.*

14. *Red* is used before a vowel or *h;* *re* before a consonant; *as, redāmo, redeo, redhibeo, redīgo, redoleo, redundo;—rejicio, repōno, revertor.* But *red* is used before *do;* as, *reddo.*

15. *Se* and *ve* are prefixed without change; as, *secēdo, secūrus; vegrandis, vecors.*

§ 197. II. Prepositions in composition usually add their own signification to that of the word with which they are united; but sometimes they give to the compound a meaning different from that of its simples, as in the following examples:—

1. *A*, with a *noun*, sometimes denotes *privation*; as, *amens*, mad.

2. *Ad* is sometimes intensive; as, *addmo*, to love greatly; *adbĭbo*, to drink much.

3. *De* often signifies downward; as, *descendo*, to descend; *decĭdo*, to fall down. It is sometimes intensive; as, *dedmo*, to love greatly; *demiror*, &c. Sometimes it denotes privation; as, *despēro*, to despair; *demens*, mad; *decŏlor*, discolored.

4. *Dis* is sometimes intensive; as, *discupio*, to desire greatly; and sometimes negative; as, *dissimilis*, unlike.

5. *E* and *ex* are sometimes intensive; as, *exōro*, to beg earnestly; *exaudio*, to hear perfectly. Sometimes they denote privation; as, *exsanguis*, bloodless; *exspes*, hopeless.

6. *In*, with adjectives, generally denotes negation; as, *infĭdus*, unfaithful; *indignus*, unworthy. In some compounds, it has contrary significations, according as they are participles or adjectives; as, *invocātus*, called upon or not called upon; *immūtātus*, changed or unchanged, &c.

7. *Ob* sometimes denotes *around*; as, *obeo*, to go around; sometimes *against*; as, *oppōno*, to oppose; *obsto*, to withstand.

8. *Per*, with adjectives, is commonly intensive; as, *percārus*, very dear; *perfacilis*, very easy. With *quàm*, it is strongly intensive; as, *perquam brevĭter*, with exceeding brevity. In *perfĭdus*, perfidious, *per* is negative.

9. *Præ*, with adjectives, is intensive; as, *præclārus*, very clear; *prævalĭdus*, very strong.

10. *Pro* sometimes denotes *forth*; as, *prodūco*, to bring forth; *prolŏquor*, to speak out.

11. *Red* is sometimes intensive; as, *redundo*, to overflow: sometimes it is negative; as, *retĕgo*, to uncover; *reclūdo*, to unlock.

12. *Se*, with adjectives, denotes privation; as, *secūrus*, without care.

13. *Sub* often diminishes the meaning; as, *subrideo*, to smile; *subdulcis*, sweetish; *subtristis*, somewhat sad. It sometimes denotes motion upwards; as, *subrĭgo*, to raise up.

14. *Ve*, with adjectives, denotes privation; as, *vesānus*, unsound; *vecors*, foolish.

Remark. Prepositions in composition seem often to add nothing to the signification of the words with which they are compounded.

CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 198. A conjunction is a particle which connects words or propositions.

The most usual conjunctions are,

Ac, *and, as, than.*
An, *whether.*
Anne, *whether.*
Annon, *whether or not.*
At, ast, *but.*
Atque, *and, as, than.*
Atqui, *but.*
Attămen, *yet.*
Aut, *either, or.*
Autem, *but.*
Cetĕrùm, *but, however.*
Cùm, quum, *since.*
Cùm...tum, *both...and.*
Dum, *provided, while.*
Dummŏdo, *so that.*
Enim, *for.*
Equĭdem, *indeed.*
Ergo, *therefore.*
Et, *and.*
Et...et, *both...and.*
Etiam, *also.*
Etiamsi, *although.*
Etsi, *though.*
Idcirco, *therefore.*
Ideo, *therefore.*
Igĭtur, *therefore.*
Ităque, *therefore.*
Licet, *though.*
Modò, *provided.*
Nam, namque, *for.*
Ne, *lest.*
-Ne, *whether.*
Nec, *neither, nor.*
Nec...neque, *neither...nor.*
Necne, *or not.*
Neque, *neither, nor.*
Neu, *neither, nor, and not.*
Neu...neve, *neither...nor.*
Ni, Nisi, } *unless.*
Num, *whether.*
Quamvis, *although.*
Quando, quandoquĭdem, *whereas, since.*
Quanquam, *although.*
-Que...-que, *both...and.*
Quia, *because.*
Quin, *but that.*
Quippe, *because.*
Quò, *in order that.*
Quòd, *because.*
Quoniam, *since.*
Quoque, *also.*
Sed, *but.*
Seu *or* sive, *or.*
Seu...sive, *whether...or*
Si, *if.*
Sin, *but if.*
Siquĭdem, *if indeed since.*
Tamen, *however.*
Tametsi, *although.*
Tum...tum, *both...and.*
Ut, *that.*
Uti, *that, to the end that.*
Utrùm, *whether.*
-Ve, *either, or.*
Vel, *either, or.*
Verò, *truly.*
Verùm, *but.*
Veruntămen, *notwithstanding.*

Conjunctions, according to their different significations, may be divided into the following classes :—

1. Copulatives, or such as connect things that are to be considered jointly; as, *ac, atque, et, etiam, que, quoque,* and the negative *nec* or *neque.*

2. Disjunctives, or such as connect things that are to be considered separately; as, *aut, seu, sive, ve, vel,* and the negative *neve* or *neu.*

3. Concessives, or such as express a concession; as, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis.*

4. Adversatives, or such as express opposition; as, *at, atqui, autem, cetĕrùm, sed, tamen, attămen, veruntămen, verò, verùm.*

5. Causals, or such as express a cause or reason; as, *enĭm, etĕnim, nam, namquĕ, quando, quandoquĭdem, quia, quippe, quòd, quoniam, quum* or *cùm, siquĭdem.*

6. Illatives, or such as express an inference; as, *ergo, idcirco, ideo, igĭtur, itaque, proinde, quapropter, quarĕ, quamobrem, quocirca.*

7. Finals, or such as denote a purpose, object, or result; as, *ne, quin, quò, quominus, ut, uti.*

8 Conditionals, or such as express a condition; as, *si, sin, nisi* or *ni, dummŏdo,* or separately either *dum* or *modò.*

9. Suspensives, or such as express doubt; as, *an, anne, annon, -ne, necne, num, utrum.*

Remark 1. *Ac* rarely stands before vowels or *h; atque* chiefly before vowels, but also before consonants.

Rem. 2. The conjunctions *-ne, -que, -ve*, are not used alone, but are always annexed to some other word. They are called *enclitics*.

Rem. 3. Some words here classed with conjunctions are also used as adverbs, and many classed as adverbs are likewise conjunctions; that is, they at the same time qualify verbs, &c., and connect propositions; as, *Cæterĭs in rebus*, cùm *venit calamĭtas*, tum *detrimentum accipĭtur;* In other concerns, *when* misfortune comes, *then* damage is received.

Rem. 4. Conjunctions, like adverbs, are variously compounded with other parts of speech, and with each other; as, *atque, idcirco, ideo, namque.*

In some, compounded of an adverb and a conjunction, each of the simples retains its meaning, and properly belongs to its own class; as, *etiam* (*et jam*), and now; *ităque*, and so; *neque* or *nec*, and not.

INTERJECTIONS.

§ 199. An interjection is a particle used in exclamation, and expressing some emotion of the mind.

The most usual interjections are,

Ah! *ah! alas!*
Atat! *ha! indeed!*
Au! *hush! whist!*
Ecce! *lo! behold!*
Ehem! *O strange!*
Eheu! *alas!*
Eho! ehŏdum! *soho!*
Eja! *on!*
En! *lo! behold!*
Eu! *bravo!*
Euge! *well done!*
Evax! Evoe! } *huzza!*
Ha! ha! he! *ha! ha!*
Hei! *wo! alas!*
Hem! *ho! hold! how! lo! bravo!*
Heu! *woo! alas!*
Heus! *ho there! mark!*
Hui! *away! ho!*
Io! *huzza!*
O! *oh!*
Oh! *oh! alas!*
Ohe! *ho! hold!*
Oi! *hoy! alas!*
Papæ! *O strange!*
Proh! *oh! alas!*
St! *hush!*
Væ! *woe!*
Vah! *ha! alas! bravo!*

Remark 1. An interjection sometimes denotes several different emotions. Thus, *vah* is used to express wonder, grief, joy, and anger.

Rem. 2. Other parts of speech may sometimes be regarded as interjections; as, *pax!* be still! So *indignum, infandum, misĕrum, miserabĭle, nefas*, when used as expressions of grief or horror.

SYNTAX.

§ 200. Syntax treats of the construction of propositions, their connection and dependence.

A proposition consists of a *subject* and a *predicate*.

The subject of a proposition is that of which something is affirmed.

The predicate expresses that which is affirmed of the subject.

Thus, *Equus currit*, The horse runs. Here *equus* is the subject, and *currit* is the predicate.

NOTE. The word *affirm*, as used by grammarians, must be understood to include all the various significations of the verb, as expressed in the different moods.

SUBJECT.

§ 201. I. The subject is either *grammatical* or *logical*.

The grammatical subject is either a noun, or some word standing for a noun. The logical subject consists of the grammatical subject, with its various *modifications*.

Thus, Conscientia benè actæ vitæ *est jucundissima*, *The consciousness of a well-spent life* is very pleasant. Here *conscientia* is the grammatical, and *conscientia benè actæ vitæ* the logical, subject.

NOTE. If the grammatical subject is not modified, it is the same as the logical subject.

II. The subject is also either *simple* or *compound*.

A simple subject is a single noun or word standing for a noun, either alone or variously modified; as,

Vita *brevis est*, *Life* is short. Longissima hominis vita *brevis est*, *The longest life of man* is short. Fugaces *labuntur* anni.

A compound subject consists of two or more simple subjects, to which one predicate belongs; as,

Luna *et* stellæ *fulgebant*, *The moon* and *stars* were shining. Grammatice *ac* musice *junctæ fuerunt*, *Grammar* and *music* were united.

REMARK. Words are said to *modify* or *limit* others, when they serve to explain, describe, enlarge, restrict, or otherwise qualify their meaning.

Modified Subject.

III. A grammatical subject may be modified or limited in different ways:—

1. By a noun in the same case, annexed to it for the sake of explanation or description; as,

Nos consŭles *desūmus*, We *consuls* are remiss. *Mucius* augur *multa narrāvit*, Mucius *the augur* related many things.

2. By the oblique case of a noun or pronoun to which the subject has some relation; as,

Amor multitudĭnis *commovētur*, The love *of the multitude* is excited. De victoriâ Cæsăris *fama perfertur*, A report *of the victory of Cæsar* is brought.

3. By an adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle; as,

Fugit invĭda *ætas*, *Envious* time flies. *Ducit agmĭna Penthesilēa* furens, Penthesilea *raging* leads on her troops.

4. By the relative *qui* and the words connected with it; as,

Leve fit quod bene fertur *onus*, The burden *which is well borne* becomes light. *Litĕræ*, quas scripsisti, *acceptæ sunt*.

Remark 1. A noun or pronoun, in *any case*, may be modified in either of the ways above mentioned.

Rem. 2. An adjective modifying a noun may itself be modified:—

(1.) By an adverb; as,

Erat expectatio valdè *magna*, There was *very* great expectation.

(2.) By a noun in an oblique case; as,

Major pietāte, Superior *in piety*. Contentiōnis *cupĭdus*, Fond *of contention*.

(3.) By a relative or other dependent clause; as,

Vidētur, qui impĕret, *dignus;* He seems worthy *to command*.

(4.) By an infinitive mood, a gerund, or a supine; as,

Insuētus vera audīre, Unused *to hear* the truth. *Promptus* ad agendum, Ready *to act*. *Mirabĭle* dictu, Wonderful *to be spoken*.

Rem. 3. A participle may be modified like a verb. See § 202, III.

Rem. 4. An adverb may be modified:—

(1.) By another adverb; as,

Magis *apertè*, *More* openly. Valdè *vehementer*, *Very* vehemently.

(2.) By a noun, pronoun, or adjective, in an oblique case; as,

Congruenter natūræ, Agreeably *to nature*. *Optĭmè* omnium, Best *of all*.

Rem. 5. A preposition may be modified by an adverb, or by a noun in an oblique case; as,

Longè *ultra*, *Far* beyond. Multò *ante noctem*, *Long* before night Sexennio *post Veios captos*.

REM. 6. A modified grammatical subject, considered as one complex idea, may itself be modified; as,

Omnia *tua consilia*, *All* thy counsels. Here *omnia* modifies, not *consilia*, but the complex idea *tua consilia*. So *Omnia tua prava consilia*.

IV. 1. An infinitive, either alone or with the words connected with it, and also an entire clause, may be the *logical* subject of a proposition; as,

Mentīri *est turpe*, *To lie* is base. *Virtus est* vitium fugĕre, *To shun vice* is a virtue. *E cælo descendit*, "Nosce te ipsum." *Æquum est* ut hoc facias.

In such cases, the verb, or, if that be *esse*, the verb with its predicate noun or adjective, may be considered as the *grammatical* subject; as,

Oratōrem irasci *non decet*. *Non satis est*, pulchra esse *poëmăta*.

2. In consequence of the various modifications of the grammatical subject of a proposition, the logical subject may be greatly extended.

3. The noun or pronoun which is the subject of a proposition, is put in the nominative case, except that, when the verb of the predicate is an infinitive mood, it is put in the accusative.

NOTE. In the following pages, when the term *subject* alone is used, the grammatical subject is intended.

PREDICATE.

§ 202. I. The predicate, like the subject, is either *grammatical* or *logical*.

The grammatical predicate is either a verb alone, or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective. The logical predicate consists of the grammatical predicate with its various modifications.

Thus, *Scipio* fudit Annibălis copias, Scipio *routed the forces of Hannibal*. Here *fudit* is the grammatical, and *fudit Annibălis copias* the logical, predicate. *Romŭlus* Romanæ conditor urbis erat.

NOTE. If the grammatical predicate is not modified, it is the same as the logical predicate.

II. The predicate also, like the subject, is either *simple* or *compound*.

A simple predicate is one which contains a single finite* verb; as,

Brevis est *voluptas*, Pleasure *is brief*. *Mors* venit, Death *comes*. *Mors* æquo pulsat pede paupĕrum tabernas, regumque turres.

A compound predicate consists of two or more simple predicates belonging to the same subject; as,

Probĭtas laudatur *et* alget, Honesty *is praised* and *neglected*.

* A verb in any mood except the infinitive, is called a *finite* verb.

Modified Predicate.

III. A grammatical predicate may be modified or limited in different ways:—

1. By a noun or adjective in the same case as the subject. This occurs after certain neuter verbs, and verbs passive of naming, calling, &c. (see § 210, Rem. 3); as,

Incēdo regīna, I walk *queen*. *Aristĭdes* justus *est appellātus*.

2. By a noun in an oblique case; as,

Deus regit mundum, God rules *the world*. *Ago* tibi gratias. Ex voluntāte *fecit*. Spe *vivimus*. *Venit* ad urbem.

3. By adverbs; as,

Sæpe *venit*, He *often* came. *Litĕræ* facilè *discuntur*.

4. By an infinitive mood; as,

Cupit discĕre, He desires *to learn*. Probāri *volunt*.

Rem. 1. An infinitive may be modified like the verb of a predicate.

Rem. 2. All other words used to modify verbs, may themselves also be modified in the ways mentioned under the article *Modified Subject*, § 201, III.

SENTENCES.

§ 203. 1. A sentence may consist either of one proposition, or of two or more propositions connected together.

A sentence consisting of one proposition is called a *simple* sentence.

A sentence consisting of two or more propositions, is called a *compound* sentence, and the propositions of which it is composed are called *members*, or *clauses*.

2. The members of a compound sentence are either independent or dependent.

An independent clause is one which makes complete sense by itself. A dependent clause is one which makes complete sense only in connection with another clause.

Thus, *Phocion fuit perpetuò pauper, cùm ditissimus esse posset;* Phocion was always poor, though he might have been very rich. Here the former clause is independent, the latter dependent.

3. That member of a compound sentence on which the other members depend, is called the *leading clause;* its subject, the *leading subject;* and its verb, the *leading verb*.

The leading verb is usually either in the indicative or imperative mood, but sometimes in the subjunctive.

4. The members of a compound sentence may be connected by relative words, conjunctions, or adverbs.

An infinitive with its subject may be united with another clause without a connective.

5. Instead of a dependent clause connected by a conjunction, a noun and participle, or two nouns, sometimes stand as an abridged proposition; as,

Bello confecto, *discessit*, i. e. *quum bellum confectum esset, discessit;* The war being finished, or when the war was finished, he departed. *Nil desperandum*, Teucro duce. Hor.

6. *Agreement* is the correspondence of one word with another in gender, number, case, or person.

7. A word is said to *govern* another, when it requires it to be put in a certain case or mood.

8. A word is said to *depend* on another, when its case, gender, number, mood, tense, or person, is determined by that word.

9. A word is said to *follow* another, when it depends upon it in construction, whatever may be its position in the proposition.

APPOSITION.

§ 204. A noun, annexed to another noun or to a pronoun, and denoting the same person or thing, is put in the same case; as,

Roma urbs, The city Rome. *Nos consŭles*, We consuls. So *Apud Herodŏtum*, patrem *historiæ, sunt innumerabiles fabŭlæ;* In Herodotus, the father of history, &c. Cic. *Lapĭdes silĭces*, flint stones. Liv. *Fons cui nomen* Arethūsa *est*. Cic.

Remark 1. A noun, thus annexed to another, is said to be in *apposition* with it. It is generally added for the sake of explanation or description; sometimes it denotes character or purpose; as, *Ejus fugæ* comĭtem *me adjunxi*, I added myself, as a companion of his flight. Both nouns must belong to the same part of the sentence, either subject or predicate. In cases of apposition, there seems to be an ellipsis of the ancient participle *ens*, being; *qui est*, who is; *qui vocātur*, who is called; or the like.

Rem. 2. If the annexed noun has a form of the same gender as the other noun, it takes that form; as, *Usus* magister *egregius*. Plin. *Philosophia* magistra *vitæ*. Cic.

Rem. 3. The annexed noun sometimes differs from the other in gender; as, *Duo* fulmĭna *belli, Scipiādas;* The Scipios, two thunderbolts in war (Cic.);—sometimes in number; as, *Tulliŏla*, deliciæ *nostræ* (Cic.);—and sometimes in both; as, *Nate, meæ* vires. Virg.

Rem. 4. The substantive pronoun is sometimes omitted before the

word in apposition with it; as, Consul *dixi*, sc. *ego;* (I) the consul said. *Hoc tibi* juventus *Romāna indicīmus bellum*, sc. *nos;* (We) the Roman youth, &c. Liv.

Rem. 5. A noun in apposition to two or more nouns, is usually put in the plural; as, *M. Antonius, C. Cassius*, tribūni *plebis;* M. Antony, C. Cassius, tribunes of the people. Cæs.

So when the nouns are connected by *cum*, the annexed noun taking the case of the former; as, *Dicæarchum verò cum Aristoxēno, doctos sanè homines, omittāmus.* Cic.

If the nouns are proper names of different genders, a masculine is annexed rather than a feminine, when both forms exist; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque* reges *legāti missi.* Liv.

Rem. 6. The annexed noun is sometimes in the genitive; as, *Urbs* Patavii; The city of Patavium. Virg. *Amnis* Eridāni. Id. *Arbor* fici. Cic. *Nomen* Mercurii *est mihi.* Plaut.

Rem. 7. The name of a town in the genitive occurs with an ablative in apposition with it; as, *Corinthi Achaiæ* urbe; At Corinth, a city of Achaia. Tac. See §§ 221 and 254, Rem. 3.

Rem. 8. A proper name, after *nomen* or *cognōmen*, with a verb followed by a dative, is sometimes put in apposition with the dative, rather than with *nomen* or *cognōmen;* as, *Nomen* Arctūro *est mihi*, I have the name Arcturus. Plaut. *Cui nunc cognōmen* Iŭlo *addĭtur.* Virg. *Cui* Egerio *inditum nomen.* Liv.

Rem. 9. A *clause* may supply the place of one of the nouns; as, *Cogĭtet* oratōrem institui—*rem arduam;* Let him reflect that an orator is training—a difficult thing. Quinct.

Rem. 10. Sometimes the former noun denotes a whole, and its parts are expressed by the nouns in apposition with it; as, *Onerariæ*, pars *maxĭma ad Ægimūrum*,—aliæ *adversus urbem ipsam deductæ sunt;* The ships of burden were carried, the greatest part, to Ægimurus,—others opposite to the city itself. Liv. *Pictōres et poëtæ aiunt* quisque *opus a vulgo considerāri vult.* Cic. In the following example, *quisque* is in the nominative, though the word with which it is in apposition is in the ablative:—*Multis sibi* quisque *imperium petentĭbus.* Sall.

To this rule may be subjoined that which relates to the agreement of interrogative and responsive words.

Rem. 11. The principal noun or pronoun in the answer to a question, must be in the same case with the corresponding interrogative word; as,

Quis *herus est tibi?* Amphitruo, sc. *est.* Who is your master? Amphitruo (is.) Plaut. Quid *quæris?* Librum, sc. *quæro.* What are you looking for? A book. Quotâ *horâ venisti?* Sextâ. At what hour did you come? At the sixth.

Note 1. Instead of the genitive of a substantive pronoun, the corresponding possessive pronoun is often used, agreeing with its noun; as, Cujus *est liber?* Meus, (not *Mei.*) (See § 211, Rem. 3.) So *cujum* for gen. *cujus;* Cujum *pecus? an Melibœi? Non; verùm Ægōnis.* Virg.

Note 2. Sometimes the rules of syntax require the responsive to be in a different case from that of the interrogative; as, Quanti *emisti? Viginti* minis. *Damnatusne es* furti? *Imò alio* crimĭne. See §§ 252 and 217.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 205. Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, agree with their nouns, in gender, number, and case; as,

Bonus vir, A good man. *Bonos viros*, Good men.
Benigna mater, A kind mother. *Vanæ leges*, Useless laws.
Triste bellum, A sad war. *Minacia verba*, Threatening words.
Spe amissâ, Hope being lost. *Hæc res*, This thing.

NOTE 1. An adjective, participle, or pronoun, may either modify a noun, or, with the verb *sum*, constitute a predicate. The rule for their agreement, in both cases, is, in general, the same.

NOTE 2. In the following remarks, the word *adjective* is to be considered as including participles and adjective pronouns, unless the contrary is intimated.

REMARK 1. An adjective also agrees with a substantive pronoun, taking its gender from that of the noun for which the pronoun stands; as, *Ipse capellas* æger *ago*, sc. *ego*, *Melibœus*; (I) myself, sick, am driving my goats. Virg. *Ut se* totum *ei tradĕret*. Nep. *O me misĕrum* (spoken by a man), *misĕram me* (by a woman). So *salvi sumus*, *salvæ sumus*, sc. *nos*, masculine or feminine.

In general propositions which include both sexes, the pronouns are considered masculine; as, *Nos fruges consumĕre* nati. Hor.

REM. 2. An adjective, belonging to two or more nouns, is put in the plural; as,

Lupus et agnus siti compulsi, A wolf and a lamb, constrained by thirst. Phæd.

When the nouns are of different genders,

(1.) If they denote living things, the adjective is masculine rather than feminine; as,

Pater mihi et mater mortui *sunt*, My father and mother are dead. Ter.

(2.) If they denote things without life, the adjective is generally neuter; as,

His genus, *ætas*, *eloquentia prope* æquāta *fuĕre*; Their family, age, and eloquence, were nearly equal. Sall. *Regna*, *imperia*, *nobilitātes*, *honōres*, *divitiæ in casu* sita *sunt*. Cic. *Huic bella*, *rapinæ*, *discordia civilis*, grata *fuĕre*. Sall. *Ănima atque ănimus*, *quamvis* integra *recens in corpus eunt*. Lucr.

NOTE. When nouns denoting things without life are of the *same* gender (either masculine or feminine), but of different numbers, the adjective is sometimes neuter; as, *Cræso et vita et patrimonii partes*, *et urbs Barce* concessa *sunt*. Just.

(3.) If one of the nouns denotes an animate, and another an inanimate thing, the adjective is sometimes neuter, and sometimes it takes the gender of that which has life; as,

Naves et captīvos quæ *ad Chium* capta *erant*, The ships and captives which were taken at Chios. Liv. *Numĭdæ atque signa militaria* obscurāti *sunt*. Sall.

Exc. to Rem. 2. The adjective often agrees with the nearest noun, and is understood with the rest; as,

Sociis et rege recepto, Our companions and king being recovered. Virg. *Cognĭtum est, salūtem, lĭbĕros, famam, fortūnas esse* carissĭmas. Cic.

Note. A noun in the singular, followed by an ablative with *cum*, has sometimes a plural adjective; as, *Filiam cum filio* accĭtos. Liv. *Ilia cum Lauso de Numitōre* sati. Ovid.

Rem. 3. An adjective qualifying a collective noun, is often put in the plural, taking the gender of the individuals which the noun denotes; as,

Pars certāre parāti, A part prepared to contend. Virg. *Pars per agros* dilapsi, ... *suam quisque spem* exsequentes. Liv. *Supplex turba erant sine vindĭce* tuti. Ovid. This construction always occurs when the collective noun is the subject of a plural verb.

Sometimes, though rarely, an adjective in the *singular* takes the gender of the individuals; as, *Pars* arduus *altis* pulverulentus *equis furit.* Virg.

Some other nouns have an adjective of a different gender from their own, referring to the words which they include; as, *Latium Capŭaque agro* mulctāti; Latium and Capua were deprived of their land. Liv. *Capĭta conjuratiōnis virgis* cæsi. Id.

Rem. 4. Two adjectives in the singular are sometimes joined to a plural noun; as, *Mŭria* Tyrrhēnum *atque* Adriatĭcum, The Tuscan and Adriatic seas. Liv. In comic writers, an adjective or participle in the singular is sometimes used with a plural pronoun; as, *Nobis præsente.* Plaut. *Absente nobis.* Ter.

Rem. 5. A participle which should regularly agree with the subject of a proposition, when placed after the noun of the predicate, sometimes takes the gender and number of the latter; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est* dicenda; Not every error is to be called folly. Cic. *Gens universa Venĕti* appellati. Liv.

Rem. 6. When the subject of an infinitive is omitted after a dative of the same signification, an adjective in the predicate, belonging to that subject, is sometimes put in the dative; as, *Mihi* negligenti *esse non licuit,* i. e. *me negligentem esse mihi non licuit.* Cic. *Dii mihi* justo sanctōque *vidēri.* Hor. A noun is sometimes expressed with the adjective; as, *Vobis necesse est* fortĭbus *esse* viris. Liv. The adjective often agrees with the omitted subject; as, *Expĕdit* bonas *esse vobis,* sc. *vos.* Ter. *Si civi Romāno licet esse* Gaditānum. Cic.

Rem. 7. (1.) An adjective is often used alone, especially in the plural, the noun, with which it agrees, being understood; as,

Boni *sunt rari,* sc. *homĭnes;* Good (men) are rare. *Cæsar* suos *misit,* sc. *milĭtes;* Cæsar sent his (soldiers). *Dextra,* sc. *manus;* The right (hand). *Pinguisque* ferīnæ, sc. *carnis. Immortāles,* sc. *Dii. Amantium,* sc. *homĭnum. Illum* indignanti *simĭlem, similemque* minanti *aspicĕres,* sc. *homĭni.* Virg. *Tibi* primas *defĕro,* sc. *partes.* Cic. *Respice* præterĭtum, sc. *tempus,* which is often omitted. *Cognōvi ex* meōrum *omnium litĕris,* sc. *amicōrum.* Cic. So patrial adjectives; as, *Missi ad* Parthum Armeniumque *legāti,* sc. *regem.*

Note 1. The noun to be supplied with masculine adjectives is commonly *homĭnes,* but when they are possessives, it is oftener *amici, milĭtes, cives.*

Note 2. The noun to be supplied is often contained in a preceding clause.

(2.) Neuter adjectives are very often used alone, referring not to nouns omitted, but to objects conceived or exhibited as indefinite; as,

Triste *lupus stabŭlis*; The wolf, a grievous (thing) to the folds. Virg. *Labor* omnia *vincit*; Labor overcomes all (obstacles). Id. Turpe *ducet cedĕre pari*. Quinct. *Vacāre culpâ est* suave. Quæ *cùm ita sint*. Cic. *Pedĭbus per* mutua *nexis*. Virg.

NOTE. In most instances of this kind, the word *thing*, in English, may be supplied. Many grammarians suppose that *negotium* is understood; but that word seems not to admit such a sense.

(3.) Adjectives used without nouns often have adjectives agreeing with them; as, *Alia* omnia, All other (things). Plin. *Familiāris* meus. Cic. *Iniquus* noster. Id. Justa *funebria*. Liv. *Jovis omnia* plena. Virg. See § 201, III. REM. 6.

REM. 8. Imperatives, infinitives, adverbs, clauses, and words considered merely as such, may be used substantively, and take a neuter adjective; as, Suprēmum vale *dixit*, He pronounced a last farewell. Ovid. Velle suum *cuique est*. Pers. Cras istud *quando venit?* Mart. Excepto quòd non simul esses, *cetĕra lætus*. Hor.

REM. 9. Adjectives and adjective pronouns, instead of agreeing with their nouns, are sometimes put in the neuter gender, with a partitive signification, and their nouns in the genitive; as, Multum *tempŏris*, for *multum tempus*; much time. Id *rei*, for *ea res*; that thing. So plus *eloquentiæ*, the other form not being admissible with *plus*. (See § 110.) Neuter adjectives are used in like manner in the plural; as, Vana *rerum*, for *vanæ res*. Hor. Pleräque *humanārum rerum*. Sall. But in some such examples, the adjective seems to be used as noticed in REM. 7, (2.); as, Acūta *belli*. Hor. *Tellūris* operta. Virg.

The adjectives thus used in the singular, for the most part, signify quantity. See § 212, REM. 3, NOTE 1.

REM. 10. A neuter adjective is sometimes used adverbially in the nominative or accusative, both singular and plural; as, Magnum *stridens*. Virg. *Arma* horrendum *sonuēre*. Id. Multa *deos venerāti sunt*. Cic. See § 192, II. 4, (*b*.)

REM. 11. A noun is sometimes used as an adjective; as, Incŏla *turba vocant*. Ovid. Nemo *miles Romānus*. Liv.

An adverb is also sometimes used as an adjective; as, *Heri* semper *lenĭtas*, for *sempiterna*. Ter.

REM. 12. An adjective or adjective pronoun, used partitively, stands alone, and commonly takes the gender of the genitive plural, which depends upon it; but when it is preceded by a noun of a different gender, to which it refers, it usually takes that gender, but sometimes that of the genitive; as, *Elephanto belluārum* nulla *est prudentior*, No beast is wiser than the elephant. Cic. *Indus, qui est omnium fluminum* maxĭmus. Cic. Velocissĭmum *omnium animalium est delphĭnus*. Plin. See § 212, REM. 2.

When a *collective* noun follows in the genitive singular, the adjective takes the gender of the individuals which compose it; as, *Vir* fortissĭmus *nostræ civĭtātis*, The bravest man of our state. Cic. Maxĭmus *stirpis*. Liv.

REM. 13. When a possessive pronoun is used instead of the genitive of its primitive (see § 211, REM. 3.), an adjective agreeing with that genitive is sometimes joined with such possessive; as, Solius meum *peccātum corrĭgi*

non potest, The fault of me alone cannot be corrected. Cic. Noster duōrum *eventus*. Liv. Mea *scripta* timentis. Hor. Tuum ipsius *studium*. Cic. *Id maximè quemque decet, quod est* cujusque suum *maximè*. Id.

Sometimes a noun in the genitive is expressed, in apposition with the substantive pronoun for which the possessive stands; as, *Pectus tuum*, homīnis *simplĭcis*. Cic.

Rem. 14. An adjective, properly belonging to the genitive, is sometimes made to agree with the noun on which the genitive depends, and *vice versâ*; as, *Ædificatiōnis* tuæ *consilium* for *tuum*, Your design of building. Cic. *Accusantes* violāti *hospitii fœdus*, for *violātum*. Liv. *Ad* majōra *initia rerum ducentĭbus fatis*, for *majōrum*. Id. Iis *nominĭbus civitātum, quibus ex civitatĭbus*, &c. for *eārum civitātum*. Cæs.

Rem. 15. An adjective agreeing with a noun is sometimes used, instead of an adverb qualifying a verb, especially in poetry; as, *Ecce venit Telămon* propĕrus; Lo, Telamon comes in haste. Ovid. Læti *pacem agitabāmus*, for *lætè*. Sall. *Æneas se* matutinus *agēbat*, for *manè*. Virg.

So *nullus* is used for *omnīno non*; as, *Memĭni tametsi* nullus *moneas*, Though you do not suggest it. Ter. *Prior, primus, propior, proximus, solus, unus, ultĭmus*, and some others, are used instead of their neuters, adverbially; as, Priōri *Remo augurium venisse fertur*. Liv. This is sometimes done, for want of an adverb of appropriate meaning; as, Pronus *cecĭdit*. Ovid. Frequentes *convenērant*. Sall.

In such expressions, *tu*, in the nominative, sometimes takes an adjective in the vocative, and *vice versâ*; as, *Sic venias* hodierne. Tibull. *Salve*, primus *omnium parens patriæ* appellāte. Plin.

Rem. 16. When several adjectives, each independently of the other, qualify a noun, if they precede it, they are almost always connected by one or more conjunctions; as, *Multâ* et *variâ* et *copiōsâ oratiōne*. Cic. If they follow it, the conjunction is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted, as, *Vir altus* et *excellens*. Cic. *Actio, varia, vehĕmens, plena veritātis*. Id.

But when one of the adjectives qualifies the noun, and another the complex idea formed by the first with the noun, the conjunction is always omitted; as, Periculosissĭmum *civile bellum*, A most dangerous civil war. Cic. Malam *domesticam disciplīnam*. Id. So with three or more adjectives; Externos multos *claros viros nominārem*. Cic. See § 201, III., Rem. 6.

Rem. 17. The adjectives *primus, medius, ultĭmus, extrēmus, intĭmus, infimus, imus, summus, suprēmus, relĭquus*, and *cetĕra*, often signify the *first part*, the *middle part*, &c. of a thing; as,

Media nox, The middle of the night. *Summa arbor*, The highest part of a tree. *Suprēmos montes*, The tops of the mountains. But these adjectives frequently occur without this signification; as, *Ab extrēmo complexu*, From the last embrace. Cic. *Infimo loco*, Of the lowest rank. Id.

Rem. 18. The participle of the compound tenses of neuter verbs, used in the passive voice, is neuter; as, Ventum *est*. Cic. Itum *est in viscĕra terræ*. Ovid.

RELATIVES.

§ 206. Rem. 19. Relatives agree with their antecedents in gender and number, but their case depends on the construction of the clause to which they belong; as,

Puer qui *legit*, The boy who reads. *Animal* quod *currit*, The animal

which runs. *Litĕræ* quas *dedi*, The letter which I gave. *Non sum* qualis *eram*, I am not such as I was. So *Deus* cujus *munĕre vivimus*, cui *nullus est simĭlis*, quem *colimus*, *a* quo *facta sunt omnia, est æternus. Addictus Hermippo, et ab* hoc *ductus est. Aquĭlo*, quantus *frangit ilices.* Hor.

NOTE. This rule includes all adjectives, participles, and adjective pronouns which relate to a noun in a preceding clause. Its more common application, however, is to the construction of the relative *qui*.

The relative may be considered as placed between two cases of the same noun, either expressed or understood, with the former of which it agrees in gender and number, and with the latter in gender, number, and case.

(1.) Sometimes both nouns are expressed; as,

Erant omnino duo itinĕra, quibus itinerĭbus *domo exire possent;* There were only two *routes*, by which *routes* they could leave home. Cæs. *Crudelissimo* bello, quale bellum *nulla unquam barbaria gessit.* Cic.

(2.) Usually the antecedent only is expressed; as,

Animum *rege*, qui, *nisi paret, imperat;* Govern your passions, which rule unless they obey. Hor. *Tantæ* multitudĭnis, quantam *capit urbs nostra, concursus est ad me factus.* Cic. Quot *capĭtum vivunt, totĭdem studiōrum* millia. Hor.

(3.) Sometimes the *latter* noun only is expressed, generally when the relative clause precedes that of the antecedent; as,

Quibus *de* rebus *ad me scripsisti, coram videbimus;* In regard to the things of which you wrote to me, we will consider when we meet. Cic. *In* quem *primum egressi sunt* locum, *Troja* vocātur. Liv. Quantâ vi *expĕtunt, tantâ defendunt.* Qualesque *visus eram vidisse* viros, *ex ordine tales aspicio.* Ovid.

To this head may be referred such examples as the following:—*Qui meus amor in te est*, i. e. *pro meo amōre qui in te est;* Such is my love for you. Cic. *Quæ tua est virtus, expugnābis*, i. e. *pro tua virtūte, &c.*

(*a.*) The place of the antecedent is sometimes supplied by a demonstrative pronoun, especially when the cases are different; as, *Ad* quas res *aptissimi erimus, in* iis *potissimum elaborabimus.* Cic.

(*b.*) Sometimes the latter noun only is expressed, even when the relative clause does not precede; as, *Quis non malārum* quas *amor* curas *habet, hæc inter obliviscĭtur?* Hor.

(4.) Sometimes neither noun is expressed; this happens especially when the antecedent is designedly left indefinite, or when it is a substantive pronoun; as,

Qui *bene latuit, bene vixit*, sc. *homo;* (He) who has well escaped notice, has lived well. Ovid. *Sunt* quos *curricŭlo pulvĕrem Olympicum collegisse juvat*, sc. *homines;* There are whom it delights, &c. Hor. *Non habeo* quod *te accūsem*, sc. *id propter quod.* Cic. *Non solum sapiens natĕris* qui *hinc abis, sed etiam bĕatus*, sc. *tu.* Cic.

(5.) The relative is sometimes either entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit; Tyrii tenuēre colōni*, sc. *quam* or *eam;* There was an ancient city (which) Tyrian colonists possessed (Virg.); or, if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, even when, if supplied, its case would be different; as, *Bocchus cum peditĭbus*, quos *filius ejus adduxĕrat, neque in priōre pugnâ adfuĕrant, Romānos invādunt*, for *et qui non in priōre*, &c. Sall.

(6.) (a.) The relative sometimes takes the case of the antecedent, instead of its own proper case; as, *Cùm scribas et aliquid agas eōrum*, quorum *consuēsti*, for *quæ*. Cic. *Raptim* quibus *quisque potĕrat elātis, exībant*, for *iis, quæ quisque efferre potĕrat, elātis*. Liv.

(*b.*) The antecedent likewise sometimes takes the case of the relative; as, Urbem, quam *statuo vestra est*, for *urbs*. Virg. Naucrātem, quem *convenīre volui, in navi non erat*. Plaut. *Sed* istum, quem *quæris, ego sum*. Id.

These constructions are said to occur by *attraction*.

(7.) An adjective, which properly belongs to the antecedent, is sometimes placed in the relative clause, and agrees with the relative; as, *Inter jocos*, quos incondītos *jaciunt*, for *jocos incondītos, quos*, &c.; Amidst the rude jests which they utter. Liv. *Verbis*, quæ magna *volant*. Virg. *Calōre*, quem multum *hubet*. Cic.

This is the common position of the adjective, when it is a numeral, a comparative, or a superlative; as, *Nocte* quam *in terris* ultĭmam *egit*, The last night which he spent upon earth. *Æsculapius*, qui primus *vulnus obligavisse dicītur*. Cic. *Consiliis pare*, quæ *nunc* pulcherrĭma *Nautes dat senior*. Virg. Some instances occur in which an adjective belonging to the relative clause, is placed in that of the antecedent; as, *Cum venissent ad vada* Volaterrāna, quæ *nominantur*. Cic.

(8.) When to the relative is joined a noun, explanatory of the antecedent, but of a different gender or number, the relative agrees with that noun; as,

Santŏnes non longè a Tolosatium finĭbus absunt, quæ civĭtas *est in provinciâ*. The Santones are not far distant from the borders of the Tolosates, which *state* is in the province. Cæs. *Ante comitia*, quod tempus *haud longè abĕrat*. Sall.

(9.) If the relative refers to one of two nouns, denoting the same object, but of different genders, it agrees with either; as,

Fluvius est Arar quod *in Rhodănum influit*. Cæs. *Ad flumen Oxum perventum est*, qui *turbidus semper est*. Curt.

(10.) When, in a relative clause containing the verb *sum* or a verb of naming, esteeming, &c., a noun occurs of a different gender from the antecedent, the relative agrees with either; as,

Natūræ vultus quem *dixēre Chaos*, The appearance of nature which they called chaos. Ovid. Genus *hominum* quod *Helōtes vocātur*. Nep. *Animal*, quem *vocāmus* hominem; The animal whom we call man. Cic. *Locus in carcĕre*, quod Tullianum *appellātur*. Sall. *Pecuniārum conquisitio; eos esse belli civĭlis* nervos *dicĭtans Muciānus*. Tac.

(11.) The relative sometimes agrees with a noun, either equivalent in sense to the antecedent, or only implied in the preceding clause; as,

Abundantia eārum rerum quæ *mortāles prima putant*, An abundance of those things which mortals esteem most important. Sall. *Quartum genus est sanè varium et mistum* qui *jampridem premuntur*. Cic. *Conjuravēre pauci contra rempublĭcam*, de quâ (sc. *conjuratiōne*), *quàm brevissimè potĕro dicam*. Sall. *Daret ut catēnis fatāle monstrum*, quæ, &c., sc. *Cleopatra*. Hor. *Non diffidentiâ futūri* quæ *imperavisset*. Sall. *Si tempus est ullum* quæ *multa sunt*. Cic.

(12.) The antecedent is sometimes implied in a possessive pronoun; as, *Omnes laudāre fortūnas* meas, qui *natum tali ingenio prædītum habērem* sc. *mei;* All were extolling my fortune, *who* had a son endowed with such a disposition. Ter. Nostrum *consilium laudandum est*, qui *meos cives servis armātis objīci noluērim.* Cic.

(13.) Sometimes the antecedent is a proposition, and then the relative is commonly neuter; as, *Postrēmò*, quod *difficillīmum inter mortāles, glorià invidium vicisti;* Finally, you have overcome envy with glory, *which*, among men, is very difficult. Sall. *Equidem exspectābam jam tuas litĕras*, id*que cum multis.* Cic.

In such instances, *id* is sometimes placed before the relative pronoun, referring to the idea in the antecedent clause; as, *Sive*, id *quod constat, Platōnis studiōsus audiendi fuit.* Cic. *Diem consūmi volēbant*, id *quod fecērunt.* Id.

Sometimes a relative referring to a clause, agrees with a noun following; as, *Idem velle atque nolle*, ea *demum firma amicitia est.* Sall.

(14.) *Quod*, relating to a preceding statement, and serving the purpose of transition, is often placed at the beginning of a sentence after a period. It is thus used especially before *si* and *nisi*, and sometimes before *utĭnam, ut; ne, ubi, cùm, contra*, and *nunc;* as, Quod *si mundum efficĕre potest concursus atomōrum, cur porticum, cur templum, cur domum, cur urbem non potest?* In regard to which, if the concourse of atoms can produce a world, why, &c. Cic. Quod *te per genium obsecro, vitæ me reāde priōri.* Hor. Quod *utĭnam illum, cujus impio facinŏre in has miserias projectus sum, eădem hæc simulantem videam.* Sall.

Quod, in such examples, seems to be an accusative, with *propter* or *ad* understood.

(15.) If the relative refers to two or more nouns of different genders, its gender will be determined by Rem. 2; as, *Ninus et Semirāmis*, qui *Babylōna condidĕrant;* Ninus and Semiramis, who had founded Babylon. Vell. *Crebro funāli et tibicĭne*, quæ *sibi sumpsĕrat.* Cic. *Ex summâ lætitiâ et lasciviâ*, quæ *diuturna quies peperĕrat.* Sall.

(16.) The relative adjectives *quot, quantus, qualis*, are construed like the relative *qui.* They have generally, in the antecedent clause, the corresponding words, *tot, tantus, talis;* but these are often omitted.

(17.) *Qui*, at the beginning of a sentence, is often translated like a demonstrative; as, Quæ *cùm ita sint*, Since *these* (things) are so. Cic.

DEMONSTRATIVES, INDEFINITES, &c.

§ 207. Rem. 20. The adjective pronouns often agree with a noun expressed, instead of another noun understood; as, *Nec solos tangit Atrĭdas iste dolor*, Nor does that grief (i. e. grief on that account) affect the sons of Atreus alone. Virg.

Rem. 21. The demonstrative pronouns are sometimes used where a corresponding word in English is unnecessary; as, *Quem neque fides, neque jusjurandum, neque* illum *misericordia, repressit;* Whom neither fidelity, nor an oath, nor pity, has restrained. Ter.

Rem. 22. The neuters of the demonstrative pronouns are sometimes used in apposition with a dependent clause; as, Hoc *tibi persuadeas velim, me nihil omisisse;* I wish you to be persuaded of this—that I have omitted nothing.

Rem. 23. *Hic* refers to what is near, *ille* to what is remote. Hence, of two things mentioned before, *hic* commonly refers to the latter *ille* to

the former; as, *Ignavia corpus hebĕtat, labor firmat;* illa *maturam senectutem*, hic *longam adolescentiam reddit:* Sloth enervates the body, labor strengthens it; the former produces premature old age, the latter protracted youth. Cels.

Yet this rule is not always observed; as, *Sic deus et virgo est;* hic *spe celer*, illa *timōre*. Ovid. Sometimes *hic...hic* are used instead of *hic...ille*. So *ille...ille* sometimes denote "the one...the other."

When more than two persons or things are spoken of, *ille* refers to the most remote, *iste* to a nearer, and *hic* to the nearest object. Hence, in letters, *hic* and its derivatives are used of the writer; *iste* and its derivatives of the person addressed; *ille*, &c., of some other person or thing. See § 191, Rem. 2.

Rem. 24. *Ille* is used to denote that which is of general notoriety; as, *Magno* illi *Alexandro simillimus*, Very like Alexander *the* Great. Vell. *Medĕa illa*. Cic. *Ille* is sometimes translated *this;* as, *Unum illud dico*, This only I say. Cic.

Rem. 25. *Iste* often denotes contempt; as, *Impediebantur eā lege, quam idem* iste *tulĕrat*....the same wretch. Cic. Sometimes, on the contrary, it means *so great;* as, *Cum* istâ *sis auctoritāte*, Since you are of so great authority. Cic.

Rem. 26. *Is* does not, like *hic, ille*, and *iste*, denote the place or order of the object to which it relates, but refers to something already mentioned or to be defined by the relative *qui*. *Hic, is*, or *ille*, may be used in this way before the relative, but only *hic* or *is* after it; as, *Qui docet, is discit*, or *hic discit*, but not *ille discit*, unless some individual is referred to.

Is has sometimes the sense of *talis*, such; as, *Neque enim tu* is *es, qui quid sis nescias;* Nor are you such a person as to be ignorant what you are. Cic.

Is with *et* or *que* is emphatic, equivalent to the English "and that too;" as, *Priōtas causas*, et eas *tenues agĭmus;* We manage private causes, and those unimportant. Cic. *Erant in Torquāto plurĭmæ litĕræ nec* eæ *vulgāres*. Id.

Rem. 27. *Idem*, as denoting a subject which stands in equal relations to two different predicates, often supplies the place of *item* or *etiam*, also, or of *tamen*, yet, if the things are apparently inconsistent; as, *Musĭci, qui erant quondam* iidem *poëtæ;* Musicians, who formerly were poets also. Cic. *Euphrātes et Tigris magno aquārum divortio iter percurrunt;* iidem (and yet) *paulātim in arctius coëunt*.

Idem is sometimes repeated in the sense of "at once," denoting the union of qualities which might be thought incompatible; as, *Fuēre quidam qui* iidem *ornātē* iidem *versūtē dicĕrent*, There have been some who could speak at once elegantly and artfully. Cic.

"The same as" is variously expressed in Latin, by *idem* with *qui, ac* or *atque, quasi* or *ut;* as, *Verres* idem *est* qui *fuit semper*, Verres is the same as he has always been. Cic. *Vita est* eādem ac *fuit*. Liv. *Disputatiōnem exponĭmus* iisdem *fere verbis* ut *actum est*. Cic.

Rem. 28. *Ipse*, when used with the substantive pronouns, sometimes agrees with them; but, when they are reflexive, and in an oblique case, it commonly agrees with the subject of the proposition; as, *Agam per me* ipse, *I will* do it myself. Cic. *Medĭci* ipsi *se curāre non possunt*. Sulpic. Se ipsos *omnes natūrâ diligunt*.

Ipse is sometimes used as reflexive without *sui;* as, *Omnes boni, quantum in* ipsis *fuit, Cæsărem occidērunt*. Cic.

Ipse, with nouns denoting time or number, expresses exactness; as,

Cum ipsis *nonis Sextīlis*, Exactly on the fifth of August. Cic. *Triginta dies erant* ipsi, Thirty whole days had elapsed. Id.

Rem. 29. The relative *quicunque* is sometimes used as equivalent to *omnis* or *quivis*; as, *Quæ sanāri potĕrunt* quăcunque *ratiōne sanābo*, What can be cured I will cure by every possible means. Cic. Yet *possum* is rather to be supplied;—"in whatever way I can." So *quisquis* is occasionally used, not as a relative, but as an indefinite pronoun.

Rem. 30. *Aliquis* and *quispiam* are particular, corresponding to the English *some one*; as, *Hereditas est pecunia, quæ morte* alicūjus *ad* quempiam *pervēnit jure*; An inheritance is property which, at the death of some one, falls to some (other) one by law. Cic. *Multi sine doctrinâ* aliquid *omnium genĕrum et artium consequuntur*. Id.

Rem. 31. *Quisquam*, any one, and *ullus*, any, are universal: they are used in propositions which involve a universal negative, or which express an interrogation with a negative force, or a condition (usually with *si* or *quasi*); also, after comparatives, after the adverb *vix*, and the preposition *sine*; as, *Neque ex castris Catilīnæ* quisquam *omnium discessĕrat*, Nor had any one departed from the camp of Catiline. Sall. *Nec* ullo *casu potest contingĕre, ut* ulla *intermissio fiat officii*. Cic. *An* quisquam *potest sine perturbatiōne mentis irasci?* Id. *Tetrior hic tyrannus Syracusānis fuit, quàm* quisquam *superiōrum*. Id. *Vix* quidquam *spei est*. Sen.

Ullus is properly an adjective, but it may be used, like any other adjective, with a noun understood. *Quisquam* is commonly used without a noun, except it is a word denoting a person; as, *Cuiquam civi*, To any citizen. *Cujusquam oratōris eloquentiam*. *Nemo* is often used for *nullus*; as, *nemo pictor, nemo adolescens*, and even *homo nemo*. Cic.

Rem. 32. *Alius*, like *ullus*, though properly an adjective, is sometimes used like a pronoun. It is often repeated, or joined with an adverb derived from it, in the same proposition, which may be translated by two separate propositions, commencing respectively with "one....another;" as, Aliud aliis *vidētur optīmum*, One thing seems best to one, another to another. Cic. Aliis aliunde *periculum est*, Danger threatens one from one source, another from another; *or*, Danger threatens different persons from different sources. Ter. *Dionysium* aliter *cum* aliis *de nobis locūtum audiēbam*. Cic.

Alter is commonly used when *two* persons are spoken of; as, *Utĕrque numĕrus* alter altĕrâ *de causâ habētur*. Cic.

Alius, repeated in different propositions, is also translated "one....another;" as, Aliud *agĭtur*, aliud *simulātur*, One thing is done, another pretended. Cic.

Rem. 33. *Quidam* differs from *aliquis* by implying that a person or thing, though indefinitely described, is definitely known; as, Quidam *de collēgis nostris*, A certain one of our colleagues. Cic. *Scis me* quodam *tempŏre Metapontum venisse tecum*. Id.

Quidam is sometimes used for *some*, as opposed to *the whole*, or to *others*; as, *Excessērunt urbe* quidam, alii *mortem sibi consciscērunt*; Some departed from the city, others destroyed themselves. Liv. Hence it is used as a limitation; as, *Milvo est* quoddam *bellum naturāle cum corvo*,.... a kind of warfare. Cic.

Rem. 34. *Quivis* and *quilĭbet*, any one you please, are universal; as, *Omnia sunt ejusmŏdi* quivis *ut perspicĕre possit*, All are of such a nature that any one can perceive. Cic. *Hic apud majōres nostros adhibebātur* perĭtus, *nunc* quilĭbet. Id. A negative joined with them denies only the universality which they imply; as, *Non* cuivis *homĭni contingit adīre Co*

rinthum, i. e. not to every man without distinction. Hor. *Cuiquam* would have made the negation universal.

Rem. 35. *Quisque* signifies *each, every one*, and generally stands without a noun; as, *Quod* cuique *obtigit, id* quisque *teneat;* Let each one keep what has fallen to each. Cic.

It is often used with two superlatives; as, *Optĭmum* quidque *rarissĭmum est*, The best things are the rarest. Cic. *Ut* quisque optĭmè *dicit, ita* maxĭmè *dicendi difficultātem timet.* Id.

With *primus*, it denotes the *first possible;* as, *Primo quoque tempŏre*, As soon as possible. Cic.

Rem. 36. The possessives *meus, tuus, noster, vester*, and *suus*, are joined to nouns, to indicate an action or possession of the persons denoted by their primitives; as, *Tutus amor* meus *est tibi*, My love is secure to you. Ovid. Tuam *vicem dolēre soleo.* Cic.

But these pronouns are sometimes used when the persons to which they refer are the *objects* of an action, feeling, &c.; as, *Nam neque* tuâ *negligentiâ, neque odio id fecit* tuo, For he did it neither through neglect nor hatred *of you.* Ter. See § 211, Rem. 3.

These pronouns, as reflexives, are often omitted; as, *Quo revertar? in patriam?* sc. *meam;* Whither shall I return? to (my) country? Ovid. *Dextrâ munĕra porrexit*, sc. *suâ.* Id.

REFLEXIVES.

§ 208. Rem. 37. *Sui* and *suus* properly refer to the subject of the proposition in which they stand; as,

Oppidāni *facĭnus in* se *ac* suos *fœdum consciscunt*, The citizens decide on a foul crime against themselves and their friends. Liv.

They continue to be used in successive clauses, if the subject remains the same; as, *Ipse* se *quisque diligit, non ut ullĭquam a* se *ipse mercēdem exĭgat caritātis* suæ, *sed quòd per* se sibi *quisque carus est.* Cic.

(1.) In dependent clauses, in which the subject does not remain the same, the reflexives commonly refer to the leading subject, when the thoughts, language, purposes, &c., of that subject are stated; as, *Ariovistus prædicāvit, non* sese *Gallis, sed Gallos* sibi *bellum intulisse;* Ariovistus declared that he had not made war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls upon him. Cæs. *Homērum Colophonii civem esse dicunt* suum, The Colophonians say that Homer is their citizen. Cic. *Tyrannus petīvit ut* se *ad amicitiam tertium ascribĕrent.* Id.

(2.) If, however, the leading subject, whose thoughts, &c., are expressed, is indefinite, the reflexives relate to the subject of a dependent clause; as, Medēam *prædĭcant* (sc. *homĭnes*) *in fugâ fratris* sui *membra in iis locis, quâ* se *parens persequerētur, dissipavisse.* Cic. *Ipsum* regem *tradunt operātum his sacris* se *abdidisse.* Liv.

(3.) When the leading verb is in the passive voice, the reflexive often refers not to its subject, but to that which would be its subject in the active voice; as, *A Cæsāre invĭtor ut sim* sibi *legātus*, i. e. *Cæsar me invĭtat;* I am invited by Cæsar to become his lieutenant. Cic.

So when the subject is a thing without life, the reflexive may relate to some other word in the sentence, which denotes a thing with life; as, Canum *tam fida custodia quid significat aliud, nisi* se *ad homĭnum commoditātes esse generātos?* Cic.

(4.) Instead of *sui* and *suus*, whether referring to a leading or a subor

dinate subject, *ipse* is sometimes used, to avoid ambiguity from the similarity of both numbers of *sui*, and to mark more emphatically than *suus*, the person to which it relates; as, *Jugurtha legātos misit qui* ipsi *liberisque vitam petĕrent*, Jugurtha sent ambassadors to ask life for himself and his children. Sall. *Ea molestissĭmè ferre homĭnes debent, quæ* ipsōrum *culpâ contracta sunt.*

(5.) In the plural number, with *inter*, *se* only is used, if the person or thing referred to is in the nominative or accusative; *se* or *ipse*, if in any other case; as, Fratres *inter* se *cum formâ, tum mŏrĭbus simĭles;* Brothers resembling each other both in person and character. Cic. Feras *inter* sese *conciliat natūra.* Cic. *Incĭdunt aliqua a* doctis *etiam inter* ipsos *mutuò reprehensa.* Quinct.

(6.) When reference is made not to the subject of the proposition, but to some other person or thing, *hic*, *is*, or *ille*, is generally used, except in the cases above specified; as, *Themistŏcles servum ad* Xerxem *misit, ut* ei *nuntiāret, suis verbis, adversarios* ejus *in fugâ esse;* Themistocles sent his servant to Xerxes, to inform him (Xerxes), in his (Themistocles') name, that his (Xerxes') enemies were upon the point of flight. Nep. But when no ambiguity would arise, and especially when the verb is of the first or second person, *sui* and *suus* sometimes take the place of the demonstrative pronouns; as, Suam *rem* sibi *salvam sistam*, I will restore his property entire to him. Plaut.

On the contrary, the demonstratives are sometimes used for the reflexives; as, *Helvetii persuādent Raurăcis, ut unà cum* iis *proficiscantur;* The Helvetii persuade the Rauraci to go with them. Cæs. In some instances, a reflexive and a demonstrative are used in reference to the same person; as, *Ita* se *gessit* (sc. *Ligarius*) *ut* ei *pacem esse expediret.* Cic. Sometimes the reflexives refer to different subjects in the same sentence; as, *Ariovistus respondit, nemĭnem* secum *sine* suâ *pernicie contendisse* (Cæs.); where *se* refers to Ariovistus, and *suâ* to *nemĭnem.*

(7.) *Suus* often refers to a word in the predicate of a sentence, and is then usually placed after it; as, Hunc *cives* sui *ex urbe ejecĕrunt*, Him his citizens banished from the city. Cic. *Titurius quum procul* Ambiorīgem, suos *cohortantem, conspexisset.* Cæs.

Suus, and not *hujus*, &c., is used when a noun is omitted; as, *Octavium, quem* sui (*sc.* amīci) *Cæsărem salutābant;* Octavius, whom his followers saluted as Cæsar.

Suus is also commonly used when two nouns are coupled by *cum*, but not when they are connected by a conjunction; as, *Ptolemæus amīcos Demetrii cum* suis *rebus dimīsit;* Ptolemy dismissed the friends of Demetrius with their effects. Just.

(8.) *Suus* sometimes denotes *fit, favorable;* as, *Sunt et* sua *dona parenti*, There are likewise for my father suitable presents. Virg. *Alphēnus utebātur popŭlo sanè* suo. Cic. Sometimes it signifies *peculiar;* as, *Molles* sua *thura Sabæi*, sc. *mittunt*, i. e. the frankincense for which their country was famous. Virg.

NOMINATIVE.

SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE AND VERB.

§ 209. A verb agrees with its subject-nominative, in number and person; as,

Ego legŏ, I read.	*Nos legĭmus*, We read.
Tu scribis, Thou writest.	*Vos scribĭtis*, You write.
Equus currit, The horse runs.	*Equi currunt*, Horses run.

REMARK 1. The nominatives *ego*, *tu*, *nos*, *vos*, are seldom expressed, the termination of the verb sufficiently marking the person; as, *cupio*, I desire; *vivis*, thou livest; *habēmus*, we have. See § 147, 3.

But when emphasis or distinction is intended, they are expressed; as, Ego *reges ejēci*, vos *tyrannos introducĭtis*; I banished kings, you introduce tyrants. Auct. ad Her. Nos, nos, *dico apertè*, *consŭles desŭmus*. Cic. Tu *es patrōnus*, tu *pater*. Ter.

REM. 2. The nominative of the third person is often omitted:—

(1.) When it has been expressed in a preceding proposition:—

(*a.*) As nominative; as, *Mosa profluit ex monte Vosĕgo, et in oceănum influit* (Cæs.); or (*b.*) in an oblique case; as, *Cursōrem misērunt, ut id nuntiāret*, sc. *cursor*. Nep.

(2.) When it is a person or thing conceived or exhibited as indefinite.

Thus *homĭnes* is often omitted before *aiunt*, *dicunt*, *ferunt*, &c.; as, *Ut aiunt*, As they say. Cic. *Maxĭmè admirantur eum, qui pecuniâ non movētur*. Id.

This omission of the nominative is common in the clause preceding a relative; as, *Qui Bavium non odit, amet tua carmĭna, Mævi*, sc. *homo*; May (he) who hates not Bavius, like your verses, Mævius. Virg. *Vastātur agri quod inter urbem ac Fidēnas est*, sc. *id spatium*. Liv. *Sunt quos juvat*... sc. *homĭnes*; There are (those) whom it delights. Hor. *Est qui nec vetĕris pocŭla Massĭci spernit*, sc. *homo*. Hor. Here *sunt quos* and *est qui* are equivalent to *quidam*, *alĭqui*, or *alĭqui*. So, *Est quod gaudeas*, There is (reason) why you should rejoice. Cic. *Neque erat cur fallĕre vellent*. Ovid. *Est ubi id valeat*. Cic. *Est, cum non est satius*, &c. Auct. ad Her. In the latter cases, the adverbs are equivalent to *in quo*, sc. *loco*, *tempŏre*.

REM. 3. The nominative is often *wanting*:—

(1.) Before verbs denoting the state of the weather, or the operations of nature; as, *Fulgŭrat*, It lightens. Plin. *Ningit*, It snows. Virg.

(2.) Before the third person singular of the passive of neuter verbs; as,

Favētur tibi a me, Thou art favored by me. *Ejus oratiōni vehementer ab omnĭbus reclamātum est*. Cic. See § 184, 2.

A nominative, however, is expressed before the passive of some neuter verbs, which, in the active voice, are followed by an accusative; as, *Pugna pugnāta est*. Cic. See § 232, (1.)

(3.) Before the neuter of the future passive participle with *est*; as,

Dolendum est primùm ipsi tibi, You yourself must first grieve. Hor. *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpŏre sano*. Juv.

(4.) Before the impersonal verbs *miserĕt, pœnĭtet, pudet, tædet,* and *piget;* as,

Eos ineptiārum pœnĭtet, They repent of their follies. Cic. *Misĕret te aliōrum, tui te nec misĕret nec pudet.* Plaut. *Me civilātis morum piget tædetque.* Sall. In such examples, the sense will sometimes permit us to supply *fortūna, conditio, memoria,* &c. So in the expression *Venit in mentem,* It came into mind; as, *In mentem venit de spectŭlo,* sc. *cogitatio,* &c Plaut.

An infinitive or clause sometimes forms the subject of these verbs; as, *Te* id *nullo modo puduit* facĕre, To do that by no means shamed you. Ter *Non pœnĭtet me,* quantum profecĕrim. Cic.

(5.) When the subject of the verb is an infinitive or participle (either alone or with other words), one or more propositions, or an adverb. (See § 201, IV. 1.) The verb is then in the third person singular; as,

Vacāre culpâ *magnum est solatium,* To be free from fault is a great consolation. *Neque est* te fallĕre *quidquam,* To deceive you in any thing is not (possible.) Virg. Mentīri *non est meum.* Plaut. Te non istud audivisse *mirum est,* That you have not heard that is wonderful. Cic. "Summum jus, summa injuria," *factum est jam tritum sermōne proverbium.* Id. *Ni* degenerātum in aliis *huic quoque decŏri offecisset.* Liv. *Sin est* ut velis manĕre illam apud te. Ter. *Nec profuit Hydræ* crescĕre per damnum, geminasque resumĕre vires. Ovid. *Dic mihi,* cras *istud, Postŭme, quando venit?* Tell me, Postumus, when does that to-morrow come? Mart. Parumne *campis atque Neptūno super fusum est Lutīni sanguĭnis?* Hor.

This construction is especially common with impersonal verbs; as, Oratōrem irasci *non decet;* That an orator should be angry, is not becoming. Cic. Hoc fiĕri *et oportet et opus est.* Id. *Me* pedĭbus *delectat* claudĕre verba. Hor. *Intĕrest omnium* rectè facĕre. Cic. *Casu accĭdit,* ut, id quod Romæ audierat, primus nuntiāret. Id. Sometimes a neuter pronoun is interposed between a proposition and its verb; as, *Facĕre quæ libet,* id *est esse regem.* Sall.

(6.) Before *potest, cœpit* or *cœptum est, incĭpit, desĭnit, debet, solet,* and *vidētur,* when followed by the infinitive of an impersonal verb; as,

Pigĕre eum facti cœpit, It began to repent him (i. e. he began to repent) of his conduct. Just. *Sapientia est una, quâ præceptrice, in tranquillitāte vivi potest.* Cic. *Tædĕre solet avāros impendii.* Quinct.

Rem. 4. The *verb* is sometimes omitted; as,

Dī meliōra piis, sc. *dent;* May the gods grant better things to the pious. Virg. *Verùm hæc hactĕnus,* sc. *dixĭmus.* Cic. This omission is most common with the verb *sum;* as, *Nam Polydōrus ego,* sc. *sum;* For I am Polydorus. Virg. *Omnia præclāra rura,* sc. *sunt.* Cic. So in compound tenses; as, *Agro mulctāti,* sc. *sunt.* Liv.

Rem. 5. The nominative is sometimes found with the infinitive; as,

Intĕrim quotidie Cæsar Æduos frumentum flagitāre, Meanwhile Cæsar was daily demanding corn of the Ædui. Cæs. *Nos pavĭdi* trepidāre *metu.* Virg. *Id horrendum* ferri. Id. In such cases, *cœpit* or *cœpērunt* is generally supposed to be understood: sometimes other verbs may be supplied,

but often the infinitive seems to be used instead of the imperfect indicative.

REM. 6. The relative *qui* may refer to an antecedent either of the first, second, or third person; and its verb takes the person of the antecedent; as,

Ego qui lego, I who read. *Tu qui* scribis, Thou who writest. *Equus qui* currit, The horse which runs.

REM. 7. Verbs in the first person plural, and the second person singular, are sometimes used to express general truths; as,

Quàm multa facimus causâ amicōrum! How many things we do (i. e. men do) for the sake of friends! Cic. *Si vis me flere, dolendum est ipsi tibi*, Whoever wishes me, &c. Hor.

REM. 8. The accusative is sometimes used for the nominative by attraction. See § 206, (6.) (*b.*)

REM. 9. The verb sometimes agrees with the *predicate-nominative*, especially if it precedes the verb; as, *Amantium iræ amōris* integratio est, The quarrels of lovers are a renewal of love. Ter. *Vestes, quas geritis sordĭda* lana fuit. Ovid.

REM. 10. The verb sometimes agrees, not with the principal nominative, but with one in apposition with it; as, *Tungri*, civĭtas *Galliæ, fontem* habet *insignem*; The Tungri, a state of Gaul, has a remarkable fountain. Plin.

REM. 11. A collective noun has sometimes a plural verb; as,

Pars epŭlis onĕrant *mensas*, Part load the tables with food. Virg. *Turba* ruunt. Ovid. *Pars utrăque avĭdi* erant. Liv. *Atria turba* tenent; veniunt *leve vulgus* eunt*que*. Ovid.

(1.) A plural verb, joined to a collective noun, usually expresses the action, &c, of the *individuals* which that noun denotes. In Cicero and Livy, this construction scarcely occurs in simple sentences; but it is often used, when the subject of the verb is not expressed in its own, but in a preceding clause; as, *Hoc idem* genĕri *humāno cvĕnit, quòd in terrâ* collocāti sint. Cic.

(2.) When two or more clauses have the same collective noun as their subject, the verb is frequently singular in one, and plural in another; as, *Jam ne nocte quidem turba ex eo loco* dilabebātur, *refracturosque carcĕrem* minabantur. Liv. *Gens eădem, quæ te crudĕli Daunia bello* insequĭtur, *nos si* pellant, *nihil abfŏre credunt*. Virg.

(3.) *Tantum*, followed by a genitive plural, has sometimes a plural verb, like a collective noun; as, *Quid huc* tantum *homĭnum incĕdunt?* Why are so many men coming hither? Plaut.

(4.) A plural verb is often used after *uterque* and *quisque*, *pars....pars*, and *alius....alium*, or *alter....altĕrum*, on account of the idea of plurality which they involve; as, *Uterque eōrum ex castris exercĭtum edūcunt*, Each of them leads his army from the camp. Cæs. *Intĭmus quisque libertōrum* vincti abreptī*que* (sunt.) Tac. *Alius alium, ut prælium* incipiant, circumspectant. Liv.

This construction may be explained by the following passage, where

the plural is placed first, and then the singular, denoting its parts; *Cetĕri, suo quisque tempŏre*, adĕrunt. Liv. See § 204, Rem. 10.

Rem. 12. Two or more nominatives singular, not in apposition, generally have a plural verb; as,

Furor iræque mentem præcipĭtant, Fury and rage hurry on (my) mind. Virg. *Dum ætas, metus, magister*, prohibĕbant Ter.

(1.) If the predicate belongs to the several nominatives jointly, the verb is always plural; as, Grammatĭce *quondam ac* musĭce junctæ fuĕrunt. Quinct.

(2.) A singular verb is often used after several nominatives singular, especially if they denote things without life; as,

Mens enim, et ratio et consĭlium in senĭbus est. Cic. *Beneficentia, liberalĭtas, bonĭtas, justitia fundĭtus* tollĭtur. Id. This construction sometimes occurs with names of persons; as, *Gorgias, Thrasymăchus, Protagŏras, Prodĭcus, Hippias in honŏre* fuit. Cic. *Cur Lysias et Hyperĭdes* amātur? Id.

(3.) When one of the nouns is plural, the verb is generally so; but sometimes it is singular, when the plural noun does not immediately precede it; as, Dii *te penātes patriique, et patris* imāgo, *et* domus *regia, et in domo regāle* solium, *et* nomen *Turquinium* creat vocat*que regem*. Liv.

(4.) When each of the nominatives is preceded by *et* or *tum*, the verb agrees with the last; as, *Hoc et* ratio *doctis, et* necessĭtas *barbăris*, et mos *gentĭbus, et feris* natūra *ipsa* præscripsit; This, reason has dictated to the learned, and necessity to barbarians, and custom to nations, and nature itself to wild beasts. Cic. *Et* ego, *et* Cicĕro *meus* flagitābit. Id. *Tum* ætas viresque, *tum avīta* gloria *animum* stimulābat. Liv. So when the subject consists of two infinitives; as, *Et* facĕre, *et* pati *fortia, Romānum est*. Cic.

Unus et alter usually takes a singular verb; as, Dicit *unus et alter brevĭter*, Two in succession speak briefly. Cic. *Unus et alter* assuĭtur *pannus*. Hor.

(5.) When the nominatives are connected by *aut*, sometimes the plural, but commonly the singular, is used; as,

Si Socrătes aut Antisthĕnes dicĕret, If Socrates or Antisthenes should say. Cic. *Ut quosque studium privātim aut gratia* occupavērunt. Liv.

The plural is *necessary* with disjunctives, if the subject includes the first or second person; as, *Quòd in Decemvĭris neque ego neque Cæsar* habĭti essēmus. Cic.

(6.) A nominative singular, joined to an ablative by the preposition *cum*, sometimes has a plural verb; as, Bocchus, *cum* peditĭbus, *postrēmam Romanōrum aciem* invādunt; Bocchus, with his foot soldiers, attacks the rear of the Roman army. Sall. *Ipse* dux, *cum aliquot* principĭbus, capiuntur. Liv.

(7.) If the nominatives are of different persons, the verb agrees with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third; as,

Si tu et Tullia valētis, *ego et Cicero* valēmus; If you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well. Cic. *Hæc neque ego neque tu* fecĭmus. Ter. *Ego populusque Romānus bellum* judĭco facioque. Liv.

Yet sometimes the verb agrees in number and person with the nearest

nominative, and is understood with the other; as, *Vos ipsi et sendtus frequens* restĭtit. This is always the case when the action of the verb is qualified with reference to each nominative separately; as, Ego *misĕrè*, tu *felicĭter vivis*.

REM. 13. The interjections *en, ecce,* and *O,* are sometimes followed by the nominative; as,

En Priămus! Lo Priam! Virg. *Ecce homo Catĭlus!* Cic. *O vir fortis atque amīcus!* Ter.

PREDICATE-NOMINATIVE.

§ 210. A noun in the predicate, after a verb neuter or passive, is put in the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing; as,

Ira furor *brevis est*, Anger is a short madness. Hor. *Ego vocor* Lycōnĭdes, I am called Lyconides. Plaut. *Ego incēdo* regĭna, I walk a queen. Virg.

So when the subject is in the accusative; Judĭcem *me esse, non* doctōrem, *volo*. Cic. *Te* parentem *Asiæ vis duci et habēri*. Id.

Sometimes a *dative*, denoting the same object, both precedes and follows a verb neuter or passive. See § 227, NOTE 1.

REMARK 1. Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, standing in the predicate, after verbs neuter or passive, and relating to the subject, agree with it in case.

The gender and number of such adjectives, &c. are determined by § 205.

REM. 2. The noun in the predicate is sometimes in a different number from the subject; as, Sanguis *erant lachrўmæ*, Her tears were blood. Ovid. *Ossa* lapis *fiunt*. Id.

REM. 3. The verbs which most frequently have a noun, &c., in the predicate agreeing in case with their subject, are,

(1.) The substantive verb *sum;* as, *Ego Jovis sum* filius. Plaut. *Disce esse* pater. Ter.

(2.) Certain neuter verbs, denoting position or motion; as, *cado, eo, evādo, existo, fugio, incēdo, jaceo, maneo, sedeo, sto, venio,* &c. Thus, *Rex circuībat* pedes, The king went round on foot. Plin. *Quos judicābat non posse* oratōres *evadĕre*. Cic. *Ego huic causæ* patrōnus *exstĭti*. Cic. *Manet altā mente* repostum *judicium Parĭdis*. Virg.

(3.) The passive of verbs denoting

(*a.*) To name or call; as, *appellor, dicor, nomĭnor, nuncūpor, perhibeor, salūtor, vocor*. Thus, *Cognomĭne* Justus *est appellātus*, He was called by the surname Just. Nep. *Aristæus olīvæ dicĭtur* inventor. Cic. *Ego* poëta *salūtor*. Hor.

(*b.*) To choose, render, or constitute; as, *constituor, creor, declāror, designor, elĭgor, fio, reddor, renuncior*. Thus, Dux *a Romānis electus est Q. Fabius. Postquam* ephēbus *factus est*. Nep.

(*c.*) To esteem or reckon; as, *censeor, credor, deprehendor, existĭmor, feror, habeor, judĭcor, numĕror, putor, reperior, videor*. Thus, *Credēbar sanguĭnis* auctor *ego*. Ovid. *Malim vidēri* timĭdus *quàm parùm* prudens. Cic.

NOTE 1. With several passives of the last class, when followed by a predicate-nominative, an infinitive of *sum* is expressed or understood; as, Amens *mihi* fuisse *videor*. Cic. *Atilius* prudens esse *putabātur*. Id. So with *dicor* (to be said), and *perhibeor*; as, *Verus patriæ dicēris* esse pater. Mart.

NOTE 2. *Audio* is sometimes used by the poets like *appellor*; as, *Tu nexque* pater*que audīsti coram*. Hor.

REM. 4. A predicate-nominative is used after many other verbs, to denote a purpose, time, or circumstance of the action; as, Comes *additus Æolĭdes*, Æolides was added as a companion. Virg. *Lupus obambŭlat* nocturnus. Id. *Appāret liquĭdo* sublīmis *in æthĕre Nisus*. Id. So with an active verb; *Audīvi hoc* puer. Cic. *Sapiens nil facit* invītus. Id. *Rempublĭcam defendi* adolescens. Id.

REM. 5. The noun *opus*, signifying need, is often used as a predicate after *sum*. It is, in such cases, translated by the adjectives *needful, necessary*, &c.; as, *Dux nobis et auctor* opus *est*. Cic. *Multi* opus *sunt boves*. Varr. (*Dixit*) *aurum et ancillas* opus *esse*. Ter.

REM. 6. When the pronoun, which is the subject of an infinitive, is omitted, the case of the predicate is sometimes, in the poets, *attracted* into that of the subject of the verb on which the infinitive depends; as, Uxor *invicti Jovis esse nescis*, i. e. *te esse uxōrem*. Hor. *Retŭlit Ajax esse Jovis* pronĕpos. Ovid.

GENITIVE.

GENITIVE AFTER NOUNS.

§ 211. A noun which limits the meaning of another noun, denoting a different person or thing, is put in the genitive; as,

Amor gloriæ, Love of glory.
Arma Achillis, The arms of Achilles.
Pater patriæ, The father of the country.
Vitium iræ, The vice of anger.
Nemŏrum custos, The guardian of the groves.
Amor habendi, Love of possessing.

In the first example, *amor* denotes love in general; *gloriæ* limits the affection to the particular object, glory. Such universally is the effect of the genitive, depending upon a noun. See § 201, III.

REMARK 1. The genitive denotes various relations, the most common of which are those of SOURCE; as, *Radii solis*, The rays of the sun;—CAUSE; as, *Dolor podagræ*, The pain of the gout;—EFFECT; as, *Artĭfex mundi*, The Creator of the world;—POSSESSION; as, *Domus Cæsăris*, The house of Cæsar;—OBJECT; as, *Cogitatio alicūjus rei*, A thought of something;—PURPOSE; as, *Apparātus triumphi*, Preparation for a triumph;—A WHOLE; as, *Pars hominum*, A part of men;—CHARACTER; as, *Adolescens summæ audaciæ*, A youth of the greatest boldness;—MATERIAL OR COMPONENT PARTS; as, *Montes auri*, Mountains of gold; *Acervus scutōrum*, A heap of shields.

REM. 2. The genitive is called *subjective*, when it denotes the *subject* of the action, feeling, &c., implied in the noun

which it limits. It is called *objective*, when it denotes the *object* of such action, &c.; as,

Subjective.	*Objective.*
Facta virōrum, Deeds of men.	*Odium vitii*, Hatred of vice.
Dolor animi, Grief of mind.	*Amor virtūtis*, Love of virtue.
Junōnis ira, The anger of Juno.	*Desiderium otii*, Desire of leisure.

Whether a genitive is subjective or objective, is to be determined by the meaning of the words, and by their connection. Thus, *providentia Dei* signifies the providence of God, or that exercised by him; *timor Dei*, fear of God, or that exercised towards him. The same or similar words, in different connections, may express both significations. Thus, *metus hostium*, fear of the enemy, may mean that felt either by themselves or by their opponents. So *vulnus Ulyssis* (Virg.) denotes the wound which Ulysses had given; *vulnus Æneæ*, (Id.) that which Æneas had received.

When ambiguity would arise, instead of the objective genitive, a preposition, with an accusative or ablative, is commonly used; as, *Amor in rempublĭcam*, for *reipublĭcæ;* Love to the state. Cic. *Odium erga Romānos*, for *Romanōrum*. Nep. *Cura de salūte patriæ*, for *salūtis*. Cic. *Prædātor ex sociis*, for *sociōrum*. Sall.

REM. 3. A substantive pronoun, which limits the meaning of a noun, is put in the genitive; as,

Cura mei, Care for me. Ovid. *Pars tui*, Part of thee. Id. *Nostri nuncius*, Our messenger. Virg. *Magna mei imāgo*. Id.

Instead of the *subjective* or *possessive* genitive of a substantive pronoun, the corresponding adjective pronoun is commonly used; as,

Cura mea, My care, *i. e.* the care exercised by me. Yet the genitive sometimes occurs; as, *Tui unius studio*, By the zeal of yourself alone. Cic.

Sometimes, also, an adjective pronoun occurs instead of the *objective* genitive; as, *Mea injuria*, Injury to me. Sall.

REM. 4. Instead of the genitive of a noun, also, a possessive adjective is often used; as, *Causa* regia, for *causa regis*. Cic. Herĭlis *filius*, for *heri filius*. Id. Evandrius *ensis*, for *Evandri*. Virg. Herculeus *labor*, for *Hercŭlis*. Hor. Civilis *furor*, for *civium*. Hor.

REM. 5. The dative is sometimes used like the objective genitive; as,

Exitium pecŏri, A destruction to the flock. Virg. *Præsidium* reis, A defence to the accused. Hor. *Decus* amīcis. Id. *Erit ille* mihi *semper Deus*. Virg. *Dicor* tibi *frater*. Mart. *Auctor fui* senatui. Cic. *Huic* causæ *patrōnus exstĭti*. Id. *Quem exĭtum tantis* malis *speratis?* Sall. Romānis *imperātor*. Id. *Muræna legātus* Lucullo *fuit*. Cic.

In these cases, the noun which is limited by the dative, denotes a character, feeling, &c., and the dative the object towards which that character, &c., is exhibited or exercised. This construction sometimes occurs with verbal nouns, whose primitives are followed by the dative; as, *Obtemperatio* legĭbus, Obedience to laws. Cic. *Traditio* altĕri. Id. In some instances, also, an accusative follows a verbal noun; as, *Quid tibi hanc curatio est* rem? Plaut.

1. Instead of the possessive and subjective genitive, also, a dative is sometimes used, as the remote object of a verb; as, *Sese omnes flentes* Cæsări *ad pedes projecērunt;* They all, weeping, cast themselves at the feet of Cæsar. Cæs. Cui *corpus porrigĭtur*, For whom the body is extended, *i. e.* whose body is extended. Virg. *Transfigĭtur scutum* Pulfōni. Cæs.

REM. 6. When the limiting noun denotes a *property, character*, or *quality*, it has an adjective agreeing with it, and is put either in the genitive or ablative; as,

Vir exempli recti, A man of correct example. Liv. *Adolescens summæ audaciæ*, A youth of the greatest boldness. Sall. *Fossa pedum viginti*, A ditch of twenty feet. Cæs. *Pulchritudĭne eximiâ fœmĭna*, A woman of exquisite beauty. Cic. *Maxĭmo natu filius*, The eldest son. Nep. So *Quinquaginta annōrum imperium*. Id. *Iter unius diēi*. Cic. *Galba tribus et septuaginta annis*. Tac. *Fossam sex cubĭtis altam*. Liv.

Sometimes both constructions occur in the same proposition; as, *Lentŭlum nostrum*, eximiâ spe, summæ virtūtis *adolescentem*. Cic. *Scrobis latus* pedum duōrum, *altus* dupondio *et* dodrante. Plin.

(1.) A genitive sometimes supplies the place of the adjective; and the noun denoting the property, &c., is then always put in the ablative; as, *Est bos* cervi figūrâ, ... of the form of a stag. Cæs. *Uri* specie *et* colōre tauri. Id.

(2.) The genitive, in this sense, sometimes occurs without an adjective; as, *Homĭnem non* nauci. Plaut. *Homo* nihĭli. Varr. So, *Frutex* palmi *altitudĭne*. Plin. *Transtra* digĭti pollĭcis *crassitudĭne*. Cæs. In which examples *unius* may be understood with the genitives.

Whether the genitive or ablative is preferable in particular cases, can only be determined by reference to classical authority.

NOTE. Nouns denoting extent of time or space, after other nouns, are often put in the accusative. See § 236.

REM. 7. The noun limited is sometimes omitted; as, *O misĕræ sortis!* sc. *homĭnes;* O (men) of wretched fortune! Lucan. *Ad Diānæ*, sc. *ædem*. Ter. *Hectŏris Andromăche*, sc. *uxor*. Virg. *Suspiciōnis vitandæ*, sc. *causâ*. Tac.

The omitted noun may sometimes be supplied from the preceding words; as, *Cujum pecus? an Melibœi? Non; verùm Ægōnis*, sc. *pecus*. Virg. An adjective is often expressed referring to the noun omitted; as, *Nullam virtus aliam mercēdem desidĕrat, præter* hanc (sc. *mercēdem*) *laudis*. Cic.

REM. 8. The noun limited is often wanting in the predicate of a sentence after *sum*. This usually happens,

(1.) When it has been previously expressed; as,

Hæc domus est Cæsăris, This house is Cæsar's. *Nomen auræ tam sæpe vocātum esse putans Nymphæ*. Ovid. *Naves onerarias, quarum minor nulla erat duûm millium amphŏrûm*, i. e. *quarum minor nulla erat quam* navis *duûm*, &c. Cic.

(2.) When it is a general word denoting a person, an animal, &c.; as,

Thucydĭdes, qui ejusdem ætātis fuit, sc. *homo;* Thucydides, who was of the same age. Nep. *Multum ei detraxit, quod alienæ erat civitātis*, sc. *homo* or *civis*. Id. *Summi ut sint labōris efficiunt*, sc. *animalia*. Cæs. (*Claudius*) *somni brevissĭmi erat*. Suet. *Mirâ sum alacritāte*. Cic. *Vulgus ingenio mobĭli erat*. Sall. *Non est juris sui*. Lucan. *Potestātis suæ esse*. Liv. *Suarumque rerum erant*. Id.

(3.) When it is a general word denoting thing, for which the words *part, property, duty, office, characteristic*, &c., are commonly supplied; as,

Temĕritas est florentis ætātis, prudentia senectūtis, Rashness is (the char-

acteristic) of youth, prudence of old age. Cic. *Est hoc Gallicæ consuetudinis.* Cæs. *Omnia hostium erant. A paucis emi, quod multōrum esset.* Sall. This happens especially when the subject of the verb is an infinitive mood, or an entire clause; as, *Adolescentis est majōres natu reverēri*, It is (the duty) of a youth to reverence the aged. Ovid. *Cujusvis hominis est errāre, nullius nisi insipientis, in errōre perseverāre.* Cic. *Pauperis est numerāre pecus.* Ovid. *Negāvit moris esse Græcōrum, ut in convivio virōrum accumberent mulieres.* Cic. *Nihil tam æquandæ libertātis esse.* Liv. So when the verb is omitted; *Tamen officii duxit, exorāre patrem*, sc. *esse.* Suet.

(4.) The same construction sometimes occurs after *fio*, and some other verbs; as, *Asia Romanōrum facta est*, Asia became (a possession) of the Romans. Just. *Primum stipendium meruit annōrum decem septemque.* Nep. *Agrum suæ ditiōnis fecisse.* Liv.

(5.) The limited noun is sometimes wanting, when it is a general word, though not in the predicate after *sum*; as, *Magni formica labōris*, sc. *animal*; The ant (an animal) of great labor. Hor. So *Ei venit in mentem potestātis tuæ*, sc. *memoria*, or the like. Cic.

(6.) The limited noun is wanting also, when, instead of the genitive, a possessive adjective or pronoun is used; as, *Humānum est errāre*, To err is human. Ter. *Hæ partes fuērunt tuæ.* Cic. *Non est mentīri meum.* Ter. See § 211, Rem. 3, and 4.

Note. Grammarians differ in regard to the manner of supplying the word which is wanting, when it denotes a thing. Some suppose that *negotium* is understood; others supply *officium, munus, opus, res, causa*, &c. It seems, however, rather to be an instance of a construction common in Latin, to omit a noun when a general or indefinite idea is intended. See § 205, Rem. 7, (2.) The words to be supplied in English are various, according to the connection.

Rem. 9. The *limiting* noun is sometimes omitted; as, *Tria millia*, sc. *passuum.* In most cases of this kind, an adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, is expressed in the genitive.

Rem. 10. Two genitives sometimes limit the same noun, one of which is commonly possessive or subjective, and the other objective; as, Agamemnŏnis belli *gloria*, Agamemnon's glory in war. Nep. Illius *administratio* provinciæ. Cic. *Eōrum* diērum *consuetudine* itinĕris *nostri exercitus perspectâ.* Cæs.

Rem. 11. *Opus* and *usus*, signifying need, are rarely limited by a genitive; as, Argenti *opus fuit*, There was need of money. Liv. *Ad consilium pensandum* tempŏris *opus esse.* Id. Procœmii *non semper usus est.* Quinct. *Si quo* opĕræ *eōrum usus est.* Liv. In a few instances, they are limited by an accusative; as, *Puĕro opus est* cibum (Plaut.); *Usus est* hominem *astūtum* (Id.); but in general they are limited by an ablative. See § 243.

Rem. 12. The relation denoted by the genitive in Latin, is, in English, generally expressed by *of*, or by the possessive case. The objective genitive may often be rendered by some other preposition; as, *Remedium dolōris*, A remedy for pain. *Injuria patris*, Injury to a father. *Descensus Averni*, The descent to Avernus. *Ira belli*, Anger on account of the war. *Potestas rei*, Power in or over a thing.

Note. Certain limitations of nouns are made by the accusative with a preposition, and by the ablative, either with or without a preposition.

GENITIVE AFTER PARTITIVES.

§ 212. Nouns, adjectives, adjective pronouns, and adverbs, denoting a part, are followed by a genitive denoting the whole; as,

Pars civitātis, A part of the state. *Nulla sorōrum*, No one of the sisters. *Aliquis philosophōrum*, Some one of the philosophers. *Quis mortalium?* Who of mortals? *Major juvĕnum*, The elder of the youths. *Doctissĭmus Romanōrum*, The most learned of the Romans. *Multum pecuniæ*, Much (of) money. *Satis eloquentiæ*, Enough of eloquence. *Ubinam gentium sumus?* Where on earth are we?

Note. The genitive thus governed denotes either a *number*, of which the partitive designates one or more individuals; or a *whole*, of which the partitive designates a portion. In the latter sense, it commonly follows neuter adjectives and adjective pronouns, and adverbs.

Remark 1. The nouns which denote a part are *pars, nemo, nihil*, &c.; as,

Nemo nostrûm, No one of us. *Omnium* rerum nihil *est agricultūrâ melius*. Cic.

Rem. 2. Adjectives and adjective pronouns, denoting a part of a number, including partitives and words used partitively, comparatives, superlatives, and numerals, are followed by the genitive plural, or by the genitive singular of a collective noun. For the gender of the adjectives, See § 205, R. 12.

(1.) Partitives; as, *ullus, nullus, solus, alius, uter, uterque, utercunque, utervis, uterlĭbet, neuter, alter, alterūter, aliquis, quidam, quispiam, quisquis, quisque, quisquam, quicunque, unusquisque, quis? qui? quot? quotus? quotusquisque? tot, aliquot, nonnulli, plerique, multi, pauci, medius*. Thus, *Quisquis deōrum*, Whoever of the gods. Ovid. *Consŭlum alter*, One of the consŭls. Liv. *Multi homĭnum*, Many men. Plin.

(2.) Words used partitively; as, *Expedīti milĭtum*, The light-armed soldiers. Liv. *Supĕri deōrum*, The gods above. Hor. *Sancte deōrum*. Virg. *Degenĕres canum*. Plin. *Piscium femĭnæ*. Id.

(3.) Comparatives and superlatives; as, *Doctior juvĕnum. Oratōrum præstantissĭmus*.

(4.) Numerals, both cardinal and ordinal; also the distributive *singŭli*; as, *Equĭtum* centum quinquaginta *interfecti*, A hundred and fifty of the horsemen were killed. Curt. *Sapientum octāvus*. Hor. *Singŭlos vestrum*. Curt.

Note 1. The comparative with the genitive denotes one of *two* individuals or classes; the superlative denotes a part of a number greater than two; as, *Major fratrum*, The elder of two brothers; *Maxĭmus frātrum*, The eldest of three or more.

In like manner, *uter, alter*, and *neuter*, generally refer to two; *quis, alius*, and *nullus*, to more than two; as, *Uter nostrûm?* Which of us (two?) *Quis vestrûm?* Which of you (three or more?)

Note 2. *Nostrûm* and *vestrûm* are used after partitives, &c., in preference to *nostri* and *vestri*; yet the latter sometimes occur.

Note 3. The partitive word is sometimes omitted; as, *Fies nobilium tu quoque fontium*, sc. *unus*. Hor.

NOTE 4. The noun denoting the whole, after a partitive word, is often put in the ablative, with the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*, or in the accusative, with *apud* or *inter*; as, *Nemo* de iis. *Alter* ex censorĭbus. Liv. *Unus* ex multis. Cic. *Acerrĭmus* ex sensĭbus. Id. *Primus* inter omnes. Virg. *Cræsus* inter reges *opulentissĭmus*. Sen. Apud Helvetios *nobilissĭmos*.

NOTE 5. The whole and its parts are frequently placed in apposition, distributively; as, Interfectōres, pars *in forum*, pars *Syracūsas pergunt*. Liv. See § 204, REM. 10.

NOTE 6. *Cuncti* and *omnes*, like partitives, are sometimes followed by a genitive plural; as, *Attălus* Macedŏnum *fere omnĭbus persuāsit*, Attalus persuaded almost all the Macedonians. Liv. *Cunctos* homĭnum. Ovid. *Cunctas* provinciārum. Plin.

In the following passage, the genitive singular seems to be used like that of a collective noun: *Totius autem* injustitiæ *nulla capitalior est*, &c. Cic. Off. 1, 13. The phrase *Rem nullo modo probabĭlem omnium* (Cic. Nat. Deor. 1, 27,) seems to be used for *Rem nullo omnium modōrum probabĭlem*.

REM. 3. The genitive denoting a whole, may depend on a neuter adjective or adjective pronoun. With these the genitive singular is commonly used; as,

Plus eloquentiæ, More (of) eloquence. *Tantum fidei*, So much fidelity. *Id tempŏris*, That time. *Ad hoc ætātis*. Sometimes the plural; as, *Id miseriārum*. Ter.

NOTE 1. Most neuter adjectives, thus used, denote quantity; as, *tantum*, *quantum*, *aliquantum*, *plus*, *minus*, *dimidium*, *multum*, *nimium*, *plurĭmum*, *relĭquum*; to which add *medium*, *summum*, *ultĭmum*, *aliud*, &c. The pronouns thus used are *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *istud*, *quod*, and *quid*, with its compounds.

Most of these may either agree with their nouns, or take a genitive; but the latter is more common. *Tantum*, *quantum*, *aliquantum*, and *plus*, when they denote quantity, are used with a genitive only, as are also *quid* and its compounds, when they denote a part, sort, &c., and *quod* in the sense of *quantum*. Thus, *Quantum crevit Nilus*, *tantum* spei *in annum est*. Sen. *Quid* muliĕris *uxōrem habes?* What kind of a woman.... Ter. *Alĭquid* formæ. Cic. *Quid hoc* rei *est?* What does this mean? Ter. *Quod* auri, *quod* argenti, *quod* ornamentōrum *fuit*, *id Verres abstŭlit*.

NOTE 2. Neuter adjectives and pronouns are scarcely used with a genitive, except in the nominative and accusative.

NOTE 3. Sometimes the genitive after these adjectives and pronouns is a neuter adjective, of the first and second declension, without a noun; as, *Tantum boni*, So much good. *Si quid habes* novi, If you have any thing new. Cic. *Quid relĭqui est?* Ter. *Nihil* is also used with such a genitive; as, *Nihil sincēri*, No sincerity. Cic. This construction sometimes, though rarely, occurs with an adjective of the third declension; as, *Si quidquam non dico* civĭlis *sed humāni esset*. Liv.

NOTE 4. Neuter adjectives in the plural number are sometimes followed by a genitive, either singular or plural, with a partitive signification; as, *Extrēma imperii*, The frontiers of the empire. Tac. *Pontes et* viārum *angusta*, The bridges and the narrow parts of the roads. Id. *Opāca locōrum*. Virg. *Antĭqua fœdĕrum*. Liv. *Cuncta campōrum*. Tac. *Exercent colles*, *atque horum asperrĭma pascunt*. Virg. See § 205, REM. 9.

REM. 4. The adverbs *sat*, *satis*, *parum*, *nimis*, *abunde*, *largĭ-*

ter, *affātim*, and *partim*, used partitively, are often followed by a genitive; as,

Sat rationis, Enough of reason. Virg. *Satis loquentiæ, parum sapientiæ*, Enough of fluency, yet but little wisdom. Sall. *Nimis insidiārum*. Cic. *Terrōris et fraudis abunde est*. Virg. *Auri et argenti largĭter*. Plaut. *Copiārum affātim*. Liv. *Cùm partim illōrum mihi familiarissĭmi essent*. Cic.

Note 1. The above words, though generally adverbs, seem, in this use, rather to be nouns or adjectives.

Note 2. The genitives *gentium*, *terrārum*, *loci*, and *locōrum*, are used after adverbs of place; as, *Usquam gentium*, Any where. Plaut. *Ubi terrārum sumus?* Where in the world are we? Cic. *Abīre quò terrārum possent*. Liv. *Ubi sit loci*. Plin. *Eo loci*, In that place. Tac. *Eōdem loci res est*. Cic. *Nescīre quo* loci *esset*. Id. But the last three examples might perhaps more properly be referred to Rem. 3.

The adverbs of place thus used are *ubi*, *ubīnam*, *ubicunque*, *ubiŭbi*, *ubīvis*, *usquam*, *nusquam*, *quò*, *quovis*, *quoquò*, *altĭquò*, *eò*, *eōdem*. *Loci* also occurs after *ibi* and *ibīdem*; *gentium* after *longè*; as, *Ibi loci*, In that place. Plin. *Abes longè gentium*. Cic. *Vicinĭæ* is used in the genitive after *hìc* and *huc* by the comic writers; as, *Hìc proxĭmæ vicinĭæ*. Plaut. *Huc vicinĭæ*. Ter.

Note 3. *Huc*, *eò*, *quò*, take also a genitive in the sense of degree; as, *Eò* insolentiæ furorisque *processit*, He advanced to such a degree of insolence and madness. Plin. *Huc enim* malōrum *ventum est*. Curt. *Huccīne* rerum *venīmus?* Pers. *Eò* miseriārum. Sall. *Quò* amentiæ *progressi sitis*. Liv.

Note 4. *Loci*, *locōrum*, and *tempŏris*, are used after the adverbs *adhuc*, *inde*, *interea*, *postea*, *tum*, and *tunc*, in expressions denoting time; as, *Adhuc locōrum*, Till now. Plaut. *Inde loci*, After that. Lucr. *Interea loci*, In the mean time. Ter. *Postea loci*, Afterwards. Sall. *Tum tempŏris*. Just. *Tunc tempŏris*. Id. *Locōrum* also occurs after *id*, denoting time; as, *Ad id locōrum*, Up to that time. Sall.

Note 5. The genitive *ejus* sometimes occurs after *quoad*, in such connections as the following: *Quoad ejus fĭĕri possit*, As far as may be (Cic.); where some think *quod*, in the sense of *quantum*, should be read, instead of *quoad*.

Note 6. *Pridie* and *postridie*, though reckoned adverbs, are followed by a genitive, depending on the noun *dies* contained in them; as, *Pridie ejus dĭei*, The day before that day. Cic. *Pridie insidiārum*. Tac. *Postridie ejus dĭei*. Cæs. When they are followed by an accusative, *ante* or *post* is understood.

Note 7. Adverbs, in the superlative degree, like adjectives, are followed by a genitive; as, *Optĭmè omnium*, Best of all. Cic. *Minĭmè gentium*, By no means. Ter.

GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ 213. A noun, limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the genitive, to denote the relation expressed in English by *of*, or *in respect of*; as,

Avĭdus laudis, Desirous of praise.
Appĕtens gloriæ, Desirous of glory.
Memor virtūtis, Mindful of virtue.
Plena timōris, Full of fear.
Egēnus aquæ, Destitute of water.
Doctus fandi, Skilful in speaking.

So *Nescia mens fati*, A mind ignorant of fate. Virg. *Impŏtens iræ*, Unable to control anger. Liv. *Homĭnes expertes veritātis*, Men destitute of truth. Cic. *Lactis abundans*, Abounding in milk. Virg. *Terra ferax arbŏrum*, Land productive of trees. Plin. *Tenax propositi vir*, A man tenacious of his purpose. Hor. *Æger animi*, Sick in mind. Liv. *Integer vitæ scelerisque purus*, Upright in life, and free from wickedness. Hor.

From the above examples, it will be seen that the genitive after an adjective is sometimes translated by other words besides *of*, or *in respect of*, though the relation which it denotes remains the same.

REMARK 1. The adjectives whose signification is most frequently limited by a genitive, are,

(1.) VERBALS in AX; as, *capax, edax, ferax, fugax, pervĭcax, tenax*, &c.

(2.) PARTICIPIALS in NS, and a few in TUS; as, *amans, appĕtens, cupiens, patiens, impatiens, sitiens;—consultus, doctus, expertus, inexpertus, insuētus, insolĭtus*.

(3.) Adjectives denoting

DESIRE and DISGUST; as, *avārus, avĭdus, cupĭdus, studiōsus; fastidiōsus*.

KNOWLEDGE and IGNORANCE; as, *callĭdus, conscius, gnarus, peritus, prudens; rudis, ignārus, inscius, imprūdens, imperītus*, &c.

MEMORY and FORGETFULNESS; as, *memor; immĕmor*, &c.

CERTAINTY and DOUBT; as, *certus; incertus, ambiguus, dubius, suspensus*, &c.

CARE and NEGLIGENCE; as, *anxius, solĭcitus, providus; improvĭdus, secūrus*, &c.

FEAR and CONFIDENCE; as, *pavĭdus, timĭdus; trepĭdus, impavĭdus, fidens, interrĭtus*, &c.

GUILT and INNOCENCE; as, *noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus; innoxius innōcens, insons*, &c.

PLENTY and WANT; as, *plenus, dives, satur, largus; inops, egēnus, pauper, parcus, vacuus*, &c.

Many other adjectives are in like manner limited by a genitive, especially by *animi, ingenii, mentis, iræ, militiæ, belli, labōris, rerum, ævi, morum*, and *fidei*.

REM. 2. The limiting genitive, by a Greek construction, sometimes denotes a cause or source, especially in the poets; as, *Lassus labōris*, Weary of labor. Hor. *Fessus viæ*. Stat. *Fessus maris*. Hor.

REM. 3. Participles in *ns, when used as such*, take after them the same case as the verbs from which they are derived; as, *Se amans*, Loving himself. Cic. *Mare terram appĕtens*. Id.

REM. 4. Instead of the genitive, denoting *of*, or *in respect of*, a different construction is used after many adjectives; as,

(1.) An infinitive or clause; as, *Certus* ire, Determined to go. Ovid. Cantāre *periti*. Virg. *Felicior* unguĕre *tela*. Id. *Anxius* quid facto opus sit. Sall.

(2.) An accusative with a preposition; as, Ad rem *avidior*. Ter. *Avĭdus* in direptiōnes. Liv. *Animus capax* ad præcepta. Ovid. Ad casum fortunam*que felix*. Cic. Ad fraudem *callĭdus*. Id. *Diligens* ad custodiendum. Id. *Negligentior* in patrem. Just. *Vir* ad disciplīnam *peritus*. Cic. Ad bella *rudis*. Liv. *Potens* in res bellĭcas. Id.

(3.) An accusative without a preposition, chiefly in the poets; as, *Nudus* membra, Bare as to his limbs. Virg. Os, humeros*que deo similis*. Id. Cetĕra *fulvus*. Hor. See § 234, II.

(4.) An ablative with a preposition; as, *Avĭdus* in pecuniis, Eager in regard to money. Cic. *Anxius* de famâ. Quinct. *Rudis* in jure *civili*. Cic. *Peritus* de agricultūrâ. Varr. *Prudens* in jure *civĭli*. Cic. *Reus* de vi. Id. *Purus* ab cultu *humāno*. Liv. *Certior factus* de re. Cic. *Solicĭtus* de re. Id. Super scelĕre *suspectus*. Sall. *Inops* ab amīcis. Cic. *Pauper* in ære. Hor. *Modĭcus* in cultu. Plin. Ab aquis *sterĭlis*. Apul. *Copiōsus* a frumento. Cic. Ab equitātu *firmus*. Id.

(5.) An ablative without a preposition; as, Arte *rudis*, Rude in art. Ovid. *Regni* crimĭne *insons*. Liv. *Compos* mente. Virg. *Prudens* consilio. Just. *Æger* pedĭbus. Sall. *Præstans* ingenio. Cic. *Modĭcus* severitāte. Tac. *Nihil* insidiis *vacuum*. Cic. *Amor et* melle *et* felle *est fecundissĭmus*. Plaut.

In many instances, the signification of the accusative and ablative after adjectives differs, in a greater or less degree, from that of the genitive.

Rem. 5. As many of the adjectives, which are followed by a genitive, admit of other constructions, the most common use of each, with particular nouns, can, in general, be determined only by recourse to the dictionary, or to the classics. Some have,

(1.) The genitive only; as, *benignus*, *exsors*, *impos*, *impŏtens*, *irrĭtus*, *liberālis*, *munĭficus*, *prælargus*, and many others.

(2.) The genitive more frequently; as, *compos*, *consors*, *egēnus*, *exhæres*, *expers*, *fertĭlis*, *indigus*, *parcus*, *pauper*, *prodĭgus*, *sterĭlis*, *prosper*, *insatiātus*, *insatiabĭlis*.

(3.) The genitive or ablative indifferently; as, *copiōsus*, *dives*, *fecundus*, *ferax*, *immūnis*, *inānis*, *inops*, *largus*, *modĭcus*, *immodĭcus*, *nimius*, *opulentus*, *plenus*, *potens*, *purus*, *refertus*, *satur*, *vacuus*, *uber*.

(4.) The ablative more frequently; as, *abundans*, *aliēnus*, *cassus*, *extorris*, *firmus*, *fœtus*, *frequens*, *gravis*, *gravĭdus*, *jejūnus*, *infirmus*, *liber*, *locŭples*, *lætus*, *mactus*, *nudus*, *onustus*, *orbus*, *pollens*, *satiātus*, *tenuis*, *truncus*, *viduus*.

(5.) The ablative only; as, *beātus*, *mutĭlus*, *tumĭdus*, *turgĭdus*.

For the construction of the ablative after the preceding adjectives see § 250.

Rem. 6. Some adjectives which are usually limited by a dative, sometimes take a genitive instead of the dative; as, *similis*, *dissimĭlis*, &c. See § 222, Rem. 2.

GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 214. *Sum*, and verbs of *valuing*, are followed by a genitive, denoting *degree of estimation*; as,

A me argentum, quanti *est*, *sumĭto*; Take of me so much money as (he) is worth. Ter. Magni *æstimābat pecuniam*, He valued money greatly. Cic. *Ager nunc* pluris *est*, *quàm tunc fuit*. Id.

Remark 1. This genitive may be,

(1.) A neuter adjective of quantity; as, *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris*, *minōris*, *magni*, *permagni*, *plurĭmi*, *maxĭmi*, *minĭmi*, *parvi*, *tantĭdem*, *quanticunque*, *quantĭvis*, *quantilĭbet*, but not *multi* and *majōris*.

(2.) The nouns *assis*, *flocci*, *nauci*, *nihĭli*, *pili*, *teruncii*, and also *pensi* and *hujus*.

Rem. 2. The verbs of valuing are *æstĭmo, existĭmo, duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, depŭto, taxo*, to which may be added *refert* and *intĕrest*. Thus, *Ut* quanti *quisque se ipse faciat*, tanti *fiat ab amīcis;* That as much as each one values himself, so much he should be valued by his friends Cic. *Sed quia* parvi *id ducĕret*. Id. *Honōres si* magni *non putēmus*. Id. *Non* assis *facis?* Catull. *Neque quod dixi*, flocci *existĭmat*. Plaut. *Illud mea* magni *intĕrest*, That greatly concerns me. Cic. Parvi *refert jus dici*. Id.

Note 1. *Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *constŭlo;* as, *Nos* æqui bonīque *facīmus*. Liv. Boni *consuluit*, He took it in good part. Plin.

Note 2. After *æstĭmo*, the ablatives *magno, permagno, parvo, nihĭlo*, are sometimes used; as, *Data* magno *æstĭmas, accepta* parvo. Sen. So other ablatives, when definite price is denoted. *Pro nihĭlo*, also, occurs after *duco, habeo*, and *puto*. So *nihil* with *æstĭmo* and *moror*.

Note 3. With *refert* and *intĕrest*, instead of the genitive, an adverb or neuter accusative is often used; as, Multum *refert*. Mart. Plurĭmum *interĕrit*. Juv. *Tua* nihil *referĕbat*. Ter. Quid *autem illius intĕrest?* Cic.

Note 4. The neuter adjectives above enumerated, and *hujus*, may be referred to a noun understood, as *pretii, æris, pondĕris, momenti;* and may be considered as limiting a preceding noun, also understood, and denoting some person or thing indefinite; as, *Æstĭmo te magni*, i. e. *hominem magni pretii. Scio ejus ordĭnes auctoritātem semper apud te magni fuisse*, i. e. *rem magni momenti*. The words *assis*, &c., may also be considered as depending on an omitted noun, as *pretio, rem*, &c.

For *tanti, quanti, pluris, minōris*, denoting *price*, see § 252.

§ 215. (1.) *Misereor, miseresco*, and the impersonals *miscĕret, pœnĭtet, pudet, tædet*, and *piget*, are followed by a genitive of the object in respect to which the feeling is exercised; as,

Miseremĭni sociōrum, Pity the allies. Cic. *Miserescīte regis*, Pity the king. Virg. Tui *me miscĕret*, mei *piget*, I pity you, and am sorry for myself. Acc. *Eos* ineptiārum *pœnĭtet*. Cic. Fratris *me pudet pigetque*. Ter. *Me civitātis* morum *piget tædetque*. Sall. So the passive; *Nunquam suscepti* negotii *eum pertæsum est*. Nep. Lenitudĭnis *eorum pertæsa*. Tac. *Miserĭtum est me tuārum* fortunārum. Ter. *Cave te* fratrum *misereātur*. Cic.

Miserescit is sometimes used in the same manner; as, *Nunc te miserescat* mei. Ter. *Misereo*, in the active voice, also occurs with a genitive; as, *Ipse* sui *miscret*. Lucr. *Pertæsus ignaviam suam* occurs in Suetonius.

Remark. The genitive after the above impersonals seems to depend on an indefinite subject which is omitted. See § 209, Rem. 3, (4.) Instead of the genitive, an infinitive or clause is sometimes used as a subject; as, *Non me* hoc *jam* dicĕre *pudĕbit*. Cic. *Non pœnĭtet me* quantum profecĕrim. Id. These verbs have also sometimes a nominative, especially a neuter pronoun; as, *Me quidem hæc* conditio *non pœnĭtet*. Plaut. *Non te* hæc *pudent?* Ter.

Misĕret occurs with an accusative, instead of a genitive; as, *Menedēmi* vicem *misĕret me*. Ter.

These verbs also take an accusative of the person exercising the feeling which they express. See § 229. Rem. 6.

(2.) *Satăgo* is followed by a genitive denoting *in what respect*; as,

Is satăgit rerum *suārum*, He is busily occupied with his own affairs. Ter. This compound is often written separately. *Agĭto*, with *sat*, in like manner, is followed by a genitive; as, *Nunc agĭtas sat tute tuārum* rerum. Plaut.

§ 216. *Recordor*, *memĭni*, *reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, are followed by a genitive or accusative of the object remembered or forgotten; as,

Hujus merĭti *recordor*, I remember his merit. Cic. *Omnes* gradus *ætātis recordor tuæ*, I call to mind all the periods of your life. Id. *Memĭni* vivōrum, I am mindful of the living. Id. Numĕros *memĭni*, I remember the measure. Virg. Cinnam *memĭni*, I remember Cinna. Cic. *Reminisci vetĕris* famæ. Nep. *Reminisci* amīcos. Ovid. Injuriārum *oblivisc*ĭtur. Nep. *Oblivisc*ĕre Graios. Virg.

Remark 1. These verbs seem sometimes to be considered as active, and sometimes as neuter. As active, they take an accusative regularly; as neuter, they take a genitive, denoting that in respect to which memory, &c. are exercised; as, *Oblivisci* controversiārum, To be forgetful of (in respect of) controversies.

Rem. 2. *Recordor* and *memĭni*, to *remember*, are sometimes followed by an ablative with *de*; as, *Petīmus ut* de *suis* libĕris *recordentur*. Cic.

Rem. 3. *Memĭni*, signifying to *make mention of*, has a genitive, or an ablative with *de*; as, *Neque hujus* rei *memĭnit poēta*. Quinct. *Meministi* de exsulĭbus. Cic. For the genitive with *venit in mentem*, see § 211, Rem. 8, (5.)

§ 217. Verbs of accusing, convicting, condemning, and acquitting, are followed by a genitive denoting the crime; as,

Arguit me furti, He accuses me of theft. *Altĕrum accūsat* probri, He accuses another of villany *Meipsum* inertiæ *condemno*. Cic.

Remark 1. To this rule belong the verbs of

Accusing; *accūso*, *ago*, *arcesso*, *arguo*, *cito*, *defĕro*, *increpo*, *incūso*, *insimŭlo*, *postŭlo*, and more rarely *allĭgo*, *anquīro*, *astringo*, *capto*, *increpĭto*, *urgeo*, *interrŏgo*.

Convicting; *convinco*, *coarguo*, *prehendo*.

Condemning; *damno*, *condemno*, *infāmo*, and more rarely *judĭco*, *noto*, *plector*.

Acquitting; *absolvo*, *libĕro*, *purgo*, and rarely *solvo*.

Rem. 2. Instead of the genitive, an ablative with *de* is often used; as, *Accusāre* de negligentiâ. Cic. De vi *condemnāti sunt*. Id. De repetundis *est postulātus*. Id. Sometimes with *in*; as, In quo *te accūso* (Cic.); and after *libĕro*, with *a* or *ab*; as, A scelĕre *liberāti sumus*. Cic.

With some of the above verbs, an ablative without a preposition is often used; as, *Liberāre* culpâ. Cic. *Crimen* quo *argui posset*. Nep. *Proconsŭlem postulavĕrat* repetundis. Tac. This happens especially with general words denoting crime; as, *scelus*, *maleficium*, *peccātum*, &c.; as, *Me* peccāto *solvo*. Liv. The ablatives *crimĭne* and *nomĭne*, without a preposition, are often inserted before the genitive; as, *Arcessĕre aliquem* crimĭne *ambītūs*. Liv. Nomĭne *scelĕris conjurationisque damnāti*. Cic.

Rem. 3. The punishment is expressed either by the genitive, the ablative, or the accusative with *ad* or *in*; as, *Damnātus longi* labōris (Hor.); Quadrupli *condemnāri* (Cic.); *Damnāre pecuniā* (Just.), *ad pœnam* (Traj. in Plin.), *in metallum* (Plin.);—sometimes, though rarely, by the dative; as, *Damnātus* morti. Lucr. In like manner, *caput* is used in the genitive or ablative; as, *Duces* capĭtis *damnātos*. Nep. *Nec* capĭte *damnārer*. Cic. So with some other verbs besides those of accusing, &c. *Quem ego* capĭtis *perdam*. Plaut. *Me* capĭtis *periclitātum memĭni*. Apul. With *plecto* and *plector*, *caput* is used in the ablative only.

Rem. 4. *Accūso*, *incūso*, *insimŭlo*, instead of the genitive, sometimes take the accusative, especially of a neuter pronoun; as, *Si* id *me non accūsas*. Plaut. Quæ *me incusavĕras*. Ter. *Sic me insimulāre falsum* facĭnus. Plaut. See § 231, Rem. 5.

Rem. 5. The following verbs of accusing, &c., are not followed by a genitive of the crime, but, as active verbs, by an accusative:—*calumnior*, *carpo*, *corripio*, *crimĭnor*, *culpo*, *excūso*, *multo*, *punio*, *reprehendo*, *sugillo*, *taxo*, *tradūco*, *vitupĕro*; as, *Culpāre infecunditātem agrōrum*. Colum. *Excusāre errōrem et adolescentiam*. Liv.

This construction also occurs with some of the verbs before enumerated; as, *Ejus avaritiam perfidiamque accusārat*. Nep. *Culpam arguo*. Liv. With *multo*, the punishment is put in the ablative only, without a preposition; as, *Exsĭliis*, *morte multantur*. Cic.

§ 218. Verbs of admonishing are followed by a genitive denoting that in respect to which the admonition is given; as,

Milĭtes tempŏris *monet*, He admonishes the soldiers of the occasion. Tac. *Admonēbat alium* egestātis, *alium* cupiditātis *suæ*. Sall.

Remark 1. The verbs of admonishing are *moneo*, *admoneo*, *commoneo*, *commonefacio*. Instead of the genitive, they sometimes have an ablative with *de*; as, De æde *Tellūris me admŏnes* (Cic.);—sometimes a neuter accusative of an adjective pronoun or adjective; as, *Eos* hoc *moneo* (Cic.); Illud *me admoneo* (Id.); Multa *admonēmur* (Id.);—and rarely a noun; as, *Eam* rem *nos locus admonuit*. Sall.

Rem. 2. These verbs, instead of the genitive, are often followed by an infinitive or clause; as, *Soror monet* succurrĕre Lauso *Turnum*, His sister admonishes Turnus to succor Lausus. Virg. *Monet*, ut suspiciōnes vitet. Cæs. *Monet* ratiōnem frumenti esse habendam. Hirt. Immortalia ne speres *monet annus*. Hor.

§ 219. *Refert* and *intĕrest* are followed by a genitive of the person or thing whose concern or interest they denote; as,

Humanitātis refert, It concerns human nature. Plin. *Intĕrest* omnium *rectè facĕre*, It concerns all to do right. Cic.

Remark 1. Instead of the genitive of the substantive pronouns, the adjective pronouns *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, and *vestra*, are used; as,

Mea *nihil refert*, It does not concern me. Ter. Tua *et* mea *maxĭmè intĕrest*, *te valēre*. Cic. *Magis* reipublĭcæ *intĕrest quàm* mea. Id.

Refert rarely occurs with the genitive, but often with the adjective pronouns.

Rem. 2. In regard to the case of these adjective pronouns, gramma-

rians differ. Some suppose that they are in the accusative plural neuter, agreeing with an indefinite noun understood; as, *Intĕrest mea*, i. e. *est inter mea;* It is among my concerns. *Refert tua*, i. e. *refert se ad tua;* It refers itself to your concerns. Others think that they are in the ablative singular feminine, agreeing with *re, causâ*, &c., understood.

Rem. 3. Instead of a genitive, an accusative with *ad* is sometimes used; as, Ad honōrem *meum intĕrest quàm primùm urbem me venīre* (Cic.); *Quid id* ad me *aut* ad *meam* rem *refert* (Plaut.);—sometimes, though rarely, an accusative without a preposition; as, *Quid* te *igĭtur retŭlit?* (Plaut.);—or a dative; as, *Dic quid *refĕrat intra natūræ fines* viventi. Hor.

Rem. 4. These verbs often have a nominative, especially a neuter pronoun; as, Id *mea minīmè refert*. Ter. Hoc *vehementer intĕrest reipublicæ*. Cic. *Non quò mea interesset loci* natūra. Id.

For the genitives *tanti, quanti*, &c., after *refert* and *intĕrest*, see § 214.

§ 220. Many verbs which are usually otherwise construed, are sometimes followed by a genitive. This rule includes

1. Certain verbs denoting an affection of the mind; *ango, discrucior, excrucio, fallo, pendeo*, which are followed by *animi; decipior, desipio, fallor, fastidio, invideo, miror, vereor;* as, *Absurdè facis qui angas te* animi. Plaut. *Me* animi *fallit*. Lucr. *Decipĭtur* labōrum. Hor. *Desipiebam* mentis. Plaut. Justitiæ *ne prius mirer bellīne* labōrum. Virg.

2. The following, in imitation of the Greek idiom; *abstineo* (Hor.), *desīno* (Id.), *desisto* (Virg.), *laudo* (Sil.), *levo* (Plaut.), *particĭpo* (Id.), *prohibeo* (Sil.), *purgo* (Hor.) *Regnāvit populōrum* occurs in Horace, for which some manuscripts read *regnātor*.

3. Some verbs denoting *to fill, to abound, to want*, which are commonly followed by an ablative. Such are *abundo, careo, compleo, expleo, impleo, egeo, indigeo, satūro, scateo;* as, *Adolescentem suæ* temeritātis *implet*, He fills the youth with his own rashness. Liv. *Animum explesse* flammæ. Virg. *Egeo* consilii. Cic. *Non tam* artis *indīgent quàm* labōris. Id. See § § 249 and 250, (2.)

4. *Potior*, which also is usually followed by an ablative; as, *Urbis potīri*, To gain possession of the city. Sall. *Potīri regni* (Cic.), *hostium* (Sall.), *rerum* (Cic.) *Potio* (active) occurs in Plautus; as, *Eum nunc potīvit* servitūtis, He has made him partaker of slavery. In the same writer, *potītus est hostium* signifies, "he fell into the hands of the enemy."

GENITIVE OF PLACE.

§ 221. I. The name of a town in which any thing is said to be, or to be done, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; as,

Habĭtat Milēti, He lives at Miletus. Ter. *Quid Romæ faciam?* What can I do at Rome? Juv.

Remark 1. Names of islands and countries are sometimes put in the genitive, like names of towns; as, *Ithăcæ vivĕre*, To live in Ithaca. Cic. *Corcўræ fuĭmus*. Id. *Pompeium Cypri visum esse*. Cæs. *Cretæ jussit considĕre Apollo*. Virg. *Non Libyæ*. Id. *Romæ Numidiæque*. Sall.

Rem. 2. Instead of the genitive, the ablative of names of towns of the first and second declension and singular number, is sometimes, though

rarely, used; as, *Rex* Tyro *decĕdit*, The king dies at Tyre. Just. *Ex* Corintho *et Athēnis et Lacedæmŏne nunciāta est victoria.* Id. *Pons quem ille* Abȳdo *fecĕrat.* Id. *Hujus exemplar* Romæ *nullum habēmus.* Vitruv. *Non ante* Tyro. Virg.

REM. 3. The genitives *domi*, *militiæ*, *belli*, and *humi*, are construed like names of towns; as,

Tenuit se domi, He staid at home. Cic. *Vir* domi *clarus.* Liv. *Unà semper* militiæ *et* domi *fuĭmus*, We were always together both at home and abroad. Ter. Belli *spectāta* domīque *virtus.* Hor. *Militiæ* and *belli* are thus used only when opposed to *domi.*

(1.) *Domi* is thus used with the possessives *meæ*, *tuæ*, *suæ*, *nostræ*, *vestræ*, and *aliēnæ;* as, Domi nostræ *vixit*, He lived at my house. Cic. *Apud eum sic fui tanquam* meæ domi. Id. *Sacrificium, quod* aliēnæ domi *fiĕret invisĕre.* Id. But with other adjectives, an ablative, with or without a preposition, is used; as, *In viduâ domo.* Ovid. *Paternâ domo.* Id. Sometimes also with the possessives; as, *Meâ in domo.* Hor. *In domo suâ.* Nep. So, instead of *humi*, *humo* is sometimes used, with or without a preposition; as, *In humo arenōsâ.* Ovid. *Sedēre humo nudâ.* Id.

(2.) When a genitive denoting the possessor follows, either *domi* or *in domo* is used; as, *Deprehensus* domi *Cæsăris.* Cic. In domo *Cæsăris.* Id. In domo *ejus.* Nep.

(3.) The ablative *domo* for *domi* also occurs; as, *Ego id nunc experior* domo. Plaut. *Bello* for *belli* is found in Livy, Lib. 9. 26.—*Domi bellōque.*

(4.) *Terræ* is sometimes used like *humi;* as, *Sacra* terræ *celavĭmus.* Liv. *Viciniæ* occurs in Plautus—*Proxĭmæ* viciniæ *habĭtat.*

(5.) The genitive of names of towns, *domi*, *militiæ*, &c., are supposed by some to depend on a noun understood; as, *urbe*, *oppĭdo*, *ædĭbus*, *solo*, *loco*, *tempŏre*, &c.

GENITIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

II. Certain adverbs are followed by the genitive. See § 212, REM. 4.

III. The genitive plural is sometimes used after the preposition *tenus;* as, *Cumārum tenus*, As far as Cumæ (Cœl.); *Crurum tenus* (Virg.); *Latĕrum tenus* (Id.);—sometimes, also, though rarely, the genitive singular; as, *Corcȳræ tenus.* Liv.

DATIVE.

DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ 222. A noun limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the dative, to denote the object or end to which the quality is directed; as,

Ūtilis agris, Useful to the fields. Juv. *Jucundus amīcis*, Agreeable to his friends. Mart. *Inimīcus quiēti*, Unfriendly to rest. Id. *Charta inutĭlis scribendo*, Paper not useful for writing. Plin.

The dative is commonly translated by the prepositions *to* or *for;* but sometimes by other prepositions, or without a preposition.

REMARK 1. Adjectives signifying advantageous, pleasant, friendly, fit, like, inclined, ready, easy, clear, equal, and their opposites, also those signifying near, many compounded with *con*, and verbals in *bilis*, are followed by the dative; as,

Felix tuis, Propitious to your friends. Virg. *Oratio ingrāta Gallis*, A speech displeasing to the Gauls. Cæs. *Amīcus tyrannīdi*, Friendly to tyranny. Nep. *Labōri inhabĭlis*, Unsuited to labor. Colum. *Patri simĭlis*, Like his father. Cic. *Aptum tempōri*. Id. *Malo pronus*. Sen. *Promptus seditiōni*. Tac. *Cuivis facĭle est*. Ter. *Mihi certum est*. Cic. *Par fratri tuo*. Id. *Falsa veris finĭtima sunt*. Id *Ocŭli concolōres corpŏri*. Colum. *Multis bonis flebĭlis*. Hor.

Many adjectives of other significations are also followed by a dative of the end or object.

After verbals in *bilis*, the dative is usually rendered by the preposition *by*; as, *Tibi credibĭlis sermo*, A speech credible to you, *i. e.* worthy to be believed by you. Ovid.

The expression *dicto audiens*, signifying obedient, is followed by the dative; as, *Syracusāni* nobis *dicto audientes sunt*. Cic. *Audiens dicto fuit* jussis *magistratuum*. Nep. In this phrase, *dicto* is a dative limiting *audiens*, and the words *dicto audiens* seem to form a compound equivalent to *obediens*, and, like that, followed by a dative; thus, *Nec plebs* nobis *dicto audiens atque obediens sit*. Liv.

REM. 2. The adjectives *æquālis*, *affīnis*, *aliēnus*, *commūnis*, *fidus*, *par*, *proprius*, *simĭlis*, *dissimĭlis*, *superstes*, and some others, instead of a dative of the object, are sometimes followed by a genitive; as, *Simĭlis tui*, Like you. Plaut. *Par hujus*, Equal to him. Lucan. *Affīnis Cæsāris*. V. Max. *Cujusque proprium*. Cic. *Superstes omnium*. Suet. *Tui fidissĭma*. Virg.

But most of these, when thus used, seem rather to be taken substantively; as, *Æquālis ejus*, His equal. Cic. So in English, "his like," "his survivor," &c.

REM. 3. Some adjectives with the dative are followed by another case denoting a different relation; as, *Mens sibi conscia* recti, A mind conscious to itself of rectitude. Virg. See § 213.

REM. 4. Many adjectives, instead of the dative of the end or object, are often followed by an accusative with a preposition.

(1.) Adjectives signifying advantageous, fit, and the opposite, take an accusative of the purpose or end with *ad*, but only a dative of the person; as, Ad *nullam* rem *utĭlis*. Cic. *Locus aptus* ad insidias. Id.

(2.) Adjectives denoting motion or tendency, take an accusative with *ad* more frequently than a dative; as, *Piger* ad pœnas, ad præmia *velox* (Ovid.); Ad *alĭquem* morbum *proclivior* (Cic.); Ad *omne* facĭnus *parātus* (Id.); *Pronus* ad fidem (Liv.);—sometimes with *in*; as, *Celer* in pugnam. Sil.

(3.) Many adjectives, signifying an affection of the mind, sometimes have an accusative of the object with *in*, *erga*, or *adversŭs*; as, *Fidēlis* in filios. Just. *Mater acerba* in *suos* partus. Ovid. *Gratus* erga me. Cic. *Gratus* adversŭs te. Id. So *Dissimĭlis* in domĭnum. Tac.

(4.) Adjectives signifying like, equal, common, &c., when plural, are often followed by the accusative with *inter*; as, Inter se *simĭles*. Cic. Inter eos *commūnis*. Id. Inter se *diversi*. Id.

REM. 5. *Propior* and *proxĭmus*, instead of the dative, have sometimes an accusative without a preposition; as, *Quod vitium propius* virtūtem

erat. Sall. *Ne propius* se *castra movēret, petiērunt.* Cæs. *Ager, qui proximus* finem *Megalopolitārum est.* Liv.

Rem. 6. Some adjectives, instead of the dative, have at times an ablative with a preposition. Thus, *par, communis, consentaneus, discors,* with *cum;* as, *Quem parem* cum libēris *fecisti.* Sall. *Consentaneum* cum *iis* litēris. Cic. *Civitas* secum *discors.* Liv. So *alienus* and *diversus* with *a* or *ab;* as, *Aliēnus* a me (Ter.); A ratione *diversus* (Cic.); or without a preposition; as, *Aliēnum nostrā* amicitiā. Id.

Rem. 7. *Idem* is sometimes followed by the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Jupiter* omnibus *idem.* Virg. *Invitum qui servat idem facit* occidenti. Hor. In the first example, *omnibus* is a dative of the object; in the second, the dative follows *idem,* in imitation of the Greek construction with *αὐτος,* and is equivalent to *quod facit is, qui occidit. Idem* is generally followed not by a case, but by *qui, ac, atque, ut,* or *quàm;* sometimes by the preposition *cum;* as, *Eōdem* mecum *patre.* Tac. *Similis* and *par* are sometimes, like *idem,* followed by *ac* and *atque.*

Note. Nouns are sometimes followed by a dative of the object; as, *Virtutibus hostis.* Cic. *Caput Italiæ omni.* Liv. See § 211, Rem. 5.

DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 223. A noun limiting the meaning of a verb, is put in the dative, to denote the *object* or *end, to* or *for* which any thing is, or is done; as,

Mea domus tibi *patet,* My house is open to you. Cic. *Pars optāre locum* tecto, A part choose a site for a building. Virg. Tibi *seris,* tibi *metis;* You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself. Plaut. *Licet* nemīni *contra patriam ducēre exercitum,* It is lawful to no one to lead an army against his country. Cic. *Hoc* tibi *promitto,* I promise this to you. Id. *Hæret* latēri *letālis arundo.* Virg. Surdo *fabulam narras.* Hor. Mihi *responsum dedit.* Virg. *Sic vos non* vobis *fertis aratra boves.* Id *Omnibus* bonis *expedit salvam esse rempublicam.* Cic. *Aptat* habendo *ensem.* Virg.

The dative is thus used after active and neuter verbs, both personal and impersonal, and in both voices.

Remark 1. The dative after many verbs is rendered not by *to* or *for,* but by other prepositions, or without a preposition. Many neuter verbs are translated into English by an active verb, and the dative after them is usually rendered like the object of an active verb.

Most verbs after which the signs *to* and *for* are not used with the dative, are enumerated in this and the following sections.

Rem. 2. Many verbs signifying to favor, please, trust, and their contraries, also to assist, command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, and be angry, govern the dative; as,

Illa tibi *favet,* She favors you. Ovid. Mihi *placebat Pomponius, minimè displicebat.* Cic. *Qui* sibi *fidit.* Hor. *Non licet sui commodi causā nocēre* altēri. Cic. *Non invidētur illi* ætāti *sed etiam favētur.* Id. *Despērat* salūti *suæ.* Id. *Neque* mihi *vestra decrēta auxiliantur.* Sall. *Impērat aut servit collecta pecunia* cuique. Hor. *Obedīre et parēre* voluntāti. Cic. *Quoniam* factiōni *inimicōrum resistēre nequivērit.* Sall. Mihi *minabātur.* Cic. *Irasci* inimīcis. Cæs.

So *Adŭlor, blandior, commŏdo, faveo, gratificor, grator, gratŭlor* and its verbal *gratulabundus, ignosco, indulgeo, palpor, parco, plaudo, studeo, subparasītor; æmŭlor, incommŏdo, invideo, noceo.*—*Placeo, libet* or *lubet; displiceo.*—*Credo, fido, confido; despēro, diffido.*—*Adminicŭlor, auxilior, medeor, medĭcor, opitŭlor, patrocinor.*—*Impĕro, mando, moděror* (to restrain), *præcipio, tempĕro.*—*Ausculto, morigĕror, obedĭo, obsecundo, obsĕquor, obtempĕro, pareo.*—*Ancillor, famŭlor, ministro, servio, inservio.*—*Refrăgor, reluctor, renītor, repugno, resisto,* and, chiefly in the poets, *bello, certo, luctor, pugno.*—*Minor, comminor, interminor.*—*Irascor, succenseo,* to which may be added *convicior, degenĕro, excello, nubo* (to marry), *præstŏlor, prævaricor, recipio* (to promise), *renuncio, respondeo, suadeo, persuadeo, dissuadeo, supplĭco,* and sometimes *lateo* and *decet.*

(1.) Many of the above verbs, instead of the dative, are sometimes followed by an accusative; as, *adŭlor, ausculto, blandior, degenĕro, despēro, indulgeo, lateo, medeor, medĭcor, moděror, præstŏlor, provideo,* &c.; as, *Adulāri* aliquem. Cic. Tac. Hanc *cave degenĕres.* Ovid. *Indulgeo* me. Ter. *Hujus* adventum *præstŏlans.* Cæs. *Providēre* rem *frumentariam.* Id.

Others, as active verbs, have, with the dative, an accusative, expressed or understood; as, *impĕro, mando, ministro, minor, comminor, interminor, præcipio, recipio, renuncio,* &c.; as, Equĭtes *impĕrat civitatĭbus.* Cæs. *Ministrāre* victum *alicui.* Varr. Deflagratiōnem *urbi et Italiæ toti minabātur.* Cic.

(2.) Many verbs which, from their significations, might be included in the above classes, are, as active verbs, only followed by an accusative; as, *delecto, juvo, lædo, offendo,* &c. *Jubeo* is followed by the accusative with an infinitive, and sometimes, though rarely, by the accusative alone, or the dative with an infinitive; as, *Jubeo* te *benè* speräre. Cic. *Lex jubet* ea *quæ facienda sunt.* Id. *Ubi* Britannĭco *jussit exsurgĕre.* Tac. *Fido* and *confido* are often followed by the ablative, with or without a preposition; as, *Fidĕre* cursu. Ovid.

§ 224. Many verbs compounded with these eleven prepositions, *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, pro, sub,* and *super,* are followed by the dative; as,

Annue cœptis, Favor our undertakings. Virg. *Romānis* equitĭbus *litĕræ afferuntur,* Letters are brought to the Roman knights. Cic. *Antecellĕre* omnĭbus, To excel all. Id. *Antetŭlit* iræ *religiōnem.* Nep. *Audetque* viris *concurrĕre virgo.* Virg. *Exercĭtum* exercitui, *duces* ducĭbus *comparāre.* Liv. *Imminet* his *aër.* Ovid. Pecŏri *signum impressit.* Virg. *Nox* prælio *intervēnit.* Liv. *Interdixit* histrionĭbus *scenam.* Suet. *Meis* commŏdis *officis et obstas.* Cic. *Cùm se hostium* telis *objecissent.* Id. *Posthabui mea seria* ludo. Virg. *Certamĭni præsēdit.* Suet. Hibernis *Labiēnum præposuit.* Cæs. Vobis *profuit ingenium.* Ovid. Misĕris *succurrĕre disco.* Virg. Iis *subsidia submittĕbat.* Cæs. Timĭdis *supervēnit Ægle.* Virg. So

1. *Accĕdo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adequĭto, adhæreo, adjaceo, adno, adnăto, adsto, adstipŭlor, adsum, adversor, affulgeo, allăbor, annuo, apparео, applaudo, appropinquo, arrideo, aspīro, assentior, assideo, assisto, assuesco, assurgo;—addo, affĕro, affigo, adjĭcio, adjungo, adhibeo, admoveo, adverto, alligo, appōno, applĭco, advolvo, aspergo.*

2. *Antecĕdo, antecello, anteeo, antesto, antevenio, anteverto;—antefĕro, antehabeo, antepōno.*

3. *Cohæreo, collūdo, concĭno, congruo, consentio, consŏno, convīvo,* and, chiefly in the poets, *coëo, concumbo, concurro, contendo;—compĕro, compōno, confĕro, conjungo.*

4. *Incĭdo, incumbo, indormio, inhio, ingemisco, inhæreo, innascor, innītor, insideo, insidior, insto, insisto, insŭdo, insulto, invādo, invigĭlo, illacrȳmo, illūdo, immineo, immorior, immŏror, impendeo, insum;—immisceo, impōno, imprimo, infĕro, ingĕro, injicio, inclūdo, insĕro, inspergo, inūro.*

5. *Intercēdo, intercĭdo, interjaceo, intermĭco, intersum, intervenio;—interdīco, interpōno.*

6. *Obambŭlo, oberro, obequĭto, obluctor, obmurmŭro, obrēpo, obsto, obsisto, obstrĕpo, obsum, obtrecto, obvenio, obversor, occumbo, occurro, occurso, officio;—obdūco, objicio, offĕro, offundo, oppōno.*

7. *Postfĕro, posthabeo, postpōno, postpŭto, postscrĭbo.*

8. *Præcēdo, præcurro, præeo, præsideo, præluceo, præniteo, præsum, prævaleo, prævertor;—præfĕro, præficio, præpōno.*

9. *Procumbo, proficio, propugno, prosum, prospicio, provideo.*

10. *Succēdo, succumbo, succurro, sufficio, suffrāgor, subcresco, suboleo, subjaceo, subrēpo, subsum, subvenio;—subdo, subjŭgo, submitto, suppōno, substerno.*

11. *Supercurro, supersto, supersum, supervenio, supervīvo.*

Remark 1. Some verbs, compounded with *ab, de, ex, circum*, and *contra*, are occasionally followed by the dative; as, *absum, desum, delābor, excĭdo, circumdo, circumfundo, circumjaceo, circumjicio, contradīco, contrăco;* as, *Serta* capĭti *delapsa*, The garlands having fallen from his head. Virg. *Nunqui nummi excidērunt* tibi? Plaut. *Tigris* urbi *circumfunditur.* Plin.

Rem. 2. Some verbs of repelling and taking away (most of which are compounds of *ab, de*, or *ex*), are sometimes followed by the dative, though more commonly by the ablative; as, *abīgo, abrŏgo, abscindo, aufĕro, adimo, arceo, defendo, demo, derŏgo, detrăho, eripio, eruo, excutio, exīmo, extorqueo, extrăho, exuo, surripio.* Thus, *Nec* mihi *te eripient*, Nor shall they take you from me. Ovid. *Solstitium* pecŏri *defendĭte.* Virg. *Hunc arcēbis* pecŏri. Id.

Rem. 3. Some verbs of differing (compounds of *di* or *dis*) likewise occur with the dative, instead of the ablative with a preposition; as, *differo, discrĕpo, discordo, dissentio, dissideo, disto;* as, *Quantum simplex hilarisque* nepōti *discrĕpet, et quantum discordet parcus* avāro. Hor. So likewise *misceo;* as, *Mista* modestiæ *gravĭtas.* Cic.

Rem. 4. Many verbs compounded with prepositions, instead of the dative, either constantly or occasionally take the case of the preposition, which is sometimes repeated. Sometimes, also, one of similar signification is used; as, Ad *primam* vocem *timĭdas advertĭtis aures.* Ovid. *Nemo* eum *antecessit.* Nep. *Inferunt omnia* in ignem. Cæs. *Silex incumbĕbat* ad amnem. Virg. *Conferte hanc pacem* cum *illo* bello. Cic.

Rem. 5. Some neuter verbs compounded with prepositions, either take the dative, or, acquiring an active signification, are followed by the accusative; as, *Helvetii reliquos* Gallos *virtūte præcēdunt*, The Helvetii surpass the other Gauls in valor. Cæs. *Uterque* Isocrătem *ætāte præcurrit.* Cic. So *præeo, præsto, prævertor, præcello.*

§ 225. I. Verbs compounded with *satis, benè*, and *malè*, are followed by the dative; as,

Et natūræ *et* legĭbus *satisfēcit*, He satisfied both nature and the laws. Cic. *Pulchrum est benefacĕre* reipublĭcæ, It is honorable to benefit the state. Sall. *Maledīcit utrīque.* Hor. So *satisdo, benedīco, malefacio.*

These compounds are often written separately; and the dative always depends not on *satis*, *benè*, and *malè*, but on the simple verb.

II. Verbs in the passive voice are sometimes followed by a dative of the agent, chiefly in the poets; as, *Neque cernĭtur* ulli, Nor is he seen by any one. Virg. *Nulla tuārum audīta* mihi *neque visa sorōrum*. Id. But the agent after passives is usually in the ablative with a preposition. See § 248.

III. The participle in *dus* is followed by a dative of the agent; as,

Semel omnĭbus *calcanda est via lĕti*, The way of death must once be trod by all. Hor. *Adhibenda est* nobis *diligentia*, We must use diligence. Cic. *Vestigia summōrum homĭnum* sibi *tuenda esse dicit*. Id. *Dolendum est* tibi *ipsi*. Id. *Faciendum* mihi *putāvi, ut respondĕrem*. Id.

Remark 1. The dative is sometimes wanting when the agent is indefinite; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpŏre sano*. Juv. *Hĭc vincendum aut moriendum, mĭlĭtes, est*. Liv. In such examples, *tibi, vobis, nobis, homĭnĭbus*, &c., may be supplied.

Rem. 2. The participle in *dus* sometimes, though rarely, has, instead of the dative, an ablative with *a* or *ab;* as, *Deus est venerandus* a nobis. Cic.

IV. Verbs signifying motion or tendency are followed by an accusative with *ad* or *in;* as,

Ad templum *Pallădis ibant*. Virg. Ad prætōrem *homĭnem traxit*. Cic. *Vergit* ad septemtriōnes. Cæs. In conspectum *venīre*. Nep.

So *curro, duco, fero, festīno, fugio, inclīno, lego, pergo, porto, præcipĭto, propĕro, tendo, tollo, vado, verto*.

So likewise verbs of calling, exciting, &c.; as, *Eurum* ad se *vocat*. Virg. *Provocāsse* ad pugnam. Cic. So *animo, hortor, incĭto, invĭto, lacesso, stimŭlo, suscĭto;* to which may be added *attineo, conformo, pertineo*, and *specto*.

But the dative is sometimes used after these verbs; as, *Clamor it cœlo*. Virg. *Dum* tibi *littĕræ meæ veniant*. Cic. After *venio* both constructions are used at the same time; as, *Venit* mihi in mentem. Cic. *Venit* mihi in suspiciōnem. Nep. *Eum venisse* Germānis in amicitiam *cognovĕrat*. Cæs. *Propinquo* (to approach) takes the dative only.

§ 226. *Est* is followed by a dative denoting a *possessor;*—the thing possessed being the subject of the verb.

Est thus used may generally be translated by the verb *to have* with the dative as its subject; as, *Est* mihi *domi pater*, I have a father at home. Virg. *Sunt* nobis *mitia poma*, We have mellow apples. Id. *Gratiâ* nobis *opus est tuâ*, We have need of your favor. Cic. Innocentiæ *plus periculi quàm honōris est*. Sall. *An nescis longas* regĭbus *esse manus?* Ovid. The first and second persons of *sum* are not thus construed.

Remark. The dative is used with a similar signification after *fore, suppĕto, desum*, and *defit;* as, *Pauper enim non est*, cui *rerum suppĕtit usus*. Hor. *Si* mihi *cauda foret, cercopithēcus eram*. Mart. *Defuit ars* vobis. Ovid. *Non defŏre* Arsacĭdis *virtūtem*. Tac. *Lac* mihi *non defit*. Virg.

§ 227. *Sum*, and several other verbs, are followed by two datives, one of which denotes the *object to which*, the other the *end for which*, any thing is, or is done; as,

Mihi *maximæ est* curæ, It is a very great care to me. Cic. *Spero* nobis *hanc conjunctiōnem* voluptāti *fore*, I hope that this union will bring pleasure to us. Id. Matri *puellam* dono *dedit*. Ter. Fabio laudi *datum est*. Cic. Vitio *id* tibi *vertunt*. Plaut. *Id* tibi honōri *habētur*. Cic. *Maturāvit* collēgæ *venīre* auxilio. Liv.

Remark 1. The verbs after which two datives occur, are *sum, fore, fio, do, duco, habeo, relinquo, tribuo, verto;* also *curro, eo, mitto, proficiscor, venio, appōno, assigno, cedo, compāro, pateo, suppedito,* and perhaps some others.

Rem. 2. The dative of the *end* is often used after these verbs, without the dative of the object; as, Exemplo *est formīca*, The ant is (serves) for an example. Hor. *Absentium bona* divisui *fuēre*. Liv. *Relīquit* pignŏri *putamīna*. Plaut.

Rem. 3. The verb *sum*, with a dative of the end, may be variously rendered; as by the words *brings, affords, serves*, &c. The sign *for* is often omitted with this dative, especially after *sum;* instead of it, *as*, or some other particle, may at times be used; as, *Ignavia erit* tibi *magno* dedecŏri, Cowardice will bring great disgrace to you. Cic. *Hæc res est* argumento; This thing is an argument, or serves as an argument. Id. *Universos* curæ *habuit*. Suet. *Una res erat magno* usui, ... was of great use. Lucil. *Quod* tibi *magnopĕre* cordi *est, mihi vehementer displĭcet;* What is a great pleasure, an object of peculiar interest to you, &c. Id.

Sometimes the words *fit, able, ready*, &c., must be supplied, especially before a gerund or a gerundive; as, *Cum* solvendo *civitātes non essent*, ... not able to pay. Cic. *Divītes, qu mĕri* ferendo *essent*. Liv. *Quæ* restinguendo igni *forent*. Liv. *Raa.x ejus est* vescendo. Plin.

Rem. 4. Instead of the dative of the end, a nominative is sometimes used; as, *Amor est* exitium pecŏri (Virg.); or an accusative, with or without a preposition; as, *Se* Achilli comītem *esse datum dicit* ad bellum. Cic. *Se* Remis in clientēlam *dicābant*. Cæs.

Rem. 5. The dative of the object after *sum*, often seems rather to depend upon the dative of the end, than upon the verb; as in the example *Ego omnĭbus* meis exitio *fuĕro* (Cic.), in which *omnĭbus meis* has the same relation to *exitio* that *pecŏri* has to *exitium* in the above example from Virgil. For the use of the dative after a noun, see § 211, Rem. 5.

Note 1. The dative is sometimes used after the infinitive, instead of the accusative, when a dative precedes, and the subject of the infinitive is omitted; as, *Vobis necesse est fortĭbus esse* viris. Liv. See §§ 205, Rem. 6, and 239, Rem. 1.

Note 2. In such expressions as *Est mihi nomen Alexandro, Cui cognōmen Iŭlo addĭtur*, the proper name is put in the dative in apposition with that which precedes, instead of taking the case of *nomen* or *cognōmen*. See § 204, Rem. 8.

DATIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

§ 228. Some particles are followed by the dative of the end or object; as,

1. Some adverbs derived from adjectives; as, *Proxĭmè castris*, Very near to the camp. Cæs. *Congruenter natūræ*, Agreeably to nature. Cic *Propĭus* stabŭlis *armenta tenĕrent*. Virg. Vitæque *homĭnum amicè vivĕre* Id. *Bene* mihi, *bene* vobis. Plaut. So *obviam;* as, Mihi *obviam venisti*. Cic.

2. Certain prepositions, especially in comic writers; as, *Mihi clam est*, It is unknown to me. Plaut. *Contra nobis*. Id. But in such instances they are rather used like adjectives.

3. Certain interjections; as, *Hei mihi!* Ah me! Virg. *Væ mihi!* Wo is me! Ter. *Væ victis!* Liv. *Væ te!* also occurs in Plautus.

NOTE. The dative of the substantive pronouns seems sometimes redundant, or to affect the meaning but little; as, *Fur* mihi *es*, ... in my opinion. Plaut. *An ille* mihi *liber, cui mulier impĕrat?* Cic. *Tongilium* mihi *eduxit*. Id. *Ubi nunc* nobis *deus ille magister?* Virg. *Ecce* tibi *Sebōsus!* Cic. *Hem* tibi *talentum argenti Philippĭcum est*. Plaut. *Sibi* is sometimes subjoined to *suus*; as, Suo sibi *gladio hunc jugŭlo*. Plaut. Sibi suo *tempŏre*. Cic.

ACCUSATIVE.

ACCUSATIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 229. The object of an active verb is put in the accusative; as,

Legātos mittunt, They send ambassadors. Cæs. *Ănĭmus movet corpus*, The mind moves the body. Cic. *Da veniam hanc*, Grant this favor. Ter. *Eum imitāti sunt*, They imitated him. Cic.

REMARK 1. An active verb, with the accusative, often takes a genitive, dative, or ablative, to express some additional relation; as,

Te convinco amentiæ, I convict you of madness. Cic. *Da locum* melioribus, Give place to your betters. Ter. *Solvit se Teucria* luctu, Troy frees herself from grief. Virg. See those cases respectively.

REM. 2. Such is the difference of idiom between the Latin and English languages, that many verbs which are considered active in one, are used as neuter in the other. Hence, in translating active Latin verbs, a preposition must often be supplied in English; as, *Ut me cavĕret*, That he should beware of me. Cic. On the other hand, many verbs, which in Latin are neuter, and do not take an accusative, are rendered into English by active verbs.

REM. 3. The verb is sometimes omitted:—

1. To avoid its repetition; as, *Eventum senātus, quem* (sc. *dare*) *videbĭtur, dabit*. Liv.

2. *Dico*, and verbs of similar meaning, are often omitted; as, *Quid multa? quid? Ne multa*, sc. *dicam*. *Quid* (sc. *de eo dicam*) *quod salus sociōrum in discrīmen vocātur?* Cic.

REM. 4. The accusative is often omitted:—

1. When it is a reflexive pronoun; as, *Nox præcipĭtat*, sc. *se*. Virg. *Tum prora avertit*. Id. *Eo lavātum*, sc. *me*. Hor. The reflexives are usually *wanting* after certain verbs; as, *aboleo, abstineo, augeo, celĕro, continuo, declīno, decōquo, flecto, deflecto, inclīno, lavo, laxo, moveo, muto, præcipito, remitto, ruo, turbo, verto, deverto, reverto*; and more rarely after *moveo, converto*, and many others.

2. When it is something indefinite, or easily supplied; as, *Ego, ad*

quos scribam, nescio, sc. *litĕras*. Cic. *De quo et tecum egi diligenter, et scripsi ad te*. Id. *Benè fecit Silius*. Id.

REM. 5. An infinitive, or one or more clauses may supply the place of the accusative; as,

Da mihi fallĕre. Hor. *Reddes dulce* loqui, *reddes* ridēre *decōrum*. Id. *Cupio* me esse clementem. Cic. *Athenienses statuērunt* ut naves conscendĕrent. Id. *Vereor* ne a doctis reprehendar. Id. Sometimes both constructions are united; as, *Dī* iram *miserantur inānem ambōrum, et* tantos mortalĭbus esse labōres. Virg.

In such constructions, the *subject* of the clause is sometimes put in the accusative as the *object* of the verb; as, *Nōsti* Marcellum, *quàm tardus sit*, for *Nōsti quàm tardus sit* Marcellus. Cic. Illum, *ut vivat, optant*. Ter. Rem *frumenturiam, ut satis commŏdè supportāri posset, timēre dicēbant*. Cæs.

REM. 6. The impersonal verbs *miserĕt, pœnĭtet, pudet, tædet*, and *piget*, likewise *miserescit, miserētur*, and *pertæsum est*, are followed by an accusative of the person exercising the feeling; as,

Eōrum nos *miserĕt*, We pity them. Cic. See § 215, (1.) *Veritum est* also occurs with such an accusative; Quos *non est veritum*. Cic.

REM. 7. *Juvat, delectat, fallit, fugit*, and *prætĕrit*, also, are followed by an accusative of the person; as,

Te hilări animo esse valdè me *juvat*, That you are in good spirits delights me. Cic. *Fugit* me *ad te scribĕre*. Cic. *Illud altĕrum quàm sit difficile, non* te *fugit, nec verò* Cæsărem *fefellit*. Id.

For *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, after *refert* and *interest*, see § 219, REM. 1.

For the accusative by attraction, instead of the nominative, see § 206, (6,) (*b*.)

§ 230. Verbs signifying to name or call, to choose, render or constitute, to esteem or reckon, are followed by two accusatives denoting the same person or thing; as,

Urbem *ex Antĭochi patris nomĭne* Antiochiam *vocāvit*, He called the city Antioch, &c. Just. Me consŭlem *fecistis*. Cic. Sulpicium accusatōrem *suum numerābat, non* competitōrem. Id. *Cùm* vos testes *habeam*. Nep.

For the verbs included in this rule, see § 210, REM. 3, (3.)

REMARK 1. After verbs signifying to esteem or reckon, one of the accusatives is often the subject, and the other the predicate, of *esse* expressed or understood; as, *Ne* me *existimāris ad manendum* esse propensiōrem. Cic. Eum avārum *possŭmus existimāre*. Id. Mercurium *omnium* inventōrem *artium ferunt;* hunc *viārum atque itinĕrum* ducem *arbitrantur*. Cæs.

REM. 2. Many other verbs, besides their proper accusative, take a second, denoting a purpose, time, character, &c.; as, *Talem se* imperatōrem *præbuit*, He showed himself such a commander. Nep. *Quare ejus fugæ* comĭtem *me adjungĕrem*. Cic. *Homĭnum opinio* socium *me ascrĭbit tuis laudĭbus*. Id. *Præsta te* eum *qui mihi es cognĭtus*. Cic. *Filiam tuam mihi* uxōrem *posco*. Plaut. *Petit hanc Saturnia* munus. Ovid. Such constructions may often be referred to apposition, or to an ellipsis of *esse*.

§ 231. Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, and *celo* (to conceal), are followed by two accusatives, one of a person, the other of a thing; as,

Rogo te nummos, I ask you for money. Mart. *Posce* deos veniam, Ask favor of the gods. Virg. *Quum legent quis* musĭcam *docŭerit* Epaminondam, When they shall read who taught Epaminondas music. Nep. *Antigŏnus* iter omnes *celat*, Antigonus conceals his route from all. Id.

Remark 1. This rule includes the verbs of asking and demanding, *flagĭto, efflagĭto, obsecro, oro, exōro, percontor, posco, reposco, postŭlo, precor, deprĕcor, rogo*, and *interrŏgo;* of teaching, *doceo, edoceo, dedoceo*, and *erudio*, which last has two accusatives only in the poets. *Cingo* occurs once with two accusatives; Arma *Tribunitium cingĕre digna* latus. Mart.

Rem. 2. Instead of the accusative of a person, verbs of asking and demanding often take the ablative with *ab* or *ex;* as, *Non debĕbam* abs te *has litĕras poscĕre.* Cic. *Veniam orēmus* ab ipso. Virg. *Istud volēbam* ex te *percontāri.* Plaut.

Rem. 3. Instead of the accusative of a thing, the ablative with *de* is also used after many of the above verbs; as, *Sic ego te eisdem* de rebus *interrŏgem.* Cic. De itinĕre *hostium senātum edŏcet.* Sall. *Bassus noster me* de *hoc* libro *celāvit.* Cic. Sometimes also a dependent clause.

Rem. 4. Some verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, are not followed by two accusatives; as, *exĭgo, peto, quæro, scitor, scisc̆tor*, which take an ablative of the person with a preposition; *imbuo, instituo, instruo*, &c., which are sometimes used with the ablative of the thing, generally without a preposition, and are sometimes otherwise construed.

Rem. 5. Many other active verbs with the accusative of a person, sometimes take an accusative of *nihil*, of the neuter pronouns *hoc, id, quid*, &c., or of adjectives of quantity; as,

Fabius ea *me monuit*, Fabius reminded me of those things. Cic. *Non quo me* alĭquid *juvāre posses.* Id. Pauca *pro tempŏre milĭtes hortātus.* Sall. Id *adjūta me.* Ter. *Nec te* id *consŭlo.* Cic. *Consŭlo* and *moneo* are also found with a *noun* denoting the thing in the accusative; as, *Consŭlam hanc* rem *amīcos.* Plaut. *Eum* rem *nos locus admonuit.* Sall.

A preposition may often be understood before the above neuter accusatives. See § 235, Rem. 5.

By a similar construction, *genus* is sometimes used in the accusative, instead of the genitive; as, *Scis me oratiōnes, aut alĭquid id* genus *scrĭbĕre.* Cic. *Nullas hoc* genus *vigilias vigilārunt.* Gell. So *Omnes muliebre* secus. Suet.

§ 232. (1.) Some neuter verbs are followed by an accusative of kindred signification to their own; as,

Vitam vivĕre, To live a life. Plaut. *Furĕre furōrem.* Virg. *Istam pugnam pugnābo.* Plaut. *Pugnāre prœlia.* Hor. *Lusum insolentem ludĕre.* Id. *Si non servitūtem serviat.* Plaut. *Queror haud factles* questus. Stat. *Jurāvi verissĭmum* jusjurandum. Cic. *Ignōtas jubet ire* vias. Val. Flacc. *Ut suum* gaudium *gauderēmus.* Cœl. ad Cic. *Proficisci magnum* iter. Cic.

(2.) Verbs commonly neuter are sometimes used in an active sense, and are therefore followed by an accusative. Neuter verbs

are also sometimes followed by an accusative, depending on a preposition understood. The following are examples of both constructions :—

With *oleo* and *sapio*, and their compounds, *redoleo, resipio ;—Olet* unguenta, He smells of perfumes. Ter. *Oratiōnes redolentes* antiquitātem. Cic. *Mella* herbam *eam sapiunt*, The honey tastes of that herb. Plin. *Uva* picem *resipiens*. Id. So *Sitio* honōres. Cic. *Nec vox* hominem *sonat*. Virg. *Sudāre* mella. Id. Morientem *nomĭne clamat*. Id. *Quis* pauperiem *crepat?* Hor. Omnes *una manet nox*. Id. *Ingrāti animi* crimen *horreo*. Cic. *Ego meas queror* fortūnas. Plaut. *Pastōrem, saltāret uti* Cyclōpa, *rogābat*. Hor. So the passive; *Nunc agrestem* Cyclōpa *movētur*. Id. *Num* id *lacrȳmat virgo?* Does the maid weep on that account? Ter. Quicquid *delīrant reges, plectuntur Achīvi*. Hor. *Nec tu* id *indignāri posses*. Liv. Quod *dubĭtas ne fecĕris*. Plin. Nihil *labōro*. Cic. *Corȳdon ardēbat* Alexin. Virg. *Stygias juravĭmus* undas. Ovid. *Navigat* æquor. Virg. *Currĭmus* æquor. Id. *Pascuntur* sylvas. Id. *Multa* alia *peccat*. Cic. Exsequias *ite frequenter*. Ovid. *Devenēre* locos. Virg.

Accusatives are found in like manner after *ambŭlo, calleo, doleo, equĭto, gaudeo, gemo, lateo, latro, nato, palleo, pereo, depereo, procēdo, sibĭlo, tremo, trepĭdo, vado, venio*, &c.

In the above and similar examples, the prepositions *ob, propter, per, ad*, &c., may often be supplied. This construction of neuter verbs is most common with the neuter accusatives *id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca, alia, cetĕra*, and *omnia*.

§ 233. Many verbs are followed by an accusative depending upon a preposition with which they are compounded.

(1.) Active verbs compounded with *trans* have two accusatives, one depending upon the verb, the other upon the preposition; as, *Omnem equitātum* pontem *transdūcit*, He leads all the cavalry over the bridge. Cæs. Hellespontum *copias trajĕcit*. Nep.

So *Pontus* scopŭlos *superjăcit undam*. Virg. So, also, *adverto* and *indūco* with *animum;* as, Id *animum advertit*. Cæs. *Id quod* animum *induxĕrat paulisper non tenuit*. Cic. So, also, *injicio* in Plautus—*Ego* te *manum injiciam*.

(2.) Some other active verbs take an accusative in the passive voice depending upon their prepositions; as, *Magĭcas accingier* artes, To be prepared for magic arts. Virg. *Classis circumvehĭtur* arcem. Liv. Vectem *circumjectus fuisset*. Cic. Locum *prætervectus sum*. Cic.

But after most active verbs compounded with prepositions which take an accusative, the preposition is repeated; as, *Cæsar se* ad nemĭnem *adjunxit* (Cic.); or a dative is used; as, *Hic dies me valdè* Crasso *adjunxit*. Id. See § 224.

(3.) Many neuter verbs take an accusative when compounded with prepositions which govern an accusative, but these sometimes become active; as, *Gentes quæ* mare *illud adjăcent*, The nations which border upon that sea. Nep. *Obequitāre* agmen. Curt. *Incēdunt mœstos* locos. Tac. *Transilui* flammas. Ovid. *Succedēre* tecta. Cic. *Ludōrum diēbus, qui* cognitiōnem *intervenērant*. Tac. *Adire* provinciam. Suet. *Caveat ne* prœlium *ineat*. Cic. Naves *purātas invēnit*. Cæs. *Ingrĕdi* iter *pedĭbus*. Cic. *Epicūri horti* quos *modò præteribāmus*. Id. *Leōnes subiēre* jugum. Virg *Fama allabĭtur* aures. Id. *Allŏquor* te. Id.

REMARK 1. Some neuter verbs compounded with prepositions which take an ablative after them, are at times followed by an accusative; as, Nemĭnem *convēni*, I met with no one. Cic. *Qui* societātem *coīĕris*. Id. *Aversāri* honōres. Ovid. *Evaditque celer* ripam. Virg. *Excedĕre* numĕrum. Tac. *Exīre* limen. Ter. Tibur *præfluunt aquæ*. Hor.

REM. 2. The preposition is often repeated after the verb, or a different one is used; as, In Galliam *invāsit Antonius*. Cic. Ad me *adīre quosdam memĭni*. Id. *Ne* in senātum *accedĕrem*. Cic. *Regīna* ad templum *incessit*. Virg. Juxta genitōrem *astat Lavinia*. Id.

NOTE. Some verbal nouns and verbal adjectives in *bundus* are followed by an accusative like the verbs from which they are derived; as, *Quid tibi huc* receptio *ad te est meum* virum? Wherefore do you receive my husband hither to you? Plaut. *Quid tibi* hanc aditio *est?* Id. *Vitabundus* castra. Liv.

§ 234. I. When the active voice takes an accusative both of a person and thing, the passive retains the latter; as,

Rogātus est sententiam, He was asked his opinion. Liv. *Interrogātus* causam. Tac. Segĕtes alimentā*que debĭta dives poscebātur humus*. Ovid. Motus *docēri gaudet Ionĭcos matūra virgo*. Hor. *Omnes belli* artes *edoctus*. Liv. *Nosne* hoc *celātos tam diu?* Ter. Multa *in extis monēmur*. Cic.

NOTE. As the object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive, the passive is not followed by an accusative of the object.

In other respects, the government of the active and passive voices is, in general, the same.

REMARK 1. *Indŭo* and *exuo*, though they do not take two accusatives in the active voice, are sometimes followed by an accusative of the thing in the passive; as, *Indŭtur atras* vestes, She puts on sable garments. Ovid. Thorāca *indūtus*. Virg. *Exūta est Roma* senectam. Mart. So *cingo*, which occurs once in the active voice with two accusatives; as, *Inutĭle* ferrum *cingĭtur*. Virg. See § 231, REM. 1.

REM. 2. The future passive participle in the neuter gender with *est*, is sometimes, though rarely, followed by an accusative; as, Multa *novis rebus quum sit agendum*. Lucr.

II. An adjective, verb, and participle, are sometimes followed by an accusative denoting the *part* to which their signification relates; as,

Nudus membra, Bare as to his limbs. Virg. Os humeros*que deo similis*. Id. *Micat auribus et tremit* artus. Id. Cetĕra *parce puer bello*. Id. *Sibĭla* colla *tumentem*. Id. *Explēri* mentem *nequit*. Id. *Picti* scuta *Labĭci*. Id. *Fractus* membra. Hor. *Maxĭmam* partem *lacte vivunt*. Cæs.

This construction, which is probably of Greek origin, is usually called SYNECDOCHE. It is chiefly used by the poets: the accusative seems to depend on a preposition understood.

III. Some neuter verbs which are followed by an accusative, are used in the passive voice, the accusative becoming the subject, according to the general rule of active verbs; as,

Tertia vivĭtur ætas. Ovid. *Bellum militabĭtur*. Hor. *Dormĭtur hiems*. Mart. *Multa peccantur*. Cic. *Adītur Gnossius Minos*. Sen. *Ne ab omnĭbus circumsisterētur*. Cæs. *Hostes invādi posse*. Sall. *Campus obĭtur aquâ*. Ovid. *Plures ineuntur gratiæ*. Cic.

ACCUSATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

§ 235. (1.) Twenty-six prepositions are followed by the accusative.

These are *ad, adversùs* or *adversùm, ante, apud, circa* or *circum, circĭter, cis* or *citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, penes, per, ponè, post, præter, prope, propter, secundùm, supra, trans, ultra;* as,

Ad templum, To the temple. Virg. *Adversus hostes,* Against the enemy. Liv. *Cis Rhenum,* This side the Rhine. Cæs. *Intra muros.* Cic. *Penes reges.* Just. *Propter aquæ rivum.* Virg. *Inter agendum.* Id. *Ante domandum.* Id.

Remark 1. *Cis* is generally used with names of places; *citra* also with other words; as, *Cis Taurum.* Cic. *Cis Padum.* Liv. *Citra Veliam.* Cic. *Tela hostium citra.* Tac.

Rem. 2. *Inter,* signifying *between,* applies to two accusatives jointly, and sometimes to a plural accusative alone; as, *Inter me et Scipiōnem.* Cic. *Inter natos et parentes.* Id. *Inter nos.* Id.

(2.) *In* and *sub,* denoting *tendency,* are followed by the accusative; denoting *situation,* they are followed by the ablative; as,

Via ducit in urbem, The way conducts into the city. Virg. *Noster in te amor.* Cic. *Exercĭtus sub* jugum *missus est,* The army was sent under the yoke. Cæs. *Magna mei sub* terras *ibit imāgo.* Virg. *Mediâ in* urbe, In the midst of the city. Ovid. *In* his *fuit Ariovistus.* Cæs. *Bella sub Iliăcis* mœnĭbus *gerĕre,* To wage war under the Trojan walls. Ovid. *Sub* nocte *silenti.* Virg.

The most common significations of *in,* with the accusative, are, *into, towards, until, for, against,*—with the ablative, *in, upon, among.* In some instances, *in* and *sub,* denoting tendency, are followed by the ablative, and, denoting situation, by the accusative; as, *In* conspectu *meo audet venīre.* Phæd. *Nationes quæ in* amicitiam *populi Romāni,* ditionem*que essent.* Id. *Sub* jugo *dictātor hostes misit.* Liv. *Hostes sub* montem *consedisse.* Cæs.

In and *sub,* in different significations, denoting neither tendency nor situation, are followed sometimes by the accusative, and sometimes by the ablative; as, *Amor crescit in* horas. Ovid. *Hostĭlem in* modum. Cic. *Quod in bono* servo *dici posset.* Id. *Sub eâ* conditiōne. Ter. *Sub* pœnâ *mortis.* Suet.

In expressions relating to time, *sub,* denoting *at* or *in,* usually takes the ablative; denoting *near, about,* either the accusative or ablative; as, *Sub* tempŏre, At the time. Lucan. *Sub* lucem (Virg.), *Sub* luce (Liv.), About daybreak.

(3.) *Super* is commonly followed by the accusative; but when it signifies either *on* or *concerning,* it takes the ablative; as,

Super lubentem culmĭna *tecti,* Gliding over the top of the house. Virg. *Super tenĕro prosternit* gramĭne *corpus,* He stretches his body on the tender grass. Id. *Multa super* Priămo *rogĭtans super* Hectŏre *multa,* concerning Priam, &c. Id. The compound *desŭper* is found with the accusative, and *insŭper* with the accusative and ablative.

(4.) *Subter* generally takes the accusative, but sometimes the ablative; as,

Subter terras Under the earth. Liv. *Subter densâ* testudĭne. Virg.

(5.) *Clam* is followed either by the accusative or ablative; as,

Clam vos, Without your knowledge. Cic. *Clam* patre. Ter. *Clam* also occurs with a genitive—*Clam* patris (Ter.); and even with a dative —Mihi *clam est*. Plaut.

Rem. 3. The adverbs *versus* and *usque* are sometimes used with an accusative, which depends on a preposition understood; as, Brundusium *versus*. Cic. Termĭnos *usque Libyæ*. Just. *Usque* Ennam *profecti*. Cic. *Versus* is always placed after the accusative.

Rem. 4. Prepositions are often used without a noun depending upon them, but such noun may usually be supplied by the mind; as, *Multis* post *annis*, i. e. *post id tempus*. Cic. Circum *Concordiæ*, sc. *ædem*. Sall.

Rem. 5. The accusative, in many constructions, is supposed to depend on a preposition understood. The preposition cannot, however, always be properly expressed, in such instances; nor is it easy, in every case, to say what preposition should be supplied. For the accusative without a preposition after neuter verbs, see § 232. For the case of synecdoche, see § 234, II. The following examples may here be added:—*Homo* id *ætātis*. Cic. Quid *tibi ætātis videor?* Plaut. *Profectus est* id *tempŏris*. Cic. Illud *horæ*. Suet. *Devenēre* locos. Virg. *Propior* montem. Sall. *Proximè* Pompeium *sedēbam*. Cic. *A te bis terve* summum *litĕras accēpi*. Id. Idne *estis auctŏres mihi?* Ter. *Vix equidem ausim affirmāre* quod *quidam auctŏres sunt*. Liv. In most of these, *ad* may be understood.

ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

§ 236. Nouns denoting duration of time, or extent of space, are put, after other nouns and verbs, in the accusative, and sometimes after verbs in the ablative; as,

Vixi annos *triginta*, I have lived thirty years. *Decrevērunt intercalarium quinque et quadraginta* dies *longum*, They decreed an intercalary month forty-five days long. Cic. Annos *natus viginti septem*, Twenty-seven years old. Id. Dies *totos de virtūte dissērunt*. Id. *Duces qui unà cum Sertorio omnes* annos *fuĕrant*. Cæs. Biduum *Laodicææ fui*. Cic. *Te jam* annum *audientem Cratippum*. Id. *Duas fossas quindĕcim* pedes *latas perduxit*, He extended two ditches fifteen feet broad. Cæs. *Cùm abessem ab Amāno* iter *unius diĕi*. Cic. *Tres pateat cœli spatium non amplius* ulnas. Virg. *A portu* stadia *centum et viginti processĭmus*. Cic. *Vixit* annis *viginti novem, imperāvit* triennio. Suet. *Æsculapii templum quinque* millĭbus *passuum distans*. Liv. *Ventidius bidui* spatio *abest ab eo*. Cic.

Remark 1. Nouns denoting time or space, used to limit other nouns, are often put in the genitive or ablative. See § 211, Rem. 6.

Rem. 2. A term of time not yet completed, may be expressed by an ordinal number; as, *Nos* vicesĭmum *jam* diem *patĭmur hebescēre aciem horum auctoritātis*. Cic. *Punĭco bello* duodecĭmum annum *Italia urebātur*. Liv.

Rem. 3. The accusative or ablative of space is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending on it remains; as, *Castra quæ abĕrant* bidui, sc. *spatium* or *spatio*. Cic.

Rem. 4. To denote a place by its distance from another, the ablative is commonly used; as, Millĭbus *passuum sex a Cæsăris castris consēdit.* Cæs.

For *abhinc*, with the accusative, see § 253, Rem. 2. For the ablative denoting difference of time or space, see § 256, Rem. 16.

Rem. 5. A preposition is sometimes expressed before an accusative of time or space, but it generally modifies the meaning; as, *Quem* per *decem* annos *alŭimus*,....during ten years. Cic. *Quæ* inter *decem* annos *facta sunt.* Id. *Sulcum* in *quatuor* pedes *longum cùm fecĕris.* Colum.

ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE.

§ 237. After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of the town in which the motion ends is put in the accusative without a preposition; as,

Regŭlus Carthaginem *rediit*, Regulus returned to Carthage. Cic. Capuam *flectit iter*, He turns his course to Capua. Liv. *Calpurnius* Romam *proficiscĭtur.* Sall. Romam *erat nunciātum.* Cic. Messānam *litĕras dedit.* Id.

Remark 1. The accusative, in like manner, is used after *iter* with *sum*, *habeo*, &c.; as, *Iter est mihi* Lanuvium. Cic. *Cæsărem iter habēre* Capuam. Id.

Rem. 2. The preposition to be supplied is *in*, denoting *into*, which is sometimes expressed; as, In Ephĕsum *abii.* Plaut. *Ad*, when expressed before the name of a town, denotes not *into*, but *to* or *near*; as, *Cæsar* ad Genēvam *pervĕnit.* Cæs. *Cum ego* ad Heraclēam *accedĕrem.* Cic.

Rem. 3. Instead of the accusative, a dative is sometimes, though rarely, used; as, Carthagĭni *nuncios mittam.* Hor.

Rem. 4. *Domus* in both numbers, and *rus* in the singular, are put in the accusative, like names of towns; as,

Ite domum, Go home. Virg. *Galli domos abiĕrant.* Liv. *Rus ibo.* Ter.

When *domus* is limited by a genitive, or a possessive adjective pronoun, it sometimes takes a preposition: with other adjectives, the preposition is generally expressed; as, *Non introĕo* in nostram domum. Plaut. *Venisse* in domum Leccæ. Cic. Ad eam domum *profecti sunt.* Id. In domos supĕras *scandĕre cura fuit.* Ovid.

Domus is sometimes used in the accusative after a verbal noun; as, Domum reditiōnis *spe sublatâ.* Cæs. So, Reditus Romam. Cic.

Rem. 5. Before all other names of places in which the motion ends, except those of towns, and *domus* and *rus*, the preposition is commonly used; as, *Ex Asiâ transis* in Eurōpam. Curt. *Te* in Epīrum *venisse gaudeo.* Cic. But it is sometimes omitted; as, *Inde* Sardiniam *cum classe venit.* Cic. Italiam *Lavināque venit* litŏra. Virg. *Navigāre* Ægyptum *pergit.* Liv. *Rapĭdum veniĕmus* Oaxen. Virg. The names of nations are used in the same manner; as, *Nocte* ad Nervios *pervenĕrunt.* Cæs. *Nos ibĭmus* Afros. Virg. So insŭlas *rubri maris navĭgant.* Plin.

ACCUSATIVE AFTER ADVERBS AND INTERJECTIONS.

§ 238. 1. The adverbs *pridie* and *postridie* are often followed by the accusative; as, *Pridie eum diem*, The day before that day. Cic *Pridie Idus.* Id. *Postridie ludos.* Id. *Postridie Calendas.* Liv.

The accusative, in such examples, depends on *ante* or *post* understood. For the genitive after *pridie* and *postridie*, see § 212, Rem. 4, Note 6.

The adverb *benè* is sometimes followed by the accusative in forms of drinking health; as, *Propĭno, benè* vos, *benè* nos, *benè* te, *benè* me, *benè nostram* Stephanium. Plaut. *Benè* Messălam. Tibull.

2. The interjections *en, ecce, O, heu,* and *pro,* are sometimes followed by the accusative; as,

En quatuor aras! ecce duos tibi Daphni! Behold four altars! lo, two for thee, Daphnis! Virg. *Eccum! eccos! eccillum!* for *ecce eum! ecce eos! ecce illum!* Plaut. *O præclārum custōdem!* Cic. *Heu me infelicem!* Ter. *Pro Deŭm hominumque* fidem! Cic.

So also *ah, eheu,* and *hem;* as, *Ăh me me!* Catull. *Eheu me misĕrum!* Ter. *Hem astutias!* Id.

The accusative is also used in exclamations without an interjection; as, *Misĕram me!* Ter. *Hominem gravem et civem egregium!* Cic.

SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ 239. The subject of the infinitive mood is put in the accusative; as,

Molestè Pompeium *id ferre constăbat,* That Pompey took that ill, was evident. Cic. Eos *hoc nomĭne appellāri fas est.* Id. *Miror* te *ad me nihil scribĕre,* I wonder that you do not write to me. Cn. Mag. in Cic. Campos *jubet esse patentes.* Virg.

Remark 1. The subject of the infinitive is omitted when it precedes in the genitive or dative case; as, *Est* adolescentis *majōres natu verēri,* sc. *eum.* Cic. Doctōris *intelligentis est natūrâ suâ duce* utentem *sic instituĕre.* Id. *Expĕdit bonas esse vobis,* sc. *vos.* Ter. *Ārmāri Volscōrum edīce maniplis.* Virg.

Rem. 2. A substantive pronoun is also sometimes omitted before the infinitive, when it is the subject of the preceding verb; as, *Pollĭcitus sum susceptūrum (esse),* sc. *me,* I promised (that I) would undertake. Ter. *Sed reddĕre posse negābat,* sc. *se.* Virg.

Rem. 3. The subject of the infinitive is often omitted, when it is a general indefinite word for person or thing; as, *Est aliud iracundum esse, aliud irātum,* sc. *hominem.* Cic.

The subject-accusative, like the nominative, is often wanting. See § 209, Rem. 3. The subject of the infinitive may be an infinitive or a clause: See § 201, IV.

For the verbs after which the subject-accusative with the infinitive is used, see § 272. For the accusative in the predicate after infinitives neuter and passive, see § 210.

VOCATIVE.

§ 240. The vocative is used, either with or without an interjection, in addressing a person or thing.

The interjections *O, heu,* and *pro,* also *ah, au, ehem, eheu, eho, ehōdum, eja, hem, heus, hui, io, ohe,* and *vah,* are often followed by the vocative; as,

O formōse puer! O beautiful boy! Virg. *Heu virgo!* Id. *Pro sancte*

Jupĭter! Cic. *Ah virgo infēlix!* Virg. *Heus Syre!* Ter. *Ohe libelle!* Mart.

The vocative is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending upon it remains; as, *O misĕræ sortis!* sc. *homĭnes.* Lucan.

NOTE. The vocative forms no part of a proposition, but serves to designate the person to whom a proposition is addressed.

ABLATIVE.

ABLATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

§ 241. Eleven prepositions are followed by the ablative.

These are *a, ab,* or *abs; absque, coram, cum, de, e* or *ex, palam, præ, pro, sine, tenus;* as,

Ab illo tempŏre, From that time. Liv. *A scribendo,* From writing. Cic. *Cum exercītu,* With the army. Sall. *Certis de causis,* For certain reasons. Cic. *Ex fugâ,* From flight. Id. *Palam populo.* Liv. *Sine labōre.* Cic. *Capŭlo tenus.* Virg.

For *in, sub, super, subter,* and *clam,* with the ablative, see § 235, (2,) &c.

REMARK 1. *Tenus* is always placed after its case. It sometimes takes the genitive, chiefly the genitive plural. See § 221, III.

REM. 2. The adverbs *procul* and *simul* are sometimes used with an ablative, which depends on a preposition understood; as, *Procul mari,* sc. *a;* Far from the sea. Liv. *Simul nobis habĭtat,* sc. *cum.* Ovid.

REM. 3. Some of the above prepositions, like those which are followed by the accusative, are occasionally used without a noun expressed; as, *Cùm coram sumus.* Cic. *Cum fratre an sine.* Id.

REM. 4. The ablative is often used without a preposition, where, in English, a preposition must be supplied. This occurs especially in poetry. In some such cases, a preposition may properly be introduced in Latin; in others, the idiom of that language does not permit it.

§ 242. Many verbs compounded with *a, ab, abs, de, e, ex,* and *super,* are followed by an ablative depending upon the preposition; as,

Abesse urbe, To be absent from the city. Cic. *Abīre sedĭbus,* To depart from their habitations. Tac. *Ut se maledictis non abstineant.* Cic. *Detrūdunt naves scopŭlo,* They push the ships from the rock. Virg. *Navi egressus est.* Nep. *Excedĕre finĭbus.* Liv. *Cæsar prœlio supersedēre statuit.* Cæs.

REMARK 1. The preposition is often repeated, or a different one is used; as, *Detrahĕre* de *tuâ famâ nunquam cogitāvi.* Cic. Ex *oculis abiērunt.* Liv. *Exīre* a *patriâ.* Cic. *Exīre* de *vitâ.* Id.

REM. 2. These compound verbs are often used without a noun; but, in many cases, it may be supplied by the mind; as, *Equites degressi ad pedes,* sc. *equis.* Liv. *Abīre ad Deos,* sc. *vitâ.* Cic.

REM. 3. Some verbs compounded with *ab, de,* and *ex,* instead of the ablative, are sometimes followed by the dative. See § 224, REM. 1 and 2. Some compounds, also, of neuter verbs, occur with the accusative. See § 233, REM. 1.

ABLATIVE AFTER CERTAIN NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS.

§ 243. *Opus* and *usus*, signifying *need*, are usually limited by the ablative; as,

Auctoritāte *tuâ nobis opus est*, We need your authority. Cic. *Nunc* animis *opus nunc* pectŏre *firmo*. Virg. *Naves*, quibus *proconsŭli usus non esset;* Ships, for which the proconsul had no occasion. Cic. *Nunc* virĭbus *usus, nunc* manĭbus *rapĭdis*. Virg.

REMARK 1. *Opus* and *usus* are sometimes followed by the ablative of a perfect participle; as, *Ita* facto *et* maturāto *opus esse*, That there was need of so doing and of hastening. Liv. *Usus* facto *est mihi*. Ter. After *opus*, a noun is sometimes expressed with the participle; as, *Opus fuit* Hirtio convento (Cic.); *Opus sibi esse* domĭno *ejus* invento (Liv.);—or a supine is used; as, *Ita* dictu *opus est*. Ter.

For the genitive and accusative after *opus* and *usus*, see § 211, REM. 11.

REM. 2. *Opus* and *usus*, signifying need, are only used with the verb *sum*. *Opus* is sometimes the subject, and sometimes the predicate, of that verb; *usus* the subject only. *Opus* is rarely followed by an ablative, except when it is the subject of the verb. The thing needed may, in general, be put either in the nominative or the ablative; as, Dux *nobis opus est* (Cic.), or Duce *nobis opus est*. The former construction is most common with neuter adjectives and pronouns, and is always used with those which denote quantity, as *tantum, quantum, plus*, &c.; as, Quod *non* opus *est, asse carum est*. Cato apud Sen.

For the ablative of character, quality, &c., limiting a noun, see § 211, REM. 6.

§ 244. *Dignus, indignus, contentus, prædĭtus*, and *fretus*, are followed by the ablative; as,

Dignus laude, Worthy of praise. Hor. *Vox popŭli* majestāte *indigna*, A speech unworthy of the dignity of the people. Cæs. *Bestiæ* eo *contentæ non quærunt amplius*. Cic. *Homo* scelĕre *prædĭtus*. Id. *Plerique* ingenio *freti*. Id.

REMARK 1. The adverb *dignè*, like *dignus*, takes the ablative after it; as, *Peccat uter nostrûm* cruce *dignius*. Hor.

REM. 2. *Dignus* and *indignus* are sometimes followed by the genitive; as, *Suscĭpe cogitatiōnem dignissĭmam tuæ* virtūtis. Cic. *Indignus* avōrum. Virg.

Instead of an ablative, they often take an infinitive, or a subjunctive clause, with *qui* or *ut;* as, *Erat dignus* amāri. Virg. *Dignus* qui impĕret. Cic. *Non sum dignus*, ut figam palum in pariĕtem. Plaut.

§ 245. I. *Utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, and *dignor*, are followed by the ablative; as,

His vocĭbus *usa est*, She used these words. Virg. *Frui* voluptāte, To enjoy pleasure. Cic. *Fungĭtur* officio, He performs his duty. Id. Oppĭdo *potiti sunt*. Liv. *Vescĭtur* aurâ. Virg. *Me dignor* honōre. Id. *Homĭnes* honōre *dignantur*. Cic.

So the compounds *abūtor*, and rarely *deūtor, perfruor, defungor*, and *perfungor*.

REMARK 1. The above verbs, except *dignor*, instead of an ablative,

sometimes take an accusative; as, *Quam* rem *medĭci utuntur*. Varr. Ingenium *frui*. Ter. *Datāmes militāre* munus *fungens*. Nep. *Gentem alĭquam* urbem *nostram potitūram putem*. Cic. *Sacras* lauros *vescar*. Tibull.

Potior is, also, found with the genitive. (See § 220, 4.) *Dignor* is used both as active and passive.

II. *Lætor, gaudeo, glorior, jacto, nitor, sto, fido, confido, muto, misceo, epŭlor, vivo, assuesco,* and *consto* (to consist of), are often followed by the ablative without a preposition; as,

Lætor tuâ dignĭtāte, I rejoice in your dignity. Cic. *Gaude tuo* bono. Id. *Suâ* victorĭâ *gloriāri*. Cæs. *Jactat* supplicio *levando*. Cic. *Nĭti* æquĭtāte. Id. *Censōris* opinĭōne *standum non putāvit*. Id. *Fidĕre* cursu. Ovid. *Corpŏris* firmĭtāte *confidĕre*. Cic. *Uvam mutat* strigĭli. Hor. *Genus pugnæ* quo *assuevĕrant*. Liv. *Quidquid* auro *et* argento *constāret*. Suet.

Remark 1. *Gaudeo* is sometimes followed by the accusative; as, *Gavīsos homĭnes suum* dolōrem. Cic. See § 232, (2.) *Fido, confido,* and *assuesco,* often take the dative. See § 223, Rem. 2,

Rem. 2. When a preposition is expressed after the above verbs, *lætor* and *gaudeo* usually take *de; glorior* and *jacto, de* or *in; nitor, sto, fido* and *confido, in; assuesco, in* or *ad; misceo, cum;* and *consto, ex.*

III. The ablative without a preposition is used after *sum*, to denote the situation or circumstances of the subject of the verb; as,

Tamen magno timōre *sum*, Yet I am in great fear. Cic. *Quanto fuĕrim* dolōre *memĭnisti*. Id. *Maxĭmo* honōre *Servius Tullius erat*. Liv. *Ut meliōre simus* loco, *ne optandum quidem est*. Cic.

But the preposition *in* is often used before such ablatives, especially if an adjective or pronoun is not joined with them; as, *Sum* in expectatiōne *omnium rerum*. Cic. *Etsi erāmus* in *magnâ* spe. Id.

§ 246. Perfect participles denoting origin are often followed by the ablative of the *source*, without a preposition.

Such are *natus, prognātus, satus, creātus, cretus, edĭtus, genĭtus, generātus, ortus;* to which may be added *oriundus*.

Thus, *Nate deâ!* O son of a goddess! Virg. *Tantălo prognātus*, Descended from Tantalus. Cic. *Satus Nereïde*, Sprung from a Nereid. Ovid. *Creātus rege*. Id. *Alcanōre creti*. Virg. *Edīte regĭbus*. Hor. *Diis genĭte*. Virg. *Argolĭco generātus Alemōne*. Ovid. *Ortus nullis majorĭbus*. Hor. *Cœlesti semĭne oriundi*. Lucr.

Remark 1. The preposition is also rarely omitted after *nascor;* as, *Ut* patre *certo nascerēre*. Cic. So, *Fortes creantur* fortĭbus. Hor.

Rem. 2. The prepositions *a* or *ab, de, e* or *ex*, are often expressed after these participles, especially in prose.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, &c.

§ 247. Nouns denoting the cause, manner, means, and instrument, after adjectives and verbs, are put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

Animus æger avaritiâ, A mind diseased through avarice. Sall. *Pallēre* metu, To be pale through fear. Ovid. *Quod* sævitiâ *temporis non capi potĕrat.* Sall.——*Omnibus* modis *miser sum*, I am every way miserable. Ter. Silentio *auditus est*, He was heard in silence. Cic. *Lento* gradu *procēdit.* Val. Max.——*Amicos* observantiâ, *rem* parsimoniâ *retinuit;* He retained his friends by attention, his property by frugality. Cic. Auro ostróque *decōri.* Virg. Vi *morbi consumptus es.* Cic. *Ægrescit* medendo. Virg. ——*Trabs securia* secūri, A tree cut with the axe. Ovid. *Cæsus est* virgis, He was beaten with rods. Cic. *Laniābant* dentĭbus *artus.* Virg.

Remark 1. When the *cause* is a voluntary agent, it is put in the accusative with the preposition *ob*, *propter*, or *per;* as, *Non est æquum me* propter vos *decīpi.* Ter. These prepositions, and *a* or *ab*, *de*, *e* or *ex*, and *præ*, are also sometimes used when the cause is not a voluntary agent; as, Ob adulterium *cæsi.* Virg. *Nec loqui* præ mœrōre *potuit.* Cic.

Rem. 2. After active verbs, the *cause* is seldom expressed by the simple ablative, but either by a preposition, or by the ablatives *causâ*, *gratiâ*, &c., with a genitive; as, *Si hoc* honōris *mei* causâ *suscepĕris.* Cic. With *causâ*, &c., the adjective pronoun is commonly used, for the corresponding substantive pronoun; as, *Te abesse* meâ causâ, *molestè fero.* Cic. Sometimes the ablative with *ductus*, *motus*, *captus*, &c., is used; as, *Mihi* benevolentiâ ductus *tribuĕbat omnia.* Cic.

Rem. 3. The *manner* is often expressed with *cum*, especially when an adjective is joined with it; as, *Quum vidēret oratōres* cum severitāte *audīri.* Cic. Magno cum metu *dicēre incipio.* Id. Sometimes also with *e* or *ex;* as, *Ex industriâ*, On purpose. Liv. *Ex integro*, Anew. Quinct.

Rem. 4. The *means* is often expressed by *per* with an accusative; as, *Quod* per scelus *adeptus est.* Cic. When it is a voluntary agent, it can only be so expressed, or by the ablative *opĕrâ* with a genitive or possessive pronoun; as, Per præcōnem *vendēre aliquid.* Cic. Opĕrâ eōrum *effectum est.* Just. *Non* meâ opĕrâ *evēnit.* Ter. Yet persons are sometimes considered as involuntary agents, and as such expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, Servos, quibus *silvas publĭcas depopulātus erat.* Cic.

Rem. 5. The *instrument* is rarely used with a preposition. The poets, however, sometimes prefix to it *a* or *ab*, and even *sub*, and sometimes other prepositions; as, *Trajectus* ab ense. Ovid. *Exercēre solum* sub vomĕre. Virg. *Cum*, with the instrument, is seldom used except by inferior writers; as, Cum voce *maximâ conclamāre.* Gell.

§ 248. I. The voluntary agent of a verb in the passive voice is put in the ablative with *a* or *ab;* as,

(In the active voice,) *Clodius me dilĭgit*, Clodius loves me (Cic.); (in the passive,) A Clodio *dilĭgor*, I am loved by Clodius. *Laudātur* ab his, *culpātur* ab illis. Hor.

Remark 1. The general word for persons, after verbs in the passive voice, is often understood; as, *Probĭtas laudātur*, sc. *ab homĭnibus.* Juv. So after the passive of neuter verbs; as, *Discurrĭtur.* Virg. *Toto certātum est corpŏre regni.* Id.

The agent is likewise often understood, when it is the same as the subject of the verb, and the expression is equivalent to the active voice with a reflexive pronoun, or to the middle voice in Greek; as, *Cùm omnes in omni genĕre scelĕrum volutentur*, sc. *a se.* Cic.

Rem. 2. *Neuter* verbs, also, are often followed by an ablative of the voluntary agent with *a* or *ab;* as,

M. Marcellus periit ab Annibăle, M. Marcellus was killed by Hannibal. Plin. *Ne vir* ab hoste *cadat*. Ovid.

REM. 3. The preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Nec* conjŭge *captus*. Ovid. *Colĭtur linigĕrâ* turbâ. Id.

For the dative of the agent after the passive voice, and participles in *dus*, see § 225, II. and III.

II. The *involuntary* agent of an active verb in the passive voice, is put in the ablative without a preposition, as the cause, means, or instrument; as (in the active voice), *Terror conficit omnia* (Lucan.);—(in the passive), *Maxĭmo* dolōre *conficior*. Cic. *Frangi* cupiditāte. Id.

But the involuntary agent is sometimes considered as voluntary, and takes *a* or *ab*; as, A voluptatĭbus *desĕri*. Cic. A natūrâ *datum homĭni vivendi curriculum*. Id.

§ 249. I. A noun denoting that *with* which the action of a verb is performed, though not the instrument, is put in the ablative without a preposition.

REMARK 1. This construction is used with verbs signifying to fill, to furnish, to load, to array, to adorn, to enrich, and many others of various significations; as,

Terrōre *implētur Africa*, Africa is filled with terror. Sil. *Instruxēre* epŭlis *mensas*, They furnished the tables with food. Ovid. *Ut ejus animum his* opinionĭbus *imbuas*, That you should imbue his mind with these sentiments. Cic. *Naves onĕrant* auro, They load the ships with gold. Virg. *Cumŭlat altaria* donis, He heaps the altars with gifts. Id. *Terra se* gramĭne *vestit*, The earth clothes itself with grass. Id. *Mollĭbus ornābat cornua* sertis. Id. *Me tanto* honōre *honestas*. Plaut. Equis *Africam locupletāvit*. Colum. *Studium tuum nullâ me novâ* voluptāte *affĕcit*. Cic. *Terram nox obruit* umbris. Lucr.

REM. 2. Several verbs, denoting to fill, instead of the ablative, sometimes take a genitive. See § 220, 3.

II. A noun denoting that in *accordance* with which any thing is, or is done, is often put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

Nostro more, According to our custom. Cic. Institūto *suo Cæsar copias suas eduxit;* Cæsar, according to his practice, led out his forces. Cæs. *Id factum* consilio *meo*. Ter. *Pacem fecit his* conditionĭbus. Nep.

The prepositions *de*, *ex*, and *pro*, are often expressed with such nouns.

III. The ablative denoting *accompaniment*, is usually joined with *cum;* as,

Vagāmur egentes cum conjugĭbus *et* libĕris; Needy, we wander with our wives and children. Cic. *Sæpe admirāri soleo* cum *hoc* C. Lælio. Cic. *Julium* cum *his ad te* litĕris *misi*. Id. *Ingressus est* cum gladio. Id. But *cum* is sometimes omitted, especially before words denoting military forces; as, *Ad castra Cæsăris omnĭbus* copiis *contendĕrunt*. Cæs. *Inde toto* exercĭtu *profectus*. Liv.

§ 250. A noun, adjective, or verb, may be followed by the ablative, denoting *in what respect* their signification is taken; as,

Pietāte filius, consiliis parens; In affection a son, in counsel a parent. Cic. *Reges nomĭne magis quàm imperio,* Kings in name rather than in authority. Nep. *Oppĭdum nomĭne Bibrax.* Cæs.——*Jure peritus,* Skilled in law. Cic. *Anxius animo,* Anxious in mind. Tac. *Pedĭbus æger,* Lame in his feet. Sall. *Crine ruber, niger ore.* Mart. *Fronte lætus.* Tac. *Major natu.* Cic. *Maxĭmus natu.* Liv.——*Animo angi,* To be troubled in mind. Cic. *Contremisco totâ mente et omnĭbus artŭbus,* I am agitated in my whole mind and in every limb. Id. *Captus mente,* Affected in mind, *i. e.* deprived of reason. Id. *Altĕro oculo capĭtur.* Liv. *Ingenii laude floruit.* Cic. *Pollĕre nobilitāte.* Tac. *Animoque et corpŏre torpet.* Hor.

REMARK 1. To this principle may be referred the following rules:—

(1.) Adjectives of plenty or want are sometimes limited by the ablative; as,

Domus plena servis, A house full of servants. Juv. *Dives agris,* Rich in land. Hor. *Ferax sæculum bonis artĭbus.* Plin.——*Inops verbis,* Deficient in words. Cic. *Orba fratrĭbus,* Destitute of brothers. Ovid *Viduum arborĭbus solum.* Colum.

(2.) Verbs signifying to abound, and to be destitute, are followed by the ablative; as,

Scatentem belluis pontum, The sea abounding in monsters. Hor. *Urbs redundat militĭbus,* The city is full of soldiers. Auct. ad Her. *Villa abundat porco, hœdo, agno, gallinâ, lacte, caseo, melle.* Cic.——*Virum qui pecuniâ egeat,* A man who is in want of money. Id. *Carĕre culpâ,* To be free from fault. Id. *Mea adolescentia indĭget illorum bonâ* existimatiōne. Id. *Abundat* audaciâ, consilio *et* ratiōne *deficĭtur.* Id.

To this rule belong *abundo, exubĕro, redundo, scateo, affluo, circumfluo, diffluo, superfluo;—careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco, deficior, destituor,* &c.

REM. 2. The *genitive* is often used to denote *in what respect,* after adjectives and verbs; (see §§ 213 and 220;) sometimes, also, the *accusative.* See § 234, II.

REM. 3. The ablative denoting *in respect to,* or *concerning,* is used after *facio* and *sum,* without a preposition; as, *Quid hoc* homĭne *faciātis?* What can you do with this man? Cic. *Nescit quid faciat* auro. Plaut. *Metum cepērunt quidnam* se *futūrum esset.* Liv. In this construction, the preposition *de* seems to be understood, and is sometimes expressed; as, *Quid* de Tulliŏlâ *meâ fiet.* Cic.

§ 251. A noun denoting that of which any thing is deprived, or from which it is separated, is often put in the ablative without a preposition.

This construction occurs after verbs signifying to deprive, to free, to debar, to drive away, to remove, and others of similar meaning. Thus,

Nudantur arbŏres foliis, The trees are stripped of leaves. Plin. *Hoc me libĕra* metu, Free me from this fear. Ter. *Tune eam philosophiam sequēre, quæ spoliat nos* judicio, *privat* approbatiōne, *orbat* sensĭbus? Cic. *Solvit se Teucria* luctu. Virg. *Te illis* sedĭbus *arcĕbit.* Cic. *Q. Varium pellĕre* possessionĭbus *conātus est.* Id. *Quod M. Catōnem* tribunātu *tuo removisses.* Id *Me leves chori secernunt* populo. Hor.

To this rule belong *fraudo, nudo, orbo, privo, spolio;—arceo, expedio, intercludo, lazo, levo, libĕro, moveo, removeo, pello, prohibeo,* &c.

Remark 1. Most of the above verbs are more or less frequently followed by *a, ab, de, e,* or *ex;* as, *Arcem* ab incendio *liberāvit.* Cic. *Solvĕre belluam* ex catēnis. Auct. ad Her. *Remŏve te* a suspiciōne. Cic.

For *arceo,* &c., with the dative, see § 224, Rem. 2.

Rem. 2. The active verbs *induo, exuo, dono, impertio, adspergo, inspergo, intercludo, circumdo, prohibeo,* instead of an ablative of the thing with an accusative of the person, sometimes take an accusative of the thing, and a dative of the person; as, *Unam (vestem) juvĕni induit,* He puts one upon the youth. Virg. *Donāre munĕra civĭbus,* To present gifts to the citizens. Cic.

Interdico is sometimes used with a dative of the person and an ablative of the thing; as, *Quibus cùm* aquâ *et* ignī *interdixissent.* Cæs.

Abdico takes sometimes an ablative, and sometimes an accusative of the thing renounced; as, *Abdicāre se* magistrātu. Cic. *Abdicāre* magistrātum. Sall.

ABLATIVE OF PRICE.

§ 252. The price of a thing is put in the ablative, except when expressed by the adjectives *tanti, quanti, pluris, minōris;* as,

Cùm te trecentis talentis *regi Cotto vendidisses,* When you had sold yourself to king Cottus for three hundred talents. Cic. *Vendĭdit hic* auro *patriam,* This one sold his country for gold. Virg. *Cibus uno* asse *venālis.* Plin. *Constĭtit quadringentis* millĭbus. Varr. *Denis in diem* assĭbus *animam et corpus (millĭtum) æstimāri.* Tac. *Vendo meum non* pluris *quàm cetĕri, fortasse etiam* minōris. Cic.

Remark 1. *Tantīdem, quanticunque, quantiquanti,* and *quantīvis,* compounds of *tanti* and *quanti,* are also put in the genitive; as, Tantīdem *frumentum emĕrunt* quantīdem..... Cic. *Majōris* also is thus used in Phædrus; *Multò* majōris *alāpæ mecum veneunt.*

Rem. 2. When joined with a noun, *tanti, quanti,* &c., are put in the ablative; as, *Quam* tanto pretio *mercātus est.* Cic. *Cùm* pretio minōre *redimendi captīvos copia fĭĕret.* Liv. *Tanto, quanto,* and *plure,* are sometimes, though rarely, found without a noun; as, Plure *venit.* Cic.

Rem. 3. The ablative of price is often an adjective without a noun; as, *magno, permagno, parvo, paulūlo, tantŭlo, minimo, plurimo, vili, nimio.* These adjectives refer to some noun understood, as *pretio, ære,* and the like, which are sometimes expressed; as, *Parvo* pretio *ea vendidisse.* Cic.

Rem. 4. With *valeo* an accusative is sometimes used; as, *Denarii dicti, quòd* denos *æris valĕbant.* Varr.

ABLATIVE OF TIME.

§ 253. A noun denoting the time at or within which any thing is said to be, or to be done, is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

Die *quinto decessit,* He died on the fifth day. Nep. *Hoc* tempŏre, At this time. Cic. *Tertiâ* vigĭliâ *eruptiōnem fecērunt,* They made a sally at

the third watch. Cæs. *Ut hiĕme navĭges*, That you should sail in the winter. Cic. *His ipsis* diĕbus *hostem persĕqui*. Cic. *Proxĭmo* triennio *omnes gentes subĕgit*. Nep. *Vel* pace *vel* bello *clarum fĭĕri licet*. Sall. Ludis *mane servum quidam egĕrat*, On the day of the games.... Liv. So *Latīnis, gladiatorĭbus, comitĭis*, denote the time of the Latin festivals, the gladiatorial shows, &c.

Remark 1. When a precise time is marked by its distance before or after another fixed time, it may be expressed by *ante* or *post* with either the accusative or the ablative; as, *Aliquot* ante *annos*. Suet. *Paucis* ante *diĕbus*. Liv. *Paucos* post *dies*. Cic. *Multis annis* post Decemvīros. Id.

Sometimes *quàm* and a verb are added to *post* and *ante* with either the accusative or the ablative; as, Ante *paucos* quàm *perīret menses*. Suet. *Paucis* post *diĕbus* quàm *Lucâ discessĕrat*. Cic. *Post* is sometimes omitted before *quàm;* as, *Die vigesĭmâ* quàm *creātus erat*. Liv.

Instead of *postquam, ex quo* or *quum*, or a relative agreeing with the preceding ablative, may be used; as, *Octo diĕbus*, quibus *has lĭtĕras dabam*, Eight days from the date of these letters. Cic. *Mors Roscii, quatriduo* quo *is occīsus est, Chrysogŏno nuntiātur*. Id.

Rem. 2. Precise *past* time is often denoted by *abhinc* with the accusative or ablative; as, *Quæstor fuisti* abhinc annos *quatuordĕcim*. Cic. *Comitiis jam* abhinc *triginta* diĕbus *habĭtis*. Id.

Rem. 3. The time at which any thing is done, is sometimes expressed by the neuter accusative *id*, with a genitive; as, *Venit id tempŏris*. Cic. So with a preposition; *Ad id dĭēi*. Gell. See § 212, Rem. 3.

Rem. 4. The time *at* or *within* which any thing is done, is sometimes expressed by *in* or *de*, with the ablative; as, In *his* diĕbus. Plaut. In *tali* tempŏre. Liv. De *tertiâ* vigiliâ *ad hostes contendit*. Cæs. *Surgunt* de nocte *latrōnes*. Hor. So with *sub;* Sub *ipsâ* die. Plin.

The time within which any thing occurs, is also sometimes expressed by *intra* with the accusative; as, *Dimidiam partem natiōnum subĕgit* intra *viginti* dies. Plaut. Intra *decĭmum* diem, *quàm Pheras venĕrat;* Within ten days after.... Liv.

For the ablative denoting duration of time, or extent of space, see § 236.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

§ 254. The name of a town in which any thing is said to be, or to be done, if of the third declension or plural number, is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

Alexander Babylōne *est mortuus*, Alexander died at Babylon. Cic. Thebis *nutrītus an* Argis, Whether brought up at Thebes or at Argos. Hor.

Remark 1. The ablative *rure*, or more commonly *ruri*, is used to denote *in the country;* as, *Pater filium* ruri *habitāre jussit*. Cic.

Rem. 2. The preposition *in* is sometimes expressed with names of towns; as, In Philippis *quidam nunciāvit*. Suet.

Names of towns of the first and second declension, and singular number, and also *domus* and *humus*, are in like manner sometimes put in the ablative. See § 221.

Rem. 3. Before the names of countries and of all other places in which any thing is said to be done, except those of towns, and *domus* and *rus*

the preposition *in* with the ablative is commonly used; as, *Aio hoc fĭĕri* in Græciâ. Plaut. *Lucus* in urbe *fuit*. Virg.

But the preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Milĭtes stativis* castris *habēbat*. Sall. *Magnis in laudĭbus fuit totâ* Græciâ. Nep. *Insidiæ* terrâ marĭque *factæ sunt*. Cic. *Navĭta* puppe *sedens*. Ovid. *Ibam forte* vĭâ *sacrâ*. Hor. Urbe *totâ*. Cic.

For names of countries in the genitive, see § 221, Rem. 1.

§ 255. After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of a town whence the motion proceeds, is put in the ablative, without a preposition; as,

Brundisio *profecti sumus*, We departed from Brundisium. Cic. Corinthi *arcessivit colōnos*, He sent for colonists from Corinth. Nep.

Remark 1. The ablatives *domo*, *humo*, and *rure* or *ruri*, are used, like names of towns, to denote the place whence motion proceeds; as,

Domo *profectus*, Having set out from home. Nep. *Surgit* humo *juvĕnis*. The youth rises from the ground. Ovid. Rure *huc advĕnit*. Ter. *Si* rure *veniet*. Id. Virgil uses *domus* with *unde;* as, *Qui genus? unde domo?* With an adjective, *rure*, and not *ruri*, must be used.

Rem. 2. With names of towns, and *domus*, and *humus*, *ab* or *ex* is sometimes used; as, *Ab Alexandriâ profectus*. Cic. *Ex domo*. Id. *Ab humo*. Virg.

Rem. 3. With other names of places whence motion proceeds, *ab* or *ex* is commonly expressed; as, Ex Asiâ *transis in Europam*. Curt. Ex castris *proficiscuntur*. Cæs.

But the preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Litĕræ* Macedoniâ *allātæ*. Liv. *Classis* Cypro *advĕnit*. Curt. *Cessissent* loco Liv. *Ite* sacris, *properāte* sacris, *laurumque* capillis *ponīte*. Ovid. Finĭbus *omnes prosiluēre suis*. Virg. *Advolvunt ingentes* montĭbus *ornos*. Id. This omission of the preposition is most common in the poets.

ABLATIVE AFTER COMPARATIVES.

§ 256. When two objects are compared by means of the comparative degree, a conjunction, as *quàm*, *atque*, &c., is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted.

The comparative degree is followed by the ablative, when *quàm* is omitted; as,

Nihil est virtūte *formosius*, Nothing is more beautiful than virtue. Cic. *Quis* C. Lælio *comior?* Who is more courteous than C. Lælius? Id.

Remark 1. An object which is compared with the subject of a proposition by means of the comparative degree, is usually put in the ablative without *quàm;* as,

Sidĕre *pulchrior ille est, tu levior* cortĭce. Hor. *Quid magis est durum* saxo, *quid mollius* undâ? Ovid. Hoc *nemo fuit minùs ineptus*. Ter. *Albānum, Mæcēnas, sive Falernum te magis* appositis *delectat*. Hor.

Rem. 2. An object compared with a person or thing addressed, is also put in the ablative without *quàm;* as, *O fons Bandusiæ splendidior* vitro! Hor.

Rem. 3. *Quàm* is sometimes used when one of the objects compared is the subject of a proposition, and then both are in the same case, either nominative or accusative; as, *Oratio* quàm habĭtus *fuit miserabilior*. Cic. *Affirmo nullam esse laudem ampliōrem* quàm eam. Id.

Rem. 4. If neither of the objects compared is the subject of a sentence or a person addressed, *quàm* is commonly used, and the object which follows it is put in the nominative with *sum*, and sometimes in an oblique case to agree with the other object; as, *Non opĭnor negatūrum esse te, homĭni non gratiosiōri*, quàm Cn. Calidius est, *argentum reddidisse*. Cic. *Ego homĭnem callidiōrem vidi nemĭnem* quàm Phormiōnem. Ter.

The following example illustrates both the preceding constructions:—*Ut tibi multò majōri*, quàm Africānus fuit, *tamen* (*me*) *non multò minōrem* quàm Lælium *adjunctum esse patiāre*. Cic.

Rem. 5. But when the former object of comparison is in the accusative, though not the subject of the verb, the latter, if a relative pronoun, is put in the ablative without *quàm*; as, *Attălo*, quo *graviōrem inimīcum non habui, sorōrem dedit*; He gave his sister to Attalus, *than whom*, &c. Curt.

This construction is often found with other pronouns, and sometimes with a noun; as, Hoc *nihil gratius facĕre potes*. Cic. *Causam enim suscepisti antiquiōrem* memoriâ *tuâ*. Id. *Exĕgi monumentum* ære *perennius*. Hor. *Majōra* virĭbus *audes*. Virg. *Nullam sacrâ* vite *priùs sevĕris arbŏrem*. Hor.

Rem. 6. *Plus*, *minus*, and *amplius*, are often used without *quàm*, and yet are commonly followed by the same case as if it were expressed; as,

Hostium plus quinque millia *cæsi eo die*, More than five thousand of the enemy were slain that day. Liv. *Ferre plus dimidiāti mensis* cibaria. Cic. *Non amplius quingentos* cives *desiderāvit*. Cæs. *Sedĕcim non amplius* legionĭbus *defensum imperium est*. Liv. *Madefactum iri minus triginta* diĕbus *Græcium sanguĭne*. Cic. The ablatives in the last two examples do not depend upon the comparatives, but may be referred to § 236.

Before the dative and vocative, *quàm* must be expressed after these words.

The ablative is sometimes used with these as with other comparatives; as, *Dies triginta aut plus* eo *in navi fui*. Ter. Triennio *amplius*. Cic.

Rem. 7. *Quàm* is in like manner sometimes omitted, without a change of case, after *major*, *minor*, and some other comparatives; as, *Obsĭdes ne minōres octōnûm denûm* annōrum *neu majōres quinûm* quadragēnûm,.... of not less than eighteen, nor more than forty-five years of age. Liv. *Ex urbāno exercĭtu, qui minōres quinque et triginta* annis *erant, in naves impostti sunt*. The genitive and ablative, in these and similar examples, is to be referred to § 211, Rem. 6. *Longiùs ab urbe* mille *passuum*. Liv. Annos *natus magis quadraginta*. Cic.

Rem. 8. When the second member of a comparison is an infinitive or clause, *quàm* is always expressed; as, *Nihil est in dicendo majus* quàm ut faveat oratōri audĭtor. Cic.

Rem. 9. Certain nouns, participles, and adjectives,—as *opiniōne*, *spe*, *expectatiōne*, *fide*,—*dicto*, *solĭto*,—*æquo*, *credibĭli*, and *justo*,—are used in the ablative after comparatives; as, Opiniōne *celeriùs ventūrus esse dicĭtur*.... sooner than is expected. Cæs. Dicto *citiùs tumĭda æquŏra placat*. Virg. *Injurias graviùs* æquo *habēre*. Sall.

These ablatives supply the place of a clause: thus, *graviùs æquo* is

equivalent to *gravius quàm quod æquum est*. They are often omitted; as, *Liberius vivĕbat*, sc. *æquo*. Nep. In such cases, the comparative may be translated by the positive degree, with *too* or *rather*, as in the above example—"He lived too freely," or "rather freely." So *tristior*, sc. *solĭto*, rather sad.

Rem. 10. With *inferior*, the dative is sometimes used, instead of the ablative; as, *Vir nullâ arte* cuiquam *inferior*. Sall. The ablative is also found, but usually *inferior* is followed by *quàm*.

Rem. 11. *Quàm pro* is used after comparatives, to express disproportion; as, *Prælium atrocius quàm pro numĕro pugnantium*, The battle was more severe than was to be expected, considering the number of the combatants. Liv.

Rem. 12. When two different qualities of the same object are compared, both the adjectives which express them are put in the positive degree with *magis quàm*, or in the comparative connected by *quàm*; as, *Perfectam artem juris civĭlis habebĭtis, magis* magnam *atque* ubĕrem, *quàm* difficĭlem *atque* obscūram. Cic. *Triumphus* clarior *quàm* gratior, A triumph more famous than acceptable. Liv.

Rem. 13. *Magis* is sometimes expressed with a comparative; as, *Quis* magis *queat esse* beatior? Virg.

So also the prepositions *præ, ante, præter*, and *supra*, are sometimes used with a comparative; as, *Unus* præ cetĕris *fortior exsurgit*. Apul. *Scelĕre* ante alios *immanior omnes*. Virg. They also occur with a superlative; as, Ante alios *carissĭmus*. Nep. Yet these prepositions denote comparison with a positive, and therefore seem redundant in such examples. See § 127.

Rem. 14. *Alius* may be construed like comparatives, and is sometimes, though rarely, followed by the ablative; as, *Neve putes alium* sapiente bonōque *beātum*. Hor.

Rem. 15. *Ac* and *atque* are sometimes used after the comparative degree, like *quàm*; as, *Arctius* atque *hedĕrâ procēra adstringĭtur ilex*. Hor.

Rem. 16. The degree of difference between objects compared is expressed by the ablative.

(1.) *Absolute difference* is usually denoted by nouns; as, *Minor uno* mense, Younger by one month. Hor. Sesquipĕde *quàm tu longior*. Plaut. *Hibernia* dimidio *minor quàm Britannia*. Cæs. Dimidio *minōris constābit*. Cic. *Quàm molestum est uno* digĭto *plus habēre!*....to exceed by a finger, to have six fingers. Cic. *Supĕrat* capĭte *et* cervicĭbus *altis*. Virg.

(2.) *Relative difference* is denoted by neuter adjectives of quantity, and pronouns, in the singular number. Such are *tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, parvo, paulo, nimio, aliquanto, altĕro tanto* (twice as much); as, Quanto *sumus superiōres*, tanto *nos submissiùs gerāmus;* The more eminent we are, the more humbly let us conduct ourselves. Cic. Eo *gravior est dolor*, quo *culpa est major*. Cic. Quo *difficilius*, hoc *præclarius*. Id. *Iter* multo *facilius*. Cæs. Parvo *brevius*. Plin. Eo *magis*. Cic. Eo *minus*. Id. *Via* altĕro tanto *longior*. Nep. Multo *id maxĭmum fuit*. Liv. Relative difference is also expressed by the phrase *multis partĭbus;* as, *Numĕro multis partĭbus esset inferior*. Cæs.

Note. The accusatives *tantum, quantum*, and *aliquantum*, are sometimes used instead of the corresponding ablatives; as, Aliquantum *est ad rem avidior*. Ter. So the adverb *longè;* as, *Longè nobilissĭmus*. Cæs.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

§ 257. A noun and a participle are put in the ablative, called *absolute*, to denote the time, cause, or concomitant of an action, or the condition on which it depends; as,

Pythagŏras, Tarquinio Superbo regnante, *in Italiam venit;* Tarquinius Superbus reigning, Pythagoras came into Italy. Cic. *Lupus*, stimulante fame, *captat ovile;* Hunger inciting, the wolf seeks the fold. Ovid. *Hac* oratiōne habītâ, *concilium dimīsit.* Cæs. *Galli*, re cognītâ, *obsidiōnem relinquunt.* Id. Virtūte exceptâ, *nihil amicitiâ præstabilius putētis.* Cic.

Remark 1. This construction is an abridged form of expression, equivalent to a dependent clause introduced by *cùm*, or some other conjunction. Thus, for *Tarquinio regnante*, the expression *dum Tarquinius regnābat* might be used; for *hac oratiōne habītâ, cùm hanc oratiōnem habuisset*, or *cùm hæc oratio habīta esset,—concilium dimīsit.* The ablative absolute may always be resolved into a proposition, by making the noun or pronoun the subject, and the participle the predicate.

Rem. 2. This construction is common only with present and perfect participles. Instances of its use with participles in *rus* and *dus* are comparatively rare; as, Cæsăre ventūro, *Phosphŏre, redde diem.* Mart. Irruptūris *tam infestis* nationĭbus. Liv. *Quis est enim, qui, nullis officiis* præceptis tradendis, *philosŏphum se audeat dicĕre.* Cic.

Rem. 3. A noun is put in the ablative absolute, only when it denotes a different person or thing from any in the leading clause.

Yet a few examples occur of a deviation from this principle; a substantive pronoun being sometimes put in the ablative absolute, though referring to the subject, or some other word in the leading clause; as, Se audiente, *scribit Thucydides.* Cic. *Legio ex castris Varrōnis*, adstante *et* inspectante ipso, *signa sustŭlit.* Cæs. Me duce, *ad hunc voti finem*, me milĭte, *veni.* Ovid. *Lætos fecit*, se consŭle, *fastos* Lucan.

Rem. 4. The ablative absolute serves to mark the time of an action, by reference to that of another action. If the present participle is used, the time of the action expressed by the principal verb, is the same as that of the participle. If the perfect is used, it denotes an action prior to that expressed by the principal verb.

Thus in the preceding examples—*Pythagŏras, Tarquinio Superbo regnante, in Italiam venit;* Pythagoras came into Italy *during the reign* of Tarquinius Superbus. *Galli, re cognītâ, obsidiōnem relinquunt;* The Gauls, *having learned* the fact, abandon the siege.

Rem. 5. The construction of the ablative absolute with the perfect passive participle, arises frequently from the want of a participle of that tense in the active voice. Thus, for "Cæsar, having sent forward the cavalry, was following with all his forces," we find, "*Cæsar*, equitātu præmisso, *subsequebātur omnĭbus copiis.*"

As the perfect participle in Latin may be used for both the perfect active and perfect passive participles in English, its meaning can, in many instances, be determined only by the connection, the agent with *a* or *ab* not being expressed after this participle, as it usually is after the passive voice.

Thus, *Cæsar*, his dictis, *concilium dimisit*, might be rendered, "Cæsar, *having said this*, or *this having been said* (by some other person), dismissed the assembly."

As the perfect participles of deponent verbs correspond to perfect active participles in English, no such necessity exists for the use of the ablative absolute with them; as, *Cæsar*, hæc locūtus, *concilium dimīsit*. In the following example, both constructions are united: *Ităque.....agros Remōrum* depopulāti, *omnĭbus vicis, ædificiisque* incensis. Cæs.

Rem. 6. The perfect participles of neuter deponent verbs, and some also of active deponents, which admit of both an active and passive sense, are used in the ablative absolute; as, *Ortâ luce*. Cæs. *Vel extincto vel* elapso anĭmo, *nullum residēre sensum*. Cic. *Tam* multis *gloriam ejus* adeptis. Plin. *Lĭtĕras ad exercĭtus, tanquam* adepto principātu, *misit*. Tac.

Rem. 7. As the verb *sum* has no present participle, two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, which might be the subject and predicate of a dependent clause, are put in the ablative absolute without a participle; as,

Quid, adolescentŭlo duce, *efficĕre possent*; What they could do, a youth (being) their leader. Cæs. Me suasōre *atque* impulsōre, *hoc factum*. Plaut. *Annibăle vivo*. Nep. *Invītâ Minervâ*. Hor. With names of office, the ablative absolute often denotes the time of an event; as, *Romam venit* Mario consŭle, He came to Rome in the consulship of Marius. Cic.

Rem. 8. A clause sometimes supplies the place of the noun; as, *Nondum comperto* quam in regiōnem venisset rex. Liv. *Audīto* venisse nuncium. Tac. Vale *dicto*. Ovid. *Haud cuiquam dubio* quin hostium essent. Liv. *Juxta periculōso* vera an ficta proměret. Tac.

Rem. 9. The noun is, in some instances, wanting; as, *In amnis transgressu, multùm* certāto, *Bardesănes vicit*. Tac. *Difficĭlis mihi ratio, cui*, errāto, *nulla venia, rectè* facto, *exigua laus proponītur*. Cic. Serēno *per totum diem*. Liv.

This use of *certāto* and *errāto* corresponds to the impersonal construction of the passive voice of neuter verbs, while *facto* and *serēno* may be referred to some general word understood.

Rem. 10. The ablative is sometimes connected to the preceding clause by a conjunction; as, *Cæsar*, quanquam obsidiōne *Massiliæ* retardante, *brevi tamen omnia subĕgit*. Suet. *Decemvīri non* ante, quam perlātis legĭbus, *depositūros imperium esse aiēbant*. Liv.

CONNECTION OF TENSES.

§ **258.** Tenses may be divided, in regard to their connection, into two classes. Those which belong to the same class are called *similar;* those which belong to different classes are called *dissimilar*.

Of the first class are the *present*, the *perfect definite*, and the *futures*, with the periphrastic forms in *sim* and *fŭrim*. Of the second class are the *imperfect*, the *perfect indefinite*, and the *pluperfect*, with the periphrastic forms in *essem* and *fuissem*.

I. Similar tenses only can, in general, be made to depend on

each other, by means of those connectives which are followed by the subjunctive mood.

1. In clauses thus connected, the present, perfect, and the periphrastic forms with *sim* and *fuĕrim*, may depend on,

(1.) The PRESENT; as, *Non* sum *ita hebes, ut istuc* dĭcam. Cic. *Quantum dolōrem* accepĕrim, *tu existimāre* potes. Id. *Nec* dubĭto *quin reĭtus ejus reipublĭcæ salutāris* futūrus sit. Id.

(2.) The PERFECT DEFINITE; as, *Satis* provīsum est, *ut ne quid agĕre* possint. Id. *Quis musĭcis, quis huic studio literārum se* dedĭdit, *quin omnem illārum artium vim* comprehendĕrit. Id. *Defectiōnes solis* prædictæ sunt, *quæ, quantæ, quando* futūræ sint. Id.

(3.) The FUTURES; as, *Sic facillĭmè, quanta oratōrum* sit, *semperque* fuĕrit *paucĭtas*, judicābit. Id. *Ad quos dies* reditūrus sim, scribam *ad te*. Id. *Si* sciĕris *aspĭdem latēre uspĭam, et velle aliquem super eam assidēre, cujus mors tibi emolumentum* factūra sit, *imprōbè* fecĕris, *nisi* monuĕris, *ne* assideat. Id.

2. So the imperfect, pluperfect, and periphrastic forms with *essem* and *fuissem*, may depend on,

(1.) The IMPERFECT; as, *Unum illud* extimescēbam, *ne quid turpĭter* facĕrem, *vel jam* effecissem. Cic. *Non enim* dubitābam, *quin eas libenter* lectūrus esses. Id.

(2.) The PERFECT INDEFINITE; as, Veni *in ejus villam ut libros inde* promĕrem. Id. *Hæc cùm* essent nuntiāta, *Valerĭis classem extemplo ad ostium flumĭnis* duxit. Liv. *Ne Clodius quidem de insidiis* cogitāvit, *siquĭdem* exitūrus *ad cædem e villâ non* fuisset. Cic.

(3.) The PLUPERFECT; as, *Pavor* cepĕrat *mīlites, ne mortifĕrum* esset *vulnus*. Liv. *Ego ex ipso* audiĕram, *quàm a te liberalĭter* esset tractātus. Cic. *Non satis mihi* constitĕrat, *cum aliquāne animi mei molestiâ, an potius libenter te Athēnis* visūrus essem. Id.

REMARK 1. When the present is used in narration for the perfect indefinite, it may, like the latter, be followed by the imperfect; as, *Legātos* mittunt, *ut pacem* impetrārent. Cæs.

REM. 2. The perfect definite is often followed by the imperfect, even when a present action or state is spoken of, if it is not confined to the present; as, Sunt *philosŏphi et* fuĕrunt, *qui omnĭno nullam habēre* censērent *humanārum rerum procuratiōnem Deos*. Cic.

REM. 3. The perfect indefinite is not regularly followed by the perfect subjunctive, as the latter is not, in general, used in reference to past action indefinite. See § 260, I. REM. 1.

These tenses are, however, sometimes used in connection, in the narrative of a past event, especially in Livy and Cornelius Nepos; as, *In Æquis varĭè* bellātum est, *adeo ut in incerto* fuĕrit, *vicissent, victīne essent*. Liv. Factum est, *ut plus quàm collēgæ Miltiădes* valuĕrit. Nep.

The imperfect and perfect are even found together after the perfect indefinite, when one action is represented as permanent or repeated, and the other simply as a fact; as, *Adeo nihil* miserĭti sunt, *ut incursiōnes* facĕrent *et Veios in animo* habuĕrint *oppugnāre*. Liv.

REM. 4. As present infinitives and present participles depend for their time upon the verbs with which they are connected, they are followed by such tenses as those verbs may require; as, *Apelles pictōres quoque eos* peccare dicĕbat, *qui non* sentīrent, *quid esset satis*. Cic. *Ad te* scripsi, *te levĭter* accūsans *in eo, quòd de me citò* credidisses. Id.

Rem. 5. The perfect infinitive follows the general rule, and takes after it a tense of present or past time, according as it is used in a definite or indefinite sense; as, *Arbitrāmur nos ea* præstitisse, *quæ ratio et doctrina* præscripsĕrit. Cic. *Est quod gaudeas te in ista locu* venisse, *ubi aliquid sapĕre* viderēre. Id.

But it may sometimes take a different tense, according to Rem. 2; as, *Ita mihi videor et esse Deos, et quales* essent *satis* ostendisse. Cic.

II. Dissimilar tenses may be made dependent on each other, in order to express actions whose time is different.

Hence, the present may be followed by the imperfect or pluperfect, to express a contingency dependent upon some condition not actually existing; as, *Nemo dubitāre* debet, *quin multos, si fĭĕri posset, Cæsar ab infĕris* excitāret. Cic. So the perfect indefinite may be followed by the present, to express the present result of a past event; as, *Tanti sonĭtus* fuĕrunt, *ut ego brevior* sim, *quòd eos usque istinc exaudītos* putem. Cic.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 259. The indicative mood is used in independent and absolute assertions. It is often employed, also, in conditional and dependent clauses, to denote that which is supposed or admitted; as, *Si* vales, *bene est.* Cic. It may likewise be used in interrogations; as, *Quid* agis, *ecquid commŏdè* vales? Plin.

Remark 1. The several tenses have already been defined, and their usual significations have been given in the paradigms. They are, however, sometimes otherwise rendered, one tense being used with the meaning of another, either in the same or in a different mood. Thus,

(1.) The present is sometimes used for the future; as, *Quàm mox* navĭgo *Ephĕsum?* How soon do I sail for Ephesus? Plaut.

(2.) The perfect for the pluperfect; as, *Sed postquam* aspexi, *illĭco cognōvi,* But after I (had) looked at it, I recognized it immediately. Ter.

This is the usual construction after *postquam, ubi, ut, ut primum, ut semel, quum primum, simul ac,* and *simul atque,* in the sense of *when, as soon as,* in direct narration.

(3.) The pluperfect for the perfect; as, Dixĕrat, *et spissis noctis se condĭdit umbris,* She (had) said, and hid herself in the thick shades of night. Virg.

(4.) The future for the imperative mood; as, *Valēbis,* Farewell. Cic.

(5.) The future perfect for the future; as, *Alio loco de oratōrum animo et injuriis* viděro, I shall see (have seen).... Cic. This use seems to result from viewing a future action as if already completed.

Rem. 2. When a future action is spoken of either in the future, or in the imperative, or the subjunctive used imperatively, and another future action is connected with it, the latter is expressed by the *future* tense, if the actions relate to the same time, but by the future perfect, if the one must be completed before the other is performed. This verb in English is usually put in the present tense; as, *Faciam si* potĕro; I will do it, if I can, *i. e.* if I shall be able. So, *Ut sementem* fecĕris, *ita metes.* Cic.

Rem 3. In expressions denoting the propriety, practicability, or ad

vantage of an action not performed, the indicative is used, while in English the potential, in such cases, is more common; as, Possum *persĕqui multa oblectamenta rerum rusticārum, sed &c.*, I *might* speak of the numerous pleasures of husbandry, but &c. Cic. Æquius *huic Turnum* fuĕrat *se opponĕre morti*. Virg. This construction occurs with *debeo, possum, decet, licet, oportet, necesse est; æquum, consentaneum, longum, melius, optĭmum, par, satis, satius—est, erat*, &c.; and in the periphrastic conjugation with participles in *dus*.

Rem. 4. The past tenses of the indicative are often used for the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, in the conclusion of a conditional clause; as, *Si non alium longè jactāret odōrem, laurus* erat,....it would have been a laurel. Virg. *Nec* veni, *nisi fata locum sedemque dedissent*. Id. *Pons sublicius iter pœne hostĭbus* dedit, *ni unus vir fuisset Horatius Cocles*. Liv. *Si mens non lœva fuisset*, impulĕrat. Virg. Sometimes also in the condition; as, *At fuĕrat melius, si te puer iste* tenĕbat. Ovid. See § 261.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ 260. The subjunctive mood is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind.

It takes its name from its being commonly used in *subjoined* or dependent clauses. In some cases, however, it is found in independent clauses, or at least in such as have no obvious dependence.

I. The subjunctive often *implies* the existence of an action or state, *without directly asserting* it. When this is the case, its tenses are commonly to be translated in the same manner as the corresponding tenses of the indicative; as,

Cùm esset *Cæsar in Gallĭâ*, When Cæsar *was* in Gaul, not *might be*. Cæs. *Rogas me quid tristis ego* sim....why I *am* sad. Tac.

Remark 1. In this sense, its tenses have, in general, the same limitation in respect to time as those of the indicative, but the imperfect is commonly used rather than the perfect, to denote indefinite past action; as, *Quo factum est, ut brevi tempŏre* illustrarētur; By which it happened that, in a short time, he became famous. Nep.

Rem. 2. The subjunctive, in such cases, depends upon the particles and other words to which it is subjoined, and its meaning must be carefully distinguished from that which is stated in the following rule.

II. The subjunctive is used to express what is contingent or hypothetical, including *possibility, power, liberty, will, duty*, and *desire*. In this use, it *does not imply* the existence of the action or state which the verb expresses.

Remark 1. The tenses of the subjunctive, thus used, have the significations which have been given in the paradigms, and are, in general, not limited, in regard to time, like the corresponding tenses of the indicative. Thus,

(1.) The present, in this sense, may refer either to present or future time; as, *Mediocrĭbus et quĭs* ignoscas *vitiis teneor;* I am subject to moderate faults, and such as you may excuse. Hor. *Orat a Cæsăre ut* det *sibi veniam*, He begs of Cæsar that he would give him leave. Cæs.

(2.) The imperfect may relate either to past, present, or future time; as,

Si fata fuissent ut cadĕrem, If it had been my fate that I should fall. Virg. *Si possem, sanior* essem; If I could, I would be wiser. Ovid. *Cetĕros* rapĕrem *et* prosternĕrem, The rest I would seize and prostrate. Ter.

(3.) The perfect relates either to past or future time; as, Errārim *fortasse*, Perhaps I may have erred. Plin. *Videor sperāre posse, si te* vidĕrim, *ea facilè* (*me*) *transitūrum*.... if I can see you.... Cic.

(4.) The pluperfect relates to past time, expressing a contingency, which is usually future with respect to some past time mentioned in connection with it; as, *Id respondĕrunt se factūros esse, cùm ille vento Aquilōne* venisset *Lemnum*.... when he should have come.... Nep.

Rem. 2. The imperfect subjunctive, in Latin, is sometimes employed, where, in English, the pluperfect would be used; as, *Quod si quis deus* dicĕret, *nunquam* putārem *me in academiâ tanquam philosŏphum disputatūrum*, If any god had said....I never should have supposed.... Cic.

On the other hand, the pluperfect in Latin is sometimes used, where the imperfect is commonly employed in English; as, *Promīsit se scriptūrum, quum primùm nuntium* accepisset.... as soon as he (should have) received the news.

Rem. 3. The present and perfect subjunctive may be used to denote a supposition; as, Vendat *ædes vir bonus*, Suppose an honest man is selling a house. Cic. Dixĕrit *Epicūrus*, Grant that Epicurus has said. Id.

Rem. 4. The present and perfect subjunctive are used to soften an assertion; as, *Nemo istud tibi* concĕdat, or concessĕrit; No one would grant you that. *Volo* and its compounds are often so used in the present; as, Velim *obvias mihi litĕras crebrò mittas*, I could wish that you would frequently send letters to meet me. Cic. The perfect, used in this sense, has often the force of the present; as, *Quis enim hoc tibi* concessĕrit? Cic.

Rem. 5. The present and perfect tenses are also used in questions which imply a doubt respecting the probability or propriety of an action; as, *Quis* dubĭtet *quin in virtūte divitiæ sint?* Who can doubt that riches consist in virtue? Cic. *Quisquam numen Junōnis* adōret *præterea?* Who will henceforth adore the divinity of Juno? Virg. *Quidni, inquit* meminĕrim? Cic.

Rem. 6. The present subjunctive is often used to express a wish, an exhortation, a request, a command, or a permission; as,

Ne sim *salvus*, May I perish. Cic. *In media arma* ruāmus, Let us rush.... Virg. *Ne me* attingas, *sceleste;* Do not touch me.... Ter. Faciat *quod lubet*, Let him do what he pleases. Id. The perfect is often so used, and sometimes the pluperfect; as, *Ipse* vidĕrit, Let him see to it himself. Cic. *Fuisset*, Be it so, or It might have been so. Virg. Vidĕrint *sapientes*. Cic.

Ne is commonly employed as a negative, rather than *non*, in this use of the subjunctive.

Rem. 7. In the regular paradigms of the verb, no future subjunctive was exhibited either in the active or passive voice.

(1.) When the expression of futurity is contained in another part of the sentence, the future of the subjunctive is supplied by some other tense of that mood; as, *Tantùm moneo hoc tempus si* amisĕris, *te esse nullum unquam magis idoneum* repertūrum; I only warn you, that, if you should lose this opportunity, you will never find one more convenient. Cic.

(2.) If no other future is contained in the sentence, the place of the future subjunctive active is supplied by the participle in *rus*, with *sim* or *fŭrim*, *essem* or *fuissem*; as, *Non dubĭtat quin brevi Troja* sit perītūra, He does not doubt that Troy would soon be destroyed. Cic. See *Periphrastic Conjugations*, § 162, 14.

(3.) The future subjunctive passive is supplied, not by the participle in *tus*, but by *futūrum sit* or *esset*, with *ut*; as, *Non dubĭto quin* futūrum sit, *ut laudētur*; I do not doubt that he will be praised.

Rem. 8. The imperfect, when relating to past or present time, and also the pluperfect, both when they stand alone, and in conditional clauses with *si*, &c., as also after *utĭnam* and *O! si*, imply the *non-existence* of the action or state denoted by the verb; the present and perfect do not decide in regard to its existence; as,

Nollem *datum esse*, I could wish it had not been paid. Ter. Nolim *datum esse*, I hope it has not been paid. *Utĭnam jam* adesset, I wish he were now present. Cic. *Utĭnam ea res ei voluptāti* sit, I hope that thing is a pleasure to him. Id.

PROTASIS AND APODOSIS.

§ 261. In a sentence containing a *condition* and a *conclusion*, the former is called the *protăsis*, the latter the *apodŏsis*.

1. In conditional clauses with *si*, *ni*, *nisi*, *quasi*, *etsi*, *tametsi*, and *etiamsi*, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in the *protasis*, when the action or state supposed does not or did not exist. The same tenses are used in the *apodosis*, to denote that, if the action or state expressed in the *protasis* did exist, or had existed (the contrary of which is implied), another action or state would exist or would have existed; as,

Nisi te satis incitātum esse confidĕrem, scribĕrem *plura*; Did I not believe that you had been sufficiently incited, I would write more (Cic.); which implies that he *does believe*, and therefore *will not write*. *Ea si de me uno* cogitasset, *nunquam illius lacrȳmis ac precĭbus* restitissem. Id.

2. The present and perfect subjunctive are used in the *protasis*, when the action or state supposed may, or may not exist, or have existed; as,

Omnia brevia tolerabilia esse debent, etiamsi maxĭma sint, ... although they may be very great. Cic. *Etsi id* fugĕrit *Isocrātes, at non Thucydĭdes*; Although Isocrates may have avoided that..... Id.

Remark 1. The tenses of the *indicative* may also be used in the *protasis* of a conditional sentence with *si*, &c.; as, *Si* vales, *bene est*. Cic. *Si quis antea* mirabātur *quid esset, ex hoc tempŏre mirētur potius*.... Id.

Rem. 2. The subjunctive after *si*, &c., implies a greater degree of contingency than the indicative. When the imperfect or pluperfect is required to denote a past action, the indicative must be used, if its exist-

ence is uncertain, as those tenses in the subjunctive would imply its non-existence.

REM. 3. The present and perfect subjunctive are sometimes used, both in the *protasis* and *apodosis* of a conditional sentence, in the sense of the imperfect and pluperfect; as, *Tu, si hìc* sis, *alĭter sentias;* If you were here, you would think otherwise. Ter. *Quos, ni mea cura* resistat, *jam flammæ tulĕrint.* Virg.

REM. 4. The *protasis* of a conditional sentence is frequently not expressed, but implied; as, *Magno mercentur Atrĭdæ,* i. e. *si possint* Virg.

SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

§ 262. A clause denoting the purpose, object, or result of a preceding proposition, takes the subjunctive after *ut, ne, quò, quin,* and *quomĭnus;* as,

Ea non, ut *te* instituĕrem, *scripsi;* I did not write that in order to instruct you. Cic. *Irrĭtant ad pugnandum,* quò fiant *acriōres;* They stimulate them to fight, that they may become fiercer. Varr.

REMARK 1. *Ut,* denoting a result, often relates to *sic, ita, adeo, tam, talis, tantus, is, ejusmŏdi,* &c., in the preceding clause; as,

Id mihi sic *erit gratum,* ut *gratius esse nihĭl possit;* That will be so agreeable to me, that nothing can be more so. Cic. *Non sum* ita *hebes,* ut *istuc dicam.* Id. *Neque* tam *erāmus amentes,* ut *explorāta nobis esset victoria.* Id. Tantum *indulsit dolōri,* ut *eum piĕtas vincĕret.* Nep. *Ita* and *tam* are sometimes omitted; as, *Epaminondas fuit disertus,* ut *nemo ei par esset.* Id.

REM. 2. *Ut,* signifying *although,* takes the subjunctive; as,

Ut desint *vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas;* Though strength be wanting, yet the will is to be praised. Ovid.

REM. 3. *Ut,* with the subjunctive, is used with impersonal verbs signifying *it happens, it remains, it follows,* &c.; as,

Qui fit, ut *nemo contentus* vivat? How does it happen that no one lives contented? Hor. *Huic* contĭgit, ut *patriam ex servitūte in libertātem* vindicāret. Nep. Sequĭtur *igĭtur,* ut *etiæm vitia* sint *parca.* Cic. Relĭquum est, ut *egŏmet mihi* consŭlam. Nep. Restat *igĭtur,* ut *motus astrōrum* sit *voluntarius.* Cic. Extrēmum *illud* est, ut *te* orem *et* obsecrem. Id.

To this principle may be referred the following verbs and phrases:—*fit, fĭĕri non potest, accĭdit, incĭdit, occurrit, contingit, evĕnit, usu venit, rarum est, sequĭtur, futūrum est, relĭquum est, relinquĭtur, restat, supĕrest, caput est, extrēmum est, opus est, est.*

For other uses of *ut,* with the subjunctive, see § 273.

REM. 4. *Ut* is often omitted before the subjunctive, after verbs denoting *willingness, unwillingness,* or *permission;* also after verbs of *asking, advising, reminding,* &c., and the imperatives *dic* and *fac;* as,

Quid vis faciam? What do you wish (that) I should do? Ter. *Insāni feriant sine lītŏra fluctus.* Virg. *Tentes dissimulāre rogat.* Ovid. *Id sinas oro.* Id. *Se suadēre, dixit, Pharnabāzo id negotii daret.* Nep. *Accēdat oportet actio varia.* Cic. *Fac cogites.* Id.

Verbs of willingness, &c., are *volo, nolo, malo, permitto, patior, sino, licet, veto,* &c.; those of asking, &c., are *rogo, oro, moneo, jubeo, mando, peto, precor, censeo, suadeo, oportet, necesse est,* &c.

REM. 5. *Ne* (lest) expresses a purpose negatively; as,

Cura ne *quid ei desit,* Take care that nothing be wanting to him. Cic. *Ut ne* are frequently used for *ne;* as, *Opĕra detur,* ut *judicia* ne *fiant.* Id.

REM. 6. *Ne* is often omitted after *cave;* as,

Cave putes, Take care that you do not suppose. Cic.

REM. 7. After *metuo, timeo, vereor,* and other expressions denoting fear, *ne* must be rendered by *that* or *lest,* and *ut* by *that not;* as,

Milo metuĕbat, ne *a servis* indicārētur, Milo feared that he should be betrayed by his servants. Cic. *Pavor erat,* ne *castra hostis* aggrederētur. Liv. *Illa duo vereor,* ut *tibi* possim *concedĕre,* I fear that I cannot grant.... Cic.

REM. 8. The proposition on which the subjunctive with *ut* and *ne* depends, is sometimes omitted; as, *Ut ita dicam.* Cic. *Ne singŭlos nomĭnem.* Liv.

REM. 9. *Quò* (that, in order that), especially with a comparative; *non quò,* or *non quòd* (not that, not as if), followed by *sed;* and *quomĭnus* (that not), after clauses denoting hindrance, take the subjunctive; as,

Adjūta me, quò *id* fiat faciliùs; Aid me, that that may be done more easily. Ter. Non quò *republĭcâ* sit *mihi quicquam carius, sed desperātis etiam Hippocrātes vetat adhibēre medicīnam.* Cic. Non quòd *sola* ornent, *sed* quòd excellant. Id. *Neque recusāvit,* quò minùs *legis pœnam* subīret. Nep.

REM. 10. *Quin,* after negative propositions and questions implying a negative, takes the subjunctive. *Quin* is used,

1. For a relative with *non,* after *nemo, nullus, nihil....est, reperītur, invenītur,* &c.; *vix est, ægrè reperītur,* &c.; as, *Messānam nemo venit,* quin viderit, i. e. *qui non viderit;* No one came to Messana who did not see. Cic. *Nego ullam pictūram fuisse*....quin conquisierit, i. e. *quam non,* &c. Id. *Nihil est,* quin *malè narrando* possit *depravāri.* Ter.

2. For *ut non,* after *non dubĭto, non est dubium, facĕre non possum, fĭĕri non potest; nihil, haud multum, haud procul,* or *minĭmum...abest; nihil prætermitto, non recūso, temperāre mihi non possum, vix, ægrè,* &c.; as,

Facĕre non possum quin *ad te* mittam, i. e. *ut non,* &c. Cic. *Ego nihil prætermīsi,* quin *Pompeium a Cæsāris conjunctiōne* avocārem. Id. *Prorsus nihil abest* quin sim *miserrĭmus.* Id. *Quis igĭtur dubĭtet* quin *in virtūte divitiæ* posītæ sint? Id. *Ego vix tenŏr* quin accurram. Id.

§ 263. 1. The subjunctive is used after particles of wishing, as *utĭnam, uti,* and *O! si;* as,

Utĭnam minùs vitæ cupĭdi fuissēmus! O that we had been less attached

to life! Cic. *O si solitæ quicquam virtūtis* adesset! Virg. The tense is determined by § 260, II. Rem. 8.

2. *Quamvis*, however; *licèt*, although; *tanquam*, *quasi*, *ac si*, *ut si*, *velut si*, *velŭti*, and *ceu*, as if; *modò*, *dum*, and *dummŏdo*, provided,—take the subjunctive; as,

Quamvis *i'le felix* sit, However happy he may be. Cic. *Veritas* licèt *nullum defensōrem* obtineat, Though truth should obtain no defender. Id. *Me omnĭbus rebus, juxta* ac si *meus frater* esset, *sustentāvit;* He supported me in every thing, just as though he were my brother. Id. *Omnia honesta negligunt* dummŏdo *potentiam* consequantur; They disregard every honorable principle, provided they can obtain power. Id. Dum *mihi animum* reddas. Hor.

Quamvis (although) has commonly the subjunctive; as, Quamvis *non* fuĕris *suasor, approbātur certè fuisti.* Cic. Sometimes also the indicative; as, *Felīcem Niŏben*, quamvis *luctu* funĕra vidit. Ovid.

Quanquam (although), in Tacitus, and in other later writers, is sometimes used with the subjunctive.

3. After *antĕquam* and *priusquam*, the imperfect and pluperfect tenses are usually in the subjunctive; the present and perfect may be either in the indicative or subjunctive; but when one thing is declared to be necessary or proper to precede another, the subjunctive is used; as,

Ea causa ante *mortua est*, quam *tu* natus esses, That cause was dead before you were born. Cic. *Avertit equos*, priusquam *pabŭla* gustassent *Trojæ, Xanthumque* bibissent. Virg. Priusquam incipias, *consulto opus est;* Before you begin, there is need of counsel. Sall.

4. *Dum*, *donec*, and *quoad*, signifying *until*, are followed by the subjunctive, if they refer to the attainment of an object; as,

Dum *hic* venīret, *locum relinquĕre noluit;* He was unwilling to leave the place until he (Milo) should come. Cic. *Nihil puto tibi esse utilius, quàm operīri* quoad *scire* possis, *quid tibi agendum sit.* Id.

5. *Quum* or *cùm*, when it signifies a *relation of time*, takes the indicative; when it denotes a *connection of thought*, the subjunctive; as,

Cùm est allātum *ad nos, graviter commōtus sum; When* it was reported to us, I was greatly moved. Cic. Cùm *tot* sustineas *et tanta negotia, peccem, si morer tua tempŏra, Cæsar; Since* you are burdened with so many and so important affairs, I should do wrong, if I should occupy your time, Cæsar. Hor.

Remark 1. *Cùm*, relating to time, is commonly translated *when;* referring to a train of thought, it signifies *since* or *although*. It is sometimes used as equivalent to *quòd* (because), and then takes the indicative; as, Cùm *te semper* dilexi, *necesse est ut sim totus vester*. Cic.

Rem. 2. In narration, *cùm* is usually joined with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, even when it relates to time; as,

Gracchus, cùm *rem illam in religiōnem popŭlo venisse* sentīret, *ad senātum retŭlit.* Cic. *Alexander*, cùm interemisset *Clitum, vix manus a se abstinuit.* Id.

In most instances of this construction, the event denoted by the subjunctive seems to relate to that expressed in the clause on which the subjunctive depends, not only in regard to *time*, but also as, in some sense, a *cause*. In general, when the attention is directed chiefly to the *time* at which an action occurred, the indicative in any tense may be used; when to the *action* itself, the subjunctive; as, *Hæc cùm scribēbam jam tum existimābam ad te orationem esse perlātam.* Cic. Cùm sciret *Clodius iter necessarium Milōni esse Lanuvium, Româ subito ipse profectus est.* Id.

For the subjunctive after *si* and its compounds, see § 261.

SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER *QUI.*

§ 264. 1. When the relative *qui* follows *tam, adeo, tantus, talis,*—or *is, ille,* or *hic,* in the sense of *talis,*—and is equivalent to *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, it takes the subjunctive; as,

Quis est tam Lyncēus qui *in tantis tenebris nihil* offendat? i. e. *ut in tantis....;* Who is so quick-sighted, that he would not stumble in such darkness. Cic. *Talem te esse oportet,* qui *ab impiōrum civium societāte* sejungas. Id. *At ea fuit legatio Octavii,* in quâ *periculi suspicio non subesset,* i. e. *ut in eâ.* Id. *Nec tamen ego sum* ille *ferreus,* qui *fratris carissimi mærōre non* movear, i. e. *ut ego non movear.* Id.

Sometimes the demonstrative word is only implied; as,

Res parva dictu, sed quæ *studiis in magnum certāmen* excessĕrit, i. e. *talis ut*....of such a kind that it issued in a violent contest. Cic. So *quis sum,* for *num talis sum;* as, *Quis sum, cujus aures lædi nefas* sit? Sen.

2. When the relative is equivalent to *quanquam is, etsi is,* or *dummŏdo is,* it takes the subjunctive; as,

Laco, consilii quamvis egregii, quod *non ipse* afferret, *inimicus;* Laco, an opponent of any measure, however excellent, provided he did not himself propose it. Tac. *Tu aquam a pumice postŭlas,* qui *ipsus* sitiat. Plaut. *Nihil molestum* quod *non* desidĕres, i. e. *dummŏdo id.* Cic.

3. *Quod,* in restrictive clauses, takes the subjunctive; as,

Quod *sine molestiâ tuâ* fiat, So far as it can be done without troubling you. Cic. *Sestius non venĕrat* quod sciam,...so far as I know. Id.

4. The relative, after the comparative followed by *quàm,* takes the subjunctive; as,

Major sum quàm cui possit *fortūna nocēre,* i. e. *quàm ut mihi,* &c.; I am too great for fortune to be able to injure me. Ovid. *Auditâ voce præcōnis majus gaudium fuit quàm* quod *universum homines* capĕrent; Upon the herald's voice being heard, the joy was too great for the people to contain. Liv.

5. A relative clause expressing a purpose or motive, and equivalent to *ut* with a demonstrative, takes the subjunctive; as,

Lacedæmonii legātos Athēnas misērunt, qui *eum absentem* accusārent;

The Lacedæmonians sent ambassadors to Athens to accuse him in his absence. Nep. *Cæsar equitātum omnem præmittit*, qui videant, *quas in partes iter faciant*. Cæs.

So with relative adverbs; as, *Lampsăcum ei* (*Themistŏcli*) *rex donārat*, unde *vinum* suměret, i. e. *ex quâ* or *ut inde*, &c. Nep.

6. A relative clause after an indefinite general expression, takes the subjunctive; as,

Fuērunt *eâ tempestāte*, qui dicĕrent; There were some at that time who said. Sall. Erant, quibus *appetentior famæ* viderētur; There were those to whom he appeared too desirous of fame. Tac. Erunt, qui *existimāri* velint. Cic. *Si quis* erit, qui *perpetuam oratiōnem* desiděret, *altĕrâ actiōne audiet*. Id. Venient *legiōnes*, quæ *neque me inultum*, *neque te impunītum* patiantur. Tac. So after *est*, in the sense of "there is reason why;" as, *Est* quod gaudeas, You have cause to rejoice. Plaut. *Est* quod visam *domum*. Id. *Si est* quod desit, *ne beātus quidem est*. Cic.

The expressions included in the rule are *est*, *sunt*, *adest*, *præsto sunt*, *existunt*, *exoriuntur*, *inveniuntur*, *reperiuntur*, *si quis est*, *tempus fuit*, *tempus veniet*, &c.

The same construction occurs with relative particles used indefinitely; as, *Est* unde *hæc* fiant, There are resources whence this may be done. Ter. *Est* ubi *id isto modo* valeat. Cic.

The above and similar expressions are followed by the subjunctive only when they are indefinite. Hence, after *sunt quidam*, *sunt nonnulli*, *sunt multi*, &c., when referring to definite persons, the relative takes the indicative; as, *Sunt oratiōnes quædam*, *quas Menocrīto* dabo. Cic.

The indicative is sometimes, though rarely, used after *sunt qui*, even when taken indefinitely, especially in the poets; as, *Sunt*, *quos* juvat. Hor.

7. A relative clause after a general negative, or an interrogative expression implying a negative, takes the subjunctive; as,

Nemo est, qui *haud* intellĭgat; There is no one who does not understand. Cic. *Nulla res est*, quæ *perferre* possit *continuum labōrem*; There is nothing which can endure perpetual labor. Quinct. *Nulla pars est corpŏris*, quæ *non* sit *minor*. Id. *Nihil est*, quod *non alicŭbi esse* cogātur. Id. *In foro vix decīmus quisque est*, qui *ipsus sese* noscat. Plaut. *Quis est*, qui *utilia* fugiat? Who is there that shuns what is useful? Cic. *An est quisquam*, qui *hoc* ignōret? Is there any one who is ignorant of this? Id. *Numquid est mali*, quod *non* dixĕris? Ter.

General negatives are *nemo*, *nullus*, *nihil*, *unus non*, *alius non*, *non quisquam*, *vix ullus*, *nec ullus*, &c., with *est*; *vix* with an ordinal and *quisque*; *nego esse quenquam*, &c. Interrogative expressions implying a negative, are *quis*, *quantus*, *uter*, *ecquis*, *numquis*, *an quisquam*, *an aliquis*, *quotus quisque*, *quotus*, &c., with *est*; *quot*, *quàm multi*, &c., with *sunt*.

1. The same construction is used after *non est*, *nihil est*, *quid est*, *numquid est*, &c., followed by *quod*, *cur*, or *quare*, and denoting "there is no reason why," "what cause?" "is there any reason?" as, Quod timeas, *non est*; There is no reason why you should fear. Ovid. *Nihil est*, quod *adventum nostrum* pertimescas. Cic. *Quid est*, quod *de ejus civitāte* dubītes? Id. *Quid est*, cur *virtus ipsa per se non* efficiat *beātos*? Id.

So after *non habeo*, or *nihil habeo*; as, *Non habeo*, quod *te* accūsem. Cic. *Nihil habeo*, quod scribam. Id.

Note. The relative clause takes the subjunctive after the expressions

included in this and the last rule, only when it expresses what is intended to be *affirmed* of the subject of the antecedent clause; as, *Nemo est, qui nesciat;* There is no one who is ignorant, *i. e.* no one is ignorant. Cic. So *Sunt, qui hoc carpant;* There are some who blame this, *i. e.* some blame this. Vell.

If the relative clause is to be construed as a *part of the logical subject*, it does not require the subjunctive; as, *Nihil stabile est, quod infidum* est; Nothing which is faithless is firm. Cic.

8. A relative clause expressing the *reason* of what goes before, takes the subjunctive; as,

Peccavisse mihi videor, qui *a te* discesserim; I think I have erred in having left you. Cic. *Inertiam accusas adolescentium*, qui *istam artem non* ediscant; You blame the idleness of the young men, because they do not learn that art thoroughly. Id. *O fortunate adolescens*, qui *tuæ virtutis Homerum præconem* inveneris! Id.

Sometimes, instead of *qui* alone, *ut, quippe*, or *utpote—qui*, is used, generally with the subjunctive; as,

Convivia cum patre non inibat, quippe qui *ne in oppidum quidem nisi raro* venisset. Cic. *Neque Antonius procul aberat*, utpote qui *magno exercitu* sequeretur. Sall.

9. After *dignus, indignus, aptus*, and *idoneus*, a relative clause takes the subjunctive; as,

Videtur, qui *aliquando* imperet, dignus *esse;* He seems to be worthy at some time to command. Cic. *Pompeius* idoneus *non est*, qui impetret. Id. *Et rem* idoneam, *de* quâ quæratur, *et homines* dignos, quibus*cum* disseratur, *putant*. Id.

Note. If the relative clause does not express that of which the person or thing denoted by the antecedent is worthy, its construction is not influenced by this rule. Thus, *Quis servus* libertate dignus *fuit*, cui *nostra salus cara non esset?* The subjunctive is here used according to No. 7 of this section.

10. A relative clause, after *unus* and *solus*, restricting the affirmation to a particular subject, takes the subjunctive; as,

Hæc est una *contentio*, quæ *adhuc* permanserit; This is the only dispute which has remained till this time. Cic. *Voluptas est* sola, quæ *nos* vocet *ad se, et* alliceat *suapte naturâ;* Pleasure is the only thing that, by its own nature, invites and allures us to itself. Id.

11. When the relative refers to a *dependent clause*, it often takes the subjunctive. See § 266.

12. The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in narration after relative pronouns and adverbs, when a repeated action is spoken of; as,

Semper habiti sunt fortissimi, qui *summam imperii* potirentur; Those have always been considered the bravest, who obtained the supreme dominion. Nep. Ut *quisque maxime* laboraret *locus, aut ipse occurrebat, aut aliquos mittebat*. So after *si quis* or *qui;* as, Si qui *rem malitiosius* gessisset, *dedecus* existimabant. Cic.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

§ 265. Dependent clauses, containing an indirect question, take the subjunctive.

A question is indirect when its substance is stated without the interrogative form; as,

Qualis sit *animus, ipse animus nescit;* The mind itself knows not what the mind is. Cic. *Credibile non est,* quantum scribam; It is incredible how much I write. Id. Quis *ego* sim, *me rogitas?* Do you ask me who I am? Plaut. *Nec* quid scribam, *habeo;* Nor have I any thing to write. Id. *Doce me,* ubi sint *dii;* Inform me where the gods are. Id. Quàm pridem *sibi hereditas* venisset, *docet.* Id. *Nunc accipe,* quare desipiant *omnes.* Hor. *Id* utrùm *illi* sentiant, an *verò* simùlent, *tu intelliges.* Cic. *Quæro,* num *tu senatui causam tuam* permittas. Id. *Vides,* ut *altâ* stet *nive candidum Soracte.* Hor. *Nescit, vitâne* fruatur, an sit *apud manes.* Ovid.

All interrogatives may be thus used in indirect questions; as,

Quantus, qualis, quot, quotus, quotuplex, uter; quis, qui, cujas; ubi, quò, unde, quà, quorsum, quamdiu, quamdùdum, quampridem, quoties, cur, quare, quamobrem, quemadmòdum, quomòdo, ut, quàm, quantopère, an, ne, num, utrùm, anne, annon.

Remark 1. The indicative is sometimes used in such constructions; as, *Vide avaritia* quid facit. Ter.

Rem. 2. In double questions, the first may be introduced by *utrùm, num,* or the enclitic *ne;* and, in such case, the second is usually introduced by *an;* as, *Multum interest,* utrùm *laus* imminuatur, an *salus* deserātur. Cic. The first question is sometimes without any interrogative particle, and the second is then introduced by *an* or *ne;* as, *Nunc* habeam *filium,* necne, *incertum est.* Ter.

Rem. 3. *Dubito an, haud scio an, nescio an,* though implying some doubt, have generally a sense almost affirmative; as, Dubito, an *hunc primum omnium ponam;* I am inclined to place him first of all. Nep.

Rem. 4. *Nescio quis,* used nearly in the sense of *aliquis,* does not influence the mood of the following verb; as, *Lucus,* nescio quo *casu, nocturno tempŏre* incensus est. Nep.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INTERMEDIATE CLAUSES.

§ 266. 1. When a proposition containing either an accusative with the infinitive, or a verb in the subjunctive, has a clause connected with it, as an *essential part,* either by a relative, a relative adverb, or a conjunction, the verb of the latter clause is put in the subjunctive; as,

Quid enim potest esse tam perspicuum, quàm esse aliquod numen, quo hæc regantur? For what can be so clear as that there is some divinity by whom these things are governed? Cic. *Illud sic fere definiri solet, decōrum id esse, quod consentaneum* sit *hominis excellentiæ.* Id. *Audiam quid sit, quòd Epicūrum non* probes; I shall hear why it is that you do not approve of Epicurus. Id. *Jussit ut, quæ* venissent, *naves Eubœum petĕrent.* Liv.

A clause, thus connected to a preceding dependent proposition, is sometimes called an *intermediate* clause.

To this rule belongs the construction of the *oratio oblīqua*, or indirect discourse, that is, the relating the words or sentiments of another, not in the exact form in which they were expressed or conceived, but in that of narration. Thus, Cæsar said, "I came, I saw, I conquered," is direct,—Cæsar said, that he came, saw, and conquered, is indirect discourse.

2. In the *oratio obliqua*, the main proposition is expressed by the accusative with the infinitive; and dependent clauses connected with it by relatives and particles, take the subjunctive.

Thus, Cicero and Quinctilian, in quoting the language of Marcus Antonius, make use, the former of the *oratio directa*, the latter of the *oratio oblīqua*;—*Antonius inquit*, "*Ars eārum rerum est*, quæ sciuntur;" Antonius says, "Art belongs to those things which are known." Cic. *Antonius inquit*, artem *eārum rerum* esse, quæ sciantur; Antonius says, that art belongs to those things which are known. Quinct.

So, *Socrātes dicēre solēbat, omnes, in eo quod* scirent, *satis esse eloquentes;* Socrates was accustomed to say, that all are sufficiently eloquent in that which they understand. Cic. *Cato mirāri se aiēbat, quòd non* rideret *aruspex, aruspĭcem cùm* vidisset. Id. *Negat jus esse, qui miles non* sit, *pugnāre cum hoste.* Id. *Indignabantur ibi esse imperium, ubi non* esset *libertas.* Liv. *Itāque Athenienses, quod honestum non* esset, *id ne ūtile quidem (esse) putavērunt.* Cic.

Remark 1. When the subjunctive would be necessary in the *oratio directa*, to denote liberty, power, &c., the same remains in the *oratio oblīqua*, and is not changed into the infinitive with an accusative; as, *Ad hæc Ariovistus respondit, quum vellet*, congrederētur; To this Ariovistus replied, that he might meet him when he pleased. Cæs. In the *oratio directa*, this would be *congrediāris.* So, *Is ita cum Cæsāre agit, ne aut suæ magnopĕre virtūti* tribuĕret, *aut ipsos* despicĕret. Id. See § 273, 3.

Rem. 2. A writer may state his own past words or thoughts in *oratio oblīqua*, either preserving the first person, or adopting the third.

Rem. 3. When the words or sentiments of a third person are stated in *oratio oblīqua*, *sui* and *suus* are commonly used in references made to him. See § 208, (1.)

Rem. 4. The tenses to be used in changing the *oratio directa* into the *oblīqua*, depend on the tense of the verb which introduces the quotation, according to the rule, § 258. But when the future perfect would be used in the direct, the pluperfect is necessary in the oblique form.

Rem. 5. When the connected clause contains merely a descriptive circumstance, or expresses what is independent of the sentiment of the preceding clause, it takes the indicative; as, *Imperāvit Alexander Lysippo, ut eōrum equĭtum, qui apud Granĭcum* ceciderant, *facĕret statuas;* Alexander ordered Lysippus to make statues of those horsemen who had fallen at the Granicus. Sometimes, in other cases, when it is evident from the sense, that the connected clause is an essential part of the proposition, the indicative is used, to avoid giving the appearance of contingency to the sentence.

3. A clause connected to another by a relative or causal conjunction, takes the subjunctive, (whatever be the mood

of the preceding verb,) when it contains not the sentiment or allegation of the writer, but that of some other person alluded to; as,

Socrātes accusātus est, quòd corrumpĕret *juventūtem;* Socrates was accused, because (as was alleged) he corrupted the youth. *Deum invocābant*, cujus *ad solenne* venissent; They invoked the god, to whose solemnities they had come. Liv. Here the charge of corrupting the youth is not made by the writer, but by the accusers of Socrates. So, in the second example, the worshippers allege that they have come to attend upon the solemnities of the god. The indicative, in such cases, would render the writer responsible for the truth of the allegation.

In the preceding cases, it is not directly said that the sentiments are those of another than the writer. In Cicero, however, the words *dico, puto, arbitror*, and the like, are often construed in a similar manner; as, *Quum enim, Hannibălis permissu, exisset de castris, rediit paulo post, quòd se oblītum nescio quod* dicĕret,.....because (as) he said, he had forgotten something. Cic.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

§ 267. The imperative mood is used, in the second person, to express a command, an exhortation, or an entreaty; as,

Nosce te, Know thyself. Cic. *Æquam* memento *servāre mentem*, Remember to preserve an unruffled mind. Hor. *Huc* ades, Come hither. Virg. Pasce *capellas, et potum pastas* age, *et inter agendum occursāre capro* cavēto. Id.

The plural form in *tote* is rare; as, *Facitōte*. Ovid. *Petitōte*. Id.

The third person expresses only a command, and is chiefly used in enacting laws; as,

Virgines vestāles in urbe custodiunto *ignem foci publĭci sempiternum*. Cic.

Remark 1. With the imperative, *not* is expressed by *ne*, and *nor* by *neve;* as,

Ne *tanta animis* assuescīte *bella*. Virg. Ne crede *colŏri*. Id. *Hominem mortuum in urbe* ne sepelīto, neve urīto. Cic.

Rem. 2. The present and perfect subjunctive are often used instead of the imperative, to express a command in a milder form, an exhortation, or an entreaty. See § 260, II., Rem. 6. Sometimes also the future indicative. See § 259, Rem. 1, (4.)

Rem. 3 Sometimes, for the simple imperative, *fac* with the subjunctive is used; as, *Fac erudias*, Instruct, or Take care to instruct. Cic. So *noli* with the infinitive, and *cave* with the subjunctive, with or without *ne;* as, *Noli putāre*, Do not suppose. Cic. *Cave existīmes*, Do not think. Id.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

§ 268. The tenses of the infinitive denote respectively an action as present, past, or future, in reference to the time of the verbs with which they are connected; as,

Hoc facĕre possum, I am able to do this. Cic. Vidi *nostros inimīcos* cupĕre *bellum*, I saw that our enemies were desiring war. Id. *Nec* gemĕre *aĕriā* cessābit *turtur ab ulmo*, Nor shall the turtle dove cease to coo from the lofty elm. Virg.——*Victōrem victæ* succubuisse queror, I complain that the victor has yielded to the vanquished. Ovid. *Se a senĭbus* audisse dicĕbant, They said that they had heard (it) from the old men. Cic. Audiet *cives* acuisse *ferrum juventus*, The youth will hear that the citizens have whetted the sword. Hor——Negat *sese verbum* esse factūrum, He declares that he is not about to speak. Cic. *Postquam* audiĕrat *non* datum iri *filio uxōrem suo*, After he had heard that a wife would not be given to his son. Ter. *Semper* existimabĭtis *nihil horum vos* visūros fore, You will always suppose that you are to see none of these things. Cic.

Remark 1. The present infinitive is sometimes used to denote a completed action. This is the usual construction with *memīni;* but the expression denotes rather a recollection of the progress than of the completion of the action; as, *Hoc me memĭni* dicĕre, I remember *my saying* this. Cic. *Teucrum memĭni Sidōna* venīre, I remember Teucer's coming to Sidon. Virg.

So, also, with *recordor;—Recordor longè omnĭbus unum* anteferre *Demosthĕnem*. Cic.

When the action is spoken of simply as a fact, the perfect infinitive is used with *memĭni;* as, *Meministi me ita* distribuisse *causam*. Cic.

Rem. 2. On the other hand, the perfect sometimes occurs where, in English, the present would be used; as, *Fratres tendentes Pelion* imposuisse *Olympo*,....endeavoring to place.... Hor. *Magnum si pectŏre possit* excussisse *deum*. Virg.

Rem. 3. The present is also sometimes used for the future, especially when the verb has no future; as, *Desīne fata deūm* flecti *sperāre*, Cease to hope that the fates of the gods will be changed. Virg. *Progeniem Trojāno a sanguĭne* duci *audiĕrat*. Id. *Cras mihi argentum* dare *dixit*, i. e. *se datūrum esse*. Ter.

Rem. 4. Instead of the future infinitive, in both voices, *futūrum esse* or *fore*, followed by *ut* and the subjunctive, is often used; the present and imperfect subjunctive, in such cases, denoting an unfinished, the perfect and pluperfect a finished, future action; as, *Nunquam putāvi* fore, ut *supplex ad te* venīrem; I never supposed (that it would happen) that I should come a suppliant to you. Cic. *Suspĭcor* fore, ut infringātur *hominum improbĭtas*. Id.

This construction is necessarily used, when the verb has either no future active participle, or no supine; as, in such case, the regular future infinitive cannot be formed.

The perfect participle with *fore* is also used to denote a future action in the passive voice; as, *Quòd vidĕret nomĭne pacis bellum* involūtum fore. Cic.

Rem. 5. The periphrastic infinitive formed by the future active participle with *fuisse*, denotes a future action contingent upon a condition which was not fulfilled; and, in the *apodosis* of a conditional sentence, corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive; as, *An censes me tantos labōres* susceptūrum fuisse, *si iisdem finĭbus gloriam meam quibus vitam essem terminatūrus?* Do you think that I should have undertaken so great labors if, &c. Cic. *Ut perspicuum sit omnĭbus, nisi tanta acerbĭtas injuriæ fuisset, nunquam illos in eum locum* progressūros fuisse,....that they never would have come into that place. Id.

Futūrum fuisse, also, with *ut* and the subjunctive, is used in this sense;

as, *Nisi nuncii essent allāti, existimābant plerique* futūrum fuisse, ut *oppidum* caperētur,.....that the town would have been taken. Cæs. This form is necessary in the passive voice.

Rem. 6. The perfect infinitive, like the past tenses of the indicative, sometimes corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive in the apodosis of a conditional clause; as, (*Dixit*) *sibi vitam filiæ suā cariōrem* fuisse, *si libĕræ ac pudicæ vivĕre licĭtum fuisset;* (He said) that the life of his daughter had been dearer to him than his own, if it had been permitted.... Liv.

This use of the perfect infinitive is necessary when the verb has no future participle; as, *Si tenuisset Stesichōrus modum, vidētur proximus æmulāri Homērum* potuisse; He seems to have been able, *i. e.* it seems that he would have been able, to rival Homer, if, &c. Quinct.

§ 269. The infinitive mood, in Latin, is often used, not indefinitely, but with a subject of its own in the accusative case. See § 239.

The infinitive *passive* of a neuter verb, like the third person singular of that voice, is sometimes used without a subject; as, *Vides toto* properāri *litŏre,* You see that haste is made..... Virg. See §§ 209, Rem. 3, (2), and 239, Rem. 3.

The present infinitive has sometimes, in narration, a subject in the nominative. See § 209, Rem. 5.

The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the subject of a verb; as,

Ad rempublĭcam pertĭnet me conservāri, It concerns the state that I should be preserved. Cic. *Nunquam est utile* peccāre, To do wrong is never useful. Id. *Æquum est, peccātis venium* poscentem reddĕre *rursus.* Hor. See § 201, IV.

Remark 1. In such constructions, when no subject is expressed before the infinitive, an indefinite word for person or thing, or a reflexive pronoun, is commonly implied.

Thus, in the last two examples, as the propositions are true in their widest application to moral beings, *quenquam* may be understood before *peccāre* and *reddĕre.*

Rem. 2. The infinitive is often the subject of a proposition when the substantive verb with an adjective forms the predicate, and also when the verb in the sentence is impersonal, or is used impersonally, either in the active or passive voice; as, *Cui verba* dare *difficile est.* Ter. *Mendācem memŏrem* esse *oportet.* Quinct. *Neque est te* fallĕre *cuiquam,* sc. *pote.* Virg. *Non enim me hoc jam* dicĕre *pudĕbit.* Cic. See § 209, Rem. 3, (5.)

Rem. 3. The infinitive may itself be the subject of an infinitive; as, *Audio non licĕre cuiquam in nave capillos* deponĕre Ter.

§ 270. The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may depend upon a verb; as,

Hæc vitāre *cupĭmus,* We desire to avoid this. Cic. *Poëtas omnĭno non conor* attingĕre, I do not attempt to read the poets at all. Id. *Sententiam* valĕre *cupĭerunt,* They desired that the opinion should prevail. Id. *Spero te* valĕre, I hope that you are well. Id.

Remark 1. The infinitive alone may also depend upon an adjective, and sometimes upon a noun; as,

Dignus amāri, Worthy to be loved. Virg. *Audax omnia* perpĕti, Resolute to endure every thing. Hor. *Sollers* ornāre, Skilful to adorn. Ovid. *Segnes* solvĕre *nodum*. Hor. *Indoctĭlis pauperiem* pati. Id. *Lenis* recludĕre. Id. See § 213, Rem. 4, (1.) Tempus *est hujus libri* facĕre *finem*, It is time to finish this book. Nep. *Iniit* consilia *reges* tollĕre, He devised a plan to destroy the kings. Id.

Rem. 2. The infinitive with the accusative sometimes stands unconnected, especially in vehement interrogations or exclamations; as, *Mene incepto* desistĕre *victam, nec* posse *Italiâ Teucrōrum avertĕre regem?* That I, vanquished, should desist from my undertaking, nor be able.....? Virg. *Me misĕrum! te in tantas ærumnas propter me* incidisse! Cic.

So, in the *oratio obliqua*, the words signifying *said, saying*, &c., are often omitted; as, *Id facĭlè effĭci* posse, sc. *dixit*. Nep. *Quem signum* datūrum *fugientĭbus?* Curt.

Rem. 3. The infinitive is sometimes omitted; as, *Ei prŏvinciam Numidiam populus jussit*, sc. *dari*. Sall. In the compound forms of the infinitive, *esse* and *fuisse* are commonly omitted; as, *Sed de eâ re legātos missūros dixērunt*, sc. *esse*. Nep.

§ 271. The infinitive without a subject is only used after certain verbs, especially such as denote desire, ability, intention, or endeavor; as,

Cupio, opto, volo, and its compounds; *possum, queo, nequeo, valeo, cogĭto* (to design), *decerno* (to determine), *juro, conjūro, propōno, statuo*, and *constituo* (to determine), *studeo* (to intend); *conor, pugno* for *conor, tendo, contendo, tento*, &c.; to which may be added *audeo, consuesco, insuesco, cœpi, debeo, desĭno, desisto, disco, doceo, dubĭto, habeo* for *possum* or *debeo, incipio, intermitto, nescio, paro, parco, prætermitto, recūso, soleo, vereor*, and the passives *audior, cogor, credor, dicor, existĭmor, feror, negor, nuntior, perhibeor, putor, trador*, and *videor*.

The poets, also, use the infinitive after *fuge* and *parce* for *noli*, and sometimes after *caveo, fugio, gaudeo, horreo, metuo, memĭni, obliviscor, quæro, reformĭdo, refugio, tempĕro, timeo*, and some others. It is also used, in a few instances, after verbs of motion, to denote a purpose; as, *Introiit* vidēre, He came in to see. Ter. *Non te* frangĕre *persĕquor*. Hor.

Remark 1. Many of the verbs above enumerated, instead of the infinitive, may be followed by the subjunctive with a conjunction; and with some of them, this is the regular construction; as, *Sententiam* ne dicĕret, *recusāvit*. Cic.

Rem. 2. The passives in the above list may either be used personally, with the infinitive alone, or impersonally, followed by the accusative with the infinitive. The former construction is more common, especially with *videor*. Thus we may say, *Mater Pausaniæ eo tempŏre* vixisse dicĭtur, or Dicĭtur *eo tempŏre matrem Pausaniæ* vixisse; The mother of Pausanias is said to have been living.....or, It is said that the mother of Pausanias was living..... Nep.

Rem. 3. The infinitive without a subject is used after a verb, only when it denotes an action or state of the subject of that verb.

Sometimes, even when the subject remains the same, the infinitive takes a pronoun as its subject, especially after *cupio, volo, malo, conor*, and *studeo;* as, *Cupio* me esse *c'ementem*. Cic. *Omnis homines, qui sese student* præstāre *cetĕris animalĭbus*. Sall.

§ 272. The infinitive with the accusative depends on verbs and phrases which denote either the exercise of the senses or intellectual powers, or the communication of thought to others; as,

Vidēbat, *id sine rege Persārum non posse fĭĕri;* He saw that that could not be done without the aid of the king of the Persians. Nep. Credunt *se neglĭgi*, They believe themselves to be neglected. Ter. *Ea te ex lĭtĕris cognoscĕre* arbitror, I suppose that you know those things by means of letters. Cic. *Me in ejus potestāte* dixi *fore*. Id. Affirmant *mīlĭtum jacĕre anĭmos*. Liv. *Sæpe* venit ad aures *meas, te istud nimis crebrò* dicĕre, *satis te tibi vixisse*. Cic. *Eam pugnam ad Perusiam pugnātam* (*esse*), *quidam* auctōres sunt. Liv.

Remark 1. When ambiguity would arise from the subject and the object of the verb being both in the accusative, the passive infinitive is substituted for the active, by which means the subject is put in the ablative, or the accusative with *per;* as, *Ne fando quidem auditum est, crocodĭlum violātum esse ab Ægyptio*; instead of *Ægyptium crocodĭlum violāsse*. Cic.

Rem. 2. After verbs of the above significations, the conjunction *that*, in English, is not represented in Latin by a corresponding conjunction, as *ut* or *quòd* followed by the indicative or subjunctive; but, instead of that construction, the subject following *that* is put in the accusative, and its verb in the infinitive.

Rem. 3. The infinitive with the accusative is sometimes translated by a similar form in English, but usually either by the indicative or potential, according to its connection; as,

Te *tuâ virtūte* frui *cupĭmus;* We wish you to enjoy, or that you may enjoy.... Cic. *Miror* te *ad me nihil* scribĕre...that you do not write... Id. *Audĭĕrat non* datum iri *filio* uxōrem *suo*....that she would not be given.... Ter.

Rem. 4. As the present infinitive denotes unfinished action, and relates to the time of the verb on which it depends, it expresses unfinished *past* action, and corresponds to the imperfect indicative, when with an accusative it follows a past tense; as, *Dixĭt Cæsărem* facĕre, He said that Cæsar *was doing*. Cæs. In like manner the perfect infinitive with an accusative after a past tense corresponds to the pluperfect indicative; as, *Dixit Cæsărem fecisse*, He said that Cæsar *had done*.

Rem. 5. The present infinitive after verbs of sense, is often equivalent to the present participle; as,

Surgĕre *videt lunam*, He sees the moon (to rise) rising. Virg. *Arma* rutilāre *vident*. Id. *Vidēbis* collucēre *faces*. Id. *Nec Zephȳros audis* spirāre? Do you not hear the zephyrs blowing? Id. *Sæpe hoc majōres natu* dicĕre *audīvi*. Cic.

In the following example, the infinitive and present participle are used in the same construction:—*Medium video* discedĕre *cœlum* palantesque *polo stellas*. Virg.

§ 273. When the particle *that*, in English, introduces a clause denoting a *purpose, object*, or *result*, it is a sign of the subjunctive in Latin, and is to be expressed by *ut*, &c. (see § 262); but otherwise it is usually the sign of the accusative with the infinitive.

1. The subjunctive is commonly used after verbs of *endeavoring, aiming*, and *accomplishing*.

Such are *facio, efficio, perficio, studeo; id, hoc* or *illud ago; opĕram do, meditor, curo, in animum indūco, consilium capio, nitor, contendo, video* (to take care), *nihil antiquius habĕo quàm*, &c.; as, *Eloquentiâ perfēcit, ut auxilio sociōrum Lacedæmonii* privarentur. Nep.

Facio with *ut* and the subjunctive is also used as a periphrasis for the indicative; as, *Invītus quidem* feci, ut *L. Flaminium e senātu ejicĕrem*, for *invītus ejēci*. Cic.

Facio, when used of a writer, in the sense of *introduces* or *represents*, is sometimes joined with a participle; as, *Lælium et Scipiōnem* facimus admirantes. Cic. *Efficio*, in the sense of *proving*, takes an infinitive, as, *Dicæarchus vult* efficĕre *animos* esse *mortāles*. Id.

2. Verbs signifying *to request, to demand, to admonish, to advise, to commission, to encourage, to command*, and the like, when the purpose of the request, &c., is to be expressed, usually take after them the subjunctive with *ut* or *ne;* as,

Te non hortor *solùm sed etiam* oro, *ut totâ mente in rempublĭcam* incumbas. Cic. Monet, *ut suspiciōnes* vitet. Cæs. *Volusēno* mandat, *ut ad se* revertātur. Id.

Nuntio, scribo, and even *dico*, are followed by the subjunctive, when they imply an injunction or intention that something should be done; as, *Hæc nunc non ut* facias, *sed ut te facĕre et fecisse* gaudeas, *scribo*. Cic. *Misit qui dicĕret, ne* discederet. Nep.

Jubeo commonly takes the accusative with the infinitive, but sometimes the subjunctive, especially when used absolutely, or without the person being expressed to whom the command is given; as, *Jubēte* istos exīre *foras*. Ter. *Sive jubĕbat* ut facĕrem *quid*. Hor.

3. In the *oratio oblīqua*, the construction of the accusative with the infinitive, is exchanged for that of the subjunctive, to denote possibility, liberty, or duty; as,

Virginius unum Ap. Claudium legum expertem esse aiĕbat: respicĕrent *tribūnal homĭnes castellum omnium scelĕrum*. Liv.

On the contrary, when the subjunctive has been used, after a verb of asking, commanding, &c., the construction often passes into that of the accusative with the infinitive; as, *Orābat ne se ut parricīdam lĭbĕrūm* aversarentur: *sibi* vitam *filiæ suâ carĭōrem* fuisse *si*.... Liv. See § 266, 2 Rem. 1.

4. Verbs which denote *willingness, unwillingness, permission*, and *necessity*, commonly take the accusative and infinitive, but sometimes the subjunctive.

Such are *volo, nolo, malo, opto, permitto, patior, sino, licet, oportet*, and *necesse est;* as, Optāvit *ut in currum patris* tollerētur. Cic. *Quis Antonĭc* permīsit, *ut partes* facĕret? Id.

An infinitive passive without a subject, is sometimes used with *oportet;* as, *Non oportuit* relictas, sc. *esse ancillas*. Ter. *Ut ut erat*, mansum *tamen oportuit*, sc. *esse*. Id. *Non putābant de tali viro suspicionĭbus oportĕre* judicāri. Nep.

Some other verbs which regularly take the accusative with the infinitive after them, are occasionally followed by the subjunctive.

5. After verbs denoting *joy* or *grief, surprise* or *wonder*, either the accusative with the infinitive, or *quòd* with the indicative or subjunctive, may follow.

Such are *gaudeo, delector, gratum est mihi, doleo, angor, indignor, miror;* as, *Angor animo non armis* egĕre rempublĭcam. Cic. *Gaudeo tibi jucundas meas* esse litĕras. Id. *Gaudeo* quòd *te* interpellāvi. Id.

After *doleo, gaudeo*, and other neuter verbs, the clause containing the accusative with the infinitive is not the object of the verb, but of some preposition understood, as *propter*, &c. See § 232, (2.)

6. The particle *that*, in English, is represented in Latin by *quòd*, when a demonstrative pronoun, as *hoc, illud, istud*, &c., precedes, or is to be supplied. In such case, *quòd* is followed by the indicative; as, *Illud quoque nobis accĕdit incommŏdum*, quòd *M. Junius hoc tempŏre* abest. Cic.

Quod, in the beginning of a sentence, in the sense of *as to*, especially in the epistolary style, is followed by an indicative. See § 206, (14.) *Quòd* (that) is generally explanatory, or denotes a cause; *ut* (that), a purpose or result.

NOTE. The construction of the infinitive resembles that of a noun in the singular number and neuter gender.

Thus, like a noun, it may have an adjective or pronoun agreeing with it; as, Totum hoc philosophāri *displĭcet*. Cic. See § 205, REM. 8.

It may be followed by a limiting genitive; as, Cujus *non* dimicāre *fuit vincĕre*. Val. Max.

It may be either the subject or object of a verb. See §§ 209, REM. 3, (5,) and 229, REM. 5. It may also be used after neuter verbs, like an accusative, depending on a preposition understood; as, *Te* accepisse *meas litĕras gaudeo*. Ter. See §§ 232, (2,) and 273, 5.

It is also used like a predicate-nominative; as, *Vidēre est* perspicĕre *aliquid*. Cic. See § 210.

It may, like a genitive, limit the signification of an adjective or noun. See § 270, REM. 1.

It may, like an accusative, depend on a preposition; as, *Præter plorāre*. Hor. See § 235.

It is used also like an ablative; as, *Audīto regem in Siciliam* tendĕre. Sall.

It sometimes, also, denotes a purpose, like a participle in *dus;* as, *Loricam donat* habēre *viro*. Virg.

PARTICIPLES.

§ 274. 1. Participles are followed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

Quidam, poēta *nominātus;* A certain one, called a poet. Cic. Catulōrum *oblīta leæna*, The lioness forgetful of her whelps. Virg. *Faventes* rebus *Carthaginiensium*, Favoring the interests of the Carthaginians. Liv. *Tendens ad sidĕra* palmas. Virg. *Accusātus* rei *capitālis*. Cic. Omīna *doctus*. Stat. Casus *abies visūra marinos*. Id. *Caritūri* arbŏre *montes*. Ovid. *Parcendum est* tenĕris. Juv. *Utendum est* ætāte. Ovid.

2. The present, perfect, and future active participles, denote respectively an action which is present, past, or future, in refer-

ence to the time of the verb with which they are connected; as,

Simul hoc dicens *attollit se.* Virg. *Tum ad Thræseam in hortis* agentem *missus est.* Tac. *Turnum* fugientem *hæc terra vidēbit.* Id. *Qui* missus *ab Argis ītālâ consedĕrat urbe.* Id. *Lamia munĕre ædilitātis* perfunctus, *petit prætūram.* Cic. Jussas *cum fide pœnas luam.* Hor. *Juvĕnis medius* morītūrus *in hostes irruit.* Virg. Peritūrus *injĕcit sese in agmen.* Id. *Illa tibi* ventūra *bella expediet.* Id.

Remark 1. The present participle sometimes denotes that which is about to be done; as, *Interclūsit hiems, et terruit Auster* euntes, ... as they were on the point of going. Virg.

Rem. 2. The present participle, also, sometimes denotes a purpose; as, *Cunctis num lecti navĭbus ibant,* orantes *veniam, et templum clamōre petēbant,* to sue for favor.... Id.

Rem. 3. The perfect participle passive often denotes the result of a past action, and thus supplies the place of a present participle passive; as, *Notus evŏlat piceâ* tectus *caligĭne* covered with pitchy darkness. Ovid.

Rem. 4. *Habeo,* with perfect participles denoting knowledge and determination, forms a periphrasis, instead of the verb of the participle; as, *Clodii animum* perspectum *habeo,* cognītum, judĭcatum; for *perspexi. Do, reddo, curo,* and *facio,* are sometimes so construed with participles; as, Missam *iram faciet,* for *mittet.* Ter.

Rem. 5. The perfect passive participle is sometimes used to supply the place of a verbal noun in *io* or *us;* as, *Ante Romam* condĭtam, Before the building of Rome. Cic. *Post genus hominum* natum. Id. *Post sacra* constitūta. Id.

Rem. 6. The future active participle often denotes intention or purpose; as,

Ad Jovem Hammōnem pergit consultūrus *de origĭne suâ;* He goes to Jupiter Ammon, to consult him about his origin. Just.

Rem. 7. The participle in *dus,* also, denotes a purpose, when joined with verbs signifying *to give, to deliver, to agree for, to have, to receive, to undertake,* &c.

Such are *do, trado, tribuo, attribuo, mando, mitto, condūco, loco, habeo, accipio, suscipio, relinquo, curo, deposco, rogo;* as, *Testamentum tibi tradit* legendum, He delivers his will to you to read. Hor. *Attribuit nos* trucīdandos *Cethēgo.* Cic. *Quod* utendum *accepĕris, reddĭto.* Id.

Rem. 8. The participle in *dus,* when agreeing with the subject of a sentence, has the signification of necessity or propriety; sometimes, though rarely, except in later writers, that of possibility; as,

Is venerandus *a nobis et* colendus *est,* He should be worshipped and honored by us. Cic. Delenda *est Carthāgo,* Carthage must be destroyed. Cato. *Hæc* speranda *fuĕrunt.* Virg. So with *est* used impersonally; as, *Utrùm pace nobis an bello esset* utendum. Cic.

Sometimes, also, when not agreeing with the subject of a sentence, it has this signification; as, *Facta narrābas* dissimulanda *tibi,* You were relating facts which you should have concealed. Ovid. *A. L. Bruto principe hujus maximè* conservandi *genĕris et nomĭnis.* Cic.

Rem. 9. The participle in *dus*, in its oblique cases, supplies the place of a present participle of the passive voice, to denote a continued or incomplete action. See § 275, II.

For the dative of the agent after participles in *dus*, see § 225, III.

3. Participles are often employed instead of conditional, explanatory, adversative, and other dependent clauses; as,

Curio, ad focum sedenti (as he was sitting) *magnum auri pondus Samnites attulérunt.* Cic. *Tridui viam* progressi, *rursus revertérunt*, for, *cùm progressi essent.* Cæs. *Plura* locutūros *abire nos jussit*, ... when we were going to say more.

If the participle refers to a noun not contained in the leading proposition, it is put with that noun in the ablative absolute. See § 257.

Note. In many cases, for want of a perfect participle active, and a present participle passive, this construction cannot be used. Thus, *quum amavisset* cannot be exchanged for a participle corresponding with the English *having loved.* As the perfect participles of deponent verbs, however, have an active signification, they admit of the participial construction. The want of a perfect active participle may also be supplied by the perfect passive participle in the ablative absolute. See § 257, Rem. 5.

GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

§ 275. I. Gerunds are followed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

Metus parendi sibi, Fear of obeying him. Sall. *Parcendo* victis, By sparing the vanquished. Liv. *Efféror studio* patres *vestros videndi*, I am transported with a desire of seeing your fathers. Cic. *Petendi* consulātum *gratiâ.* Sall. *Venit ad recipiendum* pecunias. Varr.

Remark 1. The gerund is the same in form as the oblique cases of the neuter singular of participles in *dus*, but it has the meaning of the active voice. It is sometimes translated by the present participle with a preposition, and sometimes by an infinitive active; as, *Consilium Lacedæmŏnem* occupandi; A design of occupying, or to occupy, Lacedæmon. Liv.

Rem. 2. The gerund is sometimes, though rarely, used in a passive sense; as, *Spes* restituendi *nulla erat*, ... of being restored. Nep. *Athēnas* erudiendi *gratiâ missus*, ... for the purpose of being instructed. Just. *Ante domandum.* Virg.

Rem. 3. As the infinitive is used as the subject or object of a verb, so the gerund supplies the genitive, dative, ablative, and, after a preposition, the accusative, of a verbal noun of similar meaning.

II. Instead of the gerund of an active verb with its object in the accusative, the participle in *dus* is often used, the object taking the case in which the gerund would have been, and the participle agreeing with it; as,

Consilia urbis delendæ (Cic.), for *urbem delendi*, Plans for destroying the city. Reparandārum classium *causâ* (Suet.), for *reparandi classes.* Perpetiendo labōri *idoneus.* Colum. *Ad* defendendam Romam *ab* oppugnandâ Capuâ *duces Romānos abstrahĕre.* Liv.

REMARK 1. The same construction is used with the future passive participles of *utor, fruor, fungor*, and *potior*, as these verbs were originally followed by the accusative; as, *Ætas ad hæc* utenda *idonea*. Ter. *Justitiæ* fruendæ *causâ*. Cic. *In omni munĕre* fungendo. Id.

REM. 2. When a participle is thus used for a gerund, it is called a *gerundive*, and is usually translated like a gerund. The gerundive cannot be substituted for the gerund, where ambiguity would arise from the gender not being distinguishable. It should not be used when the object of the gerund is a neuter pronoun or adjective; as, Aliquid *faciendi ratio* (Cic.), not *alicŭjus*. *Artem et* vera *et* falsa *dijudicandi* (Id), not *verōrum dijudicandōrum*.

III. Examples of the construction of gerunds, in each of their cases, have been already given, among other nouns, under the heads *Genitive, Dative, Accusative*, and *Ablative*. The following remarks specify in what connections they are used:—

REMARK 1. The genitive of gerunds and gerundives may follow either nouns or adjectives; as,

Amor habendi. Cic. *Patriam spes videndi*. Virg. *Nam habet natūra, ut aliārum omnium rerum, sic* vivendi *modum*. Cic. *Barbăra consuetūdo hominum immolandōrum*. Id.——*Venandi studiōsi*. Cic. *Certus eundi* Virg. *Insuētus navigandi*. Cæs. *Peritus civitātis regendæ*. Nep.

(1.) The nouns after which these genitives most frequently occur are, *amor, ars, causa, consilium, consuetūdo, cupidĭtas, facultas, gratia, locus, licentia, modus, occasio, otium, potestas, spes, studium, tempus, venia, vis, voluntas*.

(2.) The adjectives which most frequently take after them these genitives, are such as denote *desire, knowledge, remembrance*, and their contraries; as, *cupĭdus, studiōsus, perītus, imperītus, insuētus, certus, rudis*, &c. See § 213, REM. 1, (3.)

(3.) The genitive plural sometimes depends upon a gerund in *di*, instead of being joined with the gerundive; as, *Facultas* agrōrum *condonandi*. Cic. *Nominandi* istōrum *erit copia*. Plaut. *In castra venērunt* sui *purgandi causâ*. Cæs. This construction is most common with pronouns.

(4.) The gerund in *di*, for the gerundive, is sometimes found also with pronouns of the singular number and *feminine* gender; as, *Quoniam* tui *videndi est copia*. Plaut. *Ego* ejus *videndi cupĭdus rectà consĕquor*. Ter. In these examples, *tui* and *ejus* are feminine.

(5.) The gerund and gerundive, after the verb *sum*, are sometimes found in the genitive denoting a *tendency*, without any noun or adjective on which they can depend; as, *Regium imperium initio* conservandæ libertātis *fuĕrat*. Sall. *Causa* or *gratia* may sometimes be supplied. In some other cases, the word on which the gerund in *di* depends is not expressed; as, *Maneat provincialibus potentiam suam tali modo* ostentandi, sc. *facultas*. Tac. *Cùm habĕrem in animo* navigandi, sc. *propositum*. Cic.

REM. 2. The dative of gerunds and gerundives is used especially after adjectives signifying *usefulness* or *fitness*, and also after verbs, to denote a *purpose*; as,

Charta emporĕtica est inutĭlis scribendo. Plin. Capessendæ *reipŭblicæ habĭlis*. Tac. *Ut nec triumvĭri* accipiundo, *nec scribæ* referundo *sufficĕrent*. Liv. *Locum oppĭdo* condendo *capĕre*. Id.

(1.) The verbs and phrases upon which this dative most frequently de-

pends are, *studeo; intentus sum; impendo, consūmo* or *insūmo, tempus; opĕram do, desum, sum* (signifying *to serve for, to be adequate to*), *facio*, and *sufficio*.

The dative after *sum* is usually supposed to depend on an adjective understood. See § 227, Rem. 3.

(2.) The dative of the gerundive, denoting a purpose, is also used after names of office; as, *Decemvīri* legĭbus scribendis. Liv. So, *Comitia* creandis decemvīris. Id.

(3.) A purpose is more commonly expressed by *ad* and the accusative, than by the dative; as, *Pecus* ad vescendum *hominĭbus apta*. Cic.

(4.) Instead of the gerund or gerundive after adjectives, the poets sometimes use the infinitive, in imitation of the Greek construction; as, *Audax omnia* perpĕti, i. e. *ad omnia perpetienda*. Hor. See § 270, Rem. 1.

Rem. 3. The accusative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *ad* or *inter*, and sometimes *ante*, *circa*, or *ob*; as,

Ad pœnitendum *propĕrat, qui citò judĭcat*. Pub. Syr. *Inter bibendum*, While drinking. Just. *Ad castra facienda*. Cic. *Ob absolvendum*. Id.

Rem. 4. The ablative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *a, ab, de, e, ex*, or *in*; or it is used without a preposition, as the ablative of cause, manner, means, or instrument; as,

Aristotĕlem non deterruit a scribendo. Cic. *Ex assentando*. Ter. *Non video* a defendendis hominĭbus *discedĕre*. Cic. *Crescit* eundo. Virg. *Rem quærunt* mercatūris faciendis. Cic. *Oratiōnem Latīnam* legendis nostris *efficies pleniōrem*. Id.

This ablative also occurs, though rarely, after *pro* and *cum*; as, *Pro vapulando*. Plaut. *Cum loquendo*. Quinct.

SUPINES.

§ 276. I. Supines in *um* are followed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

Non Graiis servītum matrĭbus *ibo*, I shall not go to serve Grecian matrons. Virg. *Eurypylum citātum* oracŭla *Phœbi mittīmus*, We send Eurypylus to consult the oracle of Apollo. Id.

II. Supines in *um* follow verbs of motion, and serve to denote the *purpose* of the motion; as,

Te id admonītum *venio*. Plaut. Cubĭtum *discessīmus*. Cic. *Ire* dejectum *monumenta regis*. Hor. So after participles; as, *Patriam* defensum *revocātus*. Nep. Spectātum *admissi*. Hor.

Remark 1. Supines in *um* sometimes follow verbs which do not express motion; as, Do *filiam nuptum*. Ter. *Vos ultum injurias* hortor. Sall.

Rem. 2. The supine in *um* with *eo* often forms a periphrasis equivalent to the same mood and tense of the verb from which the supine is formed; as, *Ne bonos omnes* perdĭtum eant (Sall.), for *perdant*. *Ereptum eunt* (Id.), for *eripiunt*. *Ultum ivit* (Tac.), for *ultus est*.

Rem. 3. The supine in *um* most frequently occurs with the infinitive *iri*, with which it forms the future infinitive passive; as, *Brutum visum iri a me puto*. Cic. In this construction the accusative properly depends upon the supine, and *iri* is used impersonally; thus, "I suppose (that it is going by me), *i. e.* that I am going to see Brutus."

Rem. 4. Instead of the supine in *um* after a verb of motion, a gerund or gerundive in the accusative with *ad*, or in the genitive with *causâ* or *gratiâ*, also the subjunctive with *ut* or *qui*, and a present or future participle active, may be used to express a purpose. For the gerund and gerundive, see § 275; for the subjunctive with *ut*, § 262,—with *qui*, § 264; and for participles, § 274.

The infinitive, also, is sometimes used by the poets, instead of the supine, to express a purpose. See § 271.

III. The supine in *u* is used to limit the meaning of adjectives signifying *wonderful, agreeable, easy* or *difficult, worthy* or *unworthy, honorable* or *base*, and a few others; as,

Mirabile dictu! Wonderful to tell, *or* to be told! Virg. *Jucundum cognĭtu atque auditu*, Pleasant to be known and heard. Cic. *Res factu facĭlis*, A thing easy to be done. Ter. *Locus adĭtu difficĭlis*. Sall. *Turpia dictu*. Cic. *Optĭmum factu*. Id.

Remark 1. The principal adjectives after which the supine in *u* occurs, are *affabĭlis, arduus, asper, bonus, dignus, indignus, facĭlis, difficĭlis, fœdus, gravis, honestus, horrendus, incredibĭlis, jucundus, injucundus, memorabĭlis, pulcher, rarus, turpis*, and *utĭlis*.

Rem. 2. The supine in *u* is used also after the nouns *fas, nefas*, and *opus*; as,

Hoc fas est dictu. Cic. *Nefas dictu*. Ovid. *Dictu opus est*. Ter.

Rem. 3. As the supine in *u* is commonly translated by a passive form, it is placed under the passive voice. In many cases, however, it may with equal or greater propriety be translated actively. It seems not to differ in its nature from other verbal nouns in *us*, of the fourth declension. In the expressions, *Obsonātu redeo* (Plaut.), *Cubĭtu surgat* (Cato), *obsonātu* and *cubĭtu*, though following verbs, are by some considered as supines, by others as nouns depending on a preposition understood.

The supine in *u*, even when it follows adjectives, might, as a verbal noun, be referred to § 250.

Rem. 4. Instead of the supine in *u*, an infinitive, a gerund or gerundive with *ad*, or a verbal noun in the ablative, and sometimes in the dative or accusative, may be used; as, *Ardua imitātu, cetĕrùm* cognosci *utilia*. Val. Max. *Illud autem facile* ad credendum *est*. Cic. *Opus* proscriptiōne *dignum*. Plin. *Aqua* potui *jucunda*. Id. *Facilior* ad intellectum *atque* imitatiōnem. Quinct.

The construction with *ad* and the gerund, or with *sum* and the infinitive, is used by the best writers after *facĭlis, difficĭlis*, and *jucundus*. The most common construction of *dignus* is with *qui* and the subjunctive See § 264, 9.

ADVERBS.

§ 277. Adverbs modify or limit the meaning of verbs, adjectives, and sometimes of other adverbs; as,

Benè mones, You advise well. Ter. *Fortissimè urgentes*, Most vigorously pressing on. Plin. *Malè narrando*. Ter. *Longè dissimilis*. Cic. *Valdè benè*. Id.

REMARK 1. Adverbs sometimes, also, modify nouns; as,

Homērus planè orātor. Cic. *Admōdum puella*. Liv. *Nihil admōdum*. Cic.

REM. 2. Adverbs may also modify adjective pronouns, and prepositions; as,

Planè noster. Cic. *Paulò ultra eum locum*. Cæs.

REM. 3. A negative adverb, modifying another negative word, destroys the negation; as,

Non parēre noluit, He was not unwilling to obey. Nep. *Haud ignāra mali*, Not ignorant of evil. Virg. Nec *verò* non *omni supplicio digni*. Cic. *Haud nihil est*, It is something. Ter. So, *nonnulli*, some; *nunnunquam*, sometimes.

REM. 4. When the subject and predicate of a proposition are both modified by negative words, and also when the predicate contains two negatives, the proposition is affirmative; as,

Nemo non videt, Every one sees. Cic. So, if both the antecedent and the predicate of a relative clause are negative, the proposition is affirmative; as, *Nemo est, qui nesciat;* Every body knows. Cic.

REM. 5. Two negatives, however, though connected as above specified, sometimes strengthen the negation; as, Neque *ille* haud *objiciet mihi*. Plaut. *Jura te* non *nocitūrum homīni* nemīni. Id. Especially are *neque, nec*, and sometimes *non*, thus used after a negative, instead of *aut* or *vel*; as, Non *me carminibus vincet*, nec *Orpheus*, nec *Linus*. Virg. Nemīnem, non *re*, non *verbo*, non *vultu dentque offendi*. Cic. Nullius *rei* neque *præs*, neque *manceps factus est*. Nep.

REM. 6. *Non* is sometimes omitted after *non modò* or *non solùm*, when followed, in a subsequent clause, by *ne quidem;* as,

Mihi non modò irasci, sed ne dolēre quidem impūne licet, ... not only *not* to be angry, but.... Cic. *Cùm senatui non solùm juvāre rempublicam, sed ne lugēre quidem licēret*. Id.

Non is also rarely omitted after *non modò* when followed by *sed* or *verùm* with *etiam;* as, *Qui non modò ea fulāra timet, verùm etiam fert, sustinetque præsentia;* Who not only does *not* fear.... Cic.

REM. 7. *Facilè*, in the sense of *undoubtedly, clearly*, is joined to superlatives, and words of similar import; as, *Vir unus totius Græciæ* facilè doctissimus. Cic. *Homo regiōnis illius virtūte* facilè princeps. Id.

REM. 8. Adverbs are sometimes equivalent to phrases containing an antecedent and a relative, both of which would be in an oblique case.

When thus resolved, the antecedent will be found to modify some word in its own clause, and the relative to serve both as a connective for a subsequent clause, and a modifier of some word contained in it. Hence, such adverb serves the threefold purpose of a connective and a double modifier; as,

Eò postquam *Cæsar pervēnit, obsĭdes poposcit;* After Cæsar came thither, he demanded hostages (Cæs.); i. e. *Obsĭdes poposcit* post id tempus, in quo *eò pervēnit;* He demanded hostages *after the time at which* he came thither; where *post id tempus* modifies *poposcit*, and *in quo* serves as a connective, and also modifies *pervēnit.*

Frequently, for greater precision, an additional adverb is introduced, which, in the resolution of the phrase, stands in, and sometimes supplies, the antecedent clause; as, *Eò postquam pervēnit*, tum *obsĭdes poposcit*, ... *then* he demanded hostages; i. e. *Obsĭdes poposcit* tempŏre, *post id tempus in quo eò pervēnit;* He demanded hostages *at a time* subsequent to the time at which he came thither. So, *Cùm venit calamĭtas*, tum *detrimentum accipĭtur* (Cic.), i. e. *Detrimentum* eo tempŏre *accipĭtur*, in quo *venit calamĭtas.*

CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 278. Copulative and disjunctive conjunctions, and some others, connect words which are in the *same construction.*

Words are in the same construction, when they stand in the *same relation* to some other word or words in the sentence. Hence conjunctions connect the same cases of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, the same moods of verbs, and adverbs and prepositions relating to the same word; as,

Pulvis *et* umbra *sumus*, We are dust and shade. Hor. *Si* tu *et* Tullia *valētis*, ego *et* Cicĕro *valēmus.* Cic. Aggĕre *jacto* turrĭbus*que constitūtis.* Cæs. Clarus *et* honorātus *vir*, An illustrious and honorable man. Id. *Cæsar Remos* cohortātus, *liberaliterque oratiōne* prosecūtus. Cæs. *Pater tuus, quem* colui *et* dilexi. Cic. *Cùm triumphum* egĕris, *censorque* fuĕris, *et* obiĕris *legātus.* Id. *Cùm ad oppĭdum* accessisset, *castrāque ibi* poněret. Cæs. Ades *animo, et* omitte *timōrem.* Cic. *Ea* vidēre *ac* perspicĕre *potestis.* Id. Gravĭter *et* copiōse *dixisse dicĭtur.* Id. Cum *fratre an* sine. Id.

Remark 1. This rule includes the copulative conjunctions *ac, atque, et, etium, que, nec, neque,* the disjunctives *aut, seu, sive, ve, vel, neve, neu,* and also *quàm, præterquam, nisi, an, nempe, quamvis, nedum, sed, autem, verùm,* and, in general, such as, when used to connect clauses, do not imply a dependence of the following upon the preceding clause. To these may be added the adverbs of likeness, *ceu, tanquam, quasi, ut,* &c.; as, *Nec census, nec clarum nomen avōrum,* sed probĭtas *magnos ingeniumque facit.* Ovid. *Philosŏphi negant quenquam virum bonum esse,* nisi sapientem. Cic. *Gloria virtūtem* tanquam umbra *sequĭtur.* Id.

Rem. 2. Words thus connected are sometimes in different cases, though in the same construction; as, Mea *et* reipublĭcæ *intĕrest.* Cic. (See § 219.) *Sive es* Romæ, *sive* in Epīro. Id. (See §§ 221 and 254.) *In Mettii descendat judĭcis aures, et* patris *et* nostras. Hor. See § 211, Rem. 3.

Rem. 3. The above conjunctions connect not only single words, but clauses whose construction is the same; that is,

whose subjects are in the same case, and their verbs in the same mood; as,

Concĭdunt venti, fugiuntque nubes; The winds subside, and the clouds disperse. Hor. *Locum, quem et non coquit sol, et tangit ros.* Varr. *Ludi decem per dies facti sunt, neque res ulla prætermissa est.* Cic. *Vides, ut altâ* stet *nive candĭdum* Soracte, *nec jam* sustineant *onus* silvæ *laborantes, gelŭque* flumĭna constitĕrint *acūto.* Hor. *Intelligĭtis et* animum *ei præsto* fuisse, *nec* consilium defuisse. Cic.

Rem. 4. As the subjunctive is often used for the imperative, they may be connected by the above conjunctions; as, Disce *nec* invideas. Pers.

Rem. 5. The indicative and subjunctive may also be thus connected, if the clause of the latter is not *dependent;* as, *Nec satis* scio, *nec, si sciam, dicĕre* ausim. Liv.

Rem. 6. The conjunction is often omitted; as, *Cui Romæ domus, uxor, libĕri, procurātor esset.* Cic. *Quæ vitia sunt non senectūtis, sed inertis, ignāvæ, somniculōsæ senectūtis.* Id. *Abiit, excessit, evāsit, erūpit.* Id.

Rem. 7 Copulative and disjunctive conjunctions are often used, before each of two or more connected words or clauses, in order to mark the connection more forcibly; as, Et *pecunia persuādet,* et *gratia,* et *auctorĭtas dicentis,* et *dignĭtas,* et *postrēmò aspectus.* Quinct. *Hoc* et *turpe,* nec *tamĕn tutum.* Cic. Neque *nata est,* et *æterna est.* Id. Et *tibi* et *mihi voluptāti fore.* Id. *Res ipsa* aut *invitābit* aut *dehortabĭtur.* Id.

In like manner *nunc....nunc, simul....simul, partim....partim, quà....quà, tum.....tum, cùm....tum,* are used before words or clauses. *Tum....tum* not only signify *both.....and,* but also *at one time.....at another time. Cùm..... tum* generally give a greater emphasis to the latter word or clause, which is often increased by the addition of *verò, certè, præcipuè, imprīmis, maxĭmè,* &c.; as, *Luxuria,* cùm *omni ætāti turpis,* tum maxĭmè *senectūti fœdissĭma est.* Cic.

Rem. 8. To connect different names of the same person or thing, *sive* or *seu,* rather than *aut* or *vel,* is employed; as, *Mars sive Mavors.*

Rem. 9. *Ac* and *atque* signify *as* and *than* after adjectives and adverbs denoting similarity or dissimilarity; as, Similĭter *facis* ac *si me roges,*.....as if you should ask me. Cic. *Me colit* æquè atque *patrōnum suum,*....as much as.... Id. *Si* alĭter *scribo* ac *sentio,* If I write otherwise than I think. Id. *Illi sunt* alio *ingenio* atque *tu.* Plaut.

ARRANGEMENT.

I. OF WORDS.

§ 279. 1. In English, after *connectives,* are placed, first, the *subject,* and the words which modify or limit it; next, the *verb* and its modifiers; then the *object* of the verb; and last, *prepositions,* and the words depending upon them. This is called the *logical* or *natural* order.

2. In a Latin sentence, after *connectives,* are placed, first, the *subject* and its modifiers; then the *oblique cases,* and other words which depend upon or modify the verb; and last of all, the *verb.*

This arrangement, however, though common, is by no means invariable, since it is a general rule, that *the most emphatic word in a sentence is to be placed first.*

3. Connectives generally stand at the beginning of a clause.

The following connectives may stand either in the first or second place, and sometimes in the third:—*equĭdem, ergo, ĕtĕnim, etiam, ideo, igĭtur, ităque, licet, namque, quia, quamquam, quippe, quoniam, saltem, sed, tamen, ut, utpŏte,* and some others.

Autem, enim, and *verò* (but), commonly occupy the second place, sometimes the third; as, *Ille* enim *revocātus resistĕre cœpit.* Cæs. *Ego* verò *vellem, affuisses.* Cic. The enclitics *que, ne, ve,* are usually subjoined to the first word in a clause.

Quidem and *quoque* are subjoined to the emphatic word in a clause; as, *Verbo ille reus erat, re* quidem *verò Oppianĭcus.* Cic. *Me scilĭcet maxĭmè, sed proxĭmè illum* quoque *fefellissem.* Id.

In negative sentences, *ne* precedes, and *quidem* follows, the emphatic word; as, Ne *ad Catōnem* quidem *provocābo.* Cic.

4. When a word is repeated in the same clause, so that one is opposed to, or distinguished from, the other, they must stand together; as, Homĭnes hominĭbus *maxĭmè utiles esse possunt.* Cic. *Equĭtes* alii aliò *dilapsi sunt.* Liv.

5. Words used antithetically are also placed near each other; as, *Dum* tacent, clamant. Cic. *Fragĭle* corpus animus *sempiternus movet.* Id.

6. *Inquam* and usually *aio,* introducing a quotation, follow one or more of the words quoted; as, "*Non nŏsti quid pater,*" inquit, "*Chrysippus dicat.*" Hor. "*Quid,*" aio, "*tua crimĭna prodis?*" Ovid.

7. Adjectives are commonly placed after their nouns, especially when any thing is dependent on them. When a noun is limited by another noun, as well as by an adjective, the adjective usually precedes both; as, *Ulla* officii *præcepta.* Cic. *Tuum* erga dignitātem meam *studium.* Id.

Demonstratives, and the adjectives *primus, medius,* &c. (see § 205, Rem. 17), usually precede their nouns; as, *Ea res.* Cæs. *His ipsis verbis.* Cic. *Media nox.* Cæs. *Reliqua Ægyptus.* Cic.

8. Monosyllables are usually prefixed to longer words with which they are connected; as, *Vir clarissĭmus.* Cic. *Vis tempestātis.* Cæs.

9. When nouns are put in apposition, the one which explains or defines the other is generally put last; as, *Marcus Tullius* consul. Sall. *Opes* irritamenta *malōrum.* Ovid.

In the arrangement of names of persons, the *prænōmen* stands first, next the *nomen,* third the *cognōmen,* and last the *agnōmen;* as, *Publius Cornelius Scipio Africānus.* The prænomen is usually denoted by a letter.

10. Oblique cases precede the words upon which they depend, but they follow prepositions; as,

Popŭli *Romāni laus est.* Cic. Laudis *avĭdi,* pecuniæ *liberāles.* Sall. Cunctis *esto benignus,* nulli *blandus,* paucis *familiāris,* omnĭbus *æquus.* Sen. *Monumentum* ære *perennius.* Hor. Hanc tibi dono *do.* Ter.——*Ad meridiem spectans.* Cic. *Extra periculum.* Id.

Genitives depending upon neuter adjectives are commonly placed last; as, *Incerta fortūnæ.* Liv. *Nec tibi plus* cordis, *sed minus* oris *inest.* Ovid.

When a noun which is governed by a preposition, is modified by other words which precede it, the preposition usually stands before the words by

which the noun is modified; as, *A primâ luce ad sextam horam.* Liv. *Ad privātum dolōrem fuit luctuōsum.* Cic. *Ad animi mei lætitiam.* Id.

Sometimes, however, the preposition comes between its noun and an adjective, or a genitive by which the noun is modified; as, *Nullâ in re.* Cic. *Justis de causis.* Id. *Suos inter æquāles.* Id.

Per, in adjurations, is often separated by other words; as, Per *ego te* deos *oro.* Ter.

Tenus and *versùs* follow their cases, and sometimes other prepositions, especially when joined with relative pronouns.

11. Infinitives precede the verbs on which they depend; as,

Jugurtha, ubi eos Africâ decessisse ratus est, *neque propter loci natūram Cirtam armis* expugnāre possit, *mœnia circumdat.* Sall. Servire *magis quàm* imperāre parāti estis. Id.

12. A word which has the same relation to several words, either precedes or follows them all; as, Vir *gravis et sapiens.* Cic. *Clarus et honorātus* vir. Id.

13. Relatives are commonly placed after their antecedents, and as near to them as possible; as,

Qui sim, ex eo, quem *ad te misi, cognosces.* Sall. Litĕras *ad te misi, per* quas *gratias tibi egi.* Cic.

14. *Quisque* is generally placed after *se, suus, qui,* ordinals and superlatives; as, *Suos* quisque *debet tuēri.* Cic. *Satis superque est sibi sudrum* cuique *rerum cura.* Id. *Severĭtas animadversiōnis infimo* cuique *gratissima.* Id. *Quisque* very rarely begins a proposition.

15. An adverb is usually placed immediately before the word which it qualifies; but if the same word is modified by the oblique case of a noun, the latter commonly follows the adverb; as, Malè *parta* malè *dilabuntur.* Cic. *Nihil* tam *aspĕrum neque* tam *difficĭle esse, quod* non cupidissimè *factūri essent.* Sall.——*Imperium* facilè *iis artĭbus* retinētur, *quibus initio partum est.* Id. *Sed* maximè *adolescentium familiaritātes* appetēbat. Id. *Non* tam *in bellis et in prœliis,* quàm *in promissis et fide* firmiōrem. Cic.

In some phrases, custom has established a certain order, which must be observed and imitated; as, *Ne quid respublĭca detrimenti capiat.* Cic.

16. Exceptions to the foregoing principles are very numerous. These may arise from a regard to the harmony of the sentence, from poetic license, or from the following rule, which sometimes modifies nearly all the preceding:—

The emphatic word is placed before the word or words connected with it which are not emphatic.

17. A sentence should not close like a hexameter verse, with a dactyl and spondee; as, *Esse vidētur;* nor, in general, with a monosyllable.

18. *Hiatus* should be avoided; that is, a word beginning with a vowel should not follow a word ending with a vowel.

19. A concurrence of long words or long measures,—of short words or short measures,—of words beginning alike or ending alike,—should be avoided.

II. OF CLAUSES.

§ 280. A compound sentence, in which the leading clause is divided by the insertion of one or more subordinate clauses, is called a *period*.

1. In a regular period, the leading verb is placed at the end, and the subordinate clauses between the parts of the leading clause; as,

Pausanias, *cùm semianĭmis de templo elātus esset*, confestim anĭmam efflavit; Pausanias, when he had been carried out of the temple but just alive, immediately expired. Nep. Ego, *si ab imprōbis et perdĭtis civĭbus rempublĭcam tenēri vidĕrem, sicut et meis temporĭbus scimus, et nonnullis alĭis accidisse accepĭmus*, non modò præmiis, *quæ apud me minĭmum valent*, sed ne pericŭlis quidem compulsus ullis, *quĭbus tamen moventur etiam fortissĭmi viri*, ad eōrum causam me adjungĕrem. Cic.

2. If the verbs of the leading and dependent clauses have the same subject, or the same word depending on them, they are commonly formed into a period; as, Antigŏnus, *quum adversŭs Seleucum Lysimachumque dimicāret*, in prœlio occīsus est. Nep.

So, also, when the word which depends on the verb of the leading clause is the subject of the dependent clause; as, Manlio, *quum dictātor fuisset*, Marcus Pomponius tribūnus plebis diem dixit. Cic.

3. When obscurity would arise from separating the leading subject and verb by dependent words or clauses, they are often placed together at the beginning or end of the sentence; as, Latæ (sunt) deinde leges, *non solùm quæ regni suspiciōne consŭlem absolvĕrent, sed quæ adeo in contrarium vertĕrent, ut populārem etiam facĕrent*. Liv.

The position of the leading verb is also often otherwise varied, from regard to emphasis, to avoid monotony, or to prevent its meeting with the verb of the last dependent clause.

4. When one clause is interrupted by the introduction of another, the latter should be finished before the first is resumed.

5. Clauses expressing a *cause*, a *condition*, a *time*, or a *comparison*, usually precede the clauses to which they relate.

6. A short clause usually stands before, rather than after a long one.

ANALYSIS.

§ 281. The analysis of a proposition, or of a compound sentence, consists in dividing it into the several parts of which it is composed, and pointing out their mutual relations.

In analyzing a proposition, it is first to be divided into its logical subject and predicate. See §§ 200, 201, 202.

If the logical subject consists of more than one word, its grammatical subject should be pointed out, and distinguished as simple or compound. See § 201, I. II.

When the grammatical subject is determined, the words which modify or limit it should next be specified, and then the words which modify them, and so on, until the logical subject is exhausted. See § 201, III.

In analyzing the logical predicate, the grammatical predicate should first be mentioned, then the words which modify or limit it, and their modifiers, until the logical predicate is exhausted. See § 202.

In analyzing a *proposition*, the rules for the agreement and dependence of words should be given, and likewise their various inflections.

The analysis of a *compound sentence* requires, first, its resolution into its several component propositions; and, secondly, their analysis in the manner before mentioned. See § 203.

In resolving a sentence into its component clauses, the participial constructions equivalent to clauses should be mentioned, and ellipses supplied. See § 203, 5.

When the compound sentence is resolved, the connection of the clauses should be pointed out, and whether they are dependent or independent. See § 203, 2. In either case, the connective words, if any, should be mentioned, and the connection, if any exists, with the preceding sentence. See § 203, 4. When clauses are dependent, the relation in which they stand should be explained, the character of the connectives stated, and the rules for the moods of the verbs given. See §§ 262—266 and 272, 273.

The following are examples of the analysis of simple and compound sentences:—

1. *Sæviùs ventis agitātur ingens pinus*, The great pine is more violently shaken by the winds. Hor.

Ingens pinus is the logical subject; *sæviùs ventis agitātur* is the logical predicate.

The grammatical subject is *pinus*: this is modified by *ingens*.[a]

The grammatical predicate is *agitātur*: this is modified by *sæviùs*[b] and *ventis*.[c]

Pinus is a common noun,[d] of the second and fourth declension,[e] feminine gender,[f] and nominative case.[g]

Ingens is an adjective, of the third declension, and of one termination,[h] in the nominative case, feminine gender, agreeing with *pinus*.[i]

Agitātur is an active[k] frequentative[l] verb, of the first conj. from *agĭto*, derived from *ago* [Name its principal parts], formed from the 1st root, [Give the formations of that root.] It is in the passive voice, indicative mood, present tense, singular number, third person, agreeing with *pinus*.[m]

Sæviùs is an adverb, in the comparative degree, from *sævè* or *sævĭter*,[n] derived from the adjective *sævus*,[o] modifying the verb *agitātur*.[p]

Ventis is a common noun, of the second declension,[q] masculine gender,[r] in the plural number, ablative case.[s]

2. *Mithridātes, duārum et viginti gentium rex, totĭdem linguis jura dixit;* Mithridates, king of twenty-two nations, pronounced judicial decisions in as many languages. Plin.

The logical subject is *Mithridātes duārum et viginti gentium rex.*

The logical predicate is *totĭdem linguis jura dixit.*

The grammatical subject is *Mithridātes*: this is modified by *rex*.[t] *Rex* is limited by *gentium*,[u] which is itself limited by *duārum* and *viginti*.[v] *Et* connects *duārum* and *viginti*.[w]

[a] § 201, III. 3.
[b] § 202, III. 3.
[c] § 202, III. 2.
[d] § 26.
[e] § 99.
[f] § 29, 2.
[g] § 201, IV. 3.
[h] § 111.
[i] § 205.
[k] § 141, 1.
[l] § 137, II. 1.
[m] § 209.
[n] § 194.
[o] § 192, II.
[p] § 277.
[q] § 38.
[r] § 46.
[s] § 201, III. 2.
[t] § 201, III. 3. & REM. 1.
[u] § 247.
[v] § 201, III. 1.
[w] § 278.

The grammatical predicate is *dixit*, which is limited by *jura*[a] and *linguis*,[a] and the latter by *totidem*.

Mithridātes is a proper noun,[b] of the third declension,[c] masculine gender,[d] and nominative case.

Rex is a common noun, 3d dec.,[e] masc. gen.,[d] in apposition with *Mithridātes*.[f]

Gentium is a com. noun., 3d dec.,[g] fem. gen.,[h] in the genitive plural,[i] limiting *rex*.[k]

Duārum is a numeral adj., of the cardinal[l] kind, in the genitive case, fem. gen., agreeing with *gentium*.[m]

Et is a copulative conjunction.[n]

Vigīnti is a cardinal numeral adjective indeclinable,[l] limiting *gentium*.[m]

Dixit is an active verb,[o] of the third conjugation,[p] from *dico* [Give the principal parts],[q] formed from the second root [Give the formations of that root], in the act. voice., ind. mood, perf. indefinite tense,[r] sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *Mithridātes*.[s]

Jura, a com. noun, 3d dec.,[t] neut. gen.,[u] plur. num., acc. case, the object of *dixit*.[v]

Linguis, a com. noun, 1st dec., fem. gen.,[w] plural num., ablative case.[x]

Totidem, an adj., indeclinable,[y] in the plural number, limiting *linguis*.

3. Romāna pubes, *sedāto tandem pavōre, postquam ex tam turbĭdo die serēna et tranquilla lux rediit, ubi vacuam sedem regiam vidit, etsi satis credēbat patrĭbus, qui proxĭmi stetĕrant, sublīmem raptum procellâ;* tamen, velut orbitātis metu icta, mœstum aliquamdiu silentium obtinuit. Liv.

The preceding compound sentence constitutes a period,[z] and it may be resolved into the following clauses:—

1. Romāna pubes *tamen*, velut orbitātis metu icta, *mœstum aliquamdiu silentium obtinuit*,—which is the leading clause.[aa]
2. *sedāto tandem* pavōre,
3. *postquam ex tam turbĭdo die* serēna et tranquilla lux *rediit*,
4. *ubi vidit*,
5. *vacuam* (*esse*) sedem regiam,
6. etsi *satis credēbat patrĭbus*,
7. qui *proxĭmi stetĕrant*,
8. *sublīmem raptum procellâ*.

In the preceding clauses, the predicates are printed in Italics.

The grammatical subject of the leading clause is *pubes*, which is limited by *Romāna* and *icta*. *Icta* is modified by *velut* and *metu*, which last is limited by *orbitātis*. The grammatical predicate of that clause is *obtinuit*: this is limited by *aliquamdiu* and *silentium*, which is itself limited by *mœstum*.

Pubes, a collective noun,[bb] 3d dec.,[cc] fem. gen.,[dd] sing. num., nom. case.

Romāna, a patrial[ee] adj., of the 1st and 2d dec.,[ff] fem. gen., sing. num., nom case, agreeing with *pubes*.[gg]

Tamen, an adversative conjunction,[hh] relating to *etsi* in the 6th clause,

[a] § 202, III. 2. [b] § 26. [c] § 73. [d] § 28. [e] § 78. [f] § 204. [g] § 77. [h] § 62. [i] § 83. [k] § 211. [l] §§ 117, 118. [m] § 205. [n] § 198, 1. [o] § 141. [p] § 149. [q] § 158. [r] § 145, IV. [s] § 209. [t] § 76. [u] § 66. [v] § 239. [w] §§ 38, 41. [x] § 247. [y] § 115*b*, 3. [z] § 280. [aa] § 203, 3. [bb] § 26. [cc] § 73. [dd] § 62. [ee] § 104. [ff] § 105. [gg] § 205. [hh] § 198, 4.

and denoting that the predicate of this clause is true, notwithstanding the concession made in that clause.

Velut, an adverb, modifying *icta*.[a]

Icta, a perf. part. pass., from the active verb *ico*, 3d conj.[b] [Principal parts in both voices], fem. gen., sing. num., nom. case, agreeing with *pubes*.[c]

Metu, an abstract noun,[d] 4th dec.,[e] masc. gen., sing. num., abl. case.[f]

Orbitātis, an abstract[d] noun, derived from *orbus*, 3d dec.,[g] fem. gen.,[h] sing. num., gen. case, limiting *metu*.[i]

Obtinuit, an active verb of the 2d conj.,[k] from *obtineo*, compounded of prep. *ob* and *teneo*[l] [Give the principal parts, and the formations of the second root],[m] in the active voice, ind. mood., perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d person, agreeing with *pubes*.[n]

Aliquamdiu, an adverb, compounded of *aliquis* and *diu*,[o] and limiting *obtinuit*.[p]

Silentium, a com. noun, 2d dec., neut. gen.,[q] sing. num., acc. case, the object of *obtinuit*.[r]

Mœstum, an adj., 1st and 2d dec., neut. gen., sing num., acc. case, agreeing with *silentium*.[s]

The 2d is a participial clause, equivalent to *quum pavor tandem sedātus esset*.[t]

Pavōre, an abstract[d] verbal[u] noun, from *paveo*, 3d dec.,[v] masc. gen.,[w] sing. num., abl. case, absolute with *sedāto*.[x]

Sedāto, a perf. part. pass., from the act. verb *sedo*, of the 1st conj.,[y] [Principal parts in both voices], masc. gen., sing. num., abl. case,[z] agreeing with *pavōre*.[aa]

Tandem, an adverb of time, modifying *sedāto*.[bb]

Postquam, an adverb of time, compounded of *post* and *quam*, modifying *obtinuit* and *rediit*, and serving to connect the first and third clauses.[cc]

The grammatical subject of the 3d clause is *lux*, which is limited by *serēna* and *tranquilla*. The grammatical predicate is *rediit*, which is modified by *postquam* and *die*. *Die* is modified by *turbīdo*, which is itself modified by *tam*.

Lux, a com. noun, 3d dec.,[dd] fem. gen.,[ee] sing. num., nom. case.

Serēna, an adj., 1st and 2d dec., fem. gen., sing. num., nom. case, agreeing with *lux*.[c]

Et, a copulative conjunction, connecting *serēna* and *tranquilla*.[ff]

Tranquilla, like *serēna*.

Rediit, a neuter verb, from *redeo*, compounded of insep. prep. *red*[gg] and *eo*[hh] [Prin. parts], ind. mood., perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d person, agreeing with *lux*.[ii]

Die, a com. noun, 5th dec.,[kk] masc. gen., sing. num., abl. case after prep. *ex*.[ll]

Turbīdo, an adj. agreeing with *die*. *Tam*, an adverb, modifying *turbīdo*.[bb]

Ubi, an adverb of time, and, like *postquam*, a connective, and a double modifier. It connects the fourth clause to the first, and limits the predicates *vidit* and *obtinuit*.[cc]

[a] § 277. [b] § 158. [c] § 205. [d] § 26. [e] § 87. [f] § 247. [g] § 72. [h] § 62. [i] § 211. [k] § 149. [l] § 189, 2. [m] § 157. [n] § 209. [o] § 193, 6. [p] § 277. [q] § 46. [r] § 229. [s] § 205. [t] § 257, Rem. 1. [u] § 102, 1. [v] § 70. [w] § 58. [x] § 257. [y] § 149. [z] § 105. [aa] § 205. [bb] § 277. [cc] § 277, Rem. 8. [dd] § 78. [ee] § 62. [ff] § 278. [gg] § 196, 14. [hh] § 182. [ii] § 209. [kk] § 90. [ll] § 241.

The subject of the 4th clause is the same as that of the first, with which it is connected; it is therefore omitted.[a]

The grammatical predicate of the 4th clause is *vidit:* this is limited by its object, which is the 5th clause.[b]

Vidit, an act. verb, 2d conj. [Principal parts and formation], act. voice, ind. mood, perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *pubes* understood.[c]

The 5th clause has no connective. Its grammatical subject is *sedem*, which is limited by *regiam*. Its grammatical predicate is (*esse*) *vacuam*, the former being understood.[d]

Sedem, a com. noun, 3d. dec., fem. gen., sing. num., acc. case.[e]

Regiam, a possessive adj., derived from *rex*, agreeing with *sedem*.

Vacuam, an adj., agreeing with *sedem*.

The 6th clause is connected to the leading clause by the concessive[f] conjunction *etsi*, to which the adversative[g] *tamen* corresponds in the first clause.

Its subject is the same as that of the leading clause.

Its grammatical predicate is *credēbat*, which is limited by *satis* and *patrĭbus*.

Credēbat, a neut. verb,[h] 2d conj. [Principal parts, and formations of 1st root], act. voice, ind. mood, imperf. tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *pubes* understood.

Satis, an adverb of degree[i] modifying *credēbat*.[k]

Patrĭbus, a com. noun, 3d dec.,[l] masc. gen.,[m] plur. num., dat. case, depending upon *credēbat*,[n] and modified by the relative clause following.[o]

The 7th clause, which is connected by *qui*[p] to the preceding one, is introduced to show the situation of those senators at the time of the removal of Romulus.

Qui is its grammatical subject, and is a relative pronoun,[q] masc. gen., plur. num., agreeing with *patrĭbus* understood.[r]

Stetĕrant, a neut. verb,[h] 1st conj., irregular in its 2d root[s] [Principal parts, and formations of 2d root], act. voice, ind. mood, plup. tense, 3d pers. plur., agreeing with *qui*.[e]

Proxĭmi, an adj. of the superlative degree[t] [Compare it], 1st and 2d dec., masc. gen., plur. num., nom. case, agreeing with *qui*, and also modifying *stetĕrant*.[u]

The 8th clause has no connective. It depends on the verb *credēbat*. Its subject is *eum*, i. e. *Romŭlum* understood. Its grammatical predicate is *raptum* (*esse*) which is modified by *sublīmem* and *procellâ*.

Raptum (*esse*), an act. verb, 3d conj.[v] [Principal parts in both voices, and formations of 3d root in the passive], pass. voice, infin. mood, perf. tense with the meaning of plup., depending on *credēbat*.[w]

Sublīmem, an adj. of 3d dec. and two terminations,[x] masc. gen., sing. num., acc. case, agreeing with *Romŭlum* understood,[y] and also modifying *raptum esse*.[z]

Procellâ, a com. noun, 1st dec.,[x] fem. gen., sing. num., abl. case.[aa]

[a] § 209, Rem. 2, (1).
[b] § 229, Rem. 5.
[c] § 209.
[d] § 270, Rem. 3.
[e] § 239.
[f] § 198, 3.
[g] § 198, 4.
[h] § 142.
[i] § 191, Rem. 5.
[k] § 277.
[l] § 71.
[m] § 28.
[n] § 223.
[o] § 201, III. 4.
[p] § 203, 4.
[q] § 136.
[r] § 206.
[s] § 165.
[t] § 126, 1.
[u] § 205, Rem. 15.
[v] § 159.
[w] § 272.
[x] § 109.
[y] § 205.
[z] § 41.
[aa] § 247.

PROSODY.

§ 282. Prosody treats of the quantity of syllables, and the laws of versification.

QUANTITY.

1. The quantity of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it.

2. A syllable is either *long*, *short*, or *common*.

A long syllable requires double the time occupied in pronouncing a short one; as, *ămārĕ*.

A common syllable is one which, in poetry, may be made either long or short; as the middle syllable of *tenebræ*.

3. The quantity of a syllable is either natural or accidental; —natural, when it depends on the *nature* of its vowel; accidental, when it depends on its *position*.

Thus the *e* in *rĕsisto* is short by nature; while in *rēstĭti* it is long by accident, being followed by two consonants.

4. The quantity of syllables is determined by certain established rules, or, in cases not included in the rules, by the *authority* of the poets.

5. The rules of quantity are either general or special. The former apply alike to all the syllables of a word, the latter to particular syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

§ 283. I. A vowel before another vowel, or a diphthong, is short; as, *mĕus, patrĭæ*. Thus,

Conscĭa mens recti famæ *mendacĭa* ridet. *Ovid.*
Ipse etiam *eximĭæ* laudis successus amore. *Virg.*

So also when *h* comes between the vowels, since *h* is accounted only a breathing; as, *nĭhil*. See § 2. Thus,

De *nĭhĭlo nĭhil*, in *nĭhĭlum* nil posse reverti. *Pers.*

Exc. 1. *Fĭo* has the *i* long, when not followed by *er;* as, *fiunt, fiēbam*. Thus,

Omnia jam *fient, fĭĕri* quæ posse negabam. *Ovid.*

It is sometimes found long even before *er;* as, *fĭĕret* (Ter.), *fĭĕri* (Plaut.)

Exc. 2. *E* is long before *i* in the termination of the genitive and dative of the fifth declension; as, *faciēi*. Thus,

Non radii solis, neque lucĭda tela *diēi*. *Lucr.*

But it is short in *spĕi*, and both long and short in *rei* and *fidei*.

Exc. 3. *A* is long in the penult of old genitives in *āi* of the first declension; as, *aulāi*, *pictāi*.

So also are *a* and *e* in proper names in *aius* or *eius*; as, *Cāius*, *Pompēius*. Thus,

Æthereum sensum, atque *aurāi* simplĭcis ignem. *Virg.*
Accĭpe, *Pompēi*, deductum carmen ab illo. *Ovid.*

Exc. 4. *I* is common in genitives in *ius*; as, *unĭus*, *illĭus*. Thus,

Illĭus et nitĭdo stillent unguenta capillo. *Tibull.*
Illĭus puro destillent tempŏra nardo. *Id.*

But in *alterĭus* it is always short; in *alīus* always long.

Exc. 5. The first vowel of *ēheu* is long; that of *Diāna*, *Io*, and *ohe*, is common.

Exc. 6. In many *Greek* words, a vowel is long, though immediately followed by another; as,

āēr, *Achāĭa*, *Achelōus*, *dĭa*, *ĕos*, *Lāertes*, and other words compounded with *laos*.

(1.) Words which, in Greek, are written with *ei* before a vowel, and in Latin with *e* or *i*, have the *e* or *i* long; as, *Ænēas*, *Alexandrĭa*, *Cassiopēa*, *Clĭo*, *Darĭus*, *elegīa*, *Galatēa*, *Medēa*, *Mausolēum*, *Penelopēa*, *Thalĭa*.

Hence, most adjectives in *eus*, formed from Greek proper names, have the *e* long; as, *Cytherēus*, *Pelopēus*.

Exc. *Academia*, *chorea*, *Malea*, *platea*, and some patronymics and patrials in *etis*, have the penult common; as, *Nereĭs*.

(2.) Greek genitives in *eos*, and accusatives in *ea*, from nominatives in *eus*, generally shorten the *e*; as, *Orphĕos*, *Orphĕa*;—but the *e* is sometimes lengthened by the Ionic dialect; as, *Cephēos*, *Ilionēa*.

(3.) Greek words in *ais*, *ois*, *aius*, *eius*, *oius*, *aon*, and *ion*, generally lengthen the first vowel; as, *Nāis*, *Minōis*, *Grāĭus*, *Nerēĭus*, *Minōĭus*, *Machāon*, *Ixīon*. But *Thebāis*, *Simŏis*, *Phăon*, *Deucalĭon*, *Pygmalĭon*, and many others, shorten the former vowel.

Note 1. Greek words in *aon* and *ion*, with *o* short in the genitive, have the penult long; but with *o* long in the genitive, they have it short; as, *Amythāon*, *-āŏnis*; *Deucalĭon*, *-ōnis*.

Note 2. Greek proper names in *eus* (gen. *eos*), as *Orpheus*, always have the *eu* a diphthong in the original, and, with very few exceptions, in the Latin poets.

II. A diphthong is long; as, *aurum*, *fœnus*, *Eubœa*. Thus,

Thesaūros ignōtum argenti pondus et *aurī*. *Virg.*
Infernīque lacus, *Æaæque* insŭla Circæ. *Id.*

Exc. 1. *Præ*, in composition, is short before a vowel; as, *prăeustus, prăeacūtus.* Thus,

Nec totâ tamen ille prior *prăeunte* carīnâ. *Virg.*

In Statius, and Sidonius Apollinaris, it is found long.

Exc. 2. A diphthong, at the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel, is sometimes made short; as,

Insŭlæ Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. *Virg.*

Remark. *U*, followed by another vowel, is, in prosody, not considered as a diphthong; as, *quătio, quĕror, æquŏr, lingŭă, sanguĭs.*

III. A syllable formed by contraction is long; as,

alĭus for *aliius; cōgo* for *coăgo; nīl* for *nihil; jūnior* for *jŭvĕnior.* Thus,

Tityre *cōge* pecus, tu post carecta latēbas. *Virg.*

IV. A vowel naturally short, before two consonants, a double consonant, or the letter *j*, is long by *position;* as, *ārma, bēllum, āxis, gāza, mājor.* Thus,

Păscĕre opōrtet oves *dedūctum* dicĕre *cārmen. Virg.*
Nēc myrtūs vincĕt coryłos; *nēc* laurea Phœbi. *Id.*
At nobis, *Păz* alma, veni, spicamque tenēto. *Tibull.*
Rara juvant: primis sic *mājor* gratia pomis. *Mart.*

Exc. 1. The compounds of *jugum* have *i* short before *j;* as, *bĭjŭgus, quadrĭjŭgus.* Thus,

Interea *bĭjŭgis* infert se Lucāgus albis. *Virg.*

Remark. The vowel is long by position when either one or both of the consonants is in the same word with it; but when both stand at the beginning of the following word, the vowel is either long or short; as,

Tolle moras; semper *nocuīt* differre parātis. *Lucan.*
Ferte citi ferrum; date *telă;* scandĭte muros. *Virg.*
Ne tamen ignōret, quæ sit *sententiă* scripto. *Ovid.*

A short vowel at the end of a word, before a double consonant or *j*, is not lengthened.

Exc. 2. A vowel naturally short, before a mute followed by a liquid, is common; as, *agris, pharetra, volucris, poplĭtes, cochlear.* Thus,

Et primò simĭlis *volŭcri*, mox vera *volūcris. Ovid.*
Natum ante ora *pătris, pātrem* qui obtruncat ad aras. *Id.*
Nox *tenĕbras* profert, Phœbus fugat inde *tenēbras. Id.*

Rem. 1. If the vowel is naturally long, it continues so; as, *salūbris, ambulācrum.*

Rem. 2. A mute and liquid render the preceding short vowel common only when they are such as may begin a Latin word, or a word derived from the Greek. In compound words, of which the former part ends with a mute, and the latter begins with a liquid, a short vowel before the mute is made long by position; as, *ābluo, ōbruo, sūblĕvo, quamōbrem.*

Rem. 3. A mute and liquid at the beginning of a word seldom lengthen the short vowel of the preceding word.

REM. 4. In Latin words, a short vowel is rendered common only before a mute with *l* or *r*; but, in words of Greek origin, also before a mute with *m* or *n*; as in *Atlas*, *Tecmessa*, *Procne*.

SPECIAL RULES.

FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

I. DERIVATIVE WORDS.

§ 284. Derivative words retain the quantity of their primitives; as,

ănĭmal, *ănĭmātus*, from *ănĭma*; *gĕmĕbundus*, from *gĕmĕre*; *fămĭlia*, from *fămŭlus*; *măternus*, from *măter*; *prŏpinquus*, from *prŏpe*.

REM. 1. Derivatives from increasing nouns of the third declension agree in quantity with the increment of their primitives; as,

funĕbris, from *funĕris*; *virgĭneus*, from *virgĭnis*; *salūber*, from *salūtis*.

REM. 2. In verbs, the derived tenses agree in quantity with the special root from which they are formed; as,

mŏvēbam, *mŏvēbo*, *mŏveam*, *mŏvērem*, *mŏve*, *mŏvēre*, *mŏvens*, *mŏvendus*, from *mŏv*, the root of the present, with *ŏ* short;—*mŏvĕram*, *mŏvĕrim*, *mŏvissem*, *mŏvĕro*, *mŏvisse*, from *mŏv*, the root of the perfect, with *ŏ* long; *mōtūrus* and *mōtus*, from *mōtu*, the root of the supine, with *ŏ* also long.

Sōlūtum and *vōlūtum* have the first syllable short, as if from *sŏluo*, *vŏluo*. So *gĕnui*, *gĕnĭtum*, as if from *gĕno*; and *pŏtui*, from *pŏtis sum* (*possum*).

Ārātrum, *simulācrum*, have their penult long, as derived from the supines *arātum* and *simulātum*; *monĭmentum* and *initium* have their antepenult short, as derived from the supines *monĭtum* and *inĭtum*.

Exc. 1. Perfects and supines of two syllables have the first syllable long, even when that of the present is short; as,

vēni, *vīdi*, *fēci*, from *vĕnio*, *vĭdeo*, *făcio*; *cāsum*, *mōtum*, *vīsum*, from *cădo*, *mŏveo*, *vĭdeo*. But,

(1.) These seven perfects have the first syllable short:—*bĭbi*, *dĕdi*, *fĭdi* (from *findo*), *scĭdi*, *stĕti*, *stĭti*, *tŭli*.

The first syllable is also short before a vowel (§ 283); as, *rŭi*.

(2.) These ten supines have the first syllable short:—*cĭtum* (from *cieo*), *dătum*, *ĭtum*, *lĭtum*, *quĭtum*, *rătum*, *rŭtum*, *sătum*, *sĭtum*, and *stătum*.

So also the obsolete *fŭtum*, from *fŭo*, whence comes *fŭtūrus*.

Exc. 2. Reduplicated perfects have the first two syllables short; as,

cĕcĭni, *tĕtĭgi*, *dĭdĭci*, from *cano*, *tango*, *disco*. But the second syllable is sometimes made long by position; as, *mŏmōrdi*, *tĕtēndi*.

Cĕcīdi (from *cædo*) and *pĕpēdi* also have the second syllable long.

Exc. 3. The *o* in *pŏsui* and *pŏsĭtum*, is short, though long in *pōno*.

Exc. 4. The *a* in *dā*, imperative of *do*, is long, though short in the other parts of the verb.

Exc. 5. Desiderative verbs in *urio* have the *u* short, though, in the third special root from which they are formed, it is long; as, *cænaturio* from *cænātŭ*, the third root of *cæno*. So *partŭrio*, *esŭrio*, *nuptŭrio*.

Exc. 6. Frequentative verbs, formed from the third special root of the first conjugation, have the *i* short; as, *clamĭto*, *volĭto*. See § 187, II. 1.

Exc. 7. Many other derivatives deviate from the quantity of their primitives.

1. Some have a long vowel from a short one in the primitive. Such are,

Dēni, *from* dĕcem.
Fōmes *and* Fōmentum, } *from* fŏveo.
Hūmānus, *from* hŏmo.
Lāterna, *from* lăteo.
Măcĕro, *from* măceo.
Lex (lēgis), *from* lĕgo.
Mōbĭlis, *from* mŏveo.
Rēgŭla, Rex (rēgis), } *from* rĕgo.
Sēcius, *from* sĕcus.
Sēdes, *from* sĕdeo.
Sēmen, *from* sĕro.
Stīpendium, *from* stipe (stīpis).
Tēgŭla, *from* tĕgo.
Vox (vōcis), *from* vŏco.

2. Some have a short vowel from a long one in the primitive. Such are,

Dĭcax, *from* dīco.
Dĭsertus, *from* dissĕro.
Dux (dŭcis), *from* dūco.
Fĭdes, *from* fīdo.
Frăgor, Frăgĭlis, } *from* frango.
Mŏlestus, *from* mōles.
Nătu, *from* nātu.
Nŏtu, *from* nōtu.
Quăsillus, *from* quālus.
Săgax, *from* sāgio.
Sŏpor, *from* sōpio.
Vădum, *from* vādo.

Some other words might, perhaps, with propriety be added to these lists; but, in regard to the derivation of most of them, grammarians are not entirely agreed.

Remark. Some of these irregularities have, perhaps, arisen from the influence of syncope and crasis. Thus *mŏbĭlis* may have been *mŏvĭbĭlis*; *mōtum*, *mŏvĭtum*, &c.

Sometimes the vowel in the derived word becomes short by dropping one of the consonants which, in the primitive, made it long by position; as, *dĭsertus*, from *dissĕro*. So, when the vowel of the primitive is short before another vowel, it is sometimes made long by the insertion of a consonant; as, *hibernus*, from *hiems*.

The first syllable in *liquĭdus* is supposed to be common, as coming from *liquor* or *liqueo*; as,

Crassăque conveniunt *lĭquĭdis*, et *liquĭda* crassis. *Lucr.*

II. COMPOUND WORDS.

§ 285. Compound words retain the quantity of the words which compose them; as,

dēfĕro, of *dē* and *fĕro*; *ădōro*, of *ăd* and *ōro*. So *ăbŏrior*, *ămŏvĕo*, *circŭmĕo*, *cŏmĕdo*, *ēnĭtor*, *prōdūco*, *sŭbŏrno*.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in forming the compound does not alter its quantity; as,

concīdo, from *cædo; concīdo*, from *cædo; erīgo*, from *rĕgo; reclūdo*, from *clāudo; inīquus*, from *æquus*.

Exc. 1. A long syllable in the simple word becomes short in the following compounds:—*agnĭtus* and *cognĭtus*, from *nōtus; dejĕro* and *pejĕro*, from *jūro; hŏdie*, from *hōc die; nihĭlum* and *nihĭl*, from *hīlum; semisŏpītus*, from *sōpio; causidĭcus*, and other compounds ending in *dĭcus*, from *dīco*.

Exc. 2. *Imbĕcillus*, from *bācillum*, has the second syllable long. The participle *ambītus* has the penult long from *ītum*, but the nouns *ambītus* and *ambītio* follow the rule.

Exc. 3. *Innūba, pronūba*, and *subnūba*, from *nūbo*, have *u* short; but in *connubium*, it is common.

Exc. 4. *O* final, in the compounds of *do* and *sto*, is common, though long in the simple verbs.

Note. It may be observed, that prepositions of one syllable, which end in a vowel, are long (§§ 294, 295, and 297); those which end in a single consonant are short (§§ 299 and 301).

Exc. 5. *Pro*, in the following compounds, is short:—*prŏcella, prŏfānus, prŏfāri, prŏfecto, prŏfestus, prŏficiscor, prŏfiteor, prŏfugio, prŏfŭgus, prŏfundus, prŏnēpos, prŏneptis, prŏpĕro*, and *prŏtervus*. In the following, it is common:—*procūro, profundo, propāgo, propello, propino*, and *propulso*.

Rem. 1. The Greek preposition *pro* (before) is short; as, *prŏphēta, prŏlŏgus*.

Rem. 2. The inseparable prepositions *di* and *se* are long; as, *dīdūco, sēpāro*. But *di* is short in *dĭrĭmo* and *dĭsertus*.

Rem. 3. The inseparable preposition *re* or *red* is short; as, *rĕmitto, rĕfĕro, rĕdāmo*. But in the impersonal verb *rĕfert*, *re* is long, as coming from *res*.

Rem. 4. Except in prepositions, *a*, ending the first part of a compound word, is long; *e, i, o, u*, and *y*, are short; as,

mālo, quāpropter, trādo (*trans do*); *nĕfas, valēdīco, hujusscĕmŏdi; bīceps, omnĭpŏtens, signĭfico; hŏdie, quandōquīdem, philŏsŏphus; dūcenti, locŭples, Trojūgĕna; Polÿdōrus, Eurÿpÿlus, Thrasÿbūlus*.

Exc. 1. **A.** In *quāsi, eădem* when not an ablative, and in some Greek compounds, *a* is short; as, *catăpulta, hexămĕter*.

Exc. 2. **E.** The *e* is long in *nēmo, nēquam, nēquando, nēquāquam, nēquidquam, nēquis, nēquitia; mēmet, mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, vēcors, vēsānus, venēficus*, and *vidēlicet*, (see § 295;)—also in words compounded with *se* for *sex* or *semi*; as, *sēdēcim, sēmestris, sēmodius*; but in *selibra* it is found short in Martial.

Note. The *e* in *videlicet*, as in *vide*, is sometimes made short. See § 295, Exc. 3.

E is common in some verbs compounded with *facio*; as, *liquefacio, patefacio, rarefacio, tabefacio, tepefacio*.

Exc. 3. **I.** (1.) The *i* is long in those compounds in which the first part is declined, (§ 296;) as, *quīdam, quīvis, quīlibet, quantīvis, quantĭcunque, tantīdem, unīcuīque, eīdem, reīpublĭcæ, qualĭcunque, utrīque*.

(2.) *I* is also long in those compounds which may be separated without

altering the sense, (§ 296;) as, *ludĭmagister*, *lucrĭfacio*, *sĭquis*, *agrĭcultūra*.

(3.) *I*, ending the former part of a compound word, is sometimes made long by contraction; as, *tībĭcen* for *tibĭlĭcen*, from *tibia* and *cano*. See § 283, III.

(4.) *I* is long in *bīgæ*, *quadrīgæ*, *īlĭcet*, *scīlĭcet*, *bīmus*, *trīmus*, *quadrīmus*.

(5.) In *idem*, when masculine, *i* is long; but when neuter, it is short. The *i* of *ubīque* and *utrobīque*, the second in *ibīdem*, and the first in *nīmīrum*, are long. In *ubicumque* and *ubivis*, as in *ubi*, *i* is common.

(6.) Compounds of *dies* have the final *i* of the former part long; as, *bīduum*, *trīduum*, *merīdies*, *quotīdie*, *quotīdiānus*, *prīdie*, *postrīdie*.

NOTE. In Greek words, *i*, ending the former part of a compound, is short, unless it comes from the diphthong *ei*, or is made long or common by position; as, *Callĭmăchus*.

EXC. 4. **O.** (1.) In compounds, the final *o* of *contro*, *intro*, *retro*, and *quando* (except *quandōquĭdem*,) is long; as, *contrōversia*, *intrōdūco*, *retrōcēdo*, *quandōque*. *O* is long also in *alĭōquin*, *ceterōquin*, *utrōque*, *utrōbique*.

(2.) *O* is long also in the compounds of *que*; as, *quōmŏdo*, *quōcunque*, *quōmĭnus*, *quōcirca*, *quōvis*, *quōque*; but in the conjunction *quŏque*, it is short.

(3.) Greek words which are written with an *oměga* have the *o* long; as, *geōmetra*, *Minōtaurus*, *lagōpus*.

EXC. 5. **U.** The *u* is long in *Jūpiter*, *jūdex*, and *jūdicium*. The final *u* in the former part of *usūcapio* and *usūvenio* is regularly long. See § 298.

III. INCREMENT OF NOUNS.

§ 286. 1. A noun is said to *increase*, when, in any of its cases, it has more syllables than in the nominative singular; as, *pax*, *pacis*; *sermo*, *sermōnis*.

The number of *increments* in any case of a noun is equal to that of its additional syllables.

2. Nouns in general have but one increment in the singular.

But *iter*, *supellex*, compounds of *caput* ending in *ps*, and sometimes *jecur*, have two; as,

iter, *i-tin-ĕ-ris*; *anceps*, *an-cip-ĭ-tis*;

supellex, *su-pel-lec-tĭ-lis*; *jecur*, *je-cin-ŏ-ris*.

The double increase of *iter*, &c., in the singular number arises from their coming from obsolete nominatives, containing a syllable more than those now in use; as, *itĭner*, &c.

3. The dative and ablative plural of the third declension have one increment more than the genitive singular; as,

rex,	Gen. *re-gis*,	D. and Ab. *reg-ĭ-bus*.
sermo,	—— *ser-mō-nis*,	—— *ser-mon-ĭ-bus*.
iter,	—— *i-tin-ĕ-ris*,	—— *it-i-ner-ĭ-bus*.

4. The last syllable of a word is never considered as the in-

crement. If a word has but one increment, it is the penult; if two, the antepenult is called the first, and the penult the second; and if three, the syllable before the antepenult is called the first, the antepenult the second, and the penult the third increment.

5. In the third declension, the quantity of the first increment in all the other cases is the same as in the genitive singular; as,

sermōnis, sermōni, sermōnem, sermōne, sermōnes, sermōnum, sermōnibus. Bōbus, or *būbus*, from *bos, bŏvis*, is lengthened by contraction from *bŏvibus*.

NOTE. As adjectives and participles are declined like nouns, the same rules of increment apply to all of them; and so also to pronouns.

INCREMENTS OF THE SINGULAR NUMBER.

OF THE FIRST, FOURTH, AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

§ 287. 1. When nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions increase in the singular number, the increment consists of a vowel before the final vowel, and its quantity is determined by the first general rule with its exceptions. See § 283.

INCREMENTS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

2. The increments of the second declension are short; as,

gener, genĕri; satur, satŭri; tener, tenĕri; vir, vĭri. Thus,

O *pŭeri!* ne tanta anĭmis assuescĭte bella. *Virg.*
Monstra sinunt: *genĕros* externis affŏre ab oris. *Id.*

EXC. The increment of *Iber* and *Celtĭber* is long. For that of genitives in *ius*, see § 283, EXC. 4.

INCREMENTS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

3. The increments of the third declension in *a* and *o* are long; those in *e, i, u*, and *y*, are short; as,

anīmal, animālis; audax, audācis; sermo, sermōnis; ferox, ferōcis, opus, opĕris; celer, celĕris; miles, militis; supplex, supplĭcis; murmur, murmŭris; cicur, cicŭris. Thus,

Pronăque cùm spectent *animālia* cetĕra terram. *Ovid.*
Hæc tum multiplĭci popŭlos *sermōne* replĕbat. *Virg.*
Incumbent *genĕris* lapsi sarcīre ruīnas. *Id.*
Qualem virgineo demessum *pollĭce* florem. *Id.*
Aspĭce, ventōsi ceciderunt *murmŭris* aurę. *Id.*

Exceptions in Increments in A.

1. Masculines in *al* and *ar* (except *Car* and *Nar*) increase short; as, *Annĭbal, Annibălis.*

Par and its compounds, and the following—*anas*, *mas*, *vas* (*vădis*), *baccar*, *hepar*, *jubar*, *lar*, *nectar*, and *sal*—also increase short.

2. *A*, in the increment of nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short; as, *Arabs*, *Arăbis*.

3. Greek nouns in *a* and *as* (*ădis* or *ătis*) increase short; as, *poëma*, *poëmătis*; *lampas*, *lampădis*.

4. The following in *ax* increase short:—*abax*, *anthrax*, *Atax*, *Atrax*, *climax*, *colax*, *corax*, *dropax*, *fax*, *harpax*, *panax*, *phylax*, *smilax*, and *styrax*.

Exceptions in Increments in O.

1. *O*, in the increment of neuter nouns, is short; as,

marmor, *marmŏris*; *corpus*, *corpŏris*; *ebur*, *ebŏris*. But *os* (the mouth), and the neuter of comparatives, like their masculine and feminine, increase long. The increment of *ador* is common.

2. *O* is short in the increment of Greek nouns in *o* or *on*, which, in the oblique cases, have *omicron*; as,

Ălĕdon, *Aedŏnis*; *Agamemnon*, *Agamemnŏnis*. *Sidon*, *Orion*, and *Ægæon*, have the increment common.

3. In the increment of gentile nouns in *o* or *on*, *o* is generally short; as,

Macĕdo, *Macedŏnis*. So, *Senŏnes*, *Teutŏnes*, &c.

But the following have *o* long:—*Eburōnes*, *Lacōnes*, *Iōnes*, *Nasamōnes*, *Suessōnes*, *Vettōnes*, *Burgundiōnes*. *Britones* has the *o* common.

4. Greek nouns in *tor* increase short; as, *Hector*, *Hectŏris*; *rhetor*, *rhetŏris*.

5. Compounds of *pus* (ποῦς), as *tripus*, *Polўpus*, and also *arbor*, *memor*, *bos*, *compos*, *impos*, and *lepus*, increase short.

6. *O*, in the increment of nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short; as,

scrobs, *scrŏbis*; *inops*, *inŏpis*. But it is long in the increment of *Cercops*, *Cyclops*, and *Hydrops*.

7. The increment of *Allobrox*, *Cappădox*, and *præcox*, is also short.

Exceptions in Increments in E.

1. Nouns in *en*, *enis* (except *Hymen*), lengthen their increment; as, *Siren*, *Sirēnis*. So, *Aniēnis*, *Neriēnis*, from *Anio*, &c.

2. *Hæres*, *locŭples*, *mansues*, *merces*, and *quies*—also *Iber*, *ver*, *lex*, *rex*, and *vervex*—*plebs*, *seps*, and *halec*—increase long.

3. Greek nouns in *es* and *er* (except *aër* and *æther*) increase long; as, *magnes*, *magnētis*; *crater*, *cratēris*.

Exceptions in Increments in I.

1. Verbals in *trix*, and adjectives in *ix*, increase long; as, *victrix*, *victrīcis*; *felix*, *felīcis*.

2. The following nouns in *ix* also increase long:—*cervix, cicātrix, cornix, coturnix, lodix, matrix, perdix, phœnix,* and *radix.* So also *vibex* (*vibĭcis*).

3. Greek nouns, whose genitive is in *inis,* increase long; as, *delphin, delphīnis; Salămis, Salamīnis.*

4. The following nouns in *is* increase long:—*dis, glis, lis, Nesis, Quiris,* and *Samnis.* The increment of *Psophis* is common.

Exceptions in Increments in U.

1. Genitives in *udis, uris,* and *utis,* from nominatives in *us,* have the penult long; as,

palus, palūdis; tellus, tellūris; virtus, virtūtis. But *intercus, Ligus,* and *pecus,* increase short.

2. *Fur, frux* (obs.), *lux,* and *Pollux,* increase long.

Exceptions in Increments in Y.

1. Greek nouns whose genitive is in *ynis,* increase long; as, *Phorcyn, Phorcȳnis; Trachys, Trachȳnis.*

2. The increment of *bombyx, Ceÿx,* and *gryps,* is long; that of *Beoryx* and *sandyx* is common.

INCREMENTS OF THE PLURAL NUMBER.

§ 288. A noun in the plural number is said to increase, when, in any case, it has more syllables than in the ablative singular.

When a noun increases in the plural number, its penult is called the plural increment; as, *sa* in *musārum, no* in *dominōrum, pi* in *rupium* and *rupĭbus.*

In plural increments, *a, e,* and *o,* are long, *i* and *u* are short; as,

bonārum, animābus, rērum, rēbus, generōrum, ambōbus; sermonĭbus, lacūbus. Thus,

Appia, *longārum,* teritur, regina *viārum. Stat.*
Sunt lacrymæ *rērum,* et mentem mortalia tangunt. *Virg.*
Atque alii, *quōrum* comœdia prisca *virōrum* est. *Hor.*
Portūbus egredior, ventisque *ferentĭbus* usus. *Ovid.*

IV. INCREMENT OF VERBS.

§ 289. 1. A verb is said to increase, when, in any of its parts, it has more syllables than in the second person singular of the present indicative active; as, *das, dă-tis; doces, docē-mus.*

2. The number of increments in any part of a verb is equal to that of its additional syllables. In verbs, as in nouns, the last syllable is never considered the increment. If a verb has but one increment, it is the penult; and this first increment, through all the variations of the verb, except in reduplicated tenses, continues equally distant from the first syllable. The remaining increments are numbered successively from the first; as,

a-mas,	mo-nes,	au-dis,
1	1	1
a-mā-mus,	mo-nē-tur,	au-dī-tis,
1 2	1 2	1 2
am-a-bā-mus,	mon-e-rē-tur,	au-dī-ē-bas,
1 2 3	1 2 3	1 2 3 4
am-a-ve-rā-mus.	mon-e-bim-ĭ-ni.	au-dī-e-bam-ĭ-ni.

A verb in the active voice may have three increments; in the passive, it may have four.

3. In determining the increments of deponent verbs, an active voice may be supposed, formed regularly from the same root.

Thus the increments of *læ-tā-tur*, *læt-a-bā-tur*, &c., are reckoned from the supposed verb *læto*, *lætas*.

§ 290. In the increments of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long; *i* and *u* are short; as,

amāre, *monēre*, *facĭtōte*, *volŭmus*, *regēbāmĭni*. Thus,

Et *cantāre* pares, et *respondēre parāti*. *Virg.*
Sic equĭdem *ducēbam* animo, *rēbar*que futūrum. *Id.*
Cùmque loqui potĕrit, matrem *facĭtōte* salūtet. *Ovid.*
Scindĭtur interea studia in contraria vulgus. *Virg.*
Nos numĕros *sŭmus*, et fruges consumĕre nati. *Id.*

Exceptions in Increments in A.

The *first* increment of *do* is short; as, *dămus*, *dăbāmus*, *circumdăre*, *circumdăbāmus*.

Exceptions in Increments in E.

1. *E* before *r* is short in the *first* increment of all the present and imperfect tenses of the third conjugation, and in the *second* increment in *bĕris* and *bĕre*; as,

regĕre (infin. and imperat.), *regĕris* or *regĕre* (pres. ind. pass.), *regĕrem* and *regĕrer* (imp. subj.); *amabĕris*, *amabĕre*; *monebĕris*, *monebĕre*.

Note. *Velim*, *velis*, &c., from *vŏlo*, have the *e* short, according to § 284.

2. *E* is short before *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, and the persons formed from them; as,

amavĕram, *amavĕrat*, *amavĕrim*, *monuĕrimus*, *rexĕro*, *audivĕritis*.

Note. In verbs which have been shortened by syncope or otherwise, *e* before *r* retains its original quantity; as, *flĕram* for *flevĕram*.

For the short *e* before *runt*, in the perfect indicative, as, *stetĕrunt*, see *Systole*, § 307.

Exceptions in Increments in I.

1. *I* before *v*, in tenses formed from the second root, is long; as, *petīvi, audīvi, quæsīvit, audīvīmus, audīvĕram.*

2. *I* is long in the penult of polysyllabic supines from verbs whose perfects end in *īvi*; as, *petītum, quæsītum.* See § 284, Rem. 2.

3. The first increment of the fourth conjugation, except in *ĭmus* of the perfect indicative, is long; as,

audīre, audīrem, venīmus, but in the perfect *venĭmus*. So in the ancient forms in *ībam, ībo*, of the fourth conjugation; as, *nutrībat, lenībunt*; and also in *ībam* and *ībo*, from *eo*.

When a vowel follows, the *i* is short, by § 283; as, *audĭunt, audĭēbam.*

4. *I* is long in *sīmus, sītis, velīmus, velītis*, and their compounds; as, *possīmus, adsīmus, malīmus, nolīmus*, and *nolīto, nolīte, nolītōte.*

5. *I* in *rimus* and *ritis*, in the future perfect and perfect subjunctive, is common; as,

vidĕrītis (Ovid), *dixĕrītis* (Id.), *fecĕrīmus* (Catull.), *contigĕrītis* (Ovid); *egĕrīmus* (Virg.).

Exceptions in Increments in U.

U is long in the increment of supines, and of participles formed from the third root of the verb; as,

secūtus, solūtus, secūtūrus, solūtūrus.

RULES FOR THE QUANTITY OF THE PENULTIMATE AND ANTEPENULTIMATE SYLLABLES OF WORDS OF CERTAIN TERMINATIONS.

I. PENULTS.

§ 291. 1. Words ending in *acus, ĭcus*, and *icum*, shorten the penult; as,

amărăcus, Ægyptĭăcus, academĭcus, rustĭcus, tritĭcum, viatĭcum.

Except *merācus, opācus; amīcus, aprīcus, antīcus, fīcus, lumbrīcus, mendīcus, postīcus, pudīcus, umbilīcus, vīcus, pīcus.*

2. Words ending in *abrum, ubrum, acrum, ucrum*, and *atrum*, lengthen the penult; as,

candelābrum, delūbrum, lavācrum, involūcrum, verātrum, lucrum.

3. Nouns in *ca* lengthen the penult; as,

cloāca, apothēca, lorīca, phōca, lactūca.

Except *alĭca, brassĭca, dĭca, fulĭca, mantĭca, pedĭca, pertĭca, scutĭca, phalarĭca, sublĭca, tunĭca, vomĭca*; and also some nouns in *ica*, derived from adjectives in *ĭcus*; as, *fabrĭca, grammatĭca*, &c. So *manĭcæ.*

4. Patronymics in *ades* and *ides* shorten the penult; as, *Atlantĭădes, Priamĭdes.*

Except those in *ides* which are formed from nouns in *eus* or *ēs*; as, *Atrīdes*, from *Atreus*; *Neoclīdes*, from *Neocles*; except, also, *Amphiarāĭdes, Belīdes, Japetionīdes, Lycurgīdes.*

5. Patronymics and similar words in *ais*, *eis*, and *ois*, lengthen the penult; as,

Achāis, *Chrysēis*, *Minōis*. Except *Phocāis* and *Thebāis*. The penult of *Nereis* is common.

6. Words in *do* lengthen the penult; as,

vādo, *cēdo*, *formīdo*, *rōdo*, *testūdo*, *altitūdo*. Except *solīdo*, *comēdo*. *unēdo*, *cādo*, *divīdo*, *ēdo* (to eat), *spādo*, *trepīdo*. *Rudo* is common.

7. Words in *idus* shorten the penult; those in *udus* lengthen it; as,

callĭdus, *perfĭdus*; *lūdus*, *nūdus*. Except *fidus*, *infidus*, *nidus*, *sidus*.

8. Nouns in *ga* and *go* lengthen the penult; as,

collēga, *sāga*, *rūga*, *imāgo*, *calīgo*, *ærūgo*. Except *calĭga*, *tŏga*, *harpăgo*, *ligo*. *plăga*, (a region,) *fŭga*.

9. Words in *le*, *les*, and *lis*, lengthen the penult; as,

crināle, *mantēle*, *ancīle*; *āles*, *mīles*, *prōles*; *annālis*, *crudēlis*, *civīlis*, *curūlis*.

Except verbals in *ilis*; as, *agĭlis*, *amabĭlis*;—adjectives in *atĭlis*; as, *aquatĭlis*, *umbratĭlis*;—and the following; *dapsĭlis*, *dactўlis*, *gracĭlis*, *humĭlis*, *parĭlis*, *simĭlis*, *sterĭlis*, *indŏles*, *sobŏles*, *mugĭlis*, *strigĭlis*.

10. Words in *elus*, *ela*, *elum*, lengthen the penult; as, *phasēlus*, *querēla*, *prēlum*. Except *gĕlus*, *gĕlum*, *scĕlus*.

11. Diminutives in *olus*, *ola*, *olum*, *ulus*, *ula*, *ulum*, also words in *ilus*, and those in *ulus* and *ula* of more than two syllables, shorten the penult; as,

urceŏlus, *filiŏla*, *tuguriŏlum*, *lectŭlus*, *ratiuncŭla*, *corcŭlum*; *rutĭlus*, *garrŭlus*, *fabŭla*. Exc. *asĭlus*.

12. Words in *ma* lengthen the penult; as,

fāma, *poēma*, *rima*, *axiōma*, *plūma*. Exc. *anĭma*, *cŏma*, *lacrўma*, *victĭma*.

13. A vowel before final *men* or *mentum* is long; as,

levāmen, *grāmen*, *crīmen*, *flūmen*, *jūmentum*, *atrāmentum*.

Except *tāmen*, *colūmen*, *hўmen*, *elĕmentum*, and certain verbals of the second and third conjugations; as, *docūmentum*, *regĭmen*, *tegĭmen*, &c.

14. Words ending in *imus* or *ymus* shorten the penult; as,

anĭmus, *finĭtĭmus*, *fortissĭmus*, *maxĭmus*, *thўmus*.

Except *bīmus*, *līmus*, *mīmus*, *opīmus*, *quadrīmus*, *sīmus*, *trīmus*, and two superlatives, *īmus* and *prīmus*.

NOTE. When an adjective ends in *umus* for *imus*, the quantity remains the same; as, *decūmus*, *optūmus*, *maxūmus*, for *decĭmus*, &c.

15. *A*, *e*, *o*, and *u*, before final *mus* and *mum*, are long; as,

rāmus, *rēmus*, *extrēmus*, *prōmus*, *dūmus*, *pōmum*, *volēmum*.

Except *atŏmus*, *balsămum*, *cinnămum*, *dŏmus*, *glŏmus*, *hŭmus*, *postŭmus*, *thalămus*, *tŏmus*, *calămus*, *nĕmus*.

16. Words in *na*, *ne*, *ni*, and *nis*, lengthen the penult; as,

lāna, *arēna*, *carīna*, *matrōna*, *lūna*, *māne*, *anemōne*, *septēni*, *octōni*, *ināni*, *finis*, *immūnis*.

Except *gĕna, sĭne, cănis, cĭnis, juvĕnis;* and the following in *ĭna,—buccĭna, domĭna, fiscĭna, femĭna, fuscĭna, lamĭna, machĭna, pagĭna, patĭna, sarcĭna, truĭna.* So *indigĕna, bene.*

17. Adjectives in *inus*, derived from names of trees, plants, and stones, and from adverbs of time, shorten the penult; as,

cedrĭnus, fagĭnus, crocĭnus, hyacinthĭnus, adamantĭnus, crystallĭnus; crastĭnus, diutĭnus; also *annotĭnus, bombycĭnus,* and *elephantĭnus.*

Other adjectives and words in *inus* lengthen the penult; as,

canīnus, bīnus, festīnus, peregrīnus, marīnus, clandestīnus, supīnus.

Except *acĭnus, asĭnus, cophĭnus, domĭnus, earĭnus, facĭnus, fraxĭnus, pampĭnus, sĭnus, termĭnus, gemĭnus, circĭnus.*

18. *A, e, o,* and *u,* before final *nus* and *num,* are long; as,

urbānus, serēnus, prōnus, mūnus, venēnum.

Except *galbănus, mănus, oceănus, platănus, tympănum; ebĕnus, gĕnus, tĕnus, Vĕnus; bŏnus, ŏnus, sŏnus, tŏnus, thrŏnus, ănus, lagănum.*

19. Words ending in *pa* shorten the penult; as,

alăpa, nĕpa, crĭpa, metŏpa, lŭpa. Except *rīpa, cēpa, scōpa, cūpa, pūpa.*

20. Words in *aris* and *are* lengthen the penult; as,

alāris, altāre. Except *hilăris, canthăris, cappăris,* and *măre.*

21. Before final *ro* or *ror, e* is short; *i, o,* and *u,* are long; as,

tempĕro, celĕro, quĕror; spīro, ōro, figūro, mīror.

Except *spĕro, fŏro, mŏror, vŏro, fūro, satūro;* and derivatives from genitives increasing short; as, *decŏro, murmŭro,* &c; also *pĕro, sŏror.*

22. Before final *rus, ra, rum, e* is short; the other vowels are long; as,

mĕrus, hedĕra, cetĕrum; cārus, mīrus, mōrus, mūrus; kāra, spīra, ōra, natūra, lōrum.

Except, 1. *austĕrus, galĕrus, plĕrus, sĕrus, sevĕrus, vĕrus, pĕra, cĕra, panthĕra, statĕra, procĕrus.*

2. *barbărus, cammărus, camūrus, canthărus, chŏrus, hellebŏrus, nūrus, phosphŏrus, spărus, tŏrus;* also *amphŏra, anchŏra, cithăra, mŏra, purpūra, philȳra,* and *fŏrum, suppărum, gărum, părum.* So *cinăra, pīrus, scārus.*

23. Adjectives in *osus* lengthen the penult; as, *fumōsus, perniciōsus.*

24. Nouns in *etas* and *itas* shorten the penult; as, *piĕtas, civĭtas.*

25. Adverbs in *tim* lengthen the penult, those in *iter* shorten it; as,

oppidātim, virītim, tribūtim; acriter. Except *stătim, affătim, perpĕtim.*

26. Words in *ates, itis, otis,* and *eta,* lengthen the penult; as,

vātes, penātes, vītis, mītis, caryōtis, Icariōtis, mēta, poēta. Except *sĭtis, pŏtis, drapĕta.*

27. Nouns in *atum, etum, itum, utum,* lengthen the penult; as,

lupātum, arborētum, aconītum, verūtum. Except *defrŭtum, pulpĭtum.*

28. Words ending in *tus* lengthen the penult; as,

barbātus, grātus, bolētus, facētus, crinītus, peritus, ægrōtus, tōtus, argūtus, hirsūtus.

Except *cātus, lātus* (*-ĕris*), *impētus, mētus, vētus, anhelītus, servītus, spirītus, antidōtus, tōtus* (so great), *quōtus, arbūtus;* adverbs in *itus*, and derivatives from supines with a short penult; as, *habītus*. So *inclȳtus*.

29. A penultimate vowel before *v* is long; as,

clāva, oliva, dīves, nāvis, cīvis, papāver, pāvo, prīvo, ōvum, prāvus, æstīvus, fugitīvus.

Except *ăvis, brĕvis, grăvis, lĕvis, ŏvis; căvo, grăvo, jŭvo, lăvo, lĕvo, ŏvo; ăvus, căvus, făvus, nŏvus, făvor, păvor, nŏvem.*

30. Words ending in *dex, dix, mex, nix, lex, rex*, lengthen the penult; as,

cōdex, jūdex; lōdix, rādix; cīmex, pūmex; jūnix; īlex; cārex, mūrex. Except *cŭlex, silex, rūmex.*

II. ANTEPENULTS.

§ 292. 1. Adjectives in *aceus* and *aneus* lengthen the antepenult; as,

crētāceus, testāceus, momentāneus, subitāneus.

2. Numerals in *ginti, ginta, gies*, and *esĭmus*, lengthen the antepenult; as,

vīginti, quadrāginta, quinquāgies, trigēsĭmus.

3. *O* and *u* before final *lentus* are short; as,

vinŏlentus, fraudŭlentus.

4. A vowel before final *nea, neo, nia, nio, nius, nium*, is long; as,

arānea, līnea, cāneo, mūnia, pūnio, Favōnius, patrimōnium.

Except *castānea, tĭnea, mănea, mĭneo, mŏneo, tĕneo, ignomĭnia, vĕnia, līnio, lănio, vĕnio;*—and words in *cinium;* as, *lenocĭnium*. So *luscĭnia.*

5. Words ending in *areo, arius, arium, erium, orius*, lengthen the antepenult; as,

āreo, cibārius, plantārium, dictērium, censōrius. Except *căreo* and *vārius*, also *impĕrium.*

6. Adjectives in *atĭcus, atĭlis*, lengthen the antepenult; as,

aquātĭcus, pluviātĭlis. Except some Greek words in *mătĭcus;* as, *grammătĭcus.*

7. *I* before final *tudo* is short; as, *altĭtūdo, longĭtūdo.*

III. PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

§ 293. 1. Proper names of more than two syllables, found in the poets with the following terminations, *shorten* the penult:—

ba,	che,	il,	les,	yris,	dus,[14]	arus,	usus,	
ca,[1]	de,	on,[7]	anes,	os,[11]	gus,[15]	erus,[19]	atus,[20]	
la,[2]	le,[5]	o,[8]	enes,	bus,	lus,[16]	yrus,	itus,[21]	
ena,[3]	pe,[6]	er,[9]	lis,[10]	cus,[12]	mus,[17]	asus,	otus,[22]	,
be,	re,	mas,	aris,	chus,[13]	phus,[18]	osus,	eus,[23] (monosyl.)	
ce,[4]	al,	ras,						

Exceptions.

1. Marĭca, Nasĭca, Ustĭca.
2. Eriphўla, Messăla, Philomēla.
3. Alcmēna, Amphisibēna, Athēnæ, Cæsēna, Camēna, Cattiēna, Picēnæ, Sophēnæ, Murēna.
4. Berenīce, Elўce.
5. Eriphўle, Neobūle, Perimēle.
6. Eurōpe, Sinōpe.
7. Alēmon, Cythēron, Chalcēdon, Damasĭton, Iāson, Philēmon, Sarpēdon, Thermōdon, Polygiton, Polyphēmon, Anthēdon.
8. Carthāgo, Cupāvo, Theāno.
9. Meleāger.
10. Bessālis, Eumēlis, Juvenālis, Martiālis, Phasēlis, Stymphālis.
11. Cercўros, Cotўtos, Pharsālos, Seriphos, Peparēthos.
12. Benācus, Caўcus, Granĭcus, Mossynēci, Olympionīcus, Stratonīcus, Trivīcus, Numīcus.
13. Ophiūcus.
14. Abўdus, Andrōdus.
15. Cethēgus.
16. Ætōlus, Cleobūlus, Eumēlus, Gætūlus, Hanālus, Iūlus, Mnasўlus, Neobūlus, Pactōlus, Pompīlus, Sardanapālus, Stymphālus, Timōlus, Thrasybūlus, Mausōlus, Pharsālus.
17. Some in *dēmus* and *phēmus;* as, Academus, Charidemus, Euphēmus, Menedēmus, Philodēmus, Polyphēmus.
18. Serўphus.
19. Homērus, Ibērus.
20. Arātus, Cærātus, Torquātus.
21. Heraclītus, Hermaphrodītus.
22. Buthrōtus.
23. Enīpeus, Menēceus, Oīleus.

2. Proper names of more than two syllables, found in the poets with the following terminations, *lengthen* the penult:—

ana,[1]	sa,	num,[7]	tas,	nus,[12]	urus,	etus,[17]
ina,[2]	ta,[4]	tum,	des,[9]	pus,[13]	esus,[16]	utus,
ona,[3]	tæ,[5]	or,[8]	tes,[10]	irus,[14]	isus,	ytus,[18]
yna,	ene,[6]	nas,	tis,[11]	orus,[15]	ysus,	vus.

Exceptions.

1. Sequāna.
2. Asīna, Mutīna, Proserpīna, Rasīna, Ruspīna, Sarsīna.
3. Axŏna, Matrŏna.
4. Dalmāta, Massagēta, Prochўta, Sarmāta, Sostrāta.
5. Galātæ, Jaxamētæ, Lapĭthæ, Macētæ, Sauromātæ.
6. Clymĕne, Helĕne, Melpomĕne, Nyctimĕne
7. Arimīnum, Drepānum, Peucedānum.
8. Numĭtor.
9. Miltiādes, Pylādes, Sotādes, Thucydĭdes; patronymics in *des*, (§ 291, 4,) and plurals in *ades*.
10. Antiphātes, Amodўtes, Cerītes, Charītes, Eterētes, Eurybātes, Harpocrātes, Ichnobātes, Massagētes, Menecrātes, Socrātes, Anaxarētes.
11. Dercētis.
12. Apŏnus, Acindŏnus, Acyndīnus, Amběnus, Apidānus, Batīnus, Cœlīnus, Chrysogŏnus, Cimīnus, Comagēnus, Concānus, Dardānus, Diaduměnus, Durānus, Eridānus, Helĕnus, Fusīnus, Fuscīnus, Illibānus, Libānus, Lycīnus, Messalīnus, Morīni, Nebrophŏnus, Periclyměnus, Poppeānus, Rhodānus, Solīnus, Stephānus, Telegŏ-

nus, Termĭnus, Therĭnus, Vertŭnus. Mycŏnus.
13. Œdĭpus.
14. Lamĭrus.
15. Pacŏrus, and those in *chorus* and *phorus;* as, Bosphŏrus, Carpophŏrus, Mastigophŏrus, Phosphŏrus, Stesichŏrus.
16. Ephĕsus, Vogĕsus, Volĕsus.
17. Iapĕtus, Taygĕtus, Venĕtus.
18. Æpўtus, Anўtus, Eurўtus, Hippolўtus.

3. The penultimate vowel of the following proper names, and adjectives derived from proper names, though followed by a vowel, is long. See § 283, Exc. 6.

Alexandrīa, Alphēus, Achelōus, Achillēus, Achillēa, Amphiarāus, Amphīon, Æneas, Arīon, Alcyonēus, Alōeus, Anchisēus, Atlantēus, Æthīon, Aminēus, Amphigenīa, Amythāon, Antiochīa, Bionēus, Cymodocēa, Calliopēa, Cassiopēa, Cydonēus, Cæsarēa, Calaurēus, Chremetāon, Cleanthēas, Cytherēa, Deidamīa, Didymāon, Dolicāon, Darīus, Elēi, Enўo, Eōus, Echīon, Elēus, Endymionēus, Erebēus, Erecthēus, Hyperīon, Galatēa, Gigantēus, Heraclēa, Hippodamīa, Hypetāon, Iolāus, Iphigenīa, Ixīon, Ilithyīa, Imāon, Laodamīa, Lycāon, Latōus, Lesbōus, Machāon, Mausolēum, Medēa, Menelāus, Mathīon, Methīon, Myrtōus, Orīon, Orithyīa, Orphēus, Ophўon, Pallantēum, Penēus, Penthesilēa, Phœbēus, Pandīon, Protesilāus, Pyrenēus, Sardōus, Paphagēa, Poppēa, Thalīa.

Note. *Eus*, in the termination of Greek proper names, is commonly a diphthong; as, *Briăreus, Ceneus, Enīpeus, Idoměneus, Macăreus, Menēceus, Metĕreus, Orpheus, Penthesĭleus, Perseus, Theseus.* See § 283, Exc. 6, Note 2. But in those which in Greek are written ειος (*eios*), *eus* forms two syllables; as, *Alphēus.* So also in adjectives in *eus*, whether of Greek or Latin origin; as, *Erebēus, Erecthēus, Orphēus.*

QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

A *final.*

§ 294. 1. *A* final, in words declined, is short; as, *musă, templă, capĭtă, Tydeă.* Thus,

Musă mihi causas memŏra; quo numĭne læso..... *Virg.*

Exc *A* final is long in the ablative of the first declension, and in the vocative of Greek nouns in *as;* as,

Musā, fundā; O Æneā, O Pallā. The vocative *Anchīsā* (Æn. 3, 475), also, has the final *a* long.

2. *A* final, in words not declined, is long; as, *amā, frustrā, anteā, ergā, intrā.* Thus,

Extrā fortūnam est quidquid donātur amīcis. *Mart.*

Exc. *A* final is short in *ejă, ităquiă*, and in *pută*, when used adverbially. It is sometimes short in the preposition *contra*, and in numerals ending in *ginta;* as, *triginta*, &c. In *postea*, it is common.

A final is also short in the names of Greek letters; as, *alphă, betă*, &c.

E *final.*

§ 295. *E* final is short; as, *natĕ*, *patrĕ*, *ipsĕ*, *currĕ*, *regĕrĕ*, *nempĕ*, *antĕ*. Thus,

Incĭpĕ, *parvĕ* puer, risu *cognoscĕrĕ* matrem. *Virg.*

Exc. 1. *E* final is long in nouns of the first and fifth declensions; as,

Calliŏpē, *Tydīdē*, *fidē*. So also *rē* and *diē*, with their compounds *quarē*, *hodiē*, *pridiē*, *postridiē*, *quotidiē*. In like manner Greek vocatives in *e*, from nouns in *es*, of the third declension; as, *Achillē*, *Hippomĕnē*. The *e* is also long in the ablative *famē*, originally of the fifth declension.

Exc. 2. *E* final is long in Greek neuters plural; as, *cetē*, *melē*, *pelăgē*, *Tempē*.

Exc. 3. In the second conjugation, *e* final is long in the second person singular of the imperative active; as, *docē*, *monē*;—but it is sometimes short in *cave*, *vale*, and *vide*.

Exc. 4. In monosyllables, *e* final is long; as,

ē, *mē*, *tē*, *sē*, *nē* (lest or not); but the enclitics *que*, *ne*, *ve*, *ce*, &c., as they are not used alone, have *e* short, according to the rule; as, *nequĕ*, *hujusce*, *suaptĕ*.

Exc. 5. *E* final is long in adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions; as,

placidē, *pulchrē*, *validē* for *validĕ*, *maximē*; but it is short in *benĕ*, *malĕ*, *infernĕ*, and *supernĕ*.

Exc. 6. *Ferē*, *fermē*, and *ohē*, have the final *e* long.

I *final.*

§ 296. *I* final is long; as, *domĭnī*, *filī*, *classī*, *docērī*, *sī*. Thus,

Quid *domĭnī* facient, audent cùm talia fures. *Virg.*

Exc. 1. *I* final is common in *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ibi*, and *ubi*.

In *nisi*, *quasi*, and *cui*, when a dissyllable, it is also common, but usually short. In *ūtĭnam* and *utĭque*, it is short, and rarely in *uti*.

Exc. 2. *I* final is short in the dative singular of Greek nouns of the third declension, which increase in the genitive; as, *Pallădi*, *Menoïti*, *Tethyi*.

Exc. 3. *I* final is short in Greek vocatives singular of the third declension; as, *Alexĭ*; *Daphnĭ*, *Parĭ*. But it is long in vocatives from Greek nouns in *is*, *-entos*; as, *Simoī*.

Exc. 4. *I* final is short in Greek datives and ablatives plural in *si*, or, before a vowel, *-sin*; as, *Dryădĭsī*, *heroïsī*, *Troădsĭn*.

O *final.*

§ 297. *O* final is common; as, *virgo*, *amo*, *quando*. Thus,

Ergŏ metu capĭti Scylla est inimīca paterno. *Virg.*
Ergō sollicĭtæ tu causa, pecunia, vitæ es! *Prop.*

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *o* are long; as, *ō*, *dō*, *prō*.

Exc. 2. *O* final is long in the dative and ablative singular; as, *domĭnō*, *regnō*, *bonō*, *suō*, *illō*, *eō*.

It is also long in ablatives used as adverbs; as, *certō*, *falsō*, *meritō*, *eō*, *quō*; to which may be added *ergō* (for the sake of).

Rem. 1. The gerund in *do*, in the later poets, has sometimes *o* short; as, *vigilandŏ*. Juv.

Rem. 2. The final *o* in *cito* is short: in *modo*, it is common, but short in its compounds; as, *dummŏdŏ*, *postmŏdŏ*, &c. It is common also in *adeo*, *ideo*, *postrēmo*, *sero*, and *vero*. In *illĭco*, *profecto*, and *subĭto*, it is found short.

Exc. 3. *O* final is short in *immŏ*, and common in *idcirco*, *porro*, and *retro*.

Exc. 4. *O* final, in Greek nouns written with an *oměga*, is long; as, *Cliō*, *Didō*; *Athō* and *Androgeō* (gen).

Note. The final *o* of verbs is almost always long in poets of or near the Augustan age; they, however, shorten it in *scio*, *nescio*, and *spondeo*. Later poets make the *o* short in many other verbs.

U *final.*

§ 298. 1. *U* final is long; as, *vultū*, *cornū*, *Panthū*, *dictū*. Thus,

Vultū quo cœlum tempestatesque serēnat. *Virg.*

Exc. *Indu* and *nenu*, ancient forms of *in* and *non*, have *u* short. *U* is also short in terminations in *us* short, when *s* is removed by elision; as, *contentŭ'*, for *contentŭs*. See § 305, 2.

Y *final.*

2. *Y* final is short; as, *Molў*, *Tiphў*. Thus,

Molў vocant supĕri: nigrâ radĭce tenētur. *Ovid.*

Y, in the dative *Tethy*, being formed by contraction, is long. § 283, III.

B, D, L, N, R, T, *final.*

§ 299. 1. Final syllables ending in *b*, *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, and *t*, are short; as, *ăb*, *illŭd*, *consŭl*, *carmĕn*, *patĕr*, *capŭt*. Thus,

Ipse docet *quĭd* agam. Fas est *ĕt ăb* hoste docēri. *Ovid.*
Obstupuit *simŭl* ipse, simul perculsus Achātes. *Virg.*
Nomĕn Arionium Sicŭlas *implevĕrăt* urbes. *Ovid.*
Dum *loquŏr*, *horrŏr* habet; parsque est meminisse dolōris. *Id.*

Exc. 1. L. *Sal*, *sol*, and *nil*, are long.

Exc. 2. N. *En*, *non*, *quin*, and *sin*, are long.

Exc. 3. In Greek nouns, nominatives in *n* (except those in *on*, written with an *omicron*), masculine accusatives in *an*, masculine or feminine accusatives in *en*, and genitives plural in *ōn*, lengthen the final syllable; as,

Titān, splēn, Salāmīn, Orīōn, Phorcȳn; Ænēān, Anchisēn, Calliŏpēn, epigrammătōn.

Exc. 4. R. *Aër, æther,* and nouns in *er* which form their genitive in *ēris,* lengthen the final syllable; as,

crater, vēr. So also *Ibēr;* but the compound *Celtĭber* has its last syllable common.

Exc. 5. *Far, lar, Nar, par, cur,* and *fur,* are long.

Rem. A final syllable ending in *t,* may be rendered long by a diphthong, by contraction, or by position; as, *aut, abīt* for *abiit, amānt.* See § 283, II, III, IV.

M *final.*

2. Final *m,* with the preceding vowel, is almost always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel. See *Ecthlipsis,* § 305, 2.

Final syllables ending in *m,* when it is not cut off, are short; as,

Quam laudas, plumâ? cocto *nūm* adest honor idem. *Hor.*

Hence, the final syllables of *cum* and *circum,* in composition, are short; as, *cŏmĕdo, circŭmăgo.*

C *final.*

3. Final syllables ending in *c* are long; as, *āc, illūc.* Thus,

Macte novâ virtūte, puer; *sic* itur ad astra. *Virg.*

Exc. *Nec, donec, fac,* are short, and sometimes the pronouns *hic* and *hoc* in the nominative and accusative.

AS, ES, *and* OS, *final.*

§ 300. Final syllables in *as, es,* and *os,* are long; as, *pietās, amās, quiēs, monēs, honōs, virōs.* Thus,

Hās autem *terrās,* Italique hanc littŏris oram. *Virg.*
Si modò *dēs* illis cultus, *similēs*que parātus. *Ovid.*
Nec *nōs* ambitio, nec amor *nōs* tangit habendi. *Id.*

Exc. 1. AS. *As* is short in *ădis,* in Greek nouns whose genitive ends in *ădis* or *ădos,* and in Greek accusatives plural of the third declension; as, *Arcăs, Pallăs, herōăs, lampădăs.*

To these may be added Latin nouns in *as, ădos,* formed like Greek patronymics; as, *Appiăs.*

Exc. 2. ES. Final *es* is short in nouns and adjectives of the third declension which increase short in the genitive; as, *hospĕs, limĕs, hebĕs.*

But it is long in *abies, aries, Ceres, paries,* and *pes.*

Es, in the present tense of *sum,* and in the preposition *penes,* is short.

Es is short in Greek neuters, and in Greek nominatives and vocatives plural from nouns of the third declension, which increase in the genitive otherwise than in *eos;* as, *cacoēthĕs, Arcădĕs, Troĕs, Amazŏnĕs.*

Exc. 3. OS. *Os* is short in *compos, impos,* and *os* (*ossis*).

In Greek nouns, *os* is short in words of the second declension (except those whose genitive is in *o*), in neuters, and in genitives singular; as, *Iliŏs Tyrŏs* (but *Athōs*); *chaŏs, epŏs, Palladŏs, Tethyŏs.*

IS, US, *and* YS, *final.*

§ 301. Final syllables in *is*, *us*, and *ys*, are short; as, *turrĭs*, *milĭtŭs*, *amābĭs*; *pectŭs*, *bonŭs*, *amāmŭs*; *Capўs*, *Tethўs*. Thus,

Non *apĭs* inde tulit collectos sedŭla flores. *Ovid.*
Seriŭs aut citiŭs sedem *properāmŭs* ad unam. *Id.*
At *Capўs*, et quorum melior sententia menti. *Virg.*

Exc. 1. IS. *Is* is long in plural cases; as,

musīs, *nobīs*; *omnīs*, *urbīs*, for *omnēs*, *urbēs*; *quīs*, for *queis* or *quibus*.

Is is long in nouns whose genitives end in *ītis*, *īnis*, or *entis*; as, *Samnīs*, *Salāmīs*, *Simoīs*.

Is is long in the second person singular of the present indicative active of the fourth conjugation; as,

audīs, *nescīs*. So also in the second persons, *fis*, *is*, *sis*, *vis*, *velis*, and their compounds; as, *possīs*, *quamvīs*, *malīs*, *nolīs*, &c.

Ris, in the future perfect tense, is common; as, *vidĕrīs*.

In the nouns *glis* and *vis*, and the adverb *gratis*; *is* is long.

Exc. 2. US. Monosyllables in *ŭs* are long; as, *grūs*, *rūs*, *plūs*.

Us is long in nouns of the third declension which increase long, and in the genitive singular, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of the fourth declension (§§ 89, Rem., and 283, III.); as,

tellūs, *virtūs*, *incūs*;—*fructūs*. But *palŭs*, with the *us* short, occurs in Horace, Art. Poet. 65.

Us is long in Greek nouns written in the original with the diphthong *οῦς* (*ous*), whether in the nominative or genitive; as, nom. *Āmāthūs*, *Opūs*, *Œdipūs*, *tripūs*, *Panthūs*; gen. *Didūs*, *Sapphūs*. But compounds of *pus* (*πους*), when of the second declension, have *us* short; as, *polўpŭs*.

Note. The last syllable of every verse (except the anapæstic, and the Ionic *a minore*) may be either long or short, at the option of the poet.

By this is meant, that, although the measure require a long syllable, a short one may be used in its stead; and a long syllable may be used where a short one is required; as in the following verses, where the short syllable *ma* stands instead of a long one, and the long syllable *cu* instead of a short one:—

Sanguineâque manu crepitantia concŭtit armă. *Ovid.*
Non eget Mauri jacŭlis, nec arcū. *Hor.*

VERSIFICATION.

FEET.

§ 302. A foot is a combination of two or more syllables of a certain quantity.

Feet are either simple or compound. Simple feet consist of two or three syllables; compound feet of four.

I. SIMPLE FEET.

1. *Of two Syllables.*

Spondee, ...two long; as, ...*fŭndūnt.*
Pyrrhic, ...two short; as, ...*Dĕŭs.*
Trochee, or *choree*, ...a long and a short; as, ...*ārmă.*
Iambus, ...a short and a long; as, ...*ĕrānt.*

2. *Of three Syllables.*

Dactyl, ...a long and two short; as, ...*cōrpŏră.*
Anapæst, ...two short and a long; as, ...*dŏmĭnī.*
Tribrach, ...three short; as, ...*făcĕrĕ.*
Molossus, ...three long; as, ...*cōntĕndūnt.*
Amphibrach, ...a short, a long, and a short; as, ...*ămōrĕ.*
Amphimăcer, or *Cretic*, a long, a short, and a long; as, ...*căstĭtās.*
Bacchius, ...a short and two long; as, ...*Cătōnēs.*
Antibacchius, ...two long and a short; as, ...*Rōmānŭs.*

II. COMPOUND FEET.

Dispondee, ...a double spondee; as, ...*cōnflixĕrūnt.*
Proceleusmatic, ...a double Pyrrhic; as, ...*hŏmĭnĭbŭs.*
Ditrochee, ...a double trochee; as, ...*cōmpŏbāvĭt.*
Diiambus, ...a double iambus; as, ...*ămāvĕrānt.*
Greater Ionic, ...a spondee and a Pyrrhic; as, ...*cōrrĕxĭmŭs.*
Smaller Ionic, ...a Pyrrhic and a spondee; as, ...*prŏpĕrābānt.*
Choriambus, ...a choree and an iambus; as, ...*tĕrrĭfĭcānt.*
Antispast, ...an iambus and a choree; as, ...*ădhæsissĕ.*
First epitrit, ...an iambus and a spondee; as, ...*ămāvĕrūnt.*
Second epitrit, ...a trochee and a spondee; as, ...*cōndĭtōrēs.*
Third epitrit, ...a spondee and an iambus; as, ...*dĭscōrdĭās.*
Fourth epitrit, ...a spondee and a trochee; as, ...*ădduxistĭs.*
First pæon, ...a trochee and a Pyrrhic; as, ...*tĕmpŏrĭbŭs.*
Second pæon, ...an iambus and a Pyrrhic; as, ...*pŏtĕntĭă.*
Third pæon, ...a Pyrrhic and a trochee; as, ...*ănĭmātŭs.*
Fourth pæon, ...a Pyrrhic and an iambus; as, ...*cĕlĕrĭtās.*

Those feet are called *isochronous*, which consist of equal times; as the spondee, the dactyl, the anapæst, and the proceleusmatic, one long time being considered equal to two short.

METRE.

§ 303. *Metre* is an arrangement of syllables and feet according to certain rules.

In this general sense, it comprehends either an entire verse, a part of a verse, or any number of verses.

Metre is divided into *dactylic*, *anapæstic*, *iambic*, *trochaic*, *choriambic*, and *Ionic*. These names are derived from the original or fundamental foot employed in each.

A *metre*, or *measure*, in a specific sense, is either a single foot, or a combination of two feet. In dactylic, choriambic, and Ionic metre, a measure consists of one foot; in the remainder, of two feet.

VERSES.

§ 304. A *verse* is a certain number of feet, arranged in a regular order, and constituting a line of poetry.

1. Two verses are called a *distich*; a half verse, a *hemistich*.

2. Verses are of different kinds, denominated sometimes, like the different species of metre, from the foot which chiefly predominates in them; as, *dactylic*, *iambic*, &c.;—sometimes from the number of feet or metres which they contain; as, *senarius*, consisting of six feet; *octonarius*, of eight feet; *monoměter*, consisting of one measure; *diměter*, of two; *triměter*, *tetraměter*, *pentaměter*, *hexaměter*;—sometimes from a celebrated author who used a particular species; as, *Sapphic*, *Anacreontic*, *Alcaic*, *Asclepiadic*, &c.;—and sometimes from other circumstances.

3. A verse, with respect to the metres which it contains, may be complete, deficient, or redundant.

A verse which is complete is called *acatalectic*.

A verse which is deficient, if it wants one syllable at the end, is called *catalectic*; if it wants a whole foot or half a metre, it is called *brachycatalectic*.

A verse which wants a syllable at the beginning, is called *acephalous*.

A verse which has a redundant syllable or foot, is called *hypercatalectic* or *hypermeter*.

4. Hence, the complete name of every verse consists of three terms—the first referring to the species, the second to the number of metres, and the third to the ending; as, the *dactylic trimeter catalectic*.

5. A verse or portion of a verse (measured from the beginning of a line) which contains three half feet, or a foot and a half, is called the *triemiměris*; if it contains five half feet, or two feet and a half, it is called the *penthemiměris*; if seven half feet, or three feet and a half, the *hepthemiměris*; if nine half feet, or four feet and a half, the *ennehemiměris*.

6. SCANNING is the dividing of a verse into the feet of which it is composed.

In order to scan correctly, it is necessary to know the quantity of each syllable, and also to understand the following poetic usages, which are sometimes called

FIGURES OF PROSODY.

SYNALŒPHA.

§ 305. 1. A final vowel or diphthong is cut off in scanning, when the following word begins with a vowel. This is called *synalœpha.*

Thus, *terra antĭqua* is read *terr' antĭqua; Dardanĭdæ infensi, Dardanid' infensi; vento huc, vent' uc.* So,

Quidve moror? si omnes uno ordĭne habētis Achīvos,.... *Virg.*

which is scanned thus—

Quidve moror? s' omnes un' ordin' habētis Achīvos.

The interjections *O, hcu, ah, proh, væ, vah,* are not elided; as,

Ō et de Latiâ, Ō et de gente Sabīnâ. *Ovid.*

But *O,* when not elided, is sometimes made short; as,

Te Corȳdon Ŏ Alexi; trahit sua quemque voluptas. *Virg.*

Other long vowels and diphthongs sometimes remain unelided, in which case they are commonly made short; as,

Victor apud rapĭdum Simoēnta sub *Ilĭŏ* alto. *Virg.*
Anni tempŏre eo *quī Etesiæ* esse feruntur. *Lucr.*
Ter sunt *conātī* imponĕre *Pelĭŏ* Ossam. *Virg.*
Glaucō et *Panopēæ,* et Inōo Melicertæ. *Id.*

Rarely a short vowel, also, remains without elision; as,

Et vera incessu patuit *deă.* Ille ubi matrem.... *Virg.*

For synalœpha at the end of a line, see *Synapheia,* § 307, 3.

ECTHLIPSIS.

2. Final *m,* with the preceding vowel, is cut off when the following word begins with a vowel. This is called *ecthlipsis.* Thus,

O curas homĭnum, O quantum est in rebus ināne! *Pers.*

which is thus scanned,

O curas homĭn' O quant' est in rebus ināne.

Monstrum horrend*um,* informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum. *Virg.*

This elision was sometimes omitted by the early poets; as,

Corpŏrŭm officium est quoniam premĕre omnia deorsum. *Lucr.*

See § 299, 2.

Final *s,* also, with the preceding vowel, is sometimes elided by the early poets before a vowel, and sometimes *s* alone before a consonant; as, *contenť atque* (Enn.), for *contentus atque; omnĭbu' rebus.* (*Lucr.*) So,

Tum *laterālĭ'* dolor, *certissĭmu' nunciu'* mortis *Lucil.*

For ecthlipsis at the end of a line, see *Synapheia,* § 307, 3.

SYNÆRESIS.

§ 306. 1. Two vowels which are usually separated, are sometimes contracted into one syllable. This is called *synærĕsis.*

Thus, in such case,

Phaĕthon is pronounced *Phœthon; alveo, alvo; Orphea, Orpha.* So,

Aureâ percussum virgâ, versumque venēnis. *Virg.*
Eosdem habuit secum, quibus est elāta, capillos. *Prop.*

(1.) Synæresis is frequent in *ii, iidem, iisdem, dii, diis, dein, deinceps, deinde, deest, deĕrat, deĕro, deĕrit, deesse;* as,

Præcipitātur aquis, et aquis nox surgit ab *i*sdem. *Ovid.*
Sint Mæcenātes; non *deĕrunt*, Flacce, Marōnes. *Mart.*

Cui and *huic* are usually monosyllables.

(2.) When two vowels in compound words are read as one syllable, the former may rather be considered as elided than as united with the latter; as, *e* in *anteambŭlo, anteīre, antĕhac, dehinc, mehercŭle,* &c., and *a* in *contraīre.*

(3.) The syllable formed by the union of two vowels often retains the quantity of the latter vowel, whether long or short; as, *abiĕte, ariĕte, abiĕgnæ, vindemiātor, omnia; genua, tenuis, pituīta, fluviōrum,* &c. In such examples, the *i* and *u* are pronounced like initial *y* and *w;* as, *abyĕte, omn-ya, tenwis, pitwīta,* &c.; and, like consonants, they have, with another consonant, the power of lengthening a preceding short vowel, as in the above examples.

In Statius, the word *tenuiōre* occurs, in which three vowels are united in pronunciation; thus, *ten-wiō-re.*

(4.) Sometimes, after a synalœpha, two vowels suffer synæresis; as, *stellio et,* pronounced *stell-yet.*

(5.) If only one of the vowels is *written,* the contraction is called *crasis;* as, *dî, consilî,* for *dii, consilii.*

DIÆRESIS.

2. A syllable is often divided into two syllables. This is called *diærĕsis.* Thus,

aulāï, Trōïa, silŭa, sŭadent; for *aulæ, Trōïa* or *Troja, silva, suadent.* So,

Æthereum sensum, atque *aurāï* simplĭcis ignem. *Virg.*
Et claro *sïlŭas* cernes Aquilōne movēri. *Id.*
Grammatĭci certant; et adhuc sub *iudĭce* lis est. *Hor.*

So in Greek words originally written with a diphthong; as, *elegēïa,* for *elegīa.*

SYSTOLE.

§ 307. 1. A syllable which is long by nature or by position, is sometimes shortened. This is called *systŏle;* as,

vidĕ'n, for *videsne,* in which *e* is naturally long; *satĭ'n,* for *satisne,* in which *i* is long by position;—*hŏdie,* for *hoc die; multĭmŏdis,* for *multis modis.* So,

Ducēre *multĭmŏdis* voces, et flectĕre cantus. *Lucr.*

(1.) By the omission of *j* after *ab, ad, ob, sub,* and *re,* in compound

words, those prepositions retain their short quantity, which would otherwise be made long by position; as, *ăbĭci, ădĭcit, ŏbĭcis*, &c. Thus,

Si quid nostra tuis *adĭcit* vexatio rebus. *Mart.*

In like manner, by rejecting the consonant of the preposition, *ăperio, ŏperio, ŏmitto*, &c., are formed by systole.

(2.) The third person plural of certain perfects is said by some to be shortened by systole; as, *stetērunt, tulērunt*, &c.; but others believe that these irregularities have arisen from the errors of transcribers, or the carelessness of writers.

DIASTOLE.

2. A syllable naturally short, is sometimes lengthened. This is called *diastŏle.*

It occurs most frequently in proper names and in compounds of *re;* as, *Priamīdes, rĕligio*, &c. Thus,

Hanc tibi *Priamīdes* mitto, Ledæa, salūtem. *Ovid.*
Religiōne patrum multos servāta per annos. *Virg.*

Some editors double the consonant after *re.*
Diastole is sometimes called *ectāsis.*

SYNAPHEIA.

3. Verses are sometimes connected together so that the first syllable of a verse has an influence on the final syllable of that which precedes, either by position, synalœpha, or ecthlipsis. See §§ 283 and 305. This is called *synapheia.*

This figure was most frequent in anapæstic verse, and in the *Ionic a minōre.*

The following lines will illustrate its effect:—

Præceps silvas montesque *fugit*
Citus Actæon. *Sen.*

The *i* in the final syllable of *fugit*, which is naturally short, is made long by position before the following consonants.

Omnia Mercurio simĭlis vocemque coloremque
Et flavos..... *Virg.*
Dissĭdens plebi numĕro beatōrum
Exīmit virtus. *Hor.*

In the former of these examples, synapheia and synalœpha are combined; in the latter, synapheia and ecthlipsis.

By synapheia, the parts of a compound word were sometimes divided between two verses; as,

..... si non offenderet unum-
Quemque poetārum limæ labor et mora.... *Hor.*

Rem. The poets, also, often make use of some other figures, which, however, are not peculiar to them. Such are *prosthĕsis, aphærĕsis, syncŏpe, epenthĕsis, apocŏpe, paragōge, tmesis, antithĕsis*, and *metathĕsis.* See § 322.

ARSIS AND THESIS.

§ 308. In pronouncing the syllables of verse, the voice rises and falls alternately at regular intervals. This regular

alternate elevation and depression of the voice is called *rhythm*. The elevation of the voice is called *arsis*, its depression *thesis*. These terms sometimes, also, designate the parts of a foot on which the elevation or depression falls.

1. The natural arsis is on the long syllable of a foot: consequently, in a foot composed wholly of long, or of short syllables, considered in itself, the place of the arsis is undetermined. But when another foot is substituted for the fundamental foot of a metre, the arsis of the former is determined by that of the latter.

Hence, a spondee, in trochaic or dactylic metre, has the arsis on the first syllable; but in iambic or anapæstic metre, it has it on the last.

2. The arsis is either equal in duration to the thesis, or twice as long.

Thus, in the dactyl, — ⏑ ⏑, and anapæst, ⏑ ⏑ —, they are equal; in the trochee, — ⏑, and iambus, ⏑ —, they are unequal. This difference in the duration of the arsis and thesis constitutes the difference of rhythm.

3. The stress of voice which falls upon the arsis of a foot, is called the *ictus*. When a long syllable in the arsis of a foot is resolved into two short ones, the ictus falls upon the former.

Note 1. Some suppose that the terms *arsis* and *thesis*, as used by the ancients, denoted respectively the rising and falling of the hand in beating time, and that the place of the thesis was the syllable which received the ictus.

Note 2. As the ancient pronunciation of Latin is not now understood, writers differ in regard to the mode of reading verse. According to some, the accent of each word should always be preserved; while others direct that the stress of voice should be laid on the arsis of the foot, and that no regard should be paid to the accent.

It is generally supposed that the final letters elided by synalœpha and ecthlipsis, though omitted in scanning, were pronounced in reading verse.

CÆSURA.

§ 309. *Cæsura* is the separation, by the ending of a word, of syllables rhythmically or metrically connected.

Cæsura is of three kinds:—1, of the *foot;* 2, of the *rhythm;* and 3, of the *verse*.

1. Cæsura of the foot occurs when a word ends before a foot is completed; as,

Silves- | trem tenu- | i Mu- | sam me di- | tāris a- | vēnâ. *Virg.*

2. Cæsura of the rhythm is the separation of the arsis from the thesis by the ending of a word, as in the second, third, and fourth feet of the preceding line.

Cæsura of the rhythm allows a final syllable naturally short, to stand instead of a long one, it being lengthened by the *ictus;* as,

Pectorĭ- | *bŭs* inhi- | ans spi- | rantia | consŭlit | exta. *Virg.*

This occurs chiefly in hexameter verse.

Cæsura of the foot and of the verse do not of themselves lengthen a short syllable, but they often coincide with that of the rhythm.

3. Cæsura of the verse is such a division of a line into two parts, as affords to the voice a convenient pause or rest, without injury to the sense or harmony.

The cæsura of the verse is often called the *cæsural pause.* In several kinds of verse, its place is fixed; in others, it may fall in more than one place, and the choice is left to the poet. Of the former kind is the pentameter, of the latter the hexameter.

The proper place of the cæsural pause will be treated of, so far as shall be necessary, under each species of verse.

REMARK. The effect of the cæsura is to connect the different words harmoniously together, and thus to give smoothness, grace, and sweetness, to the verse.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF METRE.

DACTYLIC METRE.

§ 310. I. A *hexameter,* or heroic verse, consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyl, the sixth a spondee, and each of the other four either a dactyl or a spondee; as,

Ăt tŭbă | tĕrrĭbĭ- | lĕm sŏnĭ- | tūm prŏcŭl | ērĕ că- | nōrō. *Virg.*
Întōn- | sī crī- | nēs lōn- | gă cēr- | vicĕ flŭ- | ēbant. *Tibull.*
Lūdĕrĕ | quæ vĕl- | lĕm călă- | mō pĕr- | mīsīt ă- | grēstī. *Virg.*

1. The fifth foot is sometimes a spondee, and the verse in such case is called *spondaic;* as,

Cără dĕ- | ūm sŏbō- | lēs măg- | nūm Jŏvīs | īncrē- | mēntūm. *Virg.*

In such verses, the fourth foot is commonly a dactyl, and the fifth should not close with the end of a word. Spondaic lines are thought to be especially adapted to the expression of grave and solemn subjects.

2. A light and rapid movement is produced by the frequent recurrence of dactyls; a slow and heavy one by that of spondees; as,

Quadrupe- | dante pu- | trem sonĭ- | tu quatit | ungŭla | campum. *Virg.*
Illi in- | ter se- | se mag- | nă vi | brachia | tollunt. *Id.*

Variety in the use of dactyls and spondees in successive lines, has an agreeable effect. Hexameter verse commonly ends in a word of two or three syllables.

3. The beauty and harmony of hexameter verse depend much on due attention to the *cæsura*. (See § 309.) A line in which it is neglected is destitute of poetic beauty, and can hardly be distinguished from prose; as,

Romæ | mœnia | terruit | impĭger | Hannĭbal | armis. *Enn.*

4. The cæsural pause most approved in heroic poetry is that which occurs after the arsis in the third foot. This is particularly distinguished as *the heroic cæsura*. Thus,

At domus | interi- | or || re- | gāli | splendĭda | luxu. *Virg.*

5. Instead of the preceding, a cæsura in the thesis of the third foot, or after the arsis of the fourth, was also approved as heroic; as,

Infan- | dum re- | gīna || ju- | bes reno- | vāre do- | lōrem. *Virg.*
Inde to- | ro pater | Ænē- | as || sic | orsus ab | alto. *Id.*

When the cæsural pause occurs, as in the latter example, after the arsis of the fourth foot, another but slighter one is often found in the second foot; as,

Prima te- | net, || plau- | sūque vo- | lat || fremi- | tūque se- | cundo. *Virg.*

6. The cæsura after the third foot was least approved; as,

Cui non | dictus Hy- | las puer || et La- | tonia | Delos. *Virg.*

The cæsural pause between the fourth and fifth feet is termed the *bucolic* cæsura.

Note 1. The cæsura after the arsis is sometimes called the *masculine* cæsura; that in the thesis, the *feminine* or *trochaic*, as a trochee immediately precedes.

Note 2. In the principal cæsura of the verse, poets frequently introduce a pause in the sense, which must be attended to, in order to determine the place of the cæsural pause. For in the common place for the cæsura in the third foot, there is often a cæsura *of the foot;* while, in the fourth foot, a still more marked division occurs. In this case, the latter is to be considered as the principal cæsura, and distinguished accordingly; as,

Belli | ferrā- | tos pos- | tes, || por- | tasque re- | frēgit. *Hor.*

II. The *Priapēan* is usually accounted a species of hexameter. It is so constructed as to be divisible into two portions of three feet each, having generally a trochee in the first and fourth foot, and an amphimacer in the third; as,

Ō cŏ- | lōnĭă | quæ cŭpīs || pōntĕ | lŭdĕrĕ | lōngō. *Catull.*

It is, however, more properly considered as choriambic metre, consisting of alternate Glyconics and Pherecratics. See § 316, IV. V.

Note. A regular hexameter verse is termed *Priapēan*, when it is so constructed as to be divisible into two portions of three feet each; as,

Tertia | pars pa- | tri data | pars data | tertia | patri. *Catull.*

See above, 6.

§ 311. III. A *pentameter* verse consists of five feet.

It is generally, however, divided, in scanning, into two hemistichs, the first consisting of two feet, either dactyls or spondees,

followed by a long syllable; the last of two dactyls, also followed by a long syllable; as,

Nātū- | rē̄ sĕquĭ- | tūr || sē̆mĭnă | qūisquĕ sŭ- | ē̄. *Prop.*
Cārmĭnĭ- | būs vī- | vēs || tĕmpŭs ĭn | ōmnĕ mĕ- | īs. *Ovid.*

1. According to the more ancient and correct mode of scanning pentameter verse, it consists of five feet, of which the first and second may each be a dactyl or a spondee; the third is always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth are anapæsts; as,

Nātū- | rē̄ sèquĭ- | tūr || sēm- | ĭnă quīs- | quĕ sŭē̄.
Cārmĭnĭ- | būs vī- | vēs || tēm- | pŭs ĭn ōm- | nĕ mĕīs.

2. The cæsura, in pentameter verse, always occurs after the penthemimeris, i. e. at the close of the first hemistich. It very rarely lengthens a short syllable.

3. The pentameter rarely ends with a word of three syllables. In Ovid, it usually ends with a dissyllable.

This species of verse is seldom used, except in connection with hexameter, a line of each recurring alternately. This combination is called *elegiac* verse. Thus,

Flebĭlis indignos, Elegeïa, solve capillos.
Ah nimis ex vero nunc tibi nomen erit! *Ovid.*

§ 312. IV. The *tetrameter a priōre*, or *Alcmanian dactylic tetrameter*, consists of the first four feet of a hexameter, of which the fourth is always a dactyl; as,

Gārrŭlă | pĕr rā- | mōs ăvĭs | ōbstrĕpĭt. *Sen.*

V. The *tetrameter a posteriōre*, or *spondaic tetrameter*, consists of the last four feet of a hexameter; as,

Ībĭmŭs, | ō sŏcĭ- | ī, cŏmĭ- | tēsque. *Hor.*

VI. The *dactylic trimeter* consists of the last three feet of a hexameter; as,

Grātō | Pўrrhă sŭb | ăntro. *Hor.*

But this kind of verse is more properly included in choriambic metre. See § 316, V.

VII. The *trimeter catalectic*, or *Archilochian penthemimeris*, consists of the first five half feet of a hexameter, but the first two feet are commonly dactyls; as,

Pŭlvĭs ĕt | ūmbră sŭ- | mus. *Hor.*

VIII. The *dactylic dimeter*, or *Adonic*, consists of two feet, a dactyl and a spondee; as,

Rīsĭt Ă- | pōllo. *Hor.*

ANAPÆSTIC METRE.

§ 313. I. The *anapæstic monometer* consists of two anapæsts; as,

Ŭlūlās- | sĕ cănēs. *Sen.*

II. The *anapæstic dimeter* consists of two measures, or four anapæsts; as,

Phărĕtrē- | quĕ grăvēs ‖ dătĕ sē- | vă fĕrō..... *Sen.*

The first foot in each measure of anapæstic metre was very often changed to a dactyl or a spondee, and the second foot often to a spondee, and, in a few instances, to a dactyl.

Anapæstic verses are generally so constructed that each measure ends with a word, so that they may be written and read in lines of one, two, or more measures.

IAMBIC METRE.

§ 314. I. The *iambic trimeter*, or *senarius*, consists of three iambic measures, or six iambic feet; as,

Phăsē- | lūs īl- ‖ lĕ, ‖ quēm | vīdē- ‖ tĭs, hōs- | pītēs..... *Catull.*

The cæsura commonly occurs after the fifth semi-foot.

The pure iambic measure was seldom used. To give to this metre greater slowness and dignity, spondees were introduced into the first, third, and fifth places; and in every foot except the last, which was always an iambic, a long syllable was often changed into two short ones, so that an anapæst or a dactyl was used for a spondee, and a tribrach for an iambus; as,

Quŏ, quŏ | scĕlĕs- | tī rŭĭ- | tĭs? aūt | cūr dĕx- | tĕrīs.... *Hor.*
Ălĭtĭ- | bŭs ăt- | quĕ cănĭ- | bŭs hŏmĭ- | cĭda Hĕc- | tŏrĕm..... *Id.*

Sometimes, also, a proceleusmatic was used in the first place for a spondee. The writers of comedy, satire, and fable, admitted the spondee and its equivalents (the dactyl and anapæst) into the second and fourth places, as well as the first, third, and fifth.

II. The *scazon*, or *choliambus* (lame iambic), is the iambic trimeter, with a spondee in the sixth foot, and generally an iambus in the fifth; as,

Cūr īn | thĕă- ‖ trūm, Cătŏ, | sĕvē- ‖ rĕ vē- | nīstī?
Ăn ĭdē- | ŏ tān- ‖ tūm vēn- | ĕrās ‖ ūt ēx- | īrēs? *Mart.*

This species of verse is also called *Hipponactic trimeter*.

III. The *iambic tetrameter*, or *octonarius*, called also *quadratus*, a measure used by the comic poets, consists of four iambic measures, subject to the same variations as the iambic trimeter (I.); as,

Nūnc hīc | dīēs ‖ kĭĭăm | vītam ăf- ‖ fĕrt, ălĭ- | ŏs mō- ‖ rēs pŏs- | tŭlat. *Ter.*

IV. The *iambic tetrameter catalectic*, or *Hipponactic*, is the iambic tetrameter, wanting the last syllable, and having always an iambus in the seventh place, but admitting in the other places the same variations as the trimeter and tetrameter; as,

Dēprēn- | să nā- ‖ vīs īn | mărī ‖ vēsā- | nīēn- ‖ tĕ vēn- | to. *Catull.*

V. The *iambic trimeter catalectic*, or *Archilochian*, is the iambic trimeter (I.), wanting the final syllable. Like the common iambic trimeter, it admits a spondee into the first and third places, but not into the fifth; as,

Vŏcā- | tŭs āt- ‖ quĕ nōn | vŏcā- ‖ tŭs aū- | dit. *Hor.*
Trăhunt- | quĕ sīc- ‖ cās măch- | ĭnē ‖ cărī- | nas. *Id.*

VI. The *iambic dimeter* consists of two iambic measures, with the same variations as the iambic trimeter (I.); as,

Fōrtī | sĕquĕ- ‖ mūr pĕc- | tŏre. *Hor.*
Cānīdī- | ă trăc- ‖ tāvīt | dăpēs. *Id.*
Vīdē- | rĕ prŏpĕ- ‖ rāntēs | dŏmum. *Id.*

The iambic dimeter is also called the *Archilochian dimeter*.

VII. The *iambic dimeter hypermeter*, called also *Archilochian*, is the iambic dimeter, with an additional syllable at the end; as,

Rĕdē- | gĭt ăd ‖ vĕrōs | tĭmō- ‖ rēs. *Hor.*

Horace always makes the third foot a spondee.

VIII. The *iambic dimeter acephalous* is the iambic dimeter, wanting the first syllable; as,

Nōn | ĕbŭr ‖ nĕque āū- | rĕum..... *Hor.*

This kind of verse is sometimes scanned as a catalectic trochaic dimeter. See § 315, IV.

IX. The *iambic dimeter catalectic*, or *Anacreontic*, is the iambic dimeter, wanting the final syllable, and having always an iambus in the third foot; as,

Ŭt tī- | grĭs ōr- ‖ bă gnā- | tīs. *Sen.*

X. The *Galliambus* consists of two iambic dimeters catalectic, the last of which wants the final syllable.

The first foot is generally a spondee or an anapæst; the catalectic syllable at the end of the first dimeter is long, and the second foot of the second dimeter is commonly a tribrach; as,

Sŭpĕr ăl- | tă vĕc- ‖ tŭs Ă- | tўs ‖ cĕlĕrī | rătĕ mă- | rĭa. *Catull.*

The cæsura uniformly occurs at the end of the first dimeter.

TROCHAIC METRE.

§ 315. Trochaic verses bear a near affinity to iambics. The addition or retrenchment of a syllable at the beginning of a pure iambic verse, renders it pure trochaic, and the addition or retrenchment of a syllable at the beginning of a pure trochaic line, renders it pure iambic, with the deficiency or redundancy of a syllable in each case at the end of the verse.

I. The *trochaic tetrameter catalectic* is the most common trochaic metre. It consists of seven feet, followed by a catalectic syllable. In the odd places, it admits a tribrach, but in the seventh a trochee only. In the even places, besides the

tribrach, it admits also a spondee, a dactyl, an anapæst, and sometimes a proceleusmatic; as,

Jūssŭs | ēst īn- | ērmīs | īrĕ: || pūrŭs | īrĕ | jūssŭs | ēst. *Catull.*
Rōmŭ- | lēās | īpsă | fēcīt || cūm Să- | bīnīs | nūptī- | ās. *Id.*
Dănăĭ- | dēs, cŏ- | ītĕ; | vēstrās || hīc dī- | ēs quæ- | rīt mă- | nūs. *Sen.*

The *pure* trochaic verse was rarely used. The cæsural pause uniformly occurs after the fourth foot. The comic writers introduced the spondee and its equivalent feet into the odd places.

The complete trochaic tetrameter properly consists of eight feet, all trochees, subject, however, to the same variations as the catalectic tetrameter; as,

Īpsĕ | sūmmīs | săxīs | fīxŭs | āspĕ- | rīs, ē- | vīscĕ- | rātŭs. *Enn.*

II. The *Sapphic* verse, invented by the poetess Sappho, consists of five feet—the first a trochee, the second a spondee, the third a dactyl, and the fourth and fifth trochees; as,

Īntĕ- | gĕr vī- | tæ, || scĕlĕ- | rīsquĕ | pūrŭs. *Hor.*

Sappho, and, after her example, Catullus, sometimes made the second foot a trochee.

Those Sapphics are most harmonious which have the cæsura after the fifth semi-foot.

NOTE. In the composition of the Sapphic stanza, a word is sometimes divided between the end of the third Sapphic, and the beginning of the Adonic which follows; as,

Lăbī- | tūr rī- | pă Jŏvĕ | nōn prŏ- | bānte ux-
ōrĭŭs | āmnis. *Hor.*

This occurs only in Catullus and Horace; and it has been thought by some that such lines should be considered as one verse of seven feet, the fifth foot being either a spondee or a trochee.

III. The *Phalæcian* verse consists of five feet—the first a spondee, the second a dactyl, and the three others trochees; as,

Nōn ēst | vīvĕrĕ, | sĕd vă- | lērĕ | vītă. *Mart.*

Instead of a spondee as the first foot, Catullus sometimes uses a trochee or an iambus. This writer also sometimes uses a spondee in the second place.

The *Phalæcian* verse is sometimes called *hendecasyllabic*, as consisting of eleven syllables; but that name does not exclusively belong to it.

IV. The *trochaic dimeter catalectic* consists of three feet, properly all trochees, but admitting in the second place a spondee or a dactyl; as,

Nōn ŏ- | bŭr nĕ- | que āūrĕ- | um. *Hor.*

NOTE. This measure is the same as the acephalous iambic dimeter (see § 314, VIII.), and it is not important whether it be regarded as iambic or trochaic.

CHORIAMBIC METRE.

§ 316. I. The *choriambic pentameter* consists of a spondee, three choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Tū nĕ | quæsĭĕrīs, | scīrĕ nĕfās | quēm mĭhĭ, quēm | tĭbĭ.... *Hor.*

II. The *choriambic tetrameter* consists of three choriambi, or feet of equal length, and a Bacchīus; as,

Ōmnĕ nĕmŭs | cūm flŭvĭīs, | ōmnĕ cānāt | prŏfŭndum. *Claud.*

In this verse Horace substituted a spondee for the iambus contained in the first choriambus; as,

Tē dĕōs ō- | rō, Sўbărīn | cūr prŏpĕrēs | ămandō.... *Hor.*

III. The *Asclepiadic tetrameter* (invented by the poet Asclepiădes) consists of a spondee, two choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Mæcē- | nās, ătăvīs || ēdĭtē rēg- | ĭbus. *Hor.*

This form is invariably observed by Horace; but other poets sometimes, though rarely, make the first foot a dactyl.

The cæsural pause occurs at the end of the first choriambus.

This measure is sometimes scanned as a dactylic pentameter catalectic. See § 311, III. Thus,

Mæcē- | nās, ătă- | vīs || ēdĭtē | rēgĭbŭs.

IV. The *choriambic trimeter*, or *Glyconic* (invented by the poet Glyco), consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and an iambus; as,

Sīc tē | dīvă pŏtēns | Cўprī.... *Hor.*

The first foot is sometimes an iambus or a trochee.

When the first foot is a spondee, the other feet are sometimes scanned as dactyls. Thus,

Sīc tē | dīvă pŏ- | tēns Cўpri.

V. The *choriambic trimeter catalectic*, or *Pherecratic* (so called from the poet Pherecrātes), is the Glyconic deprived of its final syllable, and consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and a catalectic syllable; as,

Grātō | Pўrrhă sŭb ăn- | trō. *Hor.*

The first foot was sometimes a trochee or an iambus.

When the first foot is a spondee, this measure is sometimes scanned as a dactylic trimeter. See § 312, VI.

The Pherecratic subjoined to the Glyconic produces the Priapean verse. See § 310, II.

VI. The *choriambic dimeter* consists of a choriambus and a Bacchīus; as,

Lўdĭă dīc | pĕr ōmnēs. *Hor.*

IONIC METRE.

§ 317. I. The *Ionic a majōre*, or *Sotadic* (from the poet Sotădes), consists of three greater Ionics and a spondee.

The Ionic feet, however, are often changed into ditrochees, and a long syllable into two short ones; as,

Hās, cūm gĕmĭ- | nā cŏmpĕdĕ, | dēdĭcăt că- | tēnās,
Sătūrnĕ, tī- | bĭ Zōīlŭs, | ānnŭlōs prĭ- | ōrēs. *Mart.*

II. The *Ionic a minōre* consists generally of three or four feet, which are all Ionics *a minōre;* as,

Pŭĕr ălēs, | tĭbĭ tĕlās, | ŏpĕrōsæ- | quĕ Mĭnĕrvæ.... *Hor.*

COMPOUND METRES.

§ 318. Compound metre is the union of two species of metre in the same verse.

I. The *dactylico-iambic* metre consists of a dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 312, VII.) and an iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Scrībĕrĕ | vĕrsĭcŭ- | lōs || ămō- | rĕ pĕr- | cŭlsūm | grăvī.... *Hor.*

II. The *iambico-dactylic* metre consists of the same members as the preceding, but in a reversed order; as,

Nīvēs- | quĕ dē- | dūcūnt | Jŏvēm: || nūnc mărĕ, | nūnc sīlū- | æ. *Hor.*

NOTE. The members composing this and the preceding species of verse are often written in separate verses.

III. The *greater Alcaic* consists of two iambic feet, and a long catalectic syllable followed by a choriambus, and an iambus; as,

Vīdēs | ŭt ăl- | tā || stĕt nĭvĕ cān- | dĭdum. *Hor.*

The first foot is often a spondee.
The cæsura uniformly occurs after the catalectic syllable.
This verse is sometimes so scanned as to make the last two feet dactyls.

IV. The *dactylico-trochaic,* or *Archilochian heptameter,* consists of the dactylic tetrameter *a priōre* (§ 312), followed by three trochees; as,

Sōlvĭtŭr | ācrĭs hī- | ēms grā- | tā vĭcĕ || vērĭs | ēt Fă- | vōnī. *Hor.*

The cæsura occurs between the two members.

V. The *dactylico-trochaic tetrameter,* or *lesser Alcaic,* consists of two dactyls, followed by two trochees; as,

Lĕvĭă | pĕrsŏnŭ- | ērĕ | săxă. *Hor.*

COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

§ 319. A poem may consist of one or more kinds of verse. A poem in which only one kind of verse is employed, is called *carmen monocōlon;* that which has two kinds, *dicōlon;* that which has three kinds, *tricōlon.*

When the poem returns, after the second line, to the same verse with which it began, it is called *distrŏphon;* when after the third line, *tristrŏphon;* and when after the fourth, *tetrastrŏphon.*

The several verses which occur before the poem returns to

the kind of verse with which it began, constitute a *stanza* or *strophe.*

A poem consisting of two kinds of verse, when the stanza contains two verses, is called *dicōlon distrŏphon*, (see § 320, Syn. 3;) when it contains three, *dicōlon tristrŏphon*, (Auson. Profess. 21;) when four, *dicōlon tetrastrŏphon*, (Syn. 2;) and when five, *dicōlon pentastrŏphon.*

A poem consisting of three kinds of verse, when the stanza contains three verses, is called *tricōlon tristrŏphon*, (Syn. 15;) when four, *tricōlon tetrastrŏphon*, (Syn. 1.)

HORATIAN METRES.

§ 320. The different species of metre used by Horace in his lyric compositions are twenty. The various forms in which he has employed them, either separate or in conjunction, are nineteen, arranged, according to the order of preference given to them by the poet, in the following

SYNOPSIS.

1. Two greater Alcaics (§ 318, III.), one Archilochian iambic dimeter hypermeter (§ 314, VII.), and one lesser Alcaic (§ 318, V.); as,

Vīdēs, ŭt ālta stēt nīvĕ cāndĭdum
Sōrāctĕ, nēc jām sūstĭnĕānt ŏnūs
Sīlvæ lăbōrāntēs, gĕlūquĕ
Flūmĭnă cōnstĭtĕrĭnt ăcūto. (*Lib.* 1, 9.)

This is called the Horatian stanza, because it seems to have been a favorite with Horace, being used in thirty-seven of his odes.

2. Three Sapphics (§ 315, II.) and one Adonic (§ 312, VIII.); as,

Jām sătīs tĕrrīs nĭvīs ătquĕ dīræ
Grandĭnis mīsit pătĕr, ĕt, rŭbēntĕ
Dĕxtĕra sacrās jăcŭlātŭs ārces,
Tĕrrŭit ŭrbem. (*Lib.* 1, 2.)

3. One Glyconic (§ 316, IV.) and one Asclepiadic (§ 316, III.); as,

Sīc tĕ Dīvă pŏtēns Cўpri,
Sīc frātrēs Hĕlĕnæ, lūcĭdă sīdĕra.... (*Lib.* 1, 3.)

4. One iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Ībīs Lĭbūrnīs ĭntĕr ālta nāvĭum,
Ămīcĕ, prōpūgnācŭla. (*Epod.* 1.)

5. Three Asclepiadics (§ 316, III.) and one Glyconic (§ 316, IV.); as,

Scrībērīs Vărĭō fortĭs, ĕt hōstĭum
Victŏr, Mæŏnĭī cārmĭnĭs ālĭti,
Quām rēm cūmquĕ fĕrōx nāvĭbŭs āūt ĕquis
Mīlĕs, tĕ dŭcĕ, gĕssĕrit. (*Lib.* 1, 6.)

6. Two Asclepiadics (§ 316, III.), one Pherecratic (§ 316, V.), and one Glyconic (§ 316, IV.); as,

Dīānam, tĕnĕræ, dīcītĕ vīrgĭnes:
Intŏnsum, pŭĕrī, dīcītĕ Cўnthĭum,
Latōnămquĕ sŭprĕmo
Dilĕctăm pĕnĭtŭs Jŏvi. (*Lib.* 1, 21.)

7. The Asclepiadic (§ 316, III.) alone; as,

Mæcēnās ātăvīs ĕdītĕ rēgĭbus. (*Lib.* 1, 1.)

8. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one dactylic tetrameter *a posteriōre* (§ 312, V.); as,

Laūdabŭnt ălĭī clārăm Rhŏdŏn, aūt Mĭtўlĕnen,
Aūt Ephĕsŭm, bĭmārīsvĕ Cŏrīnthi.... (*Lib.* 1, 7.)

9. The choriambic pentameter (§ 316, I.) alone; as,

Tū nĕ quæsĭĕrīs, scīrĕ nĕfās, quĕm mĭhĭ, quĕm tĭbi.... (*Lib.* 1, 11.)

10. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Nōx ĕrăt, ĕt cēlō fulgēbat lūnă sĕrēno
Intĕr mĭnōră sīdĕra. (*Epod.* 15.)

11. The iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.) alone; as,

Jam, jam ĕffĭcācī dō mānŭs scĭentĭæ. (*Epod.* 17.)

12. One choriambic dimeter (§ 316, VI.) and one choriambic tetrameter (§ 316, II.) with a variation; as,

Lўdĭă, dīc, pĕr ōmnes
Tē Dĕōs ōrō, Sўbărĭn cūr prŏpĕrās ămandō.... (*Lib.* 1, 8.)

13. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.); as,

Ălterā jām tĕrrĭtŭr bellĭs cīvīlĭbŭs ætas;
Sŭīs ĕt ĭpsă Rōmă vīrĭbŭs rŭit. (*Epod.* 16.)

14. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 312, VII.); as,

Diffŭgĕrĕ nĭvēs: rĕdĕūnt jām grāmĭnă cāmpīs,
Arbŏrĭbūsquĕ cŏmæ. (*Lib.* 4. 7.)

15. One iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.), one dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 312, VII.), and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Pĕttĭ, nĭhĭl mĕ, sĭcŭt ăntĕă, jŭvat
Scrĭbĕrĕ vĕrsĭcŭlos,
Amōrĕ pĕrcŭlsūm grăvi. (*Epod.* 11.)

Note. The second and third lines are often written as one verse. See § 318, I.

16. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.), one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.), and one dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 312, VII.); as,

Hŏrrĭdă tĕmpēstās cēlūm cōntrāxĭt; ĕt ĭmbres
Nĭvēsquĕ dēdŭcūnt Jŏvem:
Nūnc mărĕ, nūnc sĭlūæ.... (*Epod.* 13.)

NOTE. The second and third lines of this stanza, also, are often written as one verse. See § 318, II.

17. One Archilochian heptameter (§ 318, IV.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 314, V.); as,

Sōlvĭtūr ācrīs hĭēms grātā vīcĕ vērīs ĕt Fāvōnī,
Trāhūntquĕ sīccās māchīnæ cārīnas. (*Lib.* 1, 4.)

18. One iambic dimeter acephalous (§ 314, VIII.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 314, V.); as,

Nōn ēbŭr nĕque āūrĕum
Mĕa rĕnīdĕt īn dŏmō lăcūnar. (*Lib.* 2, 18.)

19. The Ionic *a minōre* (§ 317, II.) alone; as,

Mīsĕrārum ĕst nĕque āmōrī dārĕ lūdūm, nĕquĕ dūlcī.... (*Lib.* 3, 12.)

§ 321. A METRICAL KEY TO THE ODES OF HORACE,

Containing, in alphabetic order, the first words of each, with a reference to the numbers in the preceding Synopsis, where the metre is explained.

Æli, vetusto.....No. 1
Æquam memento..... 1
Albi, ne doleas 5
Altĕra jam terĭtur 13
Angustam, amīci 1
At, O deōrum 4
Audivēre, Lyce 6
Bacchum in remōtis 1
Beātus ille 4
Cœlo supīnas 1
Cœlo tonantem 1
Cùm tu, Lydia 3
Cur me querēlis 1
Delicta majōrum 1
Descende cœlo 1
Diānam, tenĕræ 6
Diffugēre nives 14
Dive, quem proles 2
Divis orte bonis 5
Donārem patĕras 7
Donec gratus eram 3
Eheu! fugāces 1
Est mihi nonum 2
Et thure et fidĭbus 3
Exēgi monumentum 7
Extrēmum Tanaim 5
Faune, nymphārum 2
Festo quid potius die 3
Hercŭlis ritu 2
Horrĭda tempestas 16
Ibis Liburnis 4
Icci, beātis No. 1
Ille et nefasto 1
Impios parræ 2
Inclūsam Danaēn 5
Intactis opulentior 3
Intĕger vitæ 2
Intermissa, Venus, diu 3
Jam jam efficāci 11
Jam pauca aratro 1
Jam satis terris..... 2
Jam veris comītes 5
Justum et tenācem 1
Laudābunt alii 8
Lupis et agnis 4
Lydia, dic, per omnes 12
Mæcēnas atāvis 7
Malâ solūta 4
Martiis cœlebs 2
Mater sæva Cupidĭnum 3
Mercūri, facunde 2
Mercūri, nam te 2
Miserārum est 19
Mollis inertia 10
Montium custos 2
Motum ex Metello..... 1
Musis amīcus 1
Natis in usum..... 1
Ne forte credas..... 1
Ne sit ancillæ 2
Nolis longa fĕræ..... 5
Nondum subacta..... 1

Non ebur neque aureum ... No. 18
Non semper imbres 1
Non usitāta 1
Non vides, quanto 2
Nox erat 10
Nullam, Vare, sacrâ 9
Nullus argento 2
Nunc est bibendum 1
O crudēlis adhuc 9
O diva, gratum..... 1
O fons Bandusiæ..... 6
O matre pulchrâ 1
O nata mecum 1
O navis, referent 6
O sæpe mecum 1
O Venus, regīna..... 2
Odi profānum 1
Otium Divos 2
Parcius junctas..... 2
Parcus Deōrum 1
Parentis olim 4
Pastor quum trahĕret..... 5
Percīcos odi, puer 2
Petti, nihil me.....15
Phœbe, silvarumque..... 2
Phœbus volentem..... 1
Pindărum quisquis..... 2
Poscīmur: siquid..... 2
Quæ cura patrum..... 1
Qualem ministrum..... 1
Quando repostum No. 4
Quantum distet ab Inăcho..... 3
Quem tu, Melpomĕne 3
Quem virum aut herōa..... 2
Quid bellicōsus..... 1
Quid dedicātum 1
Quid fles, Asterie..... 6
Quid immerentes..... 4
Quid obserātis.....11
Quid tibi vis..... 8
Quis desiderio..... 5
Quis multa gracĭlis 6
Quo me, Bacche..... 3
Quo, quo, scelesti ruĭtis..... 4
Rectiùs vives..... 2
Rogāre longo 4
Scribēris Vario..... 5
Septīmi, Gades 2
Sic te Diva potens..... 3
Solvĭtur acris hiems.....17
Te maris et terræ..... 8
Tu ne quæsiĕris 9
Tyrrhēna regum 1
Ulla si juris..... 2
Uxor paupĕris Ibўci..... 3
Velox amœnum..... 1
Vides, ut altâ..... 1
Vile potābis..... 2
Vitas hinnuleo..... 6
Vixi puellis 1

APPENDIX.

GRAMMATICAL FIGURES.

§ 322. Certain deviations from the regular form and construction of words, are called *grammatical figures*. These may relate either to Orthography and Etymology, or to Syntax.

I. FIGURES OF ORTHOGRAPHY AND ETYMOLOGY.

These are distinguished by the general name of *metaplasm*.

1. *Prosthĕsis* is the prefixing of a letter or syllable to a word; as, *gnatus*, for *natus*; *tetŭli*, for *tuli*. Yet these were anciently the customary forms, from which those now in use were formed by aphærĕsis.

2. *Aphærĕsis* is the taking of a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word; as, *'st*, for *est*; *rhabōnem*, for *arrhabōnem*.

3. *Epenthĕsis* is the insertion of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *alicuum*, for *alĭcum*.

4. *Syncŏpe* is the omission of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *deûm*, for *deōrum*; *meûm factûm*, for *meōrum factōrum*; *sæcla*, for *sæcŭla*; *flesti*, for *flevisti*; *repostus*, for *repositus*; *aspris*, for *aspĕris*.

5. *Crasis* is the contraction of two vowels into one; as, *cogo*, for *coăgo*; *nil*, for *nihil*.

6. *Paragōge* is the addition of a letter or syllable to the end of a word; as, *med*, for *me*; *claudier*, for *claudi*.

7. *Apocŏpe* is the omission of the final letter or syllable of a word; as, *men'*, for *mene*; *Antōni*, for *Antonii*.

8. *Antithĕsis* is the substitution of one letter for another; as, *olli*, for *illi*; *optŭmus*, for *optĭmus*; *afficio*, for *adficio*. *O* is often thus used for *u*, especially after *v*; as, *voltus*, for *vultus*; *servom*, for *servum*. So after *qu*; as, *æquom*, for *æquum*.

9. *Metathĕsis* is the changing of the order of letters in a word; as, *pistris*, for *pristis*.

II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

§ 323. The figures of Syntax are *ellipsis*, *pleonasm*, *enallăge*, and *hyperbăton*.

1. *Ellipsis* is the omission of some word or words in a sentence; as,

Aiunt, sc. *homines*. *Darius Hystaspis*, sc. *filius*. *Cano*, sc. *ego*. *Quid multa?* sc. *dicam*.

Ellipsis includes *asyndĕton*, *zeugma*, *syllepsis*, *prolepsis*, and *synecdŏche*.

(1.) *Asyndĕton* is the omission of a conjunction; as, *abiit, excessit, evāsit, erūpit*, sc. *et*. Cic.

(2.) *Zeugma* is the uniting of two nouns, or two infinitives, to a verb, which is applicable only to one of them; as, *Pacem an bellum gerens* (Sall.), where *gerens* is applicable to *bellum* only. *Semperne in sanguĭne, ferro, fugâ versabĭmur?* (Id.) where the verb does not properly apply to *ferro*.

Nego is often thus used with two propositions, one of which is affirmative; as, *Negant Cæsărem mansūrum, postulatăque interpostta esse*, for *dicuntque postulāta*.... Cic.

When an adjective or verb, referring to two or more nouns, agrees with one, and is understood with the rest, the construction is also sometimes called zeugma; as, *Et genus, et virtus, nisi cum re*, vilior *algâ* est. Hor. *Caper tibi* salvus *et hædi*. Virg. *Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tu candĭda* esses. Id.

(3.) *Syllepsis* is when an adjective or verb, belonging to two or more nouns of different genders, persons, or numbers, agrees with one rather than another; as, Attonĭti *novitāte papent* Baucis, *timidusque* Philēmon. Ovid. *Procumbit* uterque pronus *humi*, i. e. *Deucalion* et *Pyrrha*. Id.—Sustulĭmus *manus et* ego *et* Balbus. Cic. So, Ipse cum fratre *adesse* jussi sumus. Id.—*Projectisque amicŭlo et litĕris*. Curt. See §§ 205, Rem. 2, and 209, Rem. 12, (3,) and (7.)

Zeugma, in the latter sense above mentioned, is by some included under syllepsis.

(4.) *Prolepsis* is when the parts, differing in number or person from the whole, are placed after it, the verb or adjective not being repeated; as, *Princĭpes utrinque pugnam cĭebant, ab Sabīnis* Mettius Curtius, *ab Romānis* Hostus Hostilius. Liv. *Boni quoniam convenĭmus ambo*, tu *calāmos inflāre*, ego *dicĕre versus*. Virg.

(5.) *Synecdŏche* is the use of an accusative of the part affected, instead of an ablative; as, *Explēri* mentem *nequit*. Virg. See § 234, II.

2. *Pleonasm* is using a greater number of words than is necessary to express the meaning; as,

Sic ore *locūta est*. Virg. *Qui* magis *verè vincĕre quàm diu imperāre* malit. Liv. *Nemo unus*. Cic.

Under pleonasm are included *parelcon, polysynděton, hendiădys*, and *periphrăsis*.

(1.) *Pare'con* is the addition of an unnecessary syllable or particle to pronouns, verbs, or adverbs; as, *egŏmet, agĕdum, fortassean*. Such additions, however, usually modify the meaning in some degree.

(2.) *Polysynděton* is a redundancy of conjunctions; as, *Unà Eurus*que *Notus*que *ruunt creber*que *procellis Africus*. Virg.

(3.) *Hendiădys* is the expression of an idea by two nouns connected by a conjunction, instead of a noun and a limiting adjective or genitive; as, Patĕris *libāmus et* auro, for *aureis patĕris*. Virg. Libro *et silvestri* subĕre *clausam*, for *libro subĕris*. Id.

(4.) *Periphrăsis* is a circuitous mode of expression; as, *Tenĕri fœtus ovium*, i. e. *agni*. Virg.

3. *Enallăge* is a change of words, or a substitution of one gender, number, case, person, tense, mood, or voice of the same word for another.

Enallăge includes *antimeria, heterōsis, antiptōsis, synĕsis,* and *anacolūthon.*

(1.) *Antimeria* is the use of one part of speech for another; as, *Nostrum istud* vivĕre *triste,* for *nostra vita.* Pers. *Aliud* cras. Id. Conjugium *vidēbit?* for *conjŭgem.* Virg. *Placĭtam paci* nutrītor *olīvam,* for *nutrĭto.* Id.

(2.) *Heterōsis* is the use of one form of a noun, pronoun, verb, &c., for another; as, *Ego quoque unà pereo,* quod *mihi* est carius, for *qui mihi sum carior.* Ter. Romānus *prælio* victor, for *Romāni victōres.* Liv. Many words are used by the poets in the plural instead of the singular; as, *colla, corda, ora,* &c. See § 98. *Me truncus illapsus cerebro sustulĕrat,* for *sustulisset.* Hor.

(3.) *Antiptōsis* is the use of one case for another; as, *Cui nunc cognōmen* Iŭlo, for *Iŭlus.* Virg. Uxor *invicti Jovis esse nescis,* for *te esse uxōrem.* Hor.

(4.) *Synĕsis,* or *synthĕsis,* is adapting the construction to the *sense* of a word, rather than to its gender or number; as, Subeunt *Tegæa* juventus *auxĭlio* tardi. Stat. *Concursus* popŭli mirantium *quid rei est.* Liv. Pars *in crucem acti.* Sall. *Ubi* illic *est* scelus, qui *me perdĭdit?* Ter. *Id* mea *minīme refert,* qui *sum natu maxĭmus.* Id.

(5.) *Anacolūthon* is when the latter part of a sentence does not agree in construction with the former; as, *Nam* nos omnes, *quibus est alicunde aliquis objectus labos, omne quod est interea tempus, priusquam id rescītum est,* lucro est. Ter. In this example, the writer began as if he intended to say *lucro habēmus,* and ended as if he had said *nobis omnĭbus.*

4. *Hyperbăton* is a transgression of the usual order of words or clauses.

Hyperbaton includes *anastrŏphe, hystĕron protĕron, hypallăge, synchўsis, tmesis,* and *parenthĕsis.*

(1.) *Anastrŏphe* is an inversion of the order of two words; as, *Transtra per et remos,* for *per transtra.* Virg. *Collo dare brachia circum,* for *circumdăre.* Id. *Nox erit una super,* for *superĕrit.* Ovid. *Et facit are,* for *arefăcit.* Lucr.

(2.) *Hystĕron protĕron* is reversing the natural order of the sense; as, *Moriāmur, et in media arma ruāmus.* Virg. *Valet atque vivit.* Ter.

(3.) *Hypallăge* is an interchange of constructions; as, *In nova fert animus mutātas dicĕre formas corpŏra,* for *corpŏra mutāta in novas formas.* Ovid. *Dare classĭbus Austros,* for *dare classes Austris.* Virg.

(4.) *Synchўsis,* is a confused position of words; as, *Saxa vocant Itali, mediis quæ in fluctĭbus, aras,* for *quæ saxa in mediis fluctĭbus, Itali vocant aras.* Virg.

(5.) *Tmesis* is the separation of the parts of a compound word; as, *Septem subjecta trĭoni gens,* for *septentrĭoni.* Virg. *Quæ me cunque vocant terræ.* Id. *Per mihi, per, inquam, gratum fecĕris.* Cic.

(6.) *Parenthĕsis* is the insertion of a word or words in a sentence which interrupt the natural connection; as, *Titўre dum redeo,* (brevis est via,) *pasce capellas.* Virg.

Remark. To the above may be added *archaism* and *Hellenism,* which belong both to the figures of etymology and to those of syntax.

(1.) *Archaism* is the use of ancient forms or constructions; as, *aulāi,*

for *aulæ*; *senāti*, for *senātûs*; *fuat*, for *sit*; *prohibesso*, for *prohibuĕro*; *impetrassĕre*, for *impetratūrum esse*; *furĭer*, for *furi*; *nenu*, for *non*; *endo*, for *in*;——*Opĕram abutĭtur*, for *opĕrâ*. Ter. *Quid tibi hanc curatio est rem?* Plaut.

(2.) *Hellenism* is the use of Greek forms or constructions; as, *Helĕne*, for *Helĕna*; *Antĭphon*, for *Antĭpho*; *aurās* (gen.), for *auræ*; *Pallădos*, *Pallădu*, for *Pallădis*, *Pallădem*; *Troăsin*, *Troădas*, for *Troadĭbus*, *Troădes*;——*Abstinēto irārum*. Hor. *Tempus desistĕre pugnæ*. Virg.

§ 324. To the grammatical figures may not improperly be subjoined certain others, which are often referred to in philological works, and which are called

TROPES AND FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

A rhetorical *figure* is a mode of expression different from the direct and simple way of expressing the same sense. The turning of a *word* from its original and customary meaning, is called a *trope*.

1. A *metaphor* is the transferring of a word from the object to which it properly belongs, and applying it to another, to which that object has some analogy; as, Ridet *ager*, The field smiles. Virg. *Ætas* aurea, The golden age. Ovid.

Catachrēsis is a bold or harsh metaphor; as, Vir *gregis ipse caper*. Virg. *Eurus per Sicŭlas* equitāvit *undas*. Hor.

2. *Metonymy* is substituting the name of an object for that of another to which it has a certain relation; as the cause for the effect, the container for what is contained, the property for the substance, the sign for the thing signified, and their contraries; the parts of the body for certain affections, &c.; as, *Amor duri* Martis, i. e. *belli*. Virg. Pallĭda *mors*. Hor. *Hausit* patĕram, i. e. *vinum*. Virg. Vina *corōnant*, i. e. *patĕram*. Id. *Necte ternos* colŏres, i. e. *tria fila diversi colŏris*. Id. *Cedant* arma togæ, i. e *bellum paci*. Cic. Sæcŭla *mitescent*, i. e. *homĭnes in sæcŭlis*. Virg. *Vivat Pacuvius vel* Nestŏra totum. Juv.

3. *Synecdŏche* is putting a genus for a species, a whole for a part, a singular for a plural, and their contraries; also the material for the thing made of it; as, *Mortāles*, for *homĭnes*. Virg. Fontem *ferēbant*. Id. *Tectum*, for *domus*. Id. *Armāto* millĭte *complent*, for *armātis militĭbus*. Id. *Ferrum*, for *gladius*.

4. *Irony* is the intentional use of words which express a sense contrary to that which the writer or speaker means to convey; as, *Salve*, bone *vir*, *curâsti* probè. Ter. Egregiam *verò* laudem, *et* spolia ampla *refertis*, *tuque*, *puerque tuus*. Virg.

5. *Hyperbŏle* is the magnifying or diminishing of a thing beyond the truth; as, *Ipse arduus*, *altăque pulsat sidĕra*. Virg. *Ocior Euro*. Id.

6. *Metalepsis* is the including of several tropes in one word; as, *Post aliquot aristas*. Virg. Here *aristas* is put for *messes*, this for *æstātes*, and this for *annos*.

7. *Allegory* is a consistent series of metaphors, designed to illustrate one subject by another; as, *Claudĭte jam rivos*, *pŭeri*: *sat prata bibĕrunt*. Virg. *O navis*, *referent in mare te novi fluctus*. Hor.

An obscure allegory or riddle is called an *ænigma*.

8. *Antonomasia* is using a proper noun for a common one, and the contrary; as, Irus *et est subĭtò*, *qui modò* Crœsus *erat*, for *pauper* and *dives* Ovid. So, by periphrasis, *potor Rhodăni*, for *Gallus*. Hor.

9. *Litŏtes* is a mode of expressing something by denying the contrary; as, *Non laudo*, I blame. Ter. *Non innoxia verba.* Virg.

10. *Antiphrăsis* is using a word in a sense opposite to its proper meaning; as, *Auri* sacra *fames.* Virg.

11. *Euphemism* is the use of softened language to express what is offensive or distressing; as, *Si quid accidisset Cæsări*, i. e. *si mortuus esset.* Vell.

12. *Antanaclăsis* is the use of the same word in different senses; as, *Quis neget Æneæ natum de stirpe Nerōnem?* Sustŭlit *hic matrem*, sustŭlit *ille patrem.* Epigr. Amări *jucundum est, si curētur ne quid insit* amări. Cic.

13. *Anaphŏra*, or *epanaphŏra*, is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses; as, Nihil*ne te nocturnum præsidium palatii*, nihil *urbis vigiliæ, nihil timor popŭli*, &c. Cic. Te, *dulcis conjux*, te, *solo in litŏre secum*, te, *veniente die*, te, *decedente, canēbat.* Virg.

14. *Epistrŏphe* is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses; as, *Pœnos popŭlus Romānus justitiâ* vicit, *armis* vicit, *liberalitāte* vicit. Cic.

15. *Symplŏce* is the repetition of a word at the beginning, and of another at the end, of successive clauses; as, Quis *legem tulit?* Rullus: Quis *majōrem popŭli partem suffragiis privāvit?* Rullus: Quis *comitiis præfuit? Idem* Rullus. Cic.

16. *Epanalepsis* is a repetition of the same word or sentence after a parenthesis. Virg. Geor. II. 4—7.

17. *Anadiplōsis* is the use of the same word at the end of one clause, and the beginning of another; as, *Hic tamen* vivit: Vivit? *imo verò, etiam in senātum venit.* Cic. This is sometimes called *epanastrŏphe.*

18. *Epanadiplōsis* is the use of the same word both at the beginning and end of a sentence; as, Crescit *amor nummi, quantum ipsa pecunia* crescit. Juv.

19. *Epanădos* is the repetition of the same words in an inverted order; as, *Crudēlis mater magis, an puer improbus ille? Improbus ille puer, crudēlis tu quoque, mater.* Virg.

20. *Epizeuxis* is a repetition of the same word for the sake of emphasis; as, Excitāte, excitāte *eum ab infĕris.* Cic. *Ah* Corўdon, Corўdon, *quæ te dementia cepit?* Virg. *Ibĭmus, ibĭmus.* Hor.

21. *Climax* is when each successive clause of a sentence begins with the conclusion of the preceding, the sense being thus *gradually* amplified; as, *Quæ relĭqua spes manet libertātis, si illis et quod libet*, licet; *et quod licet*, possunt; *et quod possunt*, audent; *et quod audent, vobis* molestum non est? Cic.

22. *Incrementum* is an amplification without a strict climax; as, *Facĭnus est, vincīri civem Romānum; scelus, verberāri; prope parricidium, necāri; quid dicam in crucem tolli?* Cic. When the sense is gradually heightened, it is called *anabăsis*, and when it falls or decreases, *catabăsis.*

23. *Polyptōton* is a repetition of the same word in different cases, genders, numbers, &c.; as, *Jam clypeus clypeis, umbōne repellĭtur umbo; ense minax ensis, pede pes, et cuspĭde cuspis.* Stat.

24. *Paregmĕnon* is the use of several words of the same origin, in one sentence; as, *Abesse non potest, quin ejusdem homĭnis sit, qui* improbos probet, probos improbāre. Cic.

25. *Paronomasia* is the use of words which resemble each other in sound; as, *Amor et* melle *et* felle *est fœcundissĭmus.* Plaut. *Civem bonārum* artium, *bonārum* partium. Cic. Amantes *sunt* amentes. Ter. This figure is sometimes called *agnominatio.*

26. *Homœoprophĕron*, or *alliteration*, is when several words beginning with the same letter occur in a sentence; as, *O Tite, tute Tati, tibi tanta, tyranne, tulisti.* Enn. *Neu patriæ valĭdas in viscĕra vertĭte vires.* Virg.

27. *Antithĕsis* is the placing of different or opposite words or sentiments in contrast; as, *Hujus oratiōnis difficilius est* exĭtum *quàm* principium *invenīre.* Cic. Cæsar beneficiis *ac* munificentiâ *magnus habebātur;* integritāte vitæ Cato. Sall.

28. *Oxymŏron* unites words of contrary significations, thus producing a seeming contradiction; as, *Concordia discors.* Hor. *Cùm tacent, clamant.* Cic.

29. *Synonymia* is the use of different words or expressions having the same import; as, *Non feram, non patiar, non sinam.* Cic. *Promitto, recipio, spondeo.* Id.

30. *Parabŏ'la*, or *simĭle*, is the comparison of one thing with another; as, *Repentè te, tanquam serpens e latibŭlis, ocŭlis eminentĭbus, inflāto collo, tumĭdis cervicĭbus, intulisti.* Cic.

31. *Erotēsis* is an earnest question, and often implies a strong affirmation of the contrary; as, *Credĭtis avectos hostes?* Virg. *Heu! quæ me æquŏra possunt accipĕre?* Id.

32. *Epanorthōsis* is the recalling of a word, in order to place a stronger or more significant one in its stead; as, *Filium unĭcum adolescentŭlum* habeo: *ah! quid dixi? me* habēre? *Imò* habui. Ter.

33. *Aposiopēsis* is leaving a sentence unfinished in consequence of some emotion of the mind; as, *Quos ego—sed præstat motos componĕre fluctus.* Virg.

34. *Prosopopœia*, or *personification*, represents inanimate things as acting or speaking, and persons dead or absent as alive and present; as, *Quæ (patria) tecum Catilĭna sic agit.* Cic. *Virtus sumit aut ponit secūres.* Hor.

35. *Apostrŏphe* is a turning off from the regular course of the subject, to address some person or thing; as, *Vi potĭtur: quid non mortalia pectŏra cogis, auri sacra* fames! Virg.

§ 325. To the figures of rhetoric may be subjoined the following terms, used to designate *defects* or *blemishes* in style:—

1. *Barbarism* is either the use of a foreign word, or a violation of the rules of orthography, etymology, or prosody; as, *rigorōsus*, for *rigĭdus* or *severus; dommĭnus*, for *domĭnus; davi*, for *dedi; alterĭus*, for *alterĭus.*

2. *Solecism* is a violation of the rules of syntax; as, *Venus pulcher; vos invidēmus.*

3. *Neoterism* is the use of words or phrases introduced by authors living subsequently to the best ages of Latinity; as, *murdrum*, a murder; *constabularius*, a constable.

4. *Tautology* is a repetition of the same meaning in different words; as, *Jam vos* aciem, *et* prœlia, *et* hostem *poscĭtis.* Sil.

5. *Amphibolia* is the use of equivocal words or constructions; as, *Gallus*, a Gaul, or a cock. *Aio* te, *Æacĭda*, Romānos *vincĕre posse.* Quinct.

6. *Idiotism* is a construction peculiar to one or more languages: thus, the ablative after comparatives is a Latinism. When a peculiarity of one language is imitated in another, this is also called *idiotism.* Thus, *Mitte mihi verbum*, instead of *Fac me certiōrem*, is an Anglicism.

ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING.

I. OF TIME.

§ 326. 1. The calendar of the Romans agreed with our own in the number of months, and of the days in each; but, instead of reckoning in an uninterrupted series from the first to the last day of a month, they had three points from which their days were counted—the *calends*, the *nones*, and the *ides*. The calends were always the first day of the month. The nones were the fifth, and the ides the thirteenth; except in March, May, July, and October, in which the nones occurred on the seventh day, and the ides on the fifteenth.

2. They always counted forwards, from the day whose date was to be determined to the next calends, nones, or ides, and designated the day by its distance from such point. After the first day of the month, therefore, they began to reckon so many days before the nones; after the nones, so many days before the ides; after the ides, so many before the calends, of the next month.

Thus, the second of January was denoted by *quarto nonas Januarias*, or *Januarii*, sc. *die ante;* the third, *tertio nonas;* the fourth, *pridie nonas;* and the fifth, *nonis*. The sixth was denoted by *octāvo idus;* the seventh, *septīmo idus;* and so on to the thirteenth, on which the ides fell. The fourteenth was denoted by *undevigesimo calendas Februarias*, or *Februarii;* and so on to the end of the month.

3. The day preceding the calends, nones, and ides, was termed *pridie calendas*, &c., sc. *ante:* in designating the other days, both the day of the calends, &c., and that whose date was to be determined, were reckoned; hence the second day before the calends, &c., was called *tertio*, the third *quarto*, &c.

4. To reduce the Roman calendar to our own, therefore, it is necessary to take one from the number denoting the day, and to subtract the remainder from the number of the day on which the nones or ides fell.

Thus, to determine the day equivalent to *IV. nonas Januarias*, we take 1 from 4, and subtract the remainder, 3, from 5, the day on which the nones fell: this gives 2, or the second of January, for the day in question. So *VI. idus Aprilis:* the ides of April falling upon the 13th, we take 5 from 13, which leaves 8: the expression, therefore, denotes the 8th of April.

In reckoning the days before the calends, as they are not the last day of the current month, but the first of the following, it is necessary to add one to the number of days in the month.

Thus, *XV. cal. Quintiles* is (30+1) 31—14=17, or the 17th of June

To reduce our calendar to the Roman, the same method is to be pursued.

Thus, the 22d of December is (31+1) 32—21=11, i. e. *XI. cal. Jan.*

5. In leap-year, both the 24th and 25th of February were denoted by *sexto calendas Martias* or *Martii*. The latter of these was called *dies bissextus*, and the year itself *annus bissextus*.

The day after the calends, &c., was sometimes called *postridie calendas*, &c.

The names of the months are properly adjectives, though often used as nouns, *mensis* being understood. Before the times of the emperors, July was called *Quintilis*, and August, *Sextilis*. The names *Julius* and *Augustus* were given in honor of the Cæsars.

6. The correspondence of our calendar with that of the Romans is exhibited in the following

TABLE.

Days of our months.	Mar. Mai. Jul. Oct.	Jan. Aug. Dec.	Apr. Jun. Sept. Nov.	Febr.
1	Calendæ.	Calendæ.	Calendæ.	Calendæ.
2	VI. nonas.	IV. nonas.	IV. nonas.	IV. nonas.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
5	III. "	Nonæ.	Nonæ.	Nonæ.
6	Pridie "	VIII. idus.	VIII. idus.	VIII. idus.
7	Nonæ.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. idus.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
13	III. "	Idus.	Idus.	Idus.
14	Pridie "	XIX. cal.	XVIII. cal.	XVI. cal.
15	Idus.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. cal.	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Pridie " Mar.
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	
30	III. "	III. "	Pridie "	
31	Pridie "	Pridie "		

7. The Latins not only said *tertio, pridie,* &c., *calendas,* &c., but also *ante diem tertium,* &c., *calendas,* &c.; and the latter form in Cicero and Livy is far more common than the former, and is usually written thus, *a. d. III. cal.,* &c.

The expression *ante diem* was used as an indeclinable noun, and is joined with *in* and *ex;* as,

Consul Latinas ferias in ante diem *tertium idus Sextilis edixit,* The consul appointed the Latin festival for the third day before the ides of August. Liv. *Supplicatio indicta est* ex ante diem *quintum idus Octobres.* Id. So, Ad pridie *nonas Maias.* Cic.

II. OF MONEY.

§ 327. 1. The Romans reckoned their copper money by *asses,* their silver money by *sestertii,* and their gold money by Attic *talents.*

2. The *as* was originally a pound of copper, but its weight was gradually diminished in succeeding ages, until, in the later days of the republic, it amounted to only $\frac{1}{24}$ of a pound. It is divided into twelve parts, called *unciæ.*

The names of the several parts are, *uncia,* $\frac{1}{12}$; *sextans,* $\frac{2}{12}$; *quadrans,* $\frac{3}{12}$; *triens,* $\frac{4}{12}$; *quincunx,* $\frac{5}{12}$; *semis,* or *semissis,* $\frac{6}{12}$; *septunx,* $\frac{7}{12}$; *bes,* or *bessis,* $\frac{8}{12}$; *dodrans,* $\frac{9}{12}$; *dextans,* $\frac{10}{12}$; *deunx,* $\frac{11}{12}$.

3. The *denarius* was a silver coin, originally equal in value to ten *asses,* whence its name; but, after the weight of the *as* was reduced, the *denarius* was equal to sixteen *asses.* Its value is usually estimated at about 14½ cents of our money.

The *sestertius,* or sesterce, was one fourth of the *denarius,* or two *asses* and a half (*semistertius*), and was hence denoted by IIS, or HS. When the *denarius* was worth 16 *asses,* the *sestertius* was worth 4. The *sestertius* was called emphatically *nummus,* as in it all large sums were reckoned after the coining of silver money.

Half a *denarius* was a *quinarius;* one tenth of a *denarius,* a *libella.*

The *aureus* (a gold coin), in the time of the emperors, was equal to 25 *denarii,* or 100 sesterces.

The talent is variously estimated, from $860 to $1020.

4. In reckoning money, the Romans called any sum under 2000 sesterces so many *sestertii;* as, *decem sestertii,* ten sesterces; *centum sestertii,* a hundred sesterces.

5. Sums from 2000 sesterces (inclusive) to 1,000,000, they denoted either by *mille, millia,* with *sestertiûm* (gen. plur.), or by the plural of the neuter noun *sestertium,* which itself signified *a thousand* sesterces. Thus they said *quadraginta millia*

sestertiûm, or *quadraginta sestertia*, to denote 40,000 sesterces. With the genitive *sestertiûm*, *millia* was sometimes omitted; as, *sestertiûm centum*, sc. *millia*, 100,000 sesterces.

6. To denote a million, or more, they used a combination; thus, *decies centēna millia sestertiûm*, 1,000,000 sesterces. The words *centēna millia*, however, were generally omitted; thus, *decies sestertiûm*, and sometimes merely *decies*. See § 118, 5. So, *centies*, 10 millions; *millies*, 100 millions.

Some suppose that *sestertium*, when thus joined with the numeral adverbs, is always the neuter noun in the nominative or accusative singular. The genitive and ablative of that noun are thus used; as, *Decies sestertii dote*, With a dowry of 1,000,000 sesterces. Tac. *Quinquagies sestertio*, 5,000,000 sesterces. Id. But this usage does not occur in Cicero.

The different combinations were thus distinguished:—HS. X. denoted *decem sestertii*; HS. $\overline{X}$, *decem sestertia*; $\overline{\text{HS. X}}$, *decies sestertiûm*. But this distinction was not always observed.

ABBREVIATIONS.

§ 328. The following are the most common abbreviations of Latin words:—

A., *Aulus*.
C., *Caius*.
Cn., *Cneus*.
D., *Decĭmus*.
L., *Lucius*.
M., *Marcus*.
M. T. C., *Marcus Tullĭus Cicĕro*.
M'., *Manius*.
Mam., *Mamercus*.
N., *Numerius*.
P., *Publius*.
Q., *or* Qu., *Quintus*.
Ser., *Servius*.
S., *or* Sex., *Sextus*.
Sp., *Spurius*.
T., *Titus*.
Ti., *or* Tib., *Tiberius*.

A. d., *ante diem*.
A. U. C., *anno urbis conditæ*.
Cal., *or* kal., *calendæ*.
Cos., *Consul*.
Coss., *Consŭles*.
D., *Divus*.
D. D., *dono dedit*.
D. D. D., *dat, dicat, dedĭcat*, or *dono dicat, dedĭcat*.
Des., *designātus*.
D. M., *dĭis manĭbus*.
Eq. Rom., *eques Romānus*.
F., *Filius*; as, M. F., *Marci filius*.
Ictus, *jurisconsultus*.
Id., *idus*.
Imp., *imperātor*.
J. O. M., *Jovi, optĭmo maxĭmo*.
N., *nepos*.
Non., *nonæ*.
P. C., *patres conscripti*.
Pl., *plebis*.
Pop., *popŭlus*.
P. R., *popŭlus Romānus*.
Pont. Max., *pontĭfex maxĭmus*.
Pr., *prætor*.
Proc., *proconsul*.
Resp., *respublica*.
S., *salūtem, sacrum*, or *senātus*.
S. D. P., *salūtem dicit plurĭmam*.
S. P. Q. R., *Senātus populusque Romānus*.
S. C., *senātus consultum*.
Tr., *tribūnus*.

To these may be added terms of reference; as, *c.*, *caput*, chapter; *cf.*, *confer*, compare; *l. c.*, *loco citāto*; *l. l.*, *loco laudāto*, in the place quoted; *v.*, *versus*, verse.

DIFFERENT AGES OF ROMAN LITERATURE.

§ 329. 1. Of the Roman literature for the first five centuries after the foundation of the city, hardly a vestige remains. The writers of the succeeding centuries have been arranged in four ages, in reference to the purity of the language in the period in which they flourished. These are called the *golden*, *silver*, *brazen*, and *iron* ages.

2. The golden age is generally reckoned from about the year 514 of the city to the death of Augustus, A. D. 14, a period of a little more than 250 years. The writers of the early part of this age are valued rather on account of their antiquity, than as models of style. It was not till the age of Cicero, that Roman literature reached its highest elevation. The era comprehending the generation immediately preceding, and that immediately succeeding, that of Cicero, as well as his own, is the period in which the most distinguished writers of Rome flourished; and their works are the standard of purity in the Latin language.

3. The silver age extended from the death of Augustus to the death of Trajan, A. D. 118, a period of 104 years. The writers of this age were inferior to those who had preceded them; yet several of them are worthy of commendation.

4. The brazen age comprised the interval from the death of Trajan to the time when Rome was taken by the Goths, A. D. 410. From the latter epoch commenced the iron age, during which the Latin language was much adulterated with foreign words, and its style and spirit essentially injured.

LATIN WRITERS IN THE DIFFERENT AGES.

(From the Lexicon of Facciolatus.)

WRITERS OF THE GOLDEN AGE.

Livius Andronĭcus.
Lævius.
C. Nævius.
Statius Cæcilius.
Q. Ennius.
M. Pacuvius.
L. Accius.
C. Lucilius.
Sex. Turpilius.
L. Afranius.
L. Cornelius Sisenna.
P. Nigidius Figŭlus.
C. Decius Laberius.
M. Verrius Flaccus.
Varro Attacĭnus.
Titinius.
L. Pomponius.
A. Serēnus.
C. Sempronius Asellio.
C. Sempronius Gracchus.
Santra.
Cn. Matius.
Q. Novius.
Atta.
Cassius Hemĭna.
Fenestella.
Claud. Quadrigarius.
Cœlius, *or* Cælius.
Fabius Pictor.
Cn. Gellius.
L. Piso.
Valerius Antias.
Tiro Tullius, and others.

Of the works of the preceding writers, only a few fragments remain.

M. Porcius Cato.
M. Accius Plautus.
M. Terentius Afer.
T. Lucretius Carus.
C. Valerius Catullus.
P. Syrus.
C. Julius Cæsar.
Cornelius Nepos.
M. Tullius Cicĕro.
Sex. Aurelius Propertius.
C. Sallustius Crispus.
M. Terentius Varro.
Albius Tibullus.
P. Virgilius Maro.
T. Livius.
M. Manilius.
M. Vitruvius.
P. Ovidius Naso.
Q. Horatius Flaccus.
C. Pedo Albinovānus.
Gratius Faliscus.
Phædrus.
C. Cornificius.
A. Hirtius, *or* Oppius.
P. Cornelius Sevērus.

To these may be added the following names of lawyers, whose opinions are found in the digests:—

Q. Mutius Scævŏla. M. Antistius Labeo. Masurius Sabīnus.
Alfenus Varus.

Of the writers of the golden age, the most distinguished are Terence, Catullus, Cæsar, Nepos, Cicero, Virgil, Horace, Ovid, T. Livy, and Sallust.

WRITERS OF THE SILVER AGE.

A. Cornelius Celsus.
P. Velleius Patercŭlus.
L. Junius Moderātus Columella.
Pomponius Mela.
A. Persius Flaccus.
Q. Asconius Pedianus.
M. Annæus Senĕca.
L. Annæus Senĕca.
M. Annæus Lucānus.
T. Petronius Arbĭter.
C. Plinius Secundus.
C. Silius Italĭcus.
C. Valerius Flaccus.
C. Julius Solinus.
D. Junius Juvenālis.
P. Papinius Statius.
M. Valerius Martiālis.
M. Fabius Quintiliānus.
Sex. Julius Frontīnus.
C. Cornelius Tacĭtus.
C. Plinius Cæcilius Secundus.
L. Annæus Florus.
C. Suetonius Tranquillus.

The age to which the following writers should be assigned is somewhat uncertain:—

Q. Curtius Rufus. Scribonius Largus. L. Fenestella.
Valer. Probus. Sulpitia. Atteius Capĭto.

Of the writers of the silver age, the most distinguished are Celsus, Velleius, Columella, the Senecas, the Plinies, Juvenal, Quintilian, Tacitus, Suetonius, and Curtius.

WRITERS OF THE BRAZEN AGE.

A. Gellius.
L. Apuleius.
Q. Septimius Tertullianus.
Q. Serēnus Sammonĭcus.
Censorīnus.
Thascius Cæcilius Cyprianus.
T. Julius Calpurnius.
M. Aurelius Nemesianus.
Ælius Spartiānus.
Julius Capitolinus.
Ælius Lampridius.
Vulcatius Gallicānus.
Trebellius Pollio.
Flavius Vopiscus.
Cœlius Aureliānus.
Flavius Eutropius.
Rhemnius Fannius.
Arnobius Afer.
L. Cœlius Lactantius.
Ælius Donātus.
C. Vettius Juvencus.
Julius Firmĭcus.
Fab. Marius Victorīnus.
Sex. Rufus, *or* Rufus Festus.
Ammiānus Marcellīnus.
Vegetius Renātus.
Aurel. Theodōrus Macrobius.
Q. Aurelius Symmăchus.
D. Magnus Ausonius.
Paulīnus Nolānus.
Sex. Aurelius Victor.
Aurel. Prudentius Clemens.
Cl. Claudiānus.
Marcellus Empirĭcus.
Falconia Proba.

Of an Age not entirely certain.

Valerius Maximus.
Justinus.
Terentianus Maurus.
Minutius Felix.
Sosipater Charisius.
Fl. Avienus, *or* Avianus.

The opinions of the following lawyers are found in the digests:—

Licinius Proculus.
Neratius Priscus.
P. Juventius Celsus.
Priscus Jabolenus.
Domitius Ulpianus.
Herennius Modestinus.
Salvius Julianus.
Caius.
Callistratus.
Æmilius Papinianus.
Julius Paulus.
Sex. Pomponius.
Venuleius Saturninus.
Ælius Marcianus.
Ælius Gallus, and others.

Of the writers of the brazen age, Justin, Terentianus, Victor, Lactantius, and Claudian, are most distinguished.

The age to which the following writers belong is uncertain. The style of some of them would entitle them to be ranked with the writers of the preceding ages, while that of others would place them even below those of the iron age.

Palladius Rutilius Taurus Æmilianus.
Æmilius Macer.
Messala Corvinus.
Vibius Sequester.
Julius Obsequens.
L. Ampelius.
Apicius Cœlius.
Sex. Pompeius Festus.
Probus (auctor Notarum.)
Fulgentius Planciades.
Hyginus.
C. Cæsar Germanicus.
P. Victor.
P. Vegetius.
Auctores Priapeiorum.
Catalecta Virgilii et Ovidii.
Auctor orationis Sallustii in Cic. et Ciceronis in Sall.; item illius *Antequam iret in exsilium.*
Auctor Epistolæ ad Octavium.
Auctor Panegyrici ad Pisonem.
Declamationes quæ tribuuntur Quintiliano, Porcio Latroni, Calpurnio Flacco.
Interpres Daretis Phrygii, et Dictys Cretensis.
Scholiastæ Veteres.
Grammatici Antiqui.
Rhetores Antiqui.
Medici Antiqui.
Catalecta Petroniana.
Pervigilium Veneris.
Poematia et Epigrammata vetera a Pithœo collecta.
Monumentum Ancyranum.
Fasti Consulares.
Inscriptiones Veteres.

WRITERS OF THE IRON AGE.

Cl. Rutilius Numatianus.
Servius Honoratus.
D. Hieronymus.
D. Augustinus.
Sulpicius Severus.
Paulus Orosius.
Cœlius Sedulius.
Codex Theodosianus.
Martianus Capella.
Claudianus Mamertus.
Sidonius Apollinaris.
Latinus Pacatus.
Claudius Mamertinus, et alii, quorum sunt Panegyrici vetères.
Alcimus Avitus.
Manl. Severinus Boëthius.
Priscianus.
Nonius Marcellus.
Justiniani Institutiones et Codex.
Arator.
M. Aurelius Cassiodorus.
Fl. Cresconius Corippus.
Venantius Fortunatus.
Isidorus Hispalensis.
Anonymus Ravennas.
Aldhelmus *or* Althelmus.
Paulus Diaconus

INDEX.

The figures in the following Index designate the *sections*, and their divisions: R. stands for *remark*, N. for *note*, and E. for *exception*.

A, sound of, 7 and 8—nouns in, of 3d dec., gender of, 66; genitive of, 68—increment in, 3d dec., 287, 3; plural, 288; of verbs, 290—final, quantity of, 294.

A, ab, abs, how used, 195, R. 2.

Abbreviations, 328.

Abdico, construction of, 251, R. 2.

Ablative, 37—sing., 3d dec., 82; of adjectives, 3d dec., 113 and 114—plur., 1st dec., 43; 3d dec., 84; 4th dec., 89, 5—used adverbially, 192, I., II.—of character, quality, &c., 211, R. 6—after prepositions, 241—of situation, &c., after *sum*, 245, III.—after participles denoting origin, 246—of cause, &c., 247—of agent, 248—of a noun, *with* which, &c., 249; in accordance with which, 249, II.—of accompaniment, 249, III.—denoting *in what respect*, 250—after adjectives of plenty or want, 250—after verbs of abounding, &c., 250—with *facio* and *sum*, 250, R. 3—after verbs of depriving, &c., 251—of price, 252—of time, 253—of place, where, 254; whence, 255—after comparatives, 256—after *alius*, 256, R. 14—of degree of difference, 256, R. 16—absolute, 257; do., without a participle, 257, R. 7; do., with a clause instead of a noun, 257, R. 8.

Abounding and wanting, verbs of, with abl., 250—with gen., 220, (3.)

Abstract nouns, 26—formation of, 101 and 102.

Abus, dat. and abl. plur. in, 43.

Ac si with subj., 263. 2.

Acatalectic verse, 304.

Accents, 5.

Accentuation, 14.

Accompaniment, abl. of, 249, III.

Accordance, abl. of, 249, II.

Accusative, 37—sing., 3d dec., 79; of Greek nouns, 80—plur., 3d dec., 85—neuter, used adverbially, 192, II., 4, and 205, R. 10—after verbs, 229–234—omitted, 229, R. 4—infinitive instead of, 229, R. 5—of a person, after *miseret*, &c., 229, R. 6; after *juvat*, &c., 229, R. 7—after neuter verbs, 232—after compound verbs, 233—after verbal nouns, 233, N.—of part affected, 234, II.—after prepositions, 235—of time and space, 236—of place, 237—after adverbs and interjections, 238—as subject, 239.

Accusatives, two, after what verbs, 230—latter of, after passive voice, 234.

Accusing and acquitting, verbs of, with gen., 217.

Acephalous verse, 304.

Active voice, 141.

——— verb, 141—object of, 229—two cases after, 229, R. 1—omitted, 229, R. 3.

Adjectives, 104–131—classes of, 104—declension of, 105—gen. sing. of, 112, 114—abl. sing. of, 113, 114—nom. and gen. plur. of, 113, 114—irregular, 115, 116—derivation of, 128—verbal, 129—participial, 130—adverbial, 130—prepositional, 130—composition of, 131—how modified, 201, III., R. 2—agreement of, 205—either modifiers or predicates, 205, N. 1—with two or more nouns, 205, R. 2—with a collective noun, 205, R. 3—sing. with a plur. noun, 205, R. 4—dat. of, for acc., 205, R. 6—without a noun, 205, R. 7—with infinitives, clauses, &c., 205, R. 8—with gen. instead of their own case, 205, R. 9, and 212, R. 3—used partitively, gender of, 205, R. 12—instead of adverbs, 205, R. 15—*primus, medi-*

us, &c., signification of, 205, R. 17—agreeing with relative instead of antecedent, 206, (7,)—gen. after, 213—gen. or abl. after, 213, R. 5—dat. after, 222—gen. or dat. after, 213, R. 6, and 222, R. 2—of plenty or want, with abl., 250—followed by infin., 270, R. 1—place of, 279, 7.
Adjective pronouns, 134–139—classes of, 134—agreement of, 205.
Admonishing, verbs of, with gen., 218.
Adorning and arraying, verbs of, with abl., 249.
Adonic verse, 312.
Adverbial adjectives, 130.
Adverbs, 190–194—numeral, 119—of place, mutual relation of, 191, R. 1—derivation of, 192—composition of, 193—comparison of, 194—how modified, 201, III. R. 4—used as adjectives, 205, R. 11—with gen., 212, R. 4—with dat., 228, (1,)—with acc., 238—use of, 277—two negatives, force of, 277, R. 3–5—equivalent to phrases, 277, R. 8—of likeness, as connectives, 278, R. 1—place of, 279, 15.
Ænigma, 324, 7.
Affection of the mind, verbs denoting, with gen., 220.
Agent, dative of, 225, II., III.—when wanting, 225, III., R. 1—abl. of, 248.
Ages of Roman literature, 329.
Agnominatio, 324, 25.
Agreement, defined, 203, 6—of adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, 205—of relatives, 206.
Ăl, genitive in, 43—quantity of the *a* in, 283, E. 3.
Ăio, 183, 4—its place in a sentence, 279, 6.
Āl, nouns in, abl. of, 82—increment of, 287, E. (A.) 1.
Alcaic—greater, 318, III.—lesser, 318, IV.
Alcmanian dactylic tetrameter, 312.
Ālis, āre, ālis, adj. in, 128, 2.
Ălĭquis, declined, 138—how used, 207, R. 30.
Ălius, how declined, 107—how used, 207, R. 32—with abl., 256, R. 14.
Allegory, 324, 7.
Alliteration, 324, 26.
Alter, how declined, 107—how used, 207, R. 32, and 212, R. 2, N. 1.
Ambo, how declined, 118.
Amphibolia, 325, 5.
Amplificatives, nouns, 100, 4—adjectives, 104, and 128, 4.
Anabăsis, 324, 22.
Anacolŭthon, 323, 3, (5.)
Anacreontic iambic dimeter, 314, IX.
Anadiplōsis, 324, 17.
Analysis of sentences, 281.
Anapæstic, metre, 313, 303—monometer, 313—dimeter, 313.
Anaphŏra, 324, 13.
Anastrŏphe, 323, 4, (1.)
Ante diem cal., &c., 326, 7.
Antanaclăsis, 324, 12.
Antecedent, 136—understood, 206, (3,) (4,)—its place supplied by a demonstrative, 206, (3,)—in the case of the relative, 206, (6.)
Antepenult, 13—quantity of, 292.
Antĕquam, by what mood followed, 263, 3.
Antimeria, 323, 3, (1.)
Antiphrăsis, 324, 10.
Antiptōsis, 323, 3, (3.)
Antithĕsis, 322, and 324, 27.
Antonomasia, 324, 8.
Apăge, 183, 10.
Aphærĕsis, 322.
Apocŏpe, 322.
Apodōsis, 261.
Aposiopēsis, 324, 33.
Apostrŏphe, 324, 35.
Appendix, 322–329.
Apposition, 204—to two or more nouns, 204, R. 5—to nouns connected by *cum*, 204, R. 5—to proper names of different genders, 204, R. 5—gen. instead of, 204, R. 6—abl. with gen., 204, R. 7—of parts with a whole, 204, R. 10, and 212, R. 2, N. 5—nouns in, place of, 279, 9.
Aptotes, 94.
Ăr, nouns in, gender of, 66, 67—gen. of, 70, 71—abl. of, 82—increment of, 287, E. (A.) 1.
Archaism, 323, R. (1.)
Archilochian, penthemimĕris, 312—iambic trimĕter, 314, V.—do. dimĕter, 314, VII.—heptamĕter, 318, IV.
Arium, nouns in, 100, 8.
Arius, adj. in, 128, 3.
Arrangement, of words, 279—of clauses, 280.
Arsis and thesis, 308.
As, genitives in, 43—nouns in, of 3d dec., gender of, 62; gen. of, 72—and *anus*, adj. in, 128, 6—final, quantity of, 300.
As, Roman, value of, 327—how divided, 327.
Asclepiadic tetramĕter, 316, III.
Asking, demanding, and teaching, verbs of, two acc. after, 231.
Assuesco, with abl., 245, II.—with dat., 245, II., R. 1.
Asyndĕton, 323, 1, (1.)
Attraction, 206, (6.)
Audeo, how conjugated, 142, R. 2.

Audiens, construction of, 222, R. 1.
Aureus, value of, 327, 3.
Ausim, 183, R. 1.
Authority, quantity determined by, 282, 4.
Av and *atu*, in the 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 164.
Ave, 183, 8.
Ax, adj. in, 129, 6—verbals in, with gen., 213, R. 1.

B.

B final, quantity of, 299.
Barbarism, 325, 1.
Belli, construction of, 221, R. 3.
Bilis, adjectives in, 129, 3—with dative, 222.
Bos, dat. and abl. plur. of, 84, and 286, 5.
Brachycatalectic verse, 304.
Brazen age, 329, 4.
Bucolic cæsura, 310, 6.
Bundus, adjectives in, 129, 1—with acc., 233, N.

C.

C, sound of, 10—nouns in, gender of, 66; gen. of, 70—final, quantity of, 299.
Cæsura, 309—different kinds of, 309—in hexaměter verse, 310, 3–6—in pentaměter verse, 311, 2—in iambic verse, 314, I. and X.—in trochaic verse, 315, I.—in choriambic verse, 316, III.
Cæsural pause, 309, 3.
Calends, 326.
Cardinal numbers, 117 and 118.
Cases of nouns, 36 and 37.
Catabăsis, 324, 22.
Catachrēsis, 324, 1.
Catalectic verse, 304.
Cause, abl. of, 247—acc. of with prepositions, 247, R. 1.
Ce and *cine*, enclitic, 134, R. 4.
Cedo, 183, 11.
Celo, with two accusatives, 231.
Ceu, with subjunctive, 263, 2.
Ch, sound of, 10.
Character or quality, gen. of, 211, R. 6.
Choliambus, 314, II.
Choriambic, metre, 316 and 303—pentaměter, 316, I.—tetraměter, 316, II.—triměter, 316, IV.—trimĕter catalectic, 316, V.—diměter, 316, VI.
Clam, government of, 235, (5.)
Clause, as a logical subject, 201, IV.
Clauses, 203—how connected, 203, 4, and 278, R. 3—arrangement of, 280.
Climax, 324, 21.
Cœpi, 183, 2.
Collective nouns, 26—number of their verbs, 209, R. 11.
Common, nouns, 26—gender, 30—syllable, 282, 2.
Comparative degree, 123—formation of, 124.
Comparatives, declined, 110—with gen., 212, R. 2—denoting one of two, 212, R. 2, N. 1—with abl. 256.
Comparison, of adjectives, 122–127—terminational, 124—of adverbs, 194—irregular, 125—defective, 126—by *magis* and *maxime*, 127.
Composition, of nouns, 103—of adj., 131—of verbs, 188—of adverbs, 193.
Compound, subject, 201—predicate, 202, II.—sentence, 203—metres, 318.
Compound words, how divided, 23—quantity of, 285.
Con, adjectives compounded with, with gen., 222—verbs do., with dat., 224.
Concretes, 101, 2.
Condemning and convicting, verbs of, with gen., 217.
Confido, with abl., 245, II.—with dat., 245, R. 1.
Confit, 183, 12, and 180, N.
Conjugation, 149—first, 155 and 156—second, 157—third, 158 and 159—fourth, 160—of deponent verbs, 161—periphrastic, 162—general rules of, 163—third, list of verbs in, 172—of irregular verbs, 178–182—of defective verbs, 183—of impersonal verbs, 184.
Conjugations, how characterized, 149—remarks on, 162.
Conjunctions, 198—classes of, 198—enclitic, 198, R. 2—copulative and disjunctive, their use, 278; may connect different moods, 278, R. 4 and 5; repeated, 278, R. 7.
Connection, of tenses, 258—of words by conjunctions, 278—of clauses by do., 278, R. 3.
Connecting vowel, 150, 5—omitted in 2d root, 163, 2.
Connectives, place of, 279, 3.
Consonants, sounds of, 10—12.
Consto, with abl., 245, II.
Contentus, with abl., 244.
Contracted syllables, quantity of, 283, III.
Contractions in 2d root of verbs, 162, 7.
Copula, 140.
Crasis, 306, (5,) and 322.
Crime, gen. of, after verbs, 217.
Cujas, how declined, 139.
Cujus, how declined, 137, R. 5.
Cum annexed to abl., 133, R. 4, and 136, R. 1.

Cùm, by what mood followed, 263, 5.
Cundus, adjectives in, 129, 1.
Cunque, its force, 191, R. 4.

D.

D final, quantity of, 299.
Dactylic, metre, 310 and 303—trimĕter, 312—dimĕter, 312.
Dactylico-iambic metre, 318, I.
Dactylico-trochaic, heptamĕter, 318, IV.—tetramĕter, 318, V.
Dative, 37—sing., 3d dec., 79—plural, 1st dec., 43; 3d dec., 84; 4th dec., 89, 5—used for gen., 211, R. 5—after adjectives, 222—different constructions instead of, 222, R. 4 and 6—after *idem*, 222, R. 7—after verbs, 223–227—after verbs compounded, with *ad*, *ante*, &c., 224; with *ab*, *de*, and *ex*, 224, R. 1 and 2; with *satis*, *benè*, and *malè*, 225—of the agent, 225, II. III.—of the possessor after *est*, 226—after particles, 228.
Datives, two, after *sum*, &c., 227.
Declension, of nouns, 38–40—rules of, 40—first, 41–45; exc. in, 43—second, 46–54; exc. in, 52—third, 55–86; exc. in, 68–85—fourth, 87–89; exc. in, 89; formed by contraction, 89—fifth, 90; exc. in, 90—of adjectives, first and second, 105–107; third, 108–111.
Declensions, tabular view of, 39.
Degrees of comparison, 123.
Defective, nouns, 94–96—adjectives, 115—verbs, 183.
Defit, 183, 13, and 180, N.
Dem, enclitic, 134, R. 6.
Demonstrative pronouns, 134—construction of, 207—in apposition with a clause, 207, R. 22, and 206, (13,)—used for reflexives, 208, (6,)—place of, 279, 7.
Denarius, its value, 327—divisions of, 327.
Denominatives, adj., 128—verbs, 187, I.
Dependence defined, 203, 8.
Dependent clauses, 203.
Deponent verbs, 142, R. 4—conjugated, 161—participles of, 162, 17—lists of, 1st conj., 166; 2d conj., 170; 3d conj., 174; 4th conj., 177—increment of, 289, 3.
Depriving, verbs of, with abl., 251.
Derivation, of nouns, 100—of adjectives, 128—of verbs, 187—of adverbs, 192.
Derivative words, quantity of, 284.
Desiderative verbs, 187, II. 3, and 176, N.—quantity of the *u* in, 284, R. 5.
Deus declined, 53.
Diærĕsis, 306, 2—mark of, 5.
Diastŏle, 307, 2.
Dic, imperative, 162, 4.
Dicŏlon, 319.
Dicto audiens, with dat., 222, R. 1.
Difference, degree of, how expressed, 256, R. 16.
Dignè, with abl., 244.
Dignor, with abl., 245.
Dignus, *indignus*, &c., with abl., 244—with gen., 244, R. 2—with relative and subjunctive, 264, 9.
Diminutive, nouns, 100, 3—adjectives, 104, and 128, 5—verbs, 187, II. 4.
Diphthongs, 4—sounds of, 9—quantity of, 283, II.
Diptotes, 94.
Distich, 304.
Distributive numbers, 119 and 120.
Distrŏphon, 319.
Do, increment of, 290, E., and 284, E. 4.
Domus, declined, 89—construction of, gen., 221, R. 3; acc., 237, R. 4; abl., 255, R. 1.
Donec, with subjunctive, 263, 4.
Double letters, 3.
Doubtful gender, 30.
Duc, imperative, 162, 4.
Dum, with subjunctive, 263, 4—and *dummŏdo* with do., 263, 2.
Duo declined, 118.
Dus, participle in, with dat., 225, III.—with acc., 234, R. 2—its signification, 274, 2, R. 8—used for a gerund, 275, II.

E.

E, sound of, 7 and 8—nouns in, of 3d dec., gender of, 66; gen. of, 68; abl. of, 82—adverbs in, 192, II.—and *ex*, how used, 195, R. 2—increment in, 3d dec., 287, 3; plur., 288; of verbs, 290—final, quantity of, 295.
Eapse, &c., 135, R. 3.
Eccum, *eccillum*, &c., 134, R. 2, and 238, 2.
Ecquis, how declined, 137, R. 3.
Ecthlipsis, 305, 2.
Ēdo and *ētas*, abstracts in, 101.
Edo (to eat) conjugated, 181.
Ego, declined, 133.
Ĕla, verbals in, 102, 3.
Elegiac verse, 311, 3.
Ellipsis, 323. See *Omission*.
Emphatic word, place of, in a sentence, 279, 2, and 16.
Enallăge, 323, 3.
Enclitics, in accentuation, 15—conjunctions, 196, R. 2.

Ennehemimĕris, 304, 5.
Ensis, adjectives in, 128, 6.
Eo, conjugated, 182—compounds of, 182, R. 3—with supine in *um*, 276, II., R. 2.
Epanadiplōsis, 324, 18.
Epanādos, 324, 19.
Epanalepsis, 324, 16.
Epanaphŏra, 324, 13.
Epanastrŏphe, 324, 17.
Epanorthōsis, 324, 32.
Epenthĕsis, 322.
Epistrŏphe, 324, 14.
Epizeuxis, 324, 20.
Epŭlor, with abl., 245, II.
Equality, how denoted, 122.
Er, nouns in, of 3d dec., gender of, 58 and 60; gen. of, 70 and 71—adjectives in, superlative of, 125—annexed to pres. infin. pass., 162, 6.
Erotēsis, 324, 31.
Es, nouns in, of 3d dec., increasing in gen., gender of, 58 and 61; gen. of, 73; not increasing in gen., gender of, 62; gen. of, 73—final, sound of, 8, R. 2; quantity of, 300.
Est, with dat. of a possessor, 216.
Etum, nouns in, 100, 7.
Etymology, 24–199.
Ev and *etu*, in 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 167.
Euphemism, 324, 11.
Eus, adjectives in, 128, 1—Greek proper names in, 283, N. 2.

F.

Fac, 162, 4—with subj. for imperat., 267, R. 3.
Facĭlè, with superlatives, &c., 277, R. 7.
Facio, (and compounds,) passive of, 180—with abl., 250, R. 3—with *ut* and the subj., 273, 1—with participle, 273, 1.
Fari, 183, 6.
Faxo and *faxim*, 162, 8, and 183, R. 1.
Feet, 302—isochronous, 302.
Feminine nouns, of 3d dec., 62; exc. in, 62–65.
Fer, imperative, 162, 4.
Fero, conjugated, 179.
Fido, how conjugated, 142, R. 2—with abl., 245, II.—with dat., 245, II. R. 1.
Figures, of prosody, 305–307—of orthography and etymology, 322—of syntax, 323—of rhetoric, 324.
Filling, verbs of, with abl., 249—with gen., 220, (3.)
Fio, conjugated, 180—quantity of its *i*, 283, R. 1.
Follow, in what sense used, 203, 9.
Forem, *fore*, 154, 3.
Frequentative verbs, 187, II.—quantity of the *i* in, 284, R. 6.
Fretus, with abl., 244.
Fruor, with abl., 245.
Fungor, with abl., 245.
Future tense, 145, III.
Future perfect tense, 145, VI.

G.

G, sound of, 10.
Galliambus, 314, X.
Gaudeo, how conjugated, 142, R. 2—with abl., 245, II.—with acc., 245, II., R. 1.
Gender, general rules of, 27–34—natural and grammatical, 27—masc. from signification, 28—fem. from do., 29—common and doubtful, 30—epicene, 33—neuter, 34—of 1st dec., 41; exc. in, 42—of 2d dec., 46; exc. in, 49—of 3d dec., 58, 62, and 66; exc. in, 59–67—of 4th dec., 87; exc. in, 88—of 5th dec., 90; exc. in, 90.
Genitive, 37—sing., 1st dec., exc. in, 43; of adjectives, 3d dec., 112—plur., 1st dec., contracted, 43; 2d dec., do., 53; 3d dec., 83; of adjectives, 3d dec., 113 and 114—after nouns, 211—what relations it denotes, 211, R. 1—subjective and objective, 211, R. 2—of substantive pronouns, 211, R. 3—possessive adjective used for, 211, R. 4—dative used for, 211, R. 5—of character or quality, 211, R. 6—noun limited by, omitted, 211, R. 7; wanting, in the predicate after *sum*, 211, R. 8; in other cases, 211, R. 8, (6,)—omitted, 211, R. 9—how translated, 211, R. 12—after partitives, 212—after a neuter adjective or adj. pronoun, 212, R. 3—after adverbs, 212, R. 4—after adjectives, 213; different constructions instead of, 213, R. 4—after *dignus* and *indignus*, 244, R. 2—after verbs, 214–220—after *sum*, and verbs of valuing, 214—of crime, 217—after verbs of admonishing, 218—after verbs denoting an affection of the mind, 220—of place, 221—after particles, 221, II., III.—plur. depending on a gerund, 275, R. 1, (3,)—place of, after neuter adjectives, 279, 10.
Genitives, two, limiting the same noun, 211, R. 10.
Gerundives, how used, 275, II.
Gerunds, 148, 2—by what cases followed, 274—and gerundives, gen. of,

275, R. 1; dat. of, 275, R. 2; acc. of, 275, R. 3; abl. of, 275, R. 4; infin. for, after adj., 275, R. 2, (4.)
Glorior, with abl., 245, III.
Glyconic verse, 316, IV.
Golden age, 329, 2.
Government defined, 203, 7.
Grammatical, subject, 201; cases of, 201, IV., 3—predicate, 202—figures, 322.
Greek nouns, gender of, 34, R.—1st dec., 44—2d dec., 54—acc. of, in 3d dec., 80—declension of, in do., 86.

H.

H, its nature, 2—in prosody, 283.
Habeo, &c., with perfect participles, 274, 2, R. 4.
Hellenism, 323, R. (2.)
Hemistich, 304.
Hendiădys, 323, 2, (3.)
Hepthemimĕris, 304, 5.
Heroic cæsūra, 310, 4 and 5.
Heteroclite nouns, 93.
Heterogeneous nouns, 92.
Heterōsis, 323, 3, (2.)
Hexaměter verse, 310—Priapean, 310, II.
Hiatus, 279, 18.
Hic, declined, 134—and *ille* distinguished, 207, R. 23.
Hipponactic, triměter, 314, II.—tetraměter, 314, IV.
Homo and *homines* omitted, 209, R. 2.
Homœoprophĕron, 324, 26.
Horace, key to the odes of, 321.
Horatian metres, 320.
Humi, construction of, 221, R. 3.
Hypallăge, 323, 4, (3.)
Hyperbăton, 323, 4.
Hyperbŏle, 324, 5.
Hypercatalectic, or hyperměter verse, 304.
Hystĕron protĕron, 323, 4, (2.)

I.

I, sound of, 7 and 8—nouns in, gender of, 66; gen. of, 68—increment in, 3d dec., 287, 3; plur., 288; of verbs, 290—final, quantity of, 296.
Iambic, metre, 314 and 303—triměter, 314, I.; catalectic, 314, V.—tetraměter, 314, III.; catalectic, 314, IV.—diměter, 314, VI.; hyperměter, 314, VII.; acephalous, 314, VIII.; catalectic, 314, IX.
Iambico-dactylic metre, 318, II.
Ibam, ibar, ibo, ibor, 162, 2.
Icius, icus, itis, and *ius*, adjectives in, 128, 2.
Icius or *itius*, verbal adjectives in, 129, 5.
Ictus, 308, 3.
Idem, declined, 134, R. 6—how used, 207, R. 27—with dative, 222, R. 7—how otherwise construed, 222, R. 7.
Ides, 326.
Idiotism, 325, 6.
Idus, adjectives in, 129, 2.
Ies, adverbs in, 192, II., 3.
Ii, in gen., contracted, 52.
Ile, nouns in, 100, 9.
Ilis, adjectives in, 129, 4.
Ille, declined, 134—how used, 207, R. 24—with *hic*, 207, R. 23.
Illic, how declined, 134, R. 3.
Im, in pres. subj., 162, 1—adverbs in, 192, I. and II.
Imonium, nouns in, 100, 6—and *imonia*, verbals in, 102, 3.
Imperative, 143, 3—its time, 145, R. 3—how used, 267.
Imperfect tense, 145, II.
Impersonal verbs, 184—list of in 2d conj., 169—their construction, 209, R. 3.
In, government of, 235, (2.)
Inceptive verbs, 187, II., 2—list of, 173.
Increment, of nouns, 286; sing. num., 287; plur. num, 288—of verbs, 289.
Incrementum, 324, 22.
Indeclinable, nouns, 94—adjectives, 115, 3.
Indefinite, adjectives, 104—pronouns, 138—adverbs, 191, R. 4.
Independent clauses, 203.
Indicative mood, 143, 1—its tenses, 145—how used, 259—its tenses used one for another, 259.
Indirect questions, subj. in, 265.
Induo and *exuo*, construction of, in pass., 234; in act., 251, R. 2.
Inferiority, how denoted, 122.
Infinitive, 143, 4—its tenses, 145, R. 4—as a logical subject, 201, IV.—how modified, 202, III.—with subject-nom., 209, R. 5—for gen., 213, R. 4—its subject, 239—construction and meaning of its tenses, 268—subject of a verb, 269—depending on a verb, 270; on an adjective or noun, 270, R. 1—omitted, 270, R. 3—without a subject, after what verbs used, 271—with a subject, after what verbs used, 272 and 273—how translated, 272, R. 3—used like a noun, 273, N.—its place, 279, 11.
Infit, 183, 14, and 180, N.
Inflection, 25.
Inquam, 183, 5—its place in a sentence, 279, 6.

Instrument, abl. of, 247.
Intensive, pronouns, 135—verbs, 187, II. 5.
Interdīco, construction of, 251, R. 2.
Intĕrest. See *Refert*.
Interjections, 199—with nom., 209, R. 13—with dat., 228, (3,)—with acc., 238, 2—with voc., 240—*O, heu*, &c., not elided, 305.
Intermediate clauses, subj. in, 266.
Interrogative, adjectives, 104 and 121—pronouns, 137; when indefinite, 137, N.
Inus, adjectives in, 128, 1, 2, and 6.
Io, verbals in, 102, 7.
Ionic, metre, 317 and 303—*a majōre*, 317, I.—*a minōre*, 317, II.
Ipse, declined, 135—how used, 207, R. 28—used reflexively, 208, (4,)—with *inter*, 208, (5.)
Iri, with supine in *um*, 276, II., R. 3.
Iron age, 329, 4.
Irony, 324, 4.
Irregular, nouns, 92—adjectives, 115—verbs, 178–182.
Is, nouns in, gender of, 62 and 63; gen. of, 74—final, quantity of, 301.
Is, declined, 134—how used, 207, R. 26.
Iste, how declined, 134—how used, 207, R. 25.
Istic and *illic* declined, 134, R. 3.
Itas, ia, itia, ities, imonia, itūdo, itus, and *tus*, abstracts in, 101.
Iter, declined, 57—with acc. of place, 237, R. 1—increments of, 286, 2.
Iter and *er*, adverbs in, 192, II. and IV.
Itus, adverbs in, 192, I. and II.
Ium, verbals in, 102, 2.
—— or *itium*, nouns in, 100, 5.
Ius, genitives in, how pronounced, 15—in what adjectives found, 107—quantity of *i* in, 283, I., E. 4.
Iv and *itu*, in 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 175.

J.

Jacto, with abl., 245, II.
Jubeo, construction of, 223, R. 2, (2,) and 273, 2.
Jugum, quantity of its compounds, 283, IV.
Jupĭter declined, 85.
Jusjurandum declined, 91.
Juval, &c., acc. after, 229, R. 7.

K.

K, when used, 2.
Key to the odes of Horace, 321.

L.

L, nouns in, gender of, 66; gen. of, 70—final, quantity of, 299.
Lætor, gaudeo, &c., with abl., 245, II.
Latin grammar, its divisions, 1.
Leading clause, subject and verb, 203, 3.
Lentus, adjectives in, 128, 4.
Letters, 2—division of, 3—sounds of, 7—numeral, 118, 7.
Licĕt, with subjunctive, 263, 2.
Liquids, 3.
Litŏtes, 324, 9.
Loading, verbs of, with abl., 249.
Logical, subject, 201—predicate, 202.
Long syllable, 282, 2.

M.

M final, quantity of, 299, 2—elided, 305, 2.
Malo conjugated, 178, 3.
Manner, adverbs of, 191, III.—abl. of, 247; with prep. 247, R. 3.
Masculine, nouns of 3d dec., 58; exc. in, 59–61—cæsura, 310, N. 1.
Materfamilias declined, 91.
Means, abl. of, 247—acc. of, with prep., 247, R. 4.
Measure or metre, a, 303.
Memĭni, 183, 3—with gen. or acc. 216.
Men or *mentum*, verbals in, 102, 4.
Met, enclitic, 133, R. 2.
Metalepsis, 324, 6.
Metaphor, 324, 1.
Metathĕsis, 322.
Metonymy, 324, 2.
Metre, 303—how divided, 303—different kinds of, 310–317.
Metres, compound, 318—Horatian, 320.
Meus, how declined, 139.
Militiæ, construction of, 221, R. 2.
Mille, its use, 118, 6.
Mino and *minor*, in obsolete imperatives, 162, 5.
Misceo, with abl., 245, II.
Misereor, miseresco, &c., with gen., 215.
Misĕret, with gen., 215—with acc., 229, R. 6.
Modi, annexed to pronouns, 134, R. 5.
Modified, subject, 201, III.; itself modified, 201, III., R. 6—predicate, 202, III.
Modify or *limit*, in what sense used, 201, II., R.
Modò, with subjunctive, 263, 2.
Money, mode of reckoning, 327.
Monocōlon, 319.
Monoptotes, 94.
Monosyllables, in *e*, quantity of, 295, E.

4—in *o*, do. 297, R. 1—their place, 279, 8.
Moods, 143.
Motion or tendency, verbs of, their construction, 225, 4, and 237, R. 3.
Mutes, 3—and liquids in prosody, 283, IV., R. 2.
Muto, with abl., 245, II.

N.

N, nouns in, gender of, 66; gen. of, 70 and 71—final, quantity of, 299.
Names of persons, order of, 279, 9.
Nascor, with abl., 246, R. 1.
Natus, &c., with abl., 246.
Ne, with subj., 262—omitted after *cave*, 262, R. 6—after *metuo*, &c., 262, R. 7—with subj., denoting a command, &c., 260, R. 6—with imperat., 267, R. 1—followed by *quidem*, 279, 3.
Negatives, two, their force, 277, R. 3–5.
Nemo, for *nullus*, 207, R. 31.
Neoterism, 325, 3.
Nequeo, how conjugated, 182, R. 3.
Nequis, how declined, 138, 2.
Neuter, nouns, 34; of 3d dec., 66; exc. in, 66 and 67—adjectives and adj. pronouns, with gen., 212, R. 3; acc. of, with another acc. after active verbs, 231, R. 5—verbs, with acc., 232; with abl. of agent, 248, R. 2—passive verbs, 142, R. 2; participles of, 162, 18.
Neuter, how declined, 107—use of, with gen., 212, R. 2, N. 1.
Neutral passive verbs, 142, R. 3.
Nitor, with abl., 245, II.
Nolo conjugated, 178, 2.
Nominative, 37—construction of, 209 and 210—after interjections, 209, R. 13—plural, 3d dec., 83; of adjectives, 3d dec., 113. See *Subject-nominative* and *Predicate-nominative*.
Non, omitted after *non modo*, &c., 277, R. 6.
Nones, 326.
Nostras, how declined, 139.
Nostrûm after partitives, 212, R. 2, N. 2.
Nouns, 26–103—proper, common, abstract, and collective, 26—gender of, 27–34—number of, 35—cases of, 36 and 37—declension of, 38–40—of 3d dec., mode of declining, 55—compound, 91—irregular, 92—variable, 92—defective, in case, 94; in number, 95 and 96—differing in meaning in different numbers, 97—redundant, 99—verbal, 102—derivation of, 100–102—composition of, 103—how modified, 201, III., R. 1—used as adjectives, 205, R. 11.
Ns, participials and participles in, construction of, 213, R. 1 and 3.
Number, of nouns, 35—of verbs, 146.
Numbers, cardinal, 117 and 118—ordinal, 119 and 120—distributive, 119 and 120.
Numerals—adjectives, 104; classes of, 117; with gen., 212, R. 2—letters, 118, 7—adverbs, 119—multiplicative, 121—proportional, 121—temporal, 121—interrogative, 121.
Nunquis, how declined, 137, R. 3.

O.

O, sound of, 7 and 8—nouns in, gender of, 58 and 59; gen. of, 69—adverbs in, 192—increment in, 3d dec., 287, 3; plur., 288; of verbs, 290—final, quantity of, 297.
O! si, with subjunctive, 263.
Oblique cases, what, 37—their place, 279, 10 and 2.
Obliviscor, with gen. or acc., 216.
Object of an active verb, 229.
Objective genitive, 211, R. 2—dative used instead of, 211, R. 5.
Octonarius, iambic, 314, III.
Odi, 183, 1.
Olli, for *illi*, 134, R. 1.
Omission, of *ar* in gen. plur., 1st dec., 43—of *i* in gen. sing., 2d dec., 52—of *e* in voc. sing., 2d dec., 52—of *or* in gen. plur., 2d dec., 53—of *e*, in gen. of nouns in *ter* and *ber*, 71—of connecting vowel, 150, 5—of *n*, &c., *is*, *ius*, and *sis*, in second root, 162, 7—of reduplication in compound verbs, 163, 4, R. 1—of pronoun in case of apposition, 204, R. 4—of a noun to which an adj. belongs, 205, R. 7, and 252, R. 3—of the antecedent, 206, (3) and (4)—of *meus*, &c., used reflexively, 207, R. 38—of nominative, 209, R. 2 and 3—of verb, 209, R. 4, and 229, R. 3—of a noun limited by gen., 211, R 8—of gen., 211, R. 9—of a partitive, 212, R. 1, N. 3—of subject acc., 239 and 269, R. 1—of acc. after an active verb, 229, R. 4—of prep. 232, (2,) 235, R. 5, 241, R. 4, and 248, R. 3—of voc., 240—of *quàm*, 256—of participle in abl. absolute, 257, R. 7—of *ut* with subj., 262, R. 4—of *ne* after *cave*, 262, R. 6—of *non* after *non modò*, &c., 277, R. 6—of conjunctions, 278, R. 6—of *j* in composition, 307.
Opus and *usus*, with gen. and acc., 211, R. 11—with abl., 243—how used, 243, R. 2.

Or, nouns in, gender of, 58 and 61; genitive of, 70 and 71—verbals in, 102, 1.
Oratio obliqua, 266, 1 and 2, and 273, 3—tenses of, 266, 2, R. 4.
Order, adverbs of, 191, I.
Ordinal numbers, 119 and 120.
Orium, verbals in, 102, 8.
Orthoëpy, 6–23.
Orthography, 2–5.
Os, nouns in, of 3d dec., gender of, 58 and 61; gen. of, 75—final, sound of, 8, R. 3; quantity of, 300.
Osus, adjectives in, 128, 4.
Ovat, 183, 15.
Oxymŏron, 324, 28

P.

Paraböla, 324, 30.
Paradigms, of nouns, 1st dec., 41; 2d dec., 46; 3d dec., 57; 4th dec., 87; 5th dec., 90—of adjectives, 1st and 2d dec., 105–107; 3d dec., 108–111—of verbs, *sum*, 153; 1st conj., 155 and 156; 2d conj., 157; 3d conj., 158 and 159; 4th conj., 160; deponent, 161; periphrastic conj., 162; defective, 183; impersonal, 184.
Paragöge, 322.
Paregmĕnon, 324, 24.
Parelcon, 323, 2, (1.)
Parenthesis, 323, 4, (6.)
Paronomasia, 324, 25.
Participial adjectives, 130.
Participles, 148, 1—in *us*, how declined, 105—in *ns*, do., 111—of neuter verbs, 162, 16—of deponent verbs, 162, 17—of neuter passive verbs, 162, 18—in *rus*, gen. plur. of, 162, 19—compounded with *in*, 162, 21—when they become adjectives, 162, 22—how modified, 201, III., R. 3—agreement of, 205; with predicate-nom., instead of subject, 205, R. 5—perfect, denoting origin, with abl., 246—their government, 274—their time, how determined, 274, 2—their various significations, 274, 2 and 3—perfect, with *habeo*, &c., 274, 2, R. 4—for a verbal noun, 274, 2, R. 5—for clauses, 274, 3.
Particles, 190.
Partitive adjectives, 104.
Partitives, with plural verbs, 209, R. 11—gen. after, 212—omitted, 212, R. 2, N. 3—acc. or abl. after, 212, R. 2, N. 4.
Parts of speech, 24.
Passive voice, 141—with latter of two acc., 234—construction of, 234.
Patrial, nouns, 100, 2—adjectives, 104—pronouns, 139.
Patronymics, 100—quantity of their penult, 291, 4 and 5.
Pentaměter verse, 311.
Pentaptotes, 94.
Penthemimĕris, 304, 5.
Penult, 13—quantity of, 291; of proper names, 293.
Perfect tense, 145, IV.
Perfects of two syllables, quantity of, 284, R. 1.
Period defined, 280.
Periphrăsis, 323, 2, (4.)
Periphrastic conjugations, 162, 14 and 15.
Personal terminations of verbs, 147, 3.
Personification, 324, 34.
Persons of verbs, 147—with nominatives of different persons, 209, R. 12, (7.)
Phalæcian verse, 315, III.
Pherecratic verse, 316, V.
Piget, with gen., 215—with acc., 229, R. 6.
Place, adverbs of, 191, I.—gen. of, 221—acc. of, 237; dat. for, 237, R. 3—where, abl. of, 254—whence, abl. of, 255.
Plenty or want, adj. of, with abl., 250.
Pleonasm, 323, 2.
Pluperfect tense, 145, V.
Plural nouns used for singulars, 98.
Plus declined, 110.
Pœnitet, with gen., 215—with acc., 229, R. 6.
Polyptöton, 324, 23.
Polysyndĕton, 323, 2, (2.)
Position in prosody, 283, IV.
Positive degree, 123.
Possessive, adjectives, 104—pronouns, 139; how used, 207, R. 36; when reflexive, omission of, 207, R. 36; used for subjective and possessive gen., 211, R. 3; *mea*, *tua*, &c., after *refert* and *interest*, 219, R. 1.
Possum conjugated, 154, 6.
Post, how pronounced, 8, R. 4.
Potior, with abl., 245—with gen., 220, (4.)
Præ in composition, its quantity, 283, II., R. 1.
Præditus, with abl., 244.
Predicate of a proposition, 200 and 202.
Predicate-nominative, 210—differing in number from the subject-nominative, 210, R. 2—after what verbs, 210, R. 3 and 4.
Predicate-accusative, 210—dative, 210.
Prepositional adjectives, 130.
Prepositions, 195–197—in composition, 196; force of, 197; change of, 103, 5—inseparable, 197—with an acc., 195

and 235—with an abl., 195 and 241—with an acc. and abl., 195, and 235, (2)-(5)—how modified, 201, III., R. 5—verbs compounded with, with dative, 224; with acc., 233; with abl., 242—omitted, 232, (2,) 235, R. 5, and 241, R. 4—their place, 279, 10—quantity of *di*, *se*, and *red*, 285, R. 2 and 3.
Present tense, 145, I.
Preteritive verbs, 183, 1.
Priapean verse, 310, II.
Price, ablative of, 252—expressed by *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris*, *minōris*, 252.
Primus, *medius*, &c., signification of, 205, R. 17—their place, 279, 7.
Priusquam, by what mood followed, 263, 3.
Pro, in composition, quantity of, 285, E. 5.
Procul, with abl., 241, R. 2.
Prolepsis, 323, 1, (4.)
Pronouns, 132–139—simple, 132—neuter with gen., 212, R. 3, N. 1.
Proper nouns, 26.
Propior and *proximus*, with acc., 222, R. 5.
Proposition, 200—analysis of, 281.
Prosody, 1, and 282–321—figures of, 305–307.
Prosopopœia, 324, 34.
Prosthĕsis, 322.
Prosum, 154, 5.
Protăsis and apodŏsis, 261.
Pte, enclitic, 133, R. 2, and 139.
Pudet, with gen., 215—with acc., 229, R. 6.
Punctuation, 5.
Punishment, words denoting, construction of, 217, R. 3.
Purpose denoted, by *ut* with subj., 262—by participles, 274, 2, R. 2, 6 and 7—by infin., 271—by gerund, 275, R. 2—by supine in *um*, 276, II.

Q.

Quæso, 183, 7.
Quality, adverbs of, 191, III.
Quàm, with the superlative, 127—omitted after *plus*, *minus*, *amplius*, &c., 256, R. 6 and 7.
Quamvis, with the subj., 263, 2.
Quantity, adjectives of, with gen., 212, R. 3, N. 1; after *sum* and verbs of valuing, 214—adverbs of, with gen., 212, R. 4.
Quantity, marks of, 5—in orthoëpy, 13—in prosody, 282, 1—general rules of, 283—special rules of, 284—of penults, 291—of antepenults, 292—of penults of proper names, 293—of final syllables, 294.
Quasi, with subj., 263, 2.
Queo, how conjugated, 182, R. 3.
Qui, declined, 136—interrogative, 137—person of, 209, R. 6—with subjunctive, 264.
Quicumque, how declined, 136, R. 2—how used, 207, R. 29.
Quidam, how declined, 133, 5—how used, 207, R. 33.
Quidem, place of, 279, 3.
Quilibet, how declined, 133, 5—how used, 207, R. 34.
Quin, with subj., 262 and *ib.*, R. 10.
Quis, declined, 137—and *qui*, for *aliquis*, &c., 137, R. (*c.*)
Quisnam, *quinam*, how declined, 137, 2.
Quispiam, how declined, 138, 3—how used, 207, R. 30.
Quisquam, how declined, 138, 3—how used, 207, R. 31.
Quisque, how declined, 138, 3—how used, 207, R. 35—its place, 279, 14.
Quisquis declined, 136, R. 2.
Quivis, how declined, 133, 5—how used, 207, R. 34.
Quo and *quomĭnus*, with subjunctive, 262 and *ib.*, R. 9.
Quoad, with subj., 263, 4.
Quod referring to a preceding statement, 206, (14.)
Quoque, place of, 279, 3.

R.

R final, quantity of, 299.
Reapse, 135, R. 3.
Recordor and *reminiscor*, with gen. or acc., 216.
Reckoning, Roman mode of, 326 and 327.
Redundant, nouns, 99—adjectives, 116—verbs, 185.
Reduplication, 163, R.—quantity of, 284, E. 2.
Refert and *intĕrest*, with gen., 214 and 219—with the adj. pronouns *mea*, &c., 219, R. 1.
Reflexive pronouns, 139, R. 2—how used, 208—for demonstratives, 208, (6,)—omitted, 229, R. 3—in oratio obliqua, 266, R. 3.
Relative pronouns, 136.
Relatives, agreement of, 206—omitted, 206, (5,)—in the case of the antecedent, 206, (6,)—referring, to nouns of different genders, 206, (9;) to a proposition, 206, (13,)—agreeing with a noun implied, 206, (11,)—adjectives,

construction of, 206, (16,)—with subjunctive, 264—their place, 279, 13.
Responsives, case of, 204, R. 11.
Respublica declined, 91.
Rhetoric, figures of, 324.
Rhythm, 308.
Rimus and *ritis*, quantity of, 290, E. (I.) 4.
Root of words inflected, 40, 10.
Roots of verbs, 150, 1—special, 150, 2—second and third, how formed, 150, 3—first, its derivatives, 151, 1; second, do., 151, 2; third, do., 151, 3—second and third, formation of, 1st conj., 164–166; 2d conj., 167–170; 3d conj., 171–174; 4th conj., 175–177—second and third irregular, 1st conj., 165; 2d conj., 168; 4th conj., 176.
Rus, how construed, in acc., 237, R. 4—in abl., 254 and 255.
Rus, participle in, its signification, 162, 14, and 274, 2, R. 6.

S.

S, sound of, 11—preceded by a consonant, nouns in, gender of, 62 and 64; gen. of, 77—final, elided, 305, 2.
Salve, 183, 9.
Sapphic verse, 315, II.
Saltâgo, with gen., 215, (2.)
Satis, *bene*, and *male*, verbs compounded with, with dat., 225.
Scanning, 304, 6.
Scazon, 314, II.
Se with *inter*, 208, (5.)
Senarius, iambic, 314.
Sentences, 203—analysis of, 281.
Sentiments of another in dependent clauses, by what mood expressed, 266, 3.
Separating, verbs of, with abl. 251.
Sere, future infin. in, 162, 10.
Sestertius, its value, 327—how denoted, 327—mode of reckoning, 327.
Short syllable, 282, 2.
Silver age, 329, 3.
Simile, 324, 30.
Simple, subject, 201, II.—predicate, 202, II.—sentences, 203.
Simul, with abl., 241, R. 2.
Siquis, how declined, 138, 2.
Sis, for *si vis*, 183, R. 3.
So and *sim*, ancient forms of tenses in, 162, 8.
Sodes, for *si audes*, 183, R. 3.
Solecism, 325, 2.
Soleo, how conjugated, 142, R. 2.
Solus, how declined, 107—with relative and subj., 264. 10.
Sotadic verse, 317, I.
Space, acc. of, 236.
Spondaic, verse, 310—tetramĕter, 312.
Stanza, 319.
Sto, with abl., 245, II.
Strophe, 319.
Sub, in composition, force of, 122—government of, 235, (2.)
Subject, of a verb, 140—of a proposition, 200 and 201; modified, 201, III.; its place in a sentence, 279, 2.
Subject-nominative, 209—when omitted, 209, R. 1 and 2—when wanting, 209, R. 3—with infinitive, 209, R. 5—two or more with plural verb, 209, R. 12; with sing. verb, 209, R. 12.
Subject-accusative, 239—when omitted, 239.
Subjective genitive, 211, R. 2—possessive pronoun used for, 211, R. 3.
Subjunctive, 143, 2—its tenses, 145, R. 2—how used, 259—its tenses, various uses of, 259—for imperative, 260, R. 6—in conditional clauses, 261—after particles, 262 and 263—after *qui*, 264—in indirect questions, 265—in intermediate clauses, 266—in oratio obliqua, 266, 1 and 2—after what verbs used, 273.
Substantive pronouns, 132, 133—as subject-nom., omitted, 209, R. 1—dative of, redundant, 228, N.
Subter, government of, 235, (4.)
Sui, declined, 133—use of, 208.
Sultis, for *si vultis*, 183, R. 3.
Sum, conjugated, 153—compounds of, do., 154, 5 and 6—with a gen. in expressions denoting part, property, duty, &c., 211, R. 8, (3,) and 275, R. 1, (5,)—denoting degree of estimation, 214—with two datives, 227—with abl. of situation, 245, III.—with abl. denoting *in respect to*, 250, R. 3.
Super, government of, 235, (3.)
Superiority, how denoted, 123.
Superlative degree, 123—formation of, 124—with *quisque*, 207, R. 35—with gen., 212, R. 2, and R. 4, N. 7.
Supines, 148, 3—few in number, 162, 11—in *um*, by what cases followed, 276; on what verbs they depend, 276, II.; with *eo*, 276, II., R. 2 and 3—in *u*, with what adjectives used, 276, III.; after *fas*, *nefas*, and *opus*, 276, III., R. 2—of two syllables, quantity of, 284, E. 1.
Suus, use of, 208—referring to a word in the predicate, 208, (7,)—for *hujus*, when a noun is omitted, 208, (7,)—denoting fit, &c., 208.
Syllabication, 17–23.

Syllables, quantity of first and middle, 284; of penult, 291; of antepenult, 292; of final, 294.
Syllepsis, 323, 1, (3.)
Symplŏce, 324, 15.
Synærĕsis, 306.
Synalœpha, 305.
Synapheia, 307, 2.
Synchÿsis, 323, 4, (4.)
Syncŏpe, 322.
Synecdŏche, 234, II., 323, 1, (5,) and 324, 3.
Synĕsis, or synthĕsis, 323, 3, (4.)
Synonymia, 324, 29.
Synopsis of Horatian metres, 320.
Syntax, 1, and 200–281.
Systŏle, 307.

T.

T, sound of, 12—nouns in, gender of, 66; gen. of, 78—final, quantity of, 299.
Tædet, with gen., 215—with acc., 229, R. 6.
Talent, value of, 327.
Tanquam, with subj., 263, 2.
Tanti, quanti, &c., denoting price, 252.
Tantum, with gen. plur. and plural verb, 209, R. 11.
Tautology, 325, 4.
Te, enclitic, 133, R. 2.
Tenses, 144—connection of, 258—similar and dissimilar, 258, I. and II.—of indicative mood, used one for another, 259; future for imperative, 259; used for subj. in apodosis, 259, R. 4—of subj. mood, their use, 260, I., R. 1, and II., R. 1—in protasis and apodosis, 261—of infin. mood, use of, 268.
Tenus, with gen., 221, III.—with abl., 241, R. 1—place of, 279, 10.
Terminations, of words inflected, 40—of nouns, 1st dec., 41; 2d dec., 46; 3d dec., 55; 4th dec., 87; 5th dec., 90—personal, of verbs, 147, 3—verbal, 150—table of verbal, 152.
Tetramĕter, *a priŏre*, 312—*a posteriŏre*, 312.
Tetraptotes, 94.
Tetrastrŏphon, 319.
That, sign of what moods, 273.
Thesis, 308.
Time, adverbs of, 191, II.—acc. of, 236—abl. of, 253—expressed by *id*, with a gen., 253, R. 3—mode of reckoning, 326; table of, 326, 6.
Tmesis, 323, 4, (5.)
Tor and *trix*, verbals in, 102, 6.
Towns, names of, construction of; see *Place*.
Tricŏlon, 319.
Triemimĕris, 304, 5.
Trimĕter catalectic, 312, VII.
Triptotes, 94.
Tristrŏphon, 319.
Trochaic or feminine cæsura, 310, N. 1.
Trochaic, metre, 315 and 303—tetramĕter catalectic, 315—dimĕter catalectic, 315, IV.
Tropes, 324.
Tu declined, 133.
Tus, adjectives in, 128, 7.

U.

U, sound of, 7 and 8—in gen. and voc. of Greek nouns, 54—dative in, 89—increment in, 3d dec., 287, 3; plur., 288; of verbs, 290—final, quantity of 298.
U and *itu*, in 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 167.
Ubus, in dat. and abl. plur., 89, 5.
Ullus, how declined, 107—how used, 207, R. 31.
Ulum, verbals in, 102, 5.
Um, adverbs in, 192, II.
Undus, participles in, 162, 20.
Unus, declined, 107—*et alter*, with verbs singular, 209, R. 12—with relative and subj., 264, 10.
Unusquisque, how declined, 133, 4.
Ur, nouns in, gender of, 66 and 67; gen. of, 70 and 71.
Ura, verbals in, 102, 7.
Us, nouns in, of 3d dec., gender of, 66 and 67; gen. of, 76—verbals in, 102, 7—final quantity of, 301.
Usque, with acc., 235, R. 3.
Usus; see *Opus*.
Ut, with subjunctive, 262—its correlatives, 262, R. 1—omitted, 262, R. 4—after *metuo*, &c., its meaning, 262, R. 7.
Ut si, with subj., 263, 2.
Uter, how declined, 107—use of with gen., 212, R. 2, N. 1.
Utinam and *uti*, with subj., 263.
Utor, fruor, &c., with abl., 245—with acc., 245, I., R. 1.

V.

V changed to *u*, 163, 2.
Valeo, with acc., 252, R. 4.
Valuing, verbs of, with gen., 214.
Vapŭlo, 142, R. 3.
Variable nouns, 92.
Velut si, and *velŭti*, with subj., 263, 2.
Veneo, 142, R. 3.

Verbals, nouns, 102; with acc., 233, N. —adjectives, 129.
Verbs, 140–189—subject of, 140—active, 141—neuter, 142—neuter passive, 142, R. 2—neutral passive, 142, R. 3—deponent, 142, R. 4—transitive and intransitive, 142, N.—principal parts of, 151, 4—neuter, participles of, 162, 16 —inceptive, 173—desiderative, 187, II., 3, and 176, N.—irregular, 178–182 —defective, 183—redundant, 185 and 186—derivation of, 187—composition of, 188—changes of, in composition, 189—compounds from simples not in use, 189, N. 4—agreement of, 209—omitted, 209, R. 4—with *qui*, person of, 209, R. 6—agreeing with predicate-nom., 209, R. 9—with collective nouns, 209, R. 11—plural, after two or more nominatives, 209, R. 12; after a nominative, with *cum* and abl., 209, R. 12; after nominatives connected by *aut*, 209, R. 12—their place in a sentence, 279, 2; in a period, 280.
Verses, 304—combinations of, in poems, 319.
Versification, 302.
Versùs, with acc., 235, R. 3—place of, 279, 10.
Vescor, with abl., 245.
Vestrûm, after partitives, 212, R. 2, N. 2.
Vir, how declined, 48.
Vis declined, 85.
Vivo, with abl., 245, II.
Vocative, 37—of proper names in *ius*, how pronounced, 14; how formed, 52 —sing. 3d dec., 81—construction of, 240.
Voices, 141.
Volo conjugated, 178.
Vowel, before a mute and liquid, its quantity, 13, and 283, *i* V., E. 2—before another vowel, quantity of, 283, I.; in Greek words, 283, E. 6—before two consonants, 283, IV.—ending first part of a compound, quantity of, 285, R. 4.
Vowels, sounds of, 7 and 8.

W.

Words, division of, 17–23—arrangement of, 279.
Writers in different ages, 329.

X.

X, sound of, 12—nouns in, gender of, 62 and 65; gen. of, 78.

Y.

Y, sound of, 7, R. 2—nouns in, gender of, 62; gen. of, 77—increment in, 3d dec., 287, 3—final, quantity of, 298.
Ys final, quantity of, 301.

Z.

Zeugma, 323, 1, (2.)

THE END.

This book should be returned to the Library on or before the last date stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred by retaining it beyond the specified time.

Please return promptly.